Some examples and graphics depicted herein are provided for illustration only. No real association or connection to ServiceNow products or services is intended or should be inferred.

If you have comments about this documentation, submit your feedback to: docfeedback@servicenow.com
# Table of Contents

**Customer Service Management**.................................................................................................................................... 4  
Customer Service Management.......................................................................................................................... 12  
Exploring Customer Service Management.............................................................................................................. 18  
Configuring Customer Service Management........................................................................................................... 182  
Integrating Customer Service Management with other applications........................................................................... 410  
Using Customer Service Management....................................................................................................................... 490  
Analytics and reporting for Customer Service Management....................................................................................... 588  
Customer Service Management reference.............................................................................................................. 628  

**Communities**..................................................................................................................................................... 681  
Activate Communities plugins.................................................................................................................................. 682  
Properties installed with Communities....................................................................................................................... 683  
Communities roles.......................................................................................................................................................... 695  
Community setup guide for admins............................................................................................................................. 696  
Domain separation in Communities............................................................................................................................ 697  
Quick start tests for Communities.............................................................................................................................. 697  
Configure a community.................................................................................................................................................. 699  
Moderate a community................................................................................................................................................ 738  
Use a community......................................................................................................................................................... 744  
Gamification............................................................................................................................................................... 779  

**Index**............................................................................................................................................................................. 792
Customer Service Management

Resolve complex issues end-to-end. Proactively fix problems and drive action to solve common requests more quickly and efficiently.
Issue Management and Targeted Communications

Root Cause Issue Resolution

Knowledge Management and Communities

Personalized Self-service Portal, Catalog, and Virtual Agent

Integrated Channel and Mobile Experiences

Agent Workspace and Predictive Intelligence

Customer Contracts, Products, and Services Install Base
Drive customer loyalty with connected digital workflows

In today’s service-based economy, keeping customers loyal is paramount to growing and sustaining your business. ServiceNow helps you drive customer loyalty with connected digital workflows which join customer service with other departments using AI and workflow to assign, manage, and resolve complex issues end-to-end.

Monitor trends as well as products and services to notify your customers when they are affected by issues. In addition, proactively fix issues before customers know they have them. Deliver a personalized customer experience while increasing agent efficiency, driving action to instantly take care of common customer requests using resources like the portal, service catalog, virtual agent, and online communities.

View and download the full infocard for a highlight of Customer Service Management features.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Make it easy for customers to engage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Provide effortless customer service across any channel at any time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assign tasks across the enterprise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connect customer service with engineering, field service, finance, and other teams.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitor for issues and create cases automatically</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proactively monitor customers’ products and services and take action on potential issues and outages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prevent future calls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fix underlying issues to eliminate calls, drive knowledge-base content changes, preemptively notify customers when there are issues, and act on trends revealed in ServiceNow Performance Analytics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reduce case volume with self-service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encourage customers to help themselves with a self-service catalog, communities, knowledge base, and portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Make it easy for customers to engage

Give your customers the choice of connecting through email, phone, chat, social media, or mobile - anytime, anywhere, and from any device. Omni-channel advanced work assignment automatically assigns customer cases to the most appropriate agent based on capacity, skills, and case context.
Assign tasks across the enterprise

Connect customer service to other departments with the visual task board, workflow, and automation to resolve cases quickly. Identify issues in customer service and assign them directly to field service, engineering, operations, finance, legal, and other departments and track those issues to resolution. Additionally, you’ll gain visibility to more efficiently manage assets, projects, and costs, when Customer Service Management is deployed with Asset Management and Project Portfolio Management.
Monitor for issues and create cases automatically

Proactively identify and alert your customers to possible issues. Send preemptive alerts only to potentially affected customers, notifying them of a solution when available and preventing their need to contact customer service. With access to real-time operational health of customers’ products and services, agents receive alerts of potential issues before customers are even aware.
Prevent future calls

Monitor current and prior performance to identify areas for improvement of products, services, and processes using Performance Analytics for Customer Service Management. Predict trends to drive actionable improvements, such as automating the most frequently recurring problem resolutions.
Reduce case volume with self-service

Empower your customers with fast, personalized self-service. Customer Service Management provides your customers with a number of self-service options, including the Customer Service Portal for a customizable online service experience, conversational answers from a chatbot, knowledge base articles, and an online community of peers and experts.

Get started

- Work with an implementation specialist to streamline your setup process. To learn more, see the Customer Success Center.
- Sign up for the ServiceNow Customer Service Management fundamentals training program and certification to learn about core functionality and release-specific features.
- For information on how to request Customer Service Management and to begin setup, see Activate Customer Service Management.

Applications and features

Key capabilities

- Customer Service Management
Customer data management  
Case management  
Major issue management overview  
Omni-channel  
Outsourced Customer Service  
Communities  
Proactive Customer Service Operations  
Machine learning solutions for Customer Service Management  
CSM Agent Workspace  
Mobile experience for Customer Service Management  
Virtual Agent  
Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management  

Integrations  
Field Service Management  
Service Management applications  
Financial Management  
Integrating with Continual Improvement Management  
Customer Project Management  
IT Operations Management  
Knowledge Management  

Other applications and tools  
Visual task assignment  
Visual workflow and automation  
Surveys  

Customer Service Management  
The ServiceNow® Customer Service Management application enables you to provide service and support for your external customers through communication channels such as web, email, chat, telephone, and social media. Create cases as needed and route cases to available customer service agents with the necessary skill sets.
Additional resources

- Customer Service Management API on the ServiceNow® Developer Site
- Customer Service Management forum on the Now Community

Exploring Customer Service Management

Whether you're starting or expanding your implementation of Customer Service Management, learn more about available features to help create a seamless experience for your customers, agents, and managers to resolve issues and fulfill requests.

Customer self-service and omni-channel support

Empower customers to help themselves or easily get help from your teams by configuring multiple entry points for assistance.

- Chat with support
- Email support
- Call support
- Self-help on the Service Portal
• Virtual Agent assistance on the Service Portal
• Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management

To learn more about these features for providing customer support, see these topics:

• Omnichannels for communicating with customers
• Customer and consumer self-service portals
• Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management
Proactive Customer Service Operations

With the ServiceNow® Proactive Customer Service Operations feature, proactively create cases for impacted services. You can activate Proactive Customer Service Operations by itself or as an integration with the ServiceNow® Event Management application.

When a Network Operations Center (NOC) operator detects an impacted service, they can review details and then create a case for customer service to review and start working with affected customers.

For more information, see Proactive Customer Service Operations.
Help agents resolve issues and fulfill requests more quickly by automating processes and providing a single workspace with all the resources needed to communicate with customers and work on cases.

**Agent Workspace**

With the ServiceNow® Agent Workspace platform, configure a single interface for agents to complete all their tasks. The Agent Workspace platform takes the agent functionality available on the Now Platform® and puts these features in a multi-tab interface. The optimized layout helps agents efficiently manage multiple cases, accounts, customers, and consumers.

**Intelligent routing**

Use Advanced Work Assignment with Agent Workspace to automatically assign work items to agents based on their availability, capacity, and skills.

**Integrated communication channels**

From the workspace, agents can call or chat with customers in real time to get information and provide updates.

**Case management**

Create and route cases, manage customer information and interactions, monitor case activity (including case status and SLAs), and work to resolve customer issues. Use response templates and search tools to search the knowledge base and community and provide timely, informative responses to customers.

**Predictive Intelligence**

With the ServiceNow® Predictive Intelligence application, use predictive intelligence solution definitions to assist agents with a variety of tasks. Create solutions to help agents create, assign, and resolve cases more efficiently. Use machine learning to predict fields during case creation, such as the category, priority, and assignment group.

**Customer data management**

Provide your agents with a view of customer accounts and contacts, consumers, entitlements, contracts, products, assets, and install bases.

**Customer Central**

With Customer Central, agents can view information about a customer in one central place. It enables them to quickly zoom in on issues and provide efficient and supportive service to customers.

**Major issue management**

If a current case impacts multiple customers on a wide
Dashboards and reports to monitor and improve business processes

Analytics and Reporting Solutions contain prepackaged dashboards and reports to provide your team with data for managing their work and improving their performance.

Reports for key insights

Numerous reports are available to provide you with data on cases, affected customers, customer satisfaction, and open backlogs.

Dashboards for different roles

Separate dashboards are available for the agents, managers, and executives on your team so they only see the data that is relevant to them.

For details on all available dashboards and reports, see Analytics and reporting for Customer Service Management.
Mobile experience for Customer Service Management

With the Customer Service Management mobile application, agents and managers can perform routine tasks from anywhere. They can stay connected and access information in real time to complete tasks quickly.

For more information, see *Mobile experience for Customer Service Management*.

---

Omnichannels for communicating with customers

Meet customers where they feel most comfortable by providing omni-channel support. Give them the option to email, call, or chat with you.

Chat channel

From the Customer Service Portal and Consumer Service Portal, customers can start a chat with a virtual or live agent for help.
Chatting with an agent

The chat communication channel uses the ServiceNow® Connect Support feature to provide chat capability. You can also enable the ServiceNow® Virtual Agent application to create or use predefined chatbot topics (conversations) for your users.

The chat request from the customer is either routed to a virtual agent or to an available agent with the required skill set. The agent can respond to the customer and, if necessary, create a new case or link the discussion to an existing case.

If a case is created as the result of a chat, the customer can later find and view the case from the portal for updates. The customer service agent can also link a chat discussion to an existing case. Details from the chat discussion are copied to the case form.

For more information, see Connect Support and Configuring the chat channel.

When a support agent of the assignment group associated with the chat queue ends a chat with a user, a survey is available in the chat window for the users. Users can take the survey to give feedback about the interaction with an agent. The survey is not captured in the transcript in the agent’s interactions page.
Email channel

With an email channel, customers can send emails to create new cases and update current cases. They can also receive email updates from customer service agents as cases progress.

Creating, viewing, and updating cases

Customers can create a new case by sending an email to a designated address. They can also create a new case for a specific product by sending an email to a designated address and including the product name in the subject line. Or, if a channel configuration has been created, customers can send an email to a designated address regardless of the information included in the subject line.

After submitting a case, the customer receives a confirmation email with the assigned case number and a link to the Case form. When an agent updates a case, the customer receives an email with the details.

Customers can update an existing case in the following ways:
• By replying directly to an email from a customer service agent.
• By creating an email and including the Case: prefix followed by the case number in the subject line. For example, Case:CS0000011.

Note: Note: If the case number in the subject line is incorrect, a new case is created.

Accepting and rejecting solutions

When an agent proposes a solution to a case, the customer receives an email with instructions for accepting or rejecting the solution. The customer can reply and include Accept or Reject in the first line of the email, or the customer can click the Accept or Reject link in the email.

When an agent closes a case, two emails are sent to the customer: the first states that the case has been closed and the second provides a link to a customer satisfaction survey.

Note: If a customer accepts a solution or closes a case from the Customer Service Portal, they are automatically routed to the survey. They do not receive the survey email.

To get started with the email channel, see Configuring the email channel.

Phone channel

External customers can reach out to customer service agents by phone. The Customer Service Management application uses both Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) and OpenFrame to provide phone support for customers.
Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)

CTI provides a way to integrate the Now Platform with telephony providers to support inbound and outbound calls. With this integration, customer service agents can place and accept calls from customers, quickly identify customers and account information, and capture case-related information.

Note: The CTI integration with the Twilio Voice product requires activation of the Notify plugin.

OpenFrame

OpenFrame is a tool that enables CTI capability with telephony service providers. OpenFrame provides a communication frame that agents use to place and receive customer calls.

Agent initiated SMS conversation

Customer Service Management supports additional messaging channel such as SMS which tracks interactions between the agent and customer. For more information, see Agent initiated SMS conversation.

To get started with the phone channel, see Configuring the phone channel.
Customer and consumer self-service portals

With the ServiceNow® Service Portal application, create portals that empower customers to resolve issues and submit cases and requests for themselves. To help direct customers to the right portal resources, you can also activate the ServiceNow® Virtual Agent application for CSM.

Portal types

There are two types of portals that you can configure to support your customers and consumers.

- Customer Service Portal to support your business-to-business (B2B) customers
- Consumer Service Portal to support your business-to-consumer (B2C) customers

Both portals offer the same self-service and Virtual Agent assistance features.
Self-service on portals

You can configure your Customer Service Portal or Consumer Service Portal with the following self-service features.

**Service catalog**

With the ServiceNow® Service Catalog application, you can create service catalogs where customers can request items such as service and product offerings. Enable customers to request items from the portal by associating one or more service catalogs with the portal. Customers can also track the status of open requests from the portal.

**Knowledge base**

With the ServiceNow® Knowledge Management application, you can create knowledge bases with articles to share information with customers on the portal. Customers can search the knowledge bases for information such as troubleshooting or task resolution to resolve issues and answer questions.

**Community**

With the ServiceNow® Communities application, create forums for agents and customers to connect, engage, and collaborate with each other. On the portal, customers can search for community content that could provide the solutions and answers they need.

**Chat**

With the ServiceNow® Virtual Agent platform, design and build automated conversations that help your customers get the help they need.

As customers answer questions and select options presented by Virtual Agent, they are directed to a self-service resource.

If customers want to chat with an agent, Virtual Agent hands them off to a live agent. To provide this resource, use the ServiceNow® Connect Support feature.

To get started with the portals, see [Configure the Customer and Consumer Service Portals](#).
Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management

The ServiceNow® Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management application enables you to set up a contact channel to support both online check-in and onsite check-in to a pre-established walk-up service center.

Walk-up Experience aims to support users and significantly improve their satisfaction through a fast in-person support. Employees and business guests can get real-time, in-person help with their issues.

User personas and roles are defined as follows:

**Requesters**

Users access the Walk-up Experience application in several ways.

- **Online:**
  - Quickly check in online to the nearest available walk-up venue using the **Walk-up Check In** option on the Service Portal using your computer.

  **Note:** Walk-up Experience application automatically routes you to the nearest walk-up queue using the IP address of your computer. You can change the location, if desired.

  - Join the queue and view your queue position.
  - Schedule appointments for support and receive appointment reminders, as well as cancel or reschedule appointments from links in the reminder or from the online check-in interface.
  - Schedule only one appointment per walk-up location queue at a time.

  **Note:** Even with a scheduled appointment, you can still check into a walk-up location queue online or in person onsite.

  - Receive email notifications when your request is assigned to a technician when your position in the queue is close to being served and when your walk-up request has been closed or abandoned, should you decide not to attend the queue.

- **Onsite at the Walk-up Experience location:**
  - Check into a queue at the physical walk-up location by manually entering your name, email, and contact details.
  - Observe queue activities on a large monitor that displays both walk-in requesters and those with appointments.
  - View the monitor displaying how many people are currently in the queue, guest positions in the queue, who is being served, and estimated wait times.
  - Answer an available single-question survey which captures your user sentiment after a visit.

**Technicians or Agents**

Customer support uses Walk-up Experience application to meet the demand of urgent issues or requests from the requesters.

- Walk-up Experience technicians manage daily operations at the walk-up queue locations. They resolve customer service issues.
- Technicians can accept and close Walk-up Experience interactions through the Agent Workspace interface. Agent Workspace contains a personal inbox where walk-up interactions, if configured in Advanced Work Assignment, are automatically pushed for assignment.
- Agents can manage all aspects of Walk-up Experience fulfillment using Agent Workspace. Based on their capacity, and if records are on-hold, they can work on multiple transactions at the same time and promote interactions to cases.
• Technicians can view and accept scheduled appointments in their Agent Workspace personal inbox. Appointments are routed to the inbox according to agent availability. Alternatively, agents can pick and choose appointments manually.
• If necessary, technicians can work with anyone in the queue at any time. Technicians can manually assign themselves to a walk-up interaction, by accepting the interaction from a list of unassigned interactions in Agent Workspace.

Managers

Managers supervise the walk-up location technicians and oversee daily operations.
• Walk-up managers can observe and capture operational and performance data by monitoring the walk-up dashboard.
• Walk-up managers can use the application to increase customer satisfaction, provide customer service in a timely manner, and report performance data to upper management.

Administrators

Configure and maintain walk-up related systems, such as the walk-up location branding and text, queue locations and schedules, appointments, advanced work assignments, and notifications, and CSAT surveys.

Walk-up Experience User Roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role Name</th>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_walkup.walkup_login</td>
<td>Store representative</td>
<td>A user with this role helps requesters check in at the walk-up location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician</td>
<td>CSM walk-up technician</td>
<td>A user with this role fulfills user demands at the CSM walk-up location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_walkup.walkup_manager</td>
<td>CSM walk-up manager</td>
<td>A user with this role manages the team at the walk-up location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin</td>
<td>CSM walk-up administrator</td>
<td>A user with this role administers walk-up interactions, location queues, and walk-up reasons.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activation information

To enable Walk-up Experience for CSM, activate the Walk-up Experience plugin (plugin com.snc.walkup_for_csm).

Note: The Walk-up Experience for CSM plugin includes the demo data.

Configuring Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management

To get started with Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management, see Configure Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management

Walk-up Experience for guest users

The Walk-up Experience application can enable guest users to manage walk-up appointments online from the Consumer Service Portal or Customer Service Portal home page.
Request apps on the Store

Visit the ServiceNow Store website to view all the available apps and for information about submitting requests to the store. For cumulative release notes information for all released apps, see the ServiceNow Store version history release notes.

Requirements to use Walk-up Experience for guest users

Note the following requirements for guest users to be able to use Walk-up Experience:

- The Guest Walk-up Experience for Customer Service store app must be installed. For more information on installing the store application, see Install a ServiceNow Store application.
- The com.snc.walkup_for_csm plugin must be activated. For more information on activating a plugin, see Activate a plugin.
- The Walk-up Check-in widget must be configured. For more information, see Add a Walk-up Experience online check-in link on the Service Portal home page.

Proactive Customer Service Operations

Proactively trigger case workflows and notify customers of any issues to resolve issues faster and lower inbound call volume.

Proactive Customer Service Operations enables you to track the digital services sold to and in use by your customers. This is referred to as install base.

If you identify any service disruptions to a customer's install base, you can proactively create a case to notify them. These cases are resolved and closed in the same way as customer-reported cases. When multiple customers are affected, you can use the major issue management process.

You can also associate outage information to a case to keep your customers informed about the impact of the outage and the status of the resolution. It also gives customers visibility into planned service disruptions, enhancing transparency and reducing the number of customer-reported cases.

Your customers can use the Customer Service Portal to view proactive cases that you opened on their behalf, any outages associated with their install base, and interact with you using the proactive case.


Before you begin

Meet with your stakeholders to define your requirements. Depending on your requirements, you can activate either the Proactive Customer Service Operations plugin or the Proactive Customer Services with Event Management plugin.

Note: The Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin provides all the features included in the Proactive Customer Service Operations plugin as well as additional features from the Event Management console in IT Operations Management.
Activation information


To enable Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management, activate the Proactive Customer Services with Event Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_itom)

For detailed steps on getting started with Proactive Customer Service Operations, see Configure Proactive Customer Service Operations.

Outage tracking for install base

Provide visibility into any current or upcoming outages affecting a customer's install base, enhancing transparency and reducing the number of customer-reported cases.

Outage definition

An outage refers to a time period that a service delivering value to a customer is unavailable or experiencing performance issues.

A customer can experience the following types of outages:

- Unplanned outage: Outages such as those caused by hardware or network issues.
- Planned outage: Outages caused by planned maintenance or upgrades.
- Degradation: Problems affecting a service that does not result in a disruption of that service.

Outage tracking overview

Inform your customers proactively if they are affected by a planned or unplanned service disruption by associating outages to a case. In doing so, your customers are aware of the impact of the outage and have visibility into status of the resolution. They can then use this information to assess the business impact of different outage types over a period of time and calculate any charge backs, if required.

Outages are typically created automatically when an alert is created for a service or by service fulfillers when working on an incident.

An outage specifies the outage type, impacted service as well as the begin and end time. Multiple services used by a customer can be associated with an outage.

Roles

As a major issue manager or customer service manager, you can create, associate, and track all outages related to a case. Customer service managers can also view reports of business impact by outage type.

As a customer service agent, you can view any outages associated to the case.

Your customers can view outage information on the Customer Service Portal.

Activation information

This feature requires the Proactive Customer Service Operations Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_ops).
Integration with Event Management

Create cases proactively from alerts either manually or through automation. Track the accounts and health status of the corresponding install base items affected by the alert to better correlate customer issues and provide faster responses.

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Event Management console in IT Operations Management, which enables you to improve the customer experience by breaking down the silos that exist between the processes and systems used by front line customer service and back-office operations teams. By monitoring issues and creating cases proactively, you can be one step ahead of your customers and solve issues faster.

Network Operations Center (NOC) operators monitor alerts from the Operator Workspace. For more information, see Monitor service health.

When alerted to a service disruption, they can identify the accounts and corresponding install base items affected and create a case for customer service to review. Customer service can view the customers affected and notify them.

Customer service agents and managers can also track the service health status of install base items for an account to provide faster and more accurate support to customers.

This image provides an overview of Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management.
Proactive Customer Service Operations

NOC operator identifies an alert

Reviews details and affected customers

Creates incident

Does the issue affect multiple customers?

Yes

Proactive major case with child cases is created

Major issue manager associates outages to proactive major case

Agent updates the case details and resolves the case once alert is closed

Customer receives regular updates and can check the status on the portal

No

Proactive case for affected customer is created

Agent reviews the service health status of install base items
This image provides an overview of Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management.
Learn about Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management from the following video tutorial.

Note: This video was recorded in the New York release.

Activation information

To enable Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management, activate the Proactive Customer Service with Event Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_item).

Service health status for install base
View the real-time health status of a customer's install base. Correlate customer issues with the operational health of their install base to provide more informed responses to your customers.

Service health tracking overview

The integration between Customer Service Management and the Event Management console in IT Operations Management enables you to track the service health status of a customer's install base.

When an issue affects one or more install base items and an alert is created, the severity of the alert is calculated in Event Management. It is calculated according to alert impact calculation rules. Based on the severity of the alert, the service health status of each install base item is calculated. Customer service agents can view the service health status of install base items in an account or a case in Customer Service Management.

For more information about how the severity of an alert is calculated, see Alert impact calculation.

To provide the service health status for an install base item in Customer Service Management, the following fields are mapped.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Management (em_impact_status table)</th>
<th>Customer Service Management (sn_install_base_item table)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Business Service</td>
<td>Service Context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element Identifier</td>
<td>Configuration Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Health Status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The service health status is displayed only if the install base item has both a Configuration Item (CI) and a service context associated with it. Service context is the business service associated with the underlying CI for impact calculation in Event Management. For more information about business services, see Lesson 2 of the Event Management Operator Tutorial.

The service health status is displayed in Customer Service Management as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity of alert (Event Management)</th>
<th>Service health status on Account and Case forms (Customer Service Management)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Critical: Resource is either not functional or critical problems are imminent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major</td>
<td>Major: Major functionality is severely impaired or performance has degraded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Severity of alert (Event Management) vs. Service health status on Account and Case forms (Customer Service Management)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity of alert (Event Management)</th>
<th>Service health status on Account and Case forms (Customer Service Management)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Minor: Partial, non-critical loss of functionality or performance degradation occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Warning: Attention is required, even though the resource is still functional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info</td>
<td>Normal: No severity. An alert is created. The resource is still functional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty/Null</td>
<td>Not Available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information about alert severity, see Lesson 1 of the *Event Management Operator Tutorial*.

### Roles

As a system administrator, configure form views to add the **Service Context**, **Health Status**, and **Health Status Last Updated** fields to the relevant forms.

As a customer service agent, view the service health status of install base items on the Account or Case form.

### Activation information

This feature requires the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_itom).

### Machine learning solutions for Customer Service Management

Machine learning in Customer Service Management helps with case creation, assignment, and resolution.

You can use predictive intelligence solution definitions to assist agents with a variety of tasks. Solution definitions predict one or more output fields based on a configured input field.

**Creating cases**

Use solution definitions to predict the category, priority, and assignment for customer service cases based on the information entered in the short description.

**Grouping cases into topics**

Use clustering solution definitions to cluster similar cases into topics based on the information entered in the short description.

**Routing and assigning cases**

Use solution definitions to predict the assignment group for customer service cases based on the information entered in the short description.

**Recommending similar cases**

Use solution definitions to recommend similar cases based on the information entered in the short description. These recommendations can help agents with case investigation and resolution.

**Recommending similar knowledge articles**
Use solution definitions to recommend similar knowledge articles by comparing knowledge article text to the case short description.

**Detecting major issues**

Use solution definitions to identify similarities across open cases that can proactively detect major issues.

**Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions**

Use your instance records to build Customer Service Management-specific solutions.

**Solution definitions**

These solution definitions are available as templates on instances where both Predictive Intelligence and Customer Service Management are active. Create your own solution definition records to customize the behavior.

**Solution Definitions for Customer Service Management**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solution Definition</th>
<th>Solution Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM Case Assignment</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>Predicts the <strong>Assignment group</strong> field from the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Case Categorization</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>Predicts the <strong>Category</strong> field from the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Case Prioritization</td>
<td>Classification</td>
<td>Predicts the <strong>Priority</strong> field from the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grouping of Cases into Topics</td>
<td>Clustering</td>
<td>Clusters similar cases into topics based on the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Similar Cases</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Recommends similar cases based on the <strong>Short description</strong> that can help customer service agents with case investigation and resolution processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Open Cases</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Recommends similar open cases based on the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Resolved Cases</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Recommends similar resolved cases based on the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major Issue Detector</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Provides recommendations for major issues based on the <strong>Short description</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Recommends one or more major cases, if available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Otherwise, recommends similar cases that are not linked as child cases to a major case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar Knowledge Articles</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Recommends similar knowledge articles by comparing the <strong>Text, Short description</strong>, and <strong>Description</strong> fields of knowledge articles to the <strong>Short description</strong> of the customer service case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution Definition</td>
<td>Solution Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similar Knowledge Articles All</td>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>Recommends similar knowledge articles by comparing the fields in the Knowledge View database view [sn_customerservice_knowledge_view] to the Short description of the customer service case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This solution definition is used in the Auto-Responder feature. For more information, see <em>Train the similarity solution for finding Auto-Responder notification content.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Business rules for classification solutions

These business rules apply only to the CSM Case Assignment, CSM Case Categorization, and CSM Case Prioritization solution definitions and are available only on instances where both Predictive Intelligence and Customer Service Management are active. Create your own business rules on the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table to customize prediction and reporting behaviors.

#### Business rules for Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Case Based Prediction</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Generates prediction results from the active Customer Service Management solutions. Runs when a case record is inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Prediction Results</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Updates the solution precision and coverage statistics. Runs when a case record is closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Upgrade Information

If your instance is running on the Kingston release and you are upgrading to the Paris release:

- Use the Default Case Based Prediction business rule template to create a new business rule. This rule includes a Solution variable that gets all active solutions retrieved by the findActiveSolution(solutionName) method.
- In a global domain environment, use the solutionNames array variable which requires that you explicitly provide the solutions that are called by the business rule.
- In a domain-separated environment, such as an MSP environment, refer to the commented code in the business rule template for easy customization.
- The business rule template calls the applyPredictionForSolution() method to predict regardless of any changes to the default value.

### Maintaining prediction accuracy

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
You can manage prediction drift by retraining, modifying, or creating new solutions to reflect changes in your business conditions. Test and modify your business rule over time to ensure it works as desired across multiple consumption points and user Personas.

**Predictive Intelligence for case management**

Assist agents with case creation by requiring a minimum of information, such as the short description, and predicting values for the category, priority, and assignment group.

From either Agent Workspace or the platform interface, agents can use this feature when creating cases by providing the short description. Based on the information entered in the **Short description** field, the **Predictive Intelligence** feature predicts the category, priority, and assignment group, and routes the case to the correct queue.

**Plugin**

The Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml) provides Predictive Intelligence capabilities for Customer Service Management. This plugin enables customers to leverage machine learning algorithms for searching related cases in CSM. This plugin requires:

- Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)
- Predictive Intelligence for Contextual Search (com.snc.contextual_search_ml)

The Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin is activated automatically for new Orlando customers. Existing customers upgrading to the Orlando release must manually activate this plugin.

**Solution definitions**

Predictive Intelligence includes the following solution definitions for case management:

- CSM Case Categorization
- CSM Case Assignment
- CSM Case Prioritization

A solution definition predicts one or more output fields based on a configured input field. At least one solution definition must be active to use Predictive Intelligence with Customer Service Management.

For more information, see [Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions](#).

**Business rules**

Predictive Intelligence also includes business rules for Customer Service Management:

- Default Case Based Prediction
- Update Prediction Results

For more information, see [Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions](#).

**Extension points**

The Predictive Intelligence feature for Customer Service Management includes the **CSMPredictionService** extension point. This extension point contains a method that returns the following information:

- The list of solution definitions that are used to predict field values during case creation.
- The treatment of the predicted fields based on the values of the input fields.
The system administrator can use this extension point to customize the solution definitions.

**Configure Predictive Intelligence for case management**
Activate the Predictive Intelligence plugin and enable the related system property and client script to use Predictive Intelligence with Customer Service Management.

Role required: admin

1. Activate the Predictive Intelligence plugin (com.glide.platform_ml).
2. Enable the **Enable/Disable the prediction for case** property (sn_customerservice.case.mlpredictor.enable).
   a) Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Properties.
   b) Enable the **Enable/Disable the prediction for case** check box.
   c) Click **Save**.
3. Enable the **Predict Case Values** client script.
   a) Navigate to System Definition > Client Scripts.
   b) Click **Predict Case Values** in the Client Scripts list.
   c) Enable the **Active** check box.
   d) Click **Update**.

**Use Predictive Intelligence for case management**
Agents can use Predictive Intelligence to predict values for configured fields when creating a customer service case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager or admin

The predicts values pre feature predicts values for the configured fields based on the short description when you create a case. If you update the case, the values for these fields are not predicted again.

1. Create a case.
2. Enter information in the **Short description** field and then tab to the next field.
   Based on this information, the system predicts the values for the **Priority**, **Assignment group**, and **Category** fields.

   **Note:** If the system cannot predict values based on the short description, these fields remain blank.

3. Optional: Change the values in the predicted fields if needed or enter values for fields where Predictive Intelligence has skipped prediction.
   The system does not overwrite user-entered values for the predicted fields.

**Update cases with missing field predictions**
View the list of open cases for which the prediction of category, priority, or assignment group was skipped by the Predictive Intelligence feature.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager or admin

In the event that Predictive Intelligence cannot predict one or more case attributes for a case, customer service agents and administrators can update this information after a case is created. For example, the short description might not include enough detail to make a prediction.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Cases > Cases Skipped by Predictive Intelligence.
2. Select a case from the list.
3. Provide the missing information and click **Update**.
Trending case topics

Resolve cases more efficiently and proactively using Predictive Intelligence to identify clusters of cases with similar issues and pinpoint factors that drive up case volume. Each cluster of cases represents a trending case topic.

Using trending case topics has the following benefits:

• Increase manager productivity: Quickly identify clusters of cases that point to similar underlying issues and act to resolve them.
• Improve customer experience: Proactively resolve issues by analyzing patterns in customer service data.
• Enhance operational excellence: Reduce the backlog of open cases by resolving similar cases at once.

System administrators train solution definitions to cluster similar cases and identify similar major cases for the clustering.

Major issue managers use trending case topic lists to analyze the backlog of cases. Using the lists, they can quickly identify any existing major cases that the backlog could be linked to or create a new major case.

Activation information

The trending case topics feature requires the Predictive Intelligence for CSM (com.snc.csm_ml) plugin and the Major Issue Management (com.sn_majorissue_mgt) plugin.

Similar case recommendations

The similar case recommendation feature enables customer service agents to easily find similar cases that can provide helpful information about a current case. This feature can also provide recommendations about cases that may be related to major issues.

The similar case recommendation feature uses the following components:

Additional search resources for contextual search

Additional search resources are provided for contextual search. These additional resources enable customer service agents to search open or resolved cases for information related to the current case.

Predictive Intelligence similarity solution definitions

Several of the additional search resources have an associated Machine Learning (ML) similarity solution definition. These additional resources perform a contextual search based on the case short description and return a list of similar records.

Predictive Intelligence in Agent Workspace

Predictive Intelligence can provide agents with a list of cases that are similar to the current case. These similar cases may provide helpful details or resolution information for the current case. Predictive Intelligence can also provide recommendations about potential major issues and major cases.

With the similar case/recommendation feature, customer service agents can:

• Find cases that are similar to the current case.
• Copy resolution notes and codes from resolved cases to the current case.
• Link the current case to a similar case.
• View a list of open cases similar to the current case and submit the current case as a major case candidate.
• View one or more similar major cases and link the current case as a child to a major case.

Major issue managers can search for cases that are similar to a major case and add them as child cases.
Using the feature in Agent Workspace and in the platform interface

With Agent Workspace, agents can:

• Perform a search in Predictive Intelligence using the additional search resources.
• Create a link from the current case to a selected case in the search results.
• Copy resolution information from a selected case to the current case. This includes the resolution code and the resolution notes (the agent must then save the case).
• View a list of similar cases that do not include major cases. This is a way to see that the current case might be a major case candidate.
• View a list of similar cases that include one or more major cases. The major cases are displayed first in the list of results. Agents can use an available action to add the current case as a child of a major case.

With the platform interface, agents can:

• Perform a search in the Related Search Results section on the Case form using the additional search resources. Agents can select these additional resources from a list by the Related Search field.
• Create a link from the current case to a selected case in the search results.

Plugins

The configuration for the similar case/recommendation feature is included with the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice).

The similar case/recommendation feature has a dependency on the Contextual Search plugin (com.snc.contextual_search). Activate the Contextual Search plugin to use contextual search and the additional search resources.

To use similar case/recommendation with the following features, activate the associated plugins:

• Major Issue Management – activate the Major Issue Management plugin (com.sn_majorissue_mgt)
• Predictive Intelligence – activate the Predictive Intelligence plugin (com.glide.platform_ml)
• Problem Management – activate the Problem Management Best Practice – Madrid – State Model (com.snc.best_practice.problem.madrid.state_model)

Additional search resources

The similar case recommendation feature uses additional search resources, which are configured using the Contextual Search application.

Navigate to Contextual Search > Additional Resources to view the Search Resources (Additional Resources view) list. Two types of additional search resources are available: Table and Predictive Intelligence Similarity.

Table resources

Additional search resources of the type Table are based on a selected table and have specific conditions that must be met for a record to be included in the search results.

The following Table additional search resources are included with the Customer Service plugin:

• Open Cases
• Resolved Cases
• Open Major Issues

The following Table additional search resources are included with the Problem Management Best Practice - Madrid - State Model plugin:
- Open Problems
- Resolved Problems

**Table type additional search resources**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Resource</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Cases</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of open cases created in the last three months that are not major cases or child cases of a major case. Actions available: • <strong>Link to Case</strong>: the current case becomes a child of the case selected from the search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved Cases</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of cases created in the last six months that have a state of resolved or closed and the resolution code is one of the following: • Solved - Fixed by support/Guidance provided • Fixed by closing related PRB • Workaround provided based on open PRB Actions available: • <strong>Link to Case</strong>: the current case becomes a child of the case selected from the search results. • <strong>Copy Resolution Information</strong>: copies the resolution notes and resolution code from the selected case to the current case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Major Issues</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of open major cases. Actions available: • <strong>Link to Case</strong>: the current case becomes a child of the case selected from the search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Problems</td>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Returns a list of open problems. Actions available: • <strong>Link to Case</strong>: adds the selected record as the Problem reference on the current case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved Problems</td>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Returns a list of problems that have a state of Resolved or Closed. Actions available: • <strong>Link to Case</strong>: adds the selected record as the Problem reference on the current case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Predictive Intelligence Similarity resources

Additional search resources of the type Predictive Intelligence Similarity are associated with a Machine Learning (ML) similarity solution definition. Search resources of this type require the Predictive Intelligence plugin (com.glide.platform_ml). The resources listed in the following table are included with the Predictive Intelligence plugin.

In addition to the associated similarity solution definition, Predictive Intelligence Similarity resources can have configured properties. These properties identify conditions that must be met for cases to be included in the search results.

Predictive Intelligence Similarity type additional search resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Resource</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Resolved Cases</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of resolved similar cases created in the last six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Associated with the Recommended Resolved Cases similarity solution definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Open Cases</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of open similar cases created in the last six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Associated with the Recommended Open Cases similarity solution definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Similar Cases</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Returns a list of all similar cases created in the last six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Associated with the All Similar Cases similarity solution definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Major case agent assist recommendations

The Major Case agent assist recommendations is used for recommending major cases.

The agent assist provides a recommendation for each of the two major case scenarios:

- Major case found: returns a list with one or more major cases created in the time-frame indicated in the solution definition that are similar to the current case. Cases are listed by similarity score. The default time-frame is set to the start of yesterday.
- No major case found: returns a recommendation based on the number of cases created in the time-frame indicated in the solution definition that are similar to the current case (does not include any major cases). The default time-frame is set to the start of yesterday.

To configure the time-frame for the solution definition threshold, refer to Update your similarity score threshold.

If the Major Case agent assist recommendations find one or more major cases similar to the current case, the Predictive Intelligence tab displays these cases ranked by similarity score. The case with the highest score is highlighted with a white box and the title Major Case and includes a user action to link the current case to the major case.
If the Major Case agent assist recommendations find cases similar to the current case, but no major cases, the Predictive Intelligence tab displays a recommendation highlighted with a blue box. It includes the option to propose the current case as a major case candidate.
The Major Case agent assist recommendations:

- Uses the Major Case agent assist recommendations ML solution definition.
- Includes some properties that provide customers with customization options, such as the recommendation title and message that appears in the Predictive Intelligence tab.
- Includes the Potential Major Case trend definition.

This definition sets the threshold for:

- Finding the number of distinct accounts that cases need to belong to for a major issue recommendation. The default value is 3.
- The number of similar cases that need to be returned by the solution definition for a major issue recommendation using a script. The default value is 10.

**Similarity solution definitions**

The similar case recommendation feature uses several Predictive Intelligence solution definitions for similarity models.
Navigate to **Predictive Intelligence > Similarity > Solution Definitions**. The following solution definitions are provided with the similar case/recommendation feature.

- All Similar Cases (ml_sn_global_all_similar_cases)
- Recommended Resolved Cases (ml_sn_global_recommended_resolved_cases)
- Recommended Open Cases (ml_sn_global_recommended_open_cases)
- Major Issue Detector (ml_sn_global_major_issue_detector)

Several of the additional contextual search resources used by the similar case/recommendation feature are associated with these solution definitions. Agents can select these search resources and access the cases returned by these similarity solution definitions.

**Similar case user actions**
Customer service agents and major issue managers can use the similar case recommendation feature to link cases, copy resolution information, propose major case candidates, and add cases to existing major cases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>UI Action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent can link the current case to a similar case</td>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> the Predictive Intelligence tab shows a list of similar cases ordered by the similarity score.</td>
<td><strong>UI Action:</strong> Agent Workspace: click the More UI Actions menu and select <strong>Link to Case</strong>. Platform: click the desired case in the search results list, then click <strong>Link to Case</strong>.</td>
<td>The current case is linked as a child of the similar case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent can copy resolution information from a resolved case to the current case</td>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> the Predictive Intelligence tab shows a list of resolved similar cases ordered by the similarity score.</td>
<td><strong>UI Action:</strong> Agent Workspace: click the More UI Actions menu and select <strong>Copy Resolution</strong>.</td>
<td>Copies the resolution code and resolution notes from the similar case to the current case. <strong>Note:</strong> Be sure to save the current case record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent can propose a major case candidate</td>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> the Predictive Intelligence tab shows a major issue recommendation with the following message: “We noticed that (x) similar cases have been created for (y) different accounts in the last (z) hours. Propose this as a major issue?”</td>
<td><strong>UI Action:</strong> Agent Workspace: click the <strong>Propose Major Case</strong> link.</td>
<td>The current case is proposed as a major issue. <strong>Note:</strong> The Major Issue Detector similarity solution definition must be active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Action</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>UI Action</td>
<td>Result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major issue manager can associate the current case to a major case</td>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace</strong>: the Predictive Intelligence tab lists one or more major cases similar to the current case, ranked by similarity score.</td>
<td>Agent Workspace: click the More UI Actions menu and select <strong>Link to this major issue</strong>.</td>
<td>The current case is added as a child to the major case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The Major Issue Detector similarity solution definition must be active.

**CSM Agent Workspace**

Customer service agents can use CSM Agent Workspace to interact with customers, respond to inquiries, and resolve issues.

CSM Agent Workspace is a configurable service desk application that is based on *Agent Workspace*. This application puts all the tools in one place that agents need to assist customers.

The intuitive interface supports customer service agents that work in different types of environments including:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chat agents</th>
<th>Handle customer chat requests.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone agents</td>
<td>Handle customer phone inquiries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case agents</td>
<td>Handle cases that are created from the Customer or Consumer Portals or from inbound emails.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key features**

**Single-pane view**

See all details that are related to a case in one place.
**Integrated communication channels**

Communicate in real time with customers by chat or phone in the same interface.
Agent assistance

Resolve cases faster with AI-assisted recommendations.
Get started

Select a tile to get started.

---

CSM Agent Workspace interface

Get an overview of CSM Agent Workspace and how it works.

Features

Manage multiple cases, accounts, and customers using these CSM Agent Workspace features.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Agent Workspace feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Multi-tab interface</td>
<td>Use tabs to easily navigate between multiple open records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Case records open in top-level tabs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Associated records, such as accounts and contacts, open in sub-tabs below the Case tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Form header</td>
<td>Configurable fields in the form header give you a quick summary of case, account, and contact information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>UI actions</td>
<td>Use these buttons to perform actions such as creating a case or requesting information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ribbon</td>
<td>Configurable ribbon components display a contact or consumer summary, a timeline, and active SLAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Custom components</td>
<td>Create your own components and add them to the workspace. This example includes a custom component called Customer Insights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Related lists</td>
<td>Click a tab to see the related information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Form fields</td>
<td>The Details tab displays the form fields. For the Case form, the default layout displays case details side-by-side with the activity stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Activity stream</td>
<td>The activity stream displays a chronological record of case activities. For the Case form, the activity stream occupies a central location in the default layout, making it easy for agents to scroll through the case history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Agent Assist</td>
<td>Search for information across multiple sources such as resolved cases, knowledge bases, and community sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With Predictive Intelligence, agents can also view similar cases and recommendations about major issues and major cases. For more information, see Similar case/recommendation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CSM Agent Workspace landing pages**

Landing pages provide customer service agents with an overview of their new, assigned, and high priority cases plus the cases assigned to their groups. Landing pages can also include analytics. Customer service agents can use these pages to quickly scan and access cases.

The **CSM Landing Page** is available for CSM Agent Workspace. This landing page includes components that display case information, plus visualizations that further break down the component data. Each visualization is connected to a data source. For example, the **My High Priority Cases** component includes visualizations for P1 and escalated cases. This landing page does not require a Performance Analytics license.

To add Performance Analytics information to the **CSM Landing Page** landing page, activate the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service Management - Advanced plugin (com.snc.pa.customer_service_advanced). This plugin adds a section for **My Organization's Performance**, which includes analytics for **CSAT** and **New vs Closed Cases**.
CSM Landing page (PA version)
Configuring landing pages

With the CSM Agent Workspace administrator role (workspace_admin) or the admin role, you can create landing pages for different agents and teams:

- Clone the existing CSM Landing Page.

  **Note:** The application scope must be set to CSM Workspace. The Clone Page action is not available in the Global scope.

- Add or edit containers in the page.
- Add or edit visualizations for each container.
- Edit the layout of a page or container.

The following types of visualizations are available:

- Reports
  - Single score
  - Trend by
  - List

- Performance Analytics
  - Single score
  - Time series

Multiple landing pages

You can create multiple landing pages. However, only a single landing page is displayed for a user. The landing page that is displayed for a user depends on the following settings:

- The setting of the **Active** field. This field must be set to true for a landing page to be displayed.
- The **Order** of the landing page. Pages with a lower order value take precedence over pages with a higher order value.
- If permissions are defined, users can see a landing page if they have the required role or are a member of the required assignment group. Multiple roles and assignment group conditions are treated as OR conditions.

Using landing pages

From the CSM Landing Page, customer service agents can:

- View the case information presented in each component.
- Drill into each component to see the case list behind the single score.
- Navigate to individual records from the case lists.

From the CSM Landing Page (PA version), which includes analytics, agents can also:

- View a single score component.
- View a time series component.

  **Note:** There are no interactions for a time series component.
AWA for CSM

Use the ServiceNow® Advanced Work Assignment (AWA) for Customer Service Management feature to automatically assign work items to agents based on their availability, capacity, and skills. AWA for CSM pushes work to qualified agents using work item queues, routing conditions, and assignment criteria that you define. Agents see their assignments in their Agent Workspace inbox.

Plugins

The Advanced Work Assignment for CSM is available with the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice). To use the chat feature with Advanced Work Assignment for CSM, you must also activate the Agent Chat plugin (com.glide.interaction.awa).

For more information, see *Activate related plugins for Advanced Work Assignment.*

Inbox layouts

Three chat inbox layouts are included with the Chat service channel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chat Layout</th>
<th>Included Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Chat Layout</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Chat Layout</td>
<td>Short description, Contact, Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Chat Layout</td>
<td>Short description, Consumer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two case inbox layouts are included with the Case service channel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case Layout</th>
<th>Included Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Case Layout</td>
<td>Short description, Contact, Account, Priority, Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Case Layout</td>
<td>Short description, Consumer, Priority, Category</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variable work item sizing

Organizations may like to size cases based on the complexity of the case, time and effort required to complete work. This helps in estimating agent utilization accurately. Advance work assignment currently treats every case as one unit of work. However, sometimes, certain cases may require more work than others. These cases may account for a greater share of an agent’s capacity. Work item sizing allows to size the case differently based on the case attributes. For more information, see *Capacity and Utilization.*

Agent affinity

Agent Affinity is an Advanced Work Assignment enhancement that enables you to streamline the routing of work items. Advanced Work Assignment automatically assigns work items based on historical, task-based, or account team affinity. For more information about agent affinity, see *Using Agent Affinity.*
Customer Central

Customer Central provides customer service agents with all the information about the customer in one central place. It enables them to quickly zoom in on the customer issue and provide efficient and supportive service to their customers.

When a customer calls in to or initiates a chat with support, it is routed to a customer service agent, who accepts the call or chat. An interaction record is created and on this record, customer service agents can view customer central in the form of two views: Customer Information and Customer Activity.

Customer Information view

The Customer Information view displays key information about the customer and a view of all recent customer touch points with the service organization. It contains a number of predefined lists, records, reports, and report groups that are highly configurable, or you can create your own. You can also configure the number of days to display the data for.
Customer Activity view

The Customer Activity view displays all the recent customer touch points with the service organization in the form of an activity feed. On the left hand side, there are facets, or categories of information. The data in the activity feed is displayed based on the facet you select. It contains a number of predefined facets and activities that are highly configurable, or you can create your own. You can also configure the number of days to display the data for.

Form ribbon and components

The form ribbon provides agents with a quick overview of the case details. The form ribbon includes components that display relevant information about the case. These components can include a contact or consumer summary, a timeline, and SLA details.

In addition to viewing case information, agents can use links in the ribbon components to place phone calls or create email messages. Agents can also show or hide the ribbon as needed.

With the workspace administrator role (workspace_admin), you can configure the ribbon layout. This includes the components to display in the ribbon, the order in which the components appear, and the component width. You can also configure display attributes for some of the components.
Customer Service Management ribbon components

For Customer Service Management, you can configure the ribbon for the Case form to include one or more of the available ribbon components:

- Customer 360
- Timeline
- Active SLAs

For more information about ribbon configuration, see `Configure Agent Workspace ribbon settings`.

For some of the components, you can also configure attributes, such as the fields to include in the Customer 360 component. For more information about configuring component attributes, see `Configure ribbon component attributes`.

Customer 360 ribbon component

The Customer 360 component displays customer information such as the contact or consumer name, email address, and phone numbers.

You can configure the Customer 360 component to display the following fields:

- Header:
  - For B2B customers: Displays either the Primary Contact or Contact.
  - For B2C customers: Displays the Consumer.
  - For internal contacts with the sn_customerservice.proxy_contact role: Displays the Internal contact.

  **Note:** Requires the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts) plugin.

- Photo
- Name
- Title
- Account (B2B customers)
- Phone numbers
  - For contacts: Mobile phone and Business phone
• For consumers: **Mobile phone** and **Home phone**

• Email address

**Note:** For B2B customers, the Customer 360 component can also include colored tags that indicate Very Important Person (VIP) accounts and escalated accounts.

From the Customer 360 ribbon component, agents can perform the following actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Email a contact or consumer   | Agents click the address in the **Email** field to send an email to the contact or consumer. This action opens a new email in the email editor with the following fields auto-populated:  
  • **To:** the contact or consumer email address  
  • **Subject:** the case number and short description  |
| Call a contact or consumer    | If phone integration is enabled, agents click a number in one of the phone number fields to call the contact or consumer. The OpenFrame window displays information about the contact or consumer name and the account. |
| View the account record       | Agents click the **Account** link to open the account record.                                                                                                                                                  |

**Timeline ribbon component**

The timeline component displays a chronological summary of case activities, including case state changes and interactions between the fulfiller (typically the agent) and the requester (typically the customer). It also shows how much time that the fulfiller and requester spent on the case.

**Note:** The workspace administrator can select the fulfiller role when configuring the *timeline component attributes*.

The timeline uses icons to display events and colors to show ranges of time, such as when the case is with the agent or the customer. Agents can point to event icons in the timeline to display tooltips with additional information.
**Note:** The timeline component uses the resolution shaper configuration for the selected entity table, for example, the Case table.

The timeline includes the following features:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timeline feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global start and end dates</td>
<td>The global start date is the date that the case was created. The global end date is the date that the case was closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Start and end dates               | The start and end dates that identify a specific window of time on the timeline. The default window is one week.  
  - The default end date is the current date.  
  - The default start date is the current date minus 7 days. |
| Header                            | A configurable title for the timeline. With the system administrator role, you can add a title in the **Name** field on the Ribbon Setting form. See *Configure ribbon components* for more information. |
| Legend                            | Click **Show Details** to display event and range summary information.        |

- **Events**
  - 🗓️ Agent Action: 5
  - 🗓️ Customer Action: 3
  - ✔️ Case Closed: 1

- **Ranges**
  - ☐ New: 2 hours
  - ☐ Time With Agent: 11 hours
  - ☐ Time With Customer: 2 days

- **Events**
  Events are represented on the timeline using icons. Each type of event has a corresponding unique icon. The time that an event occurred is also captured so that events are displayed on the timeline in chronological order.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timeline feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grouped events</td>
<td>Events that occur close together can be grouped and represented using a group icon. When events are grouped, the timeline displays a badge icon with the number of events in the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event summaries</td>
<td>Event summaries appear in the timeline legend. Each summary lists the event and the number of times it occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>An event summary includes occurrences of the event over the life of the object visualized on the timeline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time ranges</td>
<td>Time ranges are represented on the timeline using colors. Each range has a corresponding unique color and a start and end time. The following default ranges include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Blue: with the agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Green: with the customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time range summaries</td>
<td>Time range summaries appear in the timeline legend. Each summary lists the range, the corresponding color, and the total duration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>A range summary includes occurrences of the range over the life of the object visualized on the timeline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tooltips</td>
<td>Point to event icons to display additional information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoom</td>
<td>Zoom in on the timeline to see more details in a smaller time window or zoom out to see more events in a larger time window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the zoom in or zoom out icons on the timeline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the zoom in and zoom out features on the keyboard (<strong>Ctrl</strong> + + and <strong>Ctrl</strong> + -).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the zoom in and zoom out features on the cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pan</td>
<td>Pan left and right to view newer or older events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pan left in the timeline to view older events by clicking the left caret icon (<strong>&lt;</strong>). Panning to the left stops when the timeline reaches the specified global start date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pan right in the timeline to view newer events by clicking the right caret icon (<strong>&gt;</strong>). Panning to the right stops when the timeline reaches the specified global end date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset the timeline</td>
<td>Click <strong>Now</strong> to reset the timeline to the default view after panning or zooming. The timeline resets using the time that the button was clicked as the end date and time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Timeline feature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Messages</th>
<th>The timeline displays messages for the following events:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• There is no data to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The timeline experiences a loading error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Active SLA component

The Active SLA component displays active SLAs for the case, including time remaining, the SLA state, and any breaches. If a case has multiple SLAs, the SLA with the most imminent deadline is shown first. Pointing to the SLA component displays left and right navigation arrows that agents can use to view the other SLAs.

### SLA ribbon component

Color coding within the component indicates the time remaining for the SLA:

- Green: 0–50%
- Yellow: 50–75%
- Orange: 75–99%
- Red: 100% or breached

### CSM Agent Workspace form features

CSM Agent Workspace form features include form headers, agent actions by form, related lists, account hierarchy, and special handling notes.

### Form headers

Form headers provide a quick glance of case, account, or contact information. Form headers include a primary header and several secondary or subheaders.
CSM Agent Workspace Case form header

The workspace administrator can configure the information included in the header for the Case, Account, and Contact forms. For more information, see *Configure the form header for Agent Workspace*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Primary Header</th>
<th>Secondary Headers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Case     | Short description | • Account and contact (B2B)  
|          |                | • Consumer (B2C)  
|          |                | • Priority  
|          |                | • State  |
| Account  | Account         | Primary contact                        |
| Contact  | Contact         | Account                                |

Account hierarchy

From the Account form, customer service agents can click the open hierarchy icon ( ) in the Name field to see the parent-child account relationships in the Account Hierarchy pop-up window. The account hierarchy is available for accounts that have a parent or child account.
The account hierarchy uses a tree structure to show the parent, child, and sibling accounts. The parent view displays the current account, the parent account (if applicable), and any child or sibling accounts. The full view displays the entire structure of the organization from the root account. The current account is highlighted in the account structure.

Customer service agents can:

- Expand and collapse the tree structure.
- Switch between the parent view and the full view of the account hierarchy.
- Click an account to open the Account form in a sub tab.

For information about creating an account hierarchy, see Account hierarchy.

**Special handling notes**

Special handling notes bring important information about individual records to the attention of the customer service agent. If special handling notes are available for a record, these notes are displayed in a pop-up window when the record is opened in CSM Agent Workspace.
Notes are also available in the Special Handling Notes related list. Agents can see a priority, short description, and message for each note. Notes are ordered by priority and use different styles based on priority and type:

- Priority 1 — red
- Priority 2 — yellow
- Priority 3 — green
- Priority 4 — blue

Agents can:

- Dismiss individual notes. When all notes are dismissed, the pop-up window closes.
- Close the window.

In the Special Handling Notes module on the platform:

- Users with the sn_shn.admin role can configure special handling notes and specify properties.
- Users with the sn_shn.admin or sn_customerservice_manager roles can create special handling notes.
## Agent actions by form

Actions available to customer service agents appear in the form header as buttons or menu items. CSM Agent Workspace includes the following actions for customer service agents.

**Note:** Actions must be enabled for each form in Agent Workspace by the workspace administrator. For more information, see *Enable UI actions for Agent Workspace.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Interaction | • Verify Contact  
• Verify Consumer  
• Create a case  
• Create a consumer |
| Case   | • Assign to me  
• Accept  
• Update or Save  
• Request Info  
• Propose Solution  
• Propose Major Case  
• Escalate Case: available to agents with the sn_customerservice.escalation_requester role  
• De-escalate Case: available to agents with the sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester role  
• Create Incident: Requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm), available to agents with the itil role  
• Create Normal Change: Requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm), available to agents with the itil role  
• Create Problem: Requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm), available to agents with the itil role  
• Create Request: Requires the Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request), available to agents with the itil role  
• Create Knowledge: This UI action requires the following actions:  
  • Activate the Knowledge Management Advanced Installer plugin (com.snc.knowledge_advanced.installer)  
  • Set the sn_customerservice.enable_knowledge_kcs property to true  
  • Set the KCS Article template to true (navigate to Knowledge > Administration > Article Templates)  
  • Report Knowledge Gap  
  • Close Case, including:  
    • Select a resolution code.  
    • Enable a check box to automatically copy the resolution notes to the additional comments. |
| Account | • Update account information  
• Account Hierarchy  
• Create Case |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>• Update contact information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td>• Update consumer information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create a case for the consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>• Update asset information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create a case for the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Model</td>
<td>• Create a case for the product model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>• Create a case for the order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Contract</td>
<td>• Create a case for the account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entitlement</td>
<td>• Create a case for the account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related lists**

The Interaction form includes the following related lists in CSM Agent Workspace. Clicking a record in a related list opens that record in a sub tab.

- Details
- Related Tasks: includes the cases and case tasks that have been created for this interaction.
- Recent Interactions: includes interactions that have been created for the current contact or consumer.
- Open Cases: includes open cases that have been created for the current contact or consumer.

The Case form includes the following related lists in CSM Agent Workspace. Clicking a record in a related list opens that record in a sub tab.

- Details
- SLAs
- Tasks
- Interactions: stores the channel and direction of each interaction associated with the case, either inbound or outbound. This related list also appears on the Account, Contact, and Consumer entity records.
- Emails
- Task Skills
- Attached Knowledge
- Escalations
- Special Handling Notes List
- Requests
- Appointments
- Social Logs
- Blocked by
Agent Assist

Agent Assist is available on the Interaction form in CSM Agent Workspace. Users with the customer service agent role (sn_customerservice_agent) can use Agent Assist to search for information from an interaction. By default, the available search sources include Knowledge articles, Service Catalog, and Now Community blogs and posts.

For more information, see Set up Agent Assist.

Using lookup and verify

The lookup and verify feature enables customer service agents to quickly look up contacts or consumers using information such as the name, phone number, or record number.

This feature simplifies the process of looking up and verifying contact or consumer information. Agents can use it as follows:

- If an interaction record is already populated with contact or consumer information from a chat or phone call, the agent can review the information and confirm that it is correct.
- If no customer or consumer information is available, the agent can search for this information, select and confirm the information, and populate the interaction record.

**Note:** If this information has already been verified, such as through a customer portal login or authentication by Virtual Agent or by an IVR, the Verified check box on the interaction record is enabled.

Agents can use the Lookup Contact and Lookup Consumer buttons on the interaction record to access the search window. Agents can perform a type-ahead search across multiple configurable fields such as name, phone number, email address, and record number. From the search results list, agents can select a result to display detailed information for the contact or consumer in a verification card. Once verified, the system adds the information to the interaction record and enables the Verified check box.

Plugins

The lookup and verify feature is included with the Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice) plugin. This plugin provides the configuration for contact and consumer lookup as well as Lookup Contact and Lookup Consumer UI actions that can be added to the interaction record.

**Note:** These actions are not enabled by default. The workspace admin can enable these actions as part of the lookup and verify feature configuration.

Contact and consumer configurations

Two lookup and verify configurations are provided with the feature, one for contacts and one for consumers. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Lookup and Verify > Configuration to access the Lookup and Verify Configurations list.

**Note:** To see the contact and consumer lookup and verify configurations, you must activate the CSM Lookup and Verify plugin (com.snc.sn_csm_lookup_verify).

For each configuration, the workspace administrator can:

- Enable the configuration and display the related UI action on the interaction record.
- Enter the minimum number of characters to start the type-ahead search.
- Enter the maximum number of search results returned.
- Select the primary and secondary fields to include in the search results.
• Select the fields to display on the verification card.
• View the lookup tables.

Note: Customers can contact ServiceNow to make changes to the search fields.

Verify Contact and Verify Consumer pop-up windows

Agents search for contact or consumer information using the Verify Contact or Verify Consumer pop-up windows on the Interaction form. The search field provides type ahead search that displays results in a list and narrows the results as more characters are entered. Selecting a result from the list displays more detailed information about the contact or consumer in a verification card.

The search feature searches multiple configured fields such as name, account, phone number, and record number.
• For phone numbers and record numbers, it uses an "exact match" search.
• For other fields, it uses a "starts with" search.

Verification cards

After selecting a search result, detailed information about the contact or consumer is displayed in a verification card. From this card, the customer service agent can review and confirm the information by clicking Verified.

Tables

The lookup and verify feature uses the following tables:
• Lookup and Verify Configurations (sn_lookup_verify_config)
• Lookup Tables (sn_lookup_verify_search_on_table)

Case action status in CSM Agent Workspace

In CSM Agent Workspace, customer service agents can use the case action status feature to easily identify cases that need attention.

Action Status column

This feature enables customer service agents to easily identify cases that need attention and quickly prioritize their work. Visual indicators in the Action Status column on the My Cases and My Open lists highlight case status:
• A blue indicator highlights cases that need attention, such as cases that have been updated by customers or internal users and are waiting for input or review.
• A red indicator highlights cases that are blocked, such as cases that have open related task records or are waiting for customer feedback. Blocked cases can have the following status:
  • Blocked by task
  • Blocked by customer
  • Blocked internally and by customer

In addition to the colored indicators, the Action Status column also displays a brief status message.
Blocked by related list

The case action status feature adds the Blocked by related list to the workspace view of the Case form. Blocking tasks for a case appear in this list. When the system adds a blocking task to a case, it also adds one of the following blocking reasons:

- Need information from the customer
- Need task resolution
- Need PRB workaround
- Other

**Note:** When a problem is associated with a case, the blocking reason is set to Needs task resolution. The agent can update this reason to Need PRB workaround if necessary.

When a blocking task is resolved:

- The Unblocked By field displays the user who performed the unblocking action.
- The Unblocked On field displays the date that the blocking task was resolved.
- The Needs Attention field for the case is enabled.

Notifications

Agents can receive notifications on their preferred channel when a blocking task for an assigned case is resolved. Agents can also receive notifications when the Needs Attention field for an assigned case is enabled.

**Note:** Notifications are not sent to the user who updated the record.

Users with the admin role can configure notification triggers by navigating to Agent Workspace > Notification Triggers > Case Action Status Trigger.

Third-party data integration for CSM

The third-party data integration feature enables you to retrieve data from third-party applications and display the data in Agent Workspace for CSM without having to store it in your ServiceNow instance.

Many enterprise customers use ServiceNow applications as part of their IT ecosystems. In these environments, ServiceNow applications coexist with other applications and exchange data through different types of integrations. For customer service agents who typically use a wide variety of applications, this can create a fragmented experience that impacts agent productivity and increases customer wait time.

A frequent integration takes place between ServiceNow and Salesforce applications. In this integration, customers use Salesforce to manage pre-sales activities and ServiceNow to manage post-sales activities. These post-sales activities represent service assurance.

To provide high quality service, agents using the Customer Service Management (CSM) application need a complete understanding of the customer's context, and this includes access to customer data maintained in other systems. A common example of this integration is enriching a CSM customer profile by providing a list of opportunities related to the customer's account. These opportunities are retrieved from Salesforce in real time and are presented in Agent Workspace for CSM.

Using the third-party data integration feature, data from third-party applications can be retrieved as needed. Agents can view the data in lists and forms. This feature uses remote tables to store the third-party data in memory on the application server. Remote tables are useful for data that changes frequently because the data is retrieved in real-time when a user accesses the data from the Now Platform.
Activating third-party data integration

The following plugins are required to implement third-party data integration:

- Remote Tables (com.glide.script.vtable): Adds the Remote Table Script Definition table (sys_script_vtable) and adds the Remote Table flag to the Tables (sys_db_object) table. Active on the base instance.
- OAuth 2.0 (com.snc.platform.security.oauth): Adds the OAuth-related tables and extension points needed to support OAuth 2.0 – JWT Bearer grant type. Active on the base instance.
- IntegrationHub (com.glide.hub.integrations): Provides the ability to build reusable integrations with third-party systems and call them from anywhere in the platform. IntegrationHub requires subscription and is available in several subscription packages. Different packages allow for different levels of automation and provide different subsets of predefined third-party integrations, or spokes. For more information, see Request IntegrationHub and IntegrationHub available spokes.
- Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)

Configuring third-party data integration

Users with the system administrator role can configure the necessary components to enable third-party data integration for Agent Workspace for CSM. At a high level, the configuration steps include:

- Setting up the OAuth 2.0 – JWT Bearer grant type, which provides the connection between the ServiceNow instance and the third-party application.
- Setting up aliases to manage connection information and credentials when integrating with external systems and providing alias reference to the IntegrationHub action.
- Creating a remote table to store the third-party data.
- Creating a remote table script definition that maps the data from the third-party application table to the remote table.
- Configuring ACLs for the remote table to provide user access to the third-party data.
- Configuring the lists and forms that display data from the remote table.

For more information, see Configure third-party data integration for CSM.

Using third-party data integration

Within Agent Workspace for CSM, agents can use this feature to:

- View read-only data from third-party applications in lists and forms.
- View data from multiple third-party applications in one browser tab.
- View data from third-party applications in pop-up windows, sub tabs, and related items using iframes.
- Open links to third-party application records from forms.

Domain separation

Remote table script definitions are domain separated. If users do not have access to the same domain as the remote table script definition record, they cannot access records from the remote table specified in the script definition. The data within the remote table is not domain separated.

For more information, see Domain separation and remote tables.
Related documentation

- Authentication and credentials
  - Set up OAuth provider with JWT Bearer grant type
  - Credentials and connection information
- IntegrationHub
- Flow Designer
- Retrieving external data using remote tables and scripts
- Salesforce spoke

Third-party data integration solution overview
A typical enterprise ecosystem includes enterprise resource planning (ERP), sales management, and service management systems. There are multiple options for implementing the integrations between these systems.

In this example, the ERP system manages customer data (for example, Accounts).

When a new account is acquired, it is created first in the ERP system and then account data is transferred to Salesforce and ServiceNow (1).

During this process, new accounts are created in Salesforce and ServiceNow. The ServiceNow account record is updated with the Salesforce account ID attribute that holds the reference to the Salesforce account record. The Salesforce account ID is later used to match account records between ServiceNow and Salesforce and also to retrieve opportunity data from Salesforce.

When an agent accesses an account in Agent Workspace for CSM, a list of related opportunities for this account is retrieved from Salesforce in real-time (2) and presented to the agent.

This example assumes that the flow (1) has been implemented and executed and that the ServiceNow account records contain valid Salesforce account IDs. This example also uses the following configuration:

- Connectivity between a ServiceNow and Salesforce.
Integration using IntegrationHub and remote tables.

Integration architecture

ServiceNow integrates with Salesforce through the OAuth 2.0 Bearer Token Flow.
Remote tables and IntegrationHub architecture

**Third-party data integration components**

These components require configuration by the system administrator to use third-party data integration with Agent Workspace for CSM.

**OAuth 2.0 – JWT Bearer grant type**

JWT Bearer is the OAuth 2.0 grant type supported for the third-party data integration feature. It allows server-to-server API interactions between the ServiceNow instance and external API providers without requiring any user intervention.

The third-party application admin is used as the subject claim of the JWT that the ServiceNow instance creates and passes to the third-party application instance. This is done to get the access token which is used to make the REST API call to fetch records from the third-party application table.
Credentials and connections

IntegrationHub takes advantage of aliases to manage connection information and credentials when integrating with external systems. Using an alias eliminates the need to configure multiple credentials and connection information profiles when using multiple environments. IntegrationHub only requires an alias, which then resolves to use the correct credentials and connection information during runtime.

For more information, see the following topics:

- Introduction to credentials, connections, and aliases
- Create connection attributes for IntegrationHub

Remote tables

The Tables (sys_db_object) table contains a record for each table in the database, including remote tables. For remote table records, the Remote Table flag is checked on the record form.

The columns in a remote table are mapped to the columns in a third-party application table from which the data is being pulled. The remote table script definition stores this information. Table definitions for remote tables reside on the Now Platform. The table rows, or external records, are stored in memory while a user views the data in a list or form.

For more information about remote tables, see Create a remote table.

When creating a remote table for use with IntegrationHub, pay special attention to the caching interval and choose an interval based on your workflow and the volatility of the third-party data. If the caching interval is too short, this can result in unnecessary connections to the third-party application. If the caching interval is too long, this can result in out-of-date third-party data being presented in Agent Workspace for CSM.

Remote table script definitions

Use a script definition to retrieve and cache data for a remote table by running the script against an external data source. Remote table script definitions store the following information:

- Name
- Active
- Table
- Script
- Cache TTL
- Domain
- Domain path

For more information about script definitions, see Create a script definition for a remote table.

Third-party data integration sample script

The remote table script can be designed to pull records from a third-party application. This script is called when a query to access data in the remote table is made.

In order to use a remote table with IntegrationHub, you need to identify the IntegrationHub spoke that works with the third-party application. The spoke consists of the Flow Designer actions that were created to bring various subsets of the data from that application.

For example, if you need to bring account information from the Salesforce application, you would use the Salesforce spoke and the Get All Accounts action. See below for an example of the remote table script that accesses this action.

```javascript
(function executeQuery(v_table, v_query) {
```
try {
  // prepare inputs for the spoke actions
  // Get All Accounts action does not have any inputs).
  var inputs = {};

  // call spoke action
  var outputs = sn_fd.FlowAPI.executeAction(
      "sn_salesforce_spok.get_all_accounts",
    inputs);

  // check if Action was completed successfully
  if (outputs.status != "Success") {
    throw new Error(outputs.errorMessage);
  }

  // extract payload from the action outputs
  var accounts = outputs.accounts.data;

  // map action output data to the remote table columns and Sys Id
  for (var i = 0; i < accounts.length; i++) {
    v_table.addRow({
      "u_sf_account_id": accounts[i].name,
      "u_sf_account_name": accounts[i].label,
      // assign remote table Sys Id to the primary key of the third-party
      // record
      "sys_id": accounts[i].name,
    });
  }

  // process errors
} catch (error) {
  gs.addErrorMessage("Error trying to retrieve Salesforce Accounts." +
      "Please contact System Administrator.");
  gs.addErrorMessage("System Error: " + error.message);
}
}(v_table, v_query);

Note: Not all IntegrationHub actions can be invoked from the remote table scripts. Specifically, Data Stream Actions cannot be called from the scripts. If the action you would like to use is a Data Stream Action, you might need to create your own action based on the REST step. An easy way to create an action is to copy an existing action and then modify it to accomplish your goal. You can find an example of custom spoke actions in this topic: Create Salesforce spoke actions to retrieve Opportunities for use in the remote table definition.

Configure third-party data integration for CSM
Configure the required components to enable the third-party data integration feature for Agent Workspace for CSM.
Role required: admin

1. Identify the third-party application.
   a) Verify that it has the corresponding IntegrationHub spoke and that it is activated on your instance.
   b) Follow the setup instructions specific to the spoke. For example, for the Salesforce spoke, follow the instructions in the Set up Salesforce spoke topic.

2. Identify the spoke action that retrieves the desired third-party data.
   You can find the list of available actions in the spoke documentation. If an action that performs the desired task does not exist, you can create your own action by copying an existing action and modifying it to suit your needs. You can find an example of the custom spoke actions in Create Salesforce spoke actions to retrieve Opportunities for use in the remote table definition.
3. Create the remote table on your ServiceNow instance to expose the data from the application through the GlideRecord interface. Then create the remote table script definition to map the data from the third-party table to the remote table.
   a) Configure error messages if the spoke action call results in an error. This error is picked up by the form, list, and field elements and is displayed for the end user when an error occurs. These error messages distinguish between cases where the response from the third-party application has no data and an error while fetching data from the third-party application.
   b) Configure ACLs on the remote table to provide users and roles with read access to the third-party data.
   c) Configure ACLs to revoke CREATE, WRITE, and DELETE access on the remote table for all users.

4. Configure the lists, forms, and fields that pull data from the remote table.
   Once the remote table is set up, you can access data using the GlideRecord interface.
   a) Use Agent Workspace components to embed third-party pages and reports in iframes as popups or related items.
   b) Configure UI actions on forms to create deep links to the records in the third-party application.

5. Perform some lightweight data synchronization prior to using the feature.
   For example, pull in account data from a third-party application using an import set. In the example provided, the Account (customer_account) table has an Account Id column, which is populated with the Id of the account in the third-party application instance. This column is used as the foreign key to pull opportunities for the corresponding account on the third-party application instance.

Reference Salesforce integration using remote tables
In this example, the Customer Account table is extended to include an associated Salesforce Account ID which, in turn, is used to retrieve Salesforce opportunities associated with this account. The remote table is used to hold the retrieved opportunity data.

Use the steps and the examples in the following topics to create a reference Salesforce integration using remote tables.

- Using the IntegrationHub Salesforce spoke.
- Using remote tables and the Salesforce spoke. Identify or create an IntegrationHub action that you can use to test the third-party data integration. Then use this action in the remote table definition.
- Using a related list to create the connection between the customer account and the Salesforce opportunities.

Using remote tables and the Salesforce spoke
Create Salesforce spoke actions that you can use to test the third-party data integration. Then use these actions in the remote table definition.

Using the IntegrationHub Salesforce spoke
Use the Salesforce spoke to integrate a Salesforce account with your ServiceNow instance.

Role required: admin

To configure the Salesforce spoke, follow the instructions in Set up Salesforce spoke.

Create Salesforce spoke actions to retrieve opportunities for use in the remote table definition
The Salesforce spoke provides actions to retrieve metadata of the opportunity record and create a new opportunity.

Other than Data Stream Actions, there is no action to get a set of the opportunity records based on a given search criteria. You need to create your own actions to accomplish the stated goal of the reference example. See Reference Salesforce integration using remote tables.
To create a new action, copy an existing action and modify it to suit your needs. For example, you can copy the **Get All Accounts** action and modify it to retrieve opportunity records.

For this example, you will create three new Salesforce spoke actions:

- Get All Opportunities
- Get Opportunities for Account Id
- Get Opportunity Details

Each action includes three steps:

1. A pre-processing script step that creates a query.
2. A REST step that executes the query.
3. A post-processing script step that evaluates the response from the query.

**Note:** You can test all actions from the Flow Designer before you attempt to connect them to the remote table.

**Get All Opportunities** custom action

The **Get All Opportunities** action retrieves opportunity records from the Salesforce application. This action is invoked when the user views the remote Opportunity table.

**Action inputs**

The **Get All Opportunities** action takes a single integer parameter that identifies the maximum number of records to be returned by the query. The REST-based actions cannot accommodate pagination and, for this reason, it is important to limit the number of records returned from the third-party application. It is not recommended to place more than 1,000 records in the remote table. The default number of records is 500.
Pre-processing step

The pre-processing script step takes the action input as its own.
The pre-processing script creates a SELECT query for all opportunities limited by the maximum number of records allowed. This query is based on the Salesforce Object Query Language (SOQL).

```
(function(execute(inputs, outputs)) {
    outputs.query = "query/?q=SELECT+Name,Id,AccountId,CloseDate,Amount," +
                    "StageName,Probability,Type+FROM+Opportunity";
    outputs.query = outputs.query + "+LIMIT+" + inputs.max_number_of_opportunity_records;

})(inputs, outputs);
```

You need to specify the fields from the opportunity records that you are interested in. This example uses the following fields: Name, Id, Account Id, Close Date, Amount, Stage Name, and Probability. To see the full list of available fields, use the **Get Opportunity Fields** action.

You can also control the ordering of the query search by adding the ORDERED BY keyword and value for ASC or DESC order direction. For example, you can add the following line to the script before the line specifying the LIMIT. It makes the query return first 500 records with the most recent Close Date.

```
outputs.query = outputs.query + "+ORDERED+BY+CloseDate+DESC";
```
The pre-processing output is a query.

REST step

The REST step is a standard REST step from the Salesforce spoke REST-based actions. You do not need to make any changes. Make sure that it points to the correct Connection Alias.
Post-processing step

The post-processing script step takes the action input and REST step output as its inputs.
The post-processing script checks the query response for errors, sets the error message if needed, extracts opportunity data from the response body, and creates an information message to indicate that not all data was retrieved from the Salesforce due to the number of records limitation.

```javascript
(function execute(inputs, outputs) {
    try{
        var response = JSON.parse(inputs.res_body);
    } catch(e) {
        outputs = errorHandler(inputs, outputs);
    }

    function createOutputJson(inputs, outputs) {
        try{
            outputs.records = { data: response.records };
            outputs.status = "Success";
            if ( outputs.records.data.length == inputs.max_number_of_opportunity_records ) {
                outputs.info_message = "Opportunity retrieve operation was " +
            }
        }
    }
```
"limited to" +
  inputs.max_number_of_opportunity_records +
  " records."
}

} catch(e) {
  outputs = errorHandler(inputs, outputs);
}

return outputs;
}

function errorHandler(inputs, outputs) {
  outputs.status = "Error";
  outputs.error_message = "Unknown Error. " +
    "Please check error log for more information";

  if(inputs.res_body.contains("message"))
    outputs.error_message = response[0].message;

  return outputs;
}

if(inputs.status_code == "200")
  outputs = createOutputJson(inputs, outputs);
else
  outputs = errorHandler(inputs, outputs);
}) (inputs, outputs);

The following are outputs of the post-processing step.
Action outputs

Action outputs consist of the query status, error and information messages, and opportunity records. See the above screenshot for the action outputs.

Get Opportunities for Account Id custom action

The Get Opportunities for Account Id action retrieves opportunity records for the specific Salesforce account. This action is invoked when the agent views a Salesforce opportunity available for the customer account based on the Salesforce account associated with it.

This action is very similar to the Get All Opportunities action.

Action inputs

In addition to the maximum number of records to be returned by the query, this action also takes a Salesforce Account Id as input to be used as a query parameter. The value of this parameter is provided by the relationship that links the customer account and the Salesforce opportunity through the associated Salesforce Account Id. For more information, see Create defined related lists.

The specific relationship needed for the reference example is also described in the Using related list to create the connection between Customer Account and Salesforce Opportunities topic.

The Salesforce Account Id action input parameter has no default value.
Pre-processing step

The pre-processing script step takes the action input as its own.
The Pre-Processing step script creates a SELECT query similar to the one created for the **Get All Opportunities** action with the addition of the check against the Salesforce Account Id

```javascript
(function execute(inputs, outputs) {
    outputs.query = "query/?q=SELECT+Name,Id,AccountId,CloseDate,Amount," + 
                    "StageName,Probability,Type+FROM+Opportunity" + 
                    "+WHERE+AccountId='" + inputs.salesforce_account_id + 
                    
                    "+LIMIT+" + inputs.max_number_of_opportunity_records;
}(inputs, outputs);
```

The pre-processing output is a query, similar to the **Get All Opportunities** action.

**REST step, post-processing step, and action outputs**

These steps and outputs are the same as for the **Get All Opportunities** action

**Get Opportunities Details custom action**

The **Get Opportunities Details** action retrieves a single Opportunity record from the Salesforce application based on the record Id. This action is invoked when the user opens the form for the Opportunity record in the remote table.
Action inputs

The **Get Opportunities Details** action takes a single integer parameter that identifies the Salesforce Account ID. This parameter is set by the form based on the sys_id that was provided to the remote table in the remote table script. For more information, see *Example script that queries the Opportunity table*.

Pre-processing step

The pre-processing script step takes the action inputs as its own.
As with other actions, the pre-processing step creates an opportunity query for the specific parameter. In this case, the match is done against the opportunity record Id. Do not worry about the LIMIT in this query because it returns at maximum a single record.

```
(function execute(inputs, outputs) {
    outputs.query = "query/?q=SELECT+Name,Id,AccountId,CloseDate,Amount," +
                    "StageName,Probability,Type+FROM+Opportunity" +
                    "+WHERE+Id='" + inputs.salesforce_opportunity_record_id +
                    '";  
}) (inputs, outputs);
```

The pre-processing output is a query similar to the other custom actions.

**REST step, post-processing step, and action outputs**

These steps and outputs are the same as for the other custom actions except there is no maximum number of records parameter and no information message.
Remote tables and definition

Once you have the spoke custom actions working, you need to create a remote table that describes the schema for the data to be retrieved from the Salesforce Opportunity table.

Create a remote table as shown in the following example.

Create the script definition for the remote table (u_st_salesforce_opportunity), which does the following:

- Uses the spoke custom actions to pull data from the Opportunity table in the Salesforce instance.
- Maps the response from Salesforce into the remote table columns.
Example script that queries the Opportunity table

This example script queries the opportunity table using the **Get All Opportunities**, **Get Opportunities for Account Id**, and **Get Opportunity Details** custom actions.

The example script consists of three distinct parts:

1. The first part selects the correct custom action and prepares inputs for it.
2. The second part makes a call to the action.
3. The third part processes the outputs of the action.

Selecting a spoke action and preparing the inputs

In this section of the script, select one of the three custom actions that you prepared to get opportunities from the Salesforce application:

- **Get All Opportunities**
- **Get Opportunities for Account Id**
- **Get Opportunity Details**

You can decide which action to call based on the parameters included in `v_query` function argument.

```javascript
/****** Choose action and prepare action inputs *****/
var action = null;
var inputs = {};

// look up opportunity by salesforce record id
if (v_query.isGet()) {
    action = "get_opportunity_details";
    inputs.salesforce_opportunity_record_id = v_query.getSysId();
}

// look up opportunities by salesforce account id
} else if (v_query.getParameter("u_sf_account_id")) {
    if (v_query.getParameter("u_sf_account_id") == "undefined") {
        gs.addInfoMessage("Opportunities cannot be retrieved because " +
            "this "Account does not have associated " +
            "Salesforce Account. Please contact System " +
            "Administrator. ");
        return;
    } else {
        action = "get_opportunities_for_account_id";
        inputs.salesforce_account_id =
                    v_query.getParameter("u_sf_account_id");
    }

// look up all opportunities
} else {
    action = "get_all_opportunities";
}
```

Note that this script configures an information message if the Salesforce account is undefined when it is required by the action. The undefined value comes from the relationship that is described in *Using a related list to create the connection between the Customer Account and the Salesforce Opportunities.*
When the Salesforce account is undefined, there is nothing to query for in this case and the function returns without calling the spoke action.

**Calling the spoke action**

In this section of the script, call the action using the names of the Salesforce spoke and the selected action and store the outputs of the call.

```javascript
/***** Call action *****/
var outputs =
    sn_fd.FlowAPI.executeAction("sn_salesforce_spok." + action, inputs);
```

**Processing the action output**

In this section of the script, process the outputs starting with the check for errors.

```javascript
/***** Process action outputs *****/
if (outputs.status != "Success") {
    throw new Error(outputs.error_message);
}
```

If the query does not return any errors, the script needs to process the returned records and add them as rows into the remote table. Map the Salesforce Opportunity fields into the remote table columns.

```javascript
var opportunities = outputs.opportunities.data;
for (var i = 0; i < opportunities.length; i++) {
    var opportunity = opportunities[i];
    v_table.addRow({
        "u_sf_amount": opportunity.Amount,
        "u_sf_close_date": opportunity.CloseDate,
        "u_sf_name": opportunity.Name,
        "u_sf_probability": opportunity.Probability + "%",
        "u_sf_account_id": opportunity.AccountId,
        "u_sf_stage": opportunity.StageName,
        "u_sf_type": opportunity.Type,
        "sys_id": opportunity.Id,
    });
}
```

Note that the Salesforce opportunity record Id is assigned to the remote table sys_id. This ensures that lists and forms for the remote table function properly and that we are able to extract the record Id using `v_query.getSysId()` the next time that the remote table script is invoked.

Then display the information message if it was passed by the query.

```javascript
if (outputs.info_message) {
    gs.addInfoMessage(outputs.info_message);
}
```

**Putting the remote table script sections together**

The three sections of the script are included in the try-catch block to provide for error handling.

```javascript
(function executeQuery(v_table, v_query) {
```
try {
    // place code here from: <Selecting a spoke action and preparing the inputs>
    // place code here from: <Calling the spoke action>
    // place code here from: <Processing the action output>
} catch (error) {
    gs.addErrorMessage("Error retrieving Salesforce Opportunities. " + "Please contact System Administrator.");
    gs.addErrorMessage("System Error: " + error.message);
}
)(v_table, v_query);

Using a related list to create the connection between the Customer Account and Salesforce Opportunities

Use a related list to establish the connection between the Customer Account table that holds the Salesforce Account Id and the Salesforce Opportunity remote table that holds the same Salesforce Account Id.

In this example, create a relationship called Opportunities. Choose the Account table in the Applies to table field and the remote opportunity table in the Queries from table field. For more information, see Create defined related lists.

Add the following code in the Query with field:

(function refineQuery(current, parent) {
    var sf_account_id = new String(parent.u_salesforce_account_id);
    if (sf_account_id.length == 0)
        sf_account_id = "undefined";
    current.addQuery("u_sf_account_id", sf_account_id);
})(current, parent);

This code checks for the presence of the Salesforce Account Id in the Account table and, if it is missing in the record, sets it to undefined. The code also includes a query for the Opportunity table column that holds the Salesforce
Account Id for the value of this Id from the Account table. This query is invoked when the user opens the list of opportunities associated with the customer account. To see how it is used in the remote table script, see *Selecting a spoke action and preparing the inputs*.

**Additional Customer Service Management features**

The Customer Service Management application has a number of additional features that you can use to manage customer service cases. Some of these features require plugin activation.

**Customer Service case digests**

Use the case digests feature to provide periodic updates and resolution information about high priority customer service cases to customers and internal stakeholders. With this feature, you can send periodic case updates while a case is in progress using a *case action summary*. Once a case has been resolved, you can provide a *post case review* document that captures details about the issue, root cause, resolution, and preventive measures.

The case digests feature uses a configuration for case action summaries and post case reviews. The configuration determines the information from a customer service case that is captured as part of the case action summary or the post case review document. The configuration also identifies the template that is used to create the summaries and review documents.

*Case action summaries*

Use a case action summary to provide updates to customers and internal stakeholders while a case is in progress. Customer service agents typically use case action summaries to communicate information about high priority cases and mass outage cases. Case action summaries can include both internal content and customer-visible information. The summaries available to customers include only the customer-visible information. The summaries available to internal users include both customer-visible information and internal content.

Customer service agents can:

- Create case action summaries for cases that are in progress.
- Preview summaries prior to publishing.
- Publish summaries to customers and internal stakeholders or publish to customers and send email notifications to internal stakeholders.
- Update and re-send summaries as needed.

Customer service agents use the *Send Case Action Summary* UI action to create a case action summary. This action creates a case action summary record and adds the record to the Related Records section on the Case form in the *Case Action Summary* field.

Customer service agents can preview a case action summary before publishing it to a case. In the preview, internal content appears after the customer-visible information and is identified with a message: *The following content is not visible to customers.*

When publishing a case action summary, agents have two options:

- When an agent clicks *Publish to Case*, the system takes the following actions:
  - Adds the information from the customer-visible fields to the *Additional comments* field.
  - Adds the information from all fields to the *Work notes* field.

- When an agent clicks *Publish to Case & Notify*, the system also sends an email notification with the case action summary to the internal users included in the recipient list selected in the *Additional internal recipients* field.

**Note:** The *Publish to Case & Notify* UI action is available when a list has been selected in the *Additional internal recipients* field.
Closing a case automatically closes the corresponding case action summary.

**Post case reviews**

Use a post case review document to capture details about a resolved case, including a summary of the issue, affected assets, root cause, resolution, and any preventive measures.

Customer service agents use the **Create Post Case Review** UI action to create a post case review document. This action creates a case action summary record and adds the record to the Related Records section on the Case form in the **Post Case Review** field.

The configuration selected for post case review documents identifies the information from the customer service case that is captured and populated in post case review record. The configuration also specifies the template that the system uses to create the post case review document.

Before publishing a post case review document to a case, agents can preview the document and, if necessary, have it reviewed and approved. Agents can add an approval group or approval users to the Post Case Review record and then request approval. The system sends an email notification to the approvers with a link to the post case review document. The approvers can either approve the document or suggest changes by adding them to the **Work notes** field on the Post Case Review record.

When an agent publishes a post case review document, the system adds a link to a PDF of the document in the **Additional comments** field on the Case form. The system also adds the record to the Related Records section on the Case form in the **Post Case Review** field. If the document is available to customers, the link is visible from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

If a case is closed while the post case review document is in progress, agents can still update the **Additional comments** on the Case form with the post case review document link. Once a case is closed, the Post Case Review form displays a message that the associated case has been closed.

Customer service roles can perform the following actions for post case review documents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent</td>
<td>• Create and preview one post case review document for a resolved case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Request approval using an optional approval workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Publish a post case review document to a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Reopen and edit a published post case review document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service manager</td>
<td>Review, approve, and suggest changes to post case review documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major issue manager</td>
<td>• Create and publish post case review documents for resolved major cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Copy the documents to the associated child cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>View post case review documents from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Post case reviews for major cases**

Customer service managers and major issue managers can create and publish post case review documents for resolved major cases. These documents capture the case data specified in the configuration but do not include account-specific information. The customer service manager can also copy a post case review document to the associated child cases. The system adds the account-specific information when it generates the document for each child case.
The system administrator can enable post case review documents for major cases by setting the `sn_customerservice.parent_child_case_sync` system property to true.

**Note:** Setting this property to true disables the Create Post Case Review UI action for child cases.

### Post case review record states

Post case review records can be in a number of different states as they are created, approved, and published.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>A case review record has been created but is not yet assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Progress</td>
<td>A case review record has been created and is assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awaiting Approval</td>
<td>An agent created a case review document from the case review record and sent it to one or more approvers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>The case review document has been approved by one or more approvers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>The case review record has been closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Post case review approvals

Enable an optional approval process for post case review documents.

In the case digest configuration, the system administrator can:

- Enable the approval process by selecting an approval workflow.
- Use a condition builder to define the conditions that determine the post case review documents that require approval.

One approval workflow, **Post Case Review - Default Approval**, is provided with the Case Digests plugin. This workflow reads the approvers from the Approval group and Approval Users fields on the Post Case Review form and sends an approval request notification to each user.

Approvers receive an email notification with a link to the post case review document. Approvers can either approve the document or suggest changes by adding them to the Work notes field on the Post Case Review form. The agent receives a notification when an approver approves the case review document or suggests changes.

- If the approver suggests changes, the agent can see the changes in the Work notes field.
- If the approver approves the document, the status of the post case review record changes to **Approved**.

### Case action summary and post case review assignment rules

Use assignment rules to assign case action summaries and post case review documents to customer service agents.

The Case Digests plugin includes two assignment rules:

- **Auto assign the CAS to case agent**
- **Auto assign the PCR to case agent**

When an agent clicks either **Send Case Action Summary** or **Create Post Case Review** on a case record, the system creates the corresponding record and automatically assigns it to that agent.

The system administrator can modify these assignment rules or define different rules to assign case action summary and post case review records. The system populates the **Assigned to** field on the Case Action Summary or Post Case Review form with the user determined by the assignment rule. If there are no active assignment rules, the **Assigned to** field remains blank and the record can be assigned manually.
If using the provided assignment rules that auto assign the records to the same agent:

- The agent clicks **Send Case Action Summary** or **Create Post Case Review** on the Case form.
- The corresponding record opens with the agent's name in the **Assigned to** field.
- The record state is **In Progress**.

If using assignment rules that do not auto-assign the records to the same agent:

- The agent clicks **Send Case Action Summary** or **Create Post Case Review** on the Case form.
- The corresponding records are created but are not displayed.
- If assigned to another agent, the **Assigned to** field displays the agent's name and the state updates to **In Progress**.
- If unassigned, the record remains in the **New** state.

---

**Create a case action summary**

Create a case action summary for a customer service case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

You can send case action summaries for customer service cases that are in any states other than **New** or **Closed**.

After creating a case action summary, the record is added to the Case form in the Related Records form section. Closing a case automatically closes the corresponding case action summary.

1. Open a customer service case.
2. To create a case action summary, do one of the following:
   - Agent Workspace: Click the More UI Actions icon (**...**) and select **Send Case Action Summary**.
   - Platform interface: Click the form context menu icon and select **Send Case Action Summary**.

   This opens a new Case Action Summary form with a status of **In progress**. Depending on the table map configuration defined for the case action summary, some of the information from the case is copied to the Case Action Summary form. With the CAS Configuration, this includes the information from the **Short description** field.

   **Note:** The **Short description** field on the Case Action Summary form can be edited in the platform interface but cannot be edited in Agent Workspace.

3. In the Case Action Summary form, enter any necessary information in the following fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional internal recipients</td>
<td>Select a recipient list. When an agent clicks <strong>Publish to Case &amp; Notify</strong>, the system sends an email notification to the internal users in the selected list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>The short description from the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case summary</td>
<td>A brief summary of the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions taken</td>
<td>Details about actions taken so far to resolve the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next steps</td>
<td>The steps that the agent is planning to take in order to resolve the case. This field is not customer visible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal notes</td>
<td>Other internal information that the agent wants to share regarding the case. This field is not customer visible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Preview** to generate the case action summary and view it in the Preview Document pop-up window.
5. Optional: Make any desired changes to the fields on the Case Action Summary form and click **Preview** again.
6. Click **Update** to save the changes to the case action summary.
7. Publish the case action summary using one of the following actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Publish to Case</td>
<td>Updates the case with the case action summary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Information from the customer-visible fields on the case action summary is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>added to the <strong>Additional comments</strong> field on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Information from the case action summary is added to the <strong>Work notes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>field on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publish to Case &amp; Notify</td>
<td>Updates the case with the case action summary as described above and sends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an email with the case action summary to the internal stakeholders in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>recipient list selected in the <strong>Additional internal recipients</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The **Publish to Case & Notify** UI action is available when a list has been selected in the **Additional internal recipients** field.

---

**Create a post case review**
Create a post case review document for a resolved case that captures the configured case information.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

You can create post case review documents for customer service product cases that are in the **Resolved** state. Creating a review document is a multi-step process that involves:

- Creating a post case review record from a case.
- Previewing the generated review document and making any corrections.
- Requesting approval, if necessary.
- Publishing the review document so that it is available to customers, internal stakeholders, or both.

You can create one post case review document per case. If this document has already been created, the **Create Post Case Review** menu option is not available. You can view and edit the post case review document from the Related Records form section.

If a case is closed while the post case review is in progress, you can still update the **Additional comments** field on the Case form with the Post Case Review document link. When the case is closed, the system displays a message about the case closure on the Post Case Review form.

1. Open a customer service case in the **Resolved** state.
2. To create a post case review record, do one of the following:
   - Agent Workspace: Click the More UI Actions icon (*** ) and select **Create Post Case Review**.
   - Platform interface: Click the form context menu icon and select **Create Post Case Review**.
3. In the Post Case Review form, enter any necessary information in the following fields.
   Some information is copied from the Case form to the Post Case Review form, such as the short description and the resolution information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically assigned post case review record number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case number</td>
<td>The case number from which this post case review record was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>The agent assigned to the post case review record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commitment Date</td>
<td>The expected completion date of the post case review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment group</td>
<td>The group assigned to the post case review record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval group</td>
<td>The group assigned to review and approve the post case review record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is visible if an approval workflow is selected in the case digest configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval users</td>
<td>The users assigned to review and approve the post case review record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is visible if an approval workflow is selected in the case digest configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Copied from the Short description field on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>A summary of the issue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms</td>
<td>Specific symptoms or problems created by the issue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Root Cause Analysis</td>
<td>Copied from the Cause field in the Resolution Information section on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solution Provided</td>
<td>Copied from the Resolution notes field in the Resolution Information section on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventive Measures Taken</td>
<td>Any measures taken to prevent the issue from happening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes list</td>
<td>Internal users who receive a notification about this case when work notes are added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes</td>
<td>Information about how to resolve a customer service case, or steps taken to resolve it, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Records all activity associated with this record.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Preview** to generate the review document and view it in the Preview Document pop-up window.

5. Optional: Make any desired changes to the fields on the Post Case Review record and click **Preview** again.
   You can edit the content in the Post Case Review record if the state is **New** or **In Progress**. Clicking **Preview** creates a preview of the document with the latest record information.

6. Optional: If approval is required, complete the following steps:
   a) Add an **Approval group**.
   b) Add one or more **Approval users**.
   c) Click **Request Approval**.

You can request approval for a post case review document before sharing it with customers or internal stakeholders. When approval is requested, the status of the post case review moves to **Awaiting Approval** and the record is locked for edits.

An email is sent to the approvers with a link to the post case review document. The approvers can either approve the document or suggest changes by adding them to the **Work notes** field on the Post Case Review record. The agent receives a notification when an approver approves the case review document or suggests changes.

- If the approver suggests changes, the agent can see the changes in the **Work notes** field.
- If the approver approves the document, the status of the post case review record changes to **Approved**.
7. Click **Save**.
8. Click **Publish to Case** to update the case with the Post Case Review document.

   The document is included as a link in the **Additional comments** field on the Case form. If the document is available to customers, the link is visible from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

---

Create a post case review for a major case

Create a post case review document for a resolved major case that captures the configured case information.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager, or admin

You can create a post case review document for a resolved major case if the **sn_customerservice.parent_child_case_sync** is set to true.

**Note:** Setting this property to true disables the **Create Post Case Review** UI action for child cases.

---

1. Open a major case in the **Resolved** state.
2. Complete steps 2 through 7 in the **Create a post case review** topic.
3. Select one of the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publish to Case</strong></td>
<td>The system performs the following actions:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   |                 | 1. Syncs the child case PCR record with the parent case PCR record. (If the child case PCR record is not present, the system creates a new child case PCR record.) The following fields are synced:
<p>|                 | • Assigned To |
|                 | • Case Digest Configuration |
|                 | • Short Description |
|                 | • Root Cause Analysis |
|                 | • Solution Provided |
|                 | • Summary |
|                 | • Symptoms |
|                 | • Preventive Measures Taken |
|                 | • Commitment Date |
|                 | • Assignment Group |
|                 | • State |
|                 | • Approval Users |
|                 | 2. Generates a PDF document for all of the child case PCR records with customer-specific information. |
|                 | 3. Adds a link to the PCR document to the <strong>Additional Comments</strong> field on the child case form. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copy to Child Cases</td>
<td>The system syncs the child case PCR record with the parent case PCR record. (If the child case PCR record is not present, the system creates a new child case PCR record.) The following fields are synced:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigned To&lt;br&gt;• Case Digest Configuration&lt;br&gt;• Short Description&lt;br&gt;• Root Cause Analysis&lt;br&gt;• Solution Provided&lt;br&gt;• Summary&lt;br&gt;• Symptoms&lt;br&gt;• Preventive Measures Taken&lt;br&gt;• Commitment Date&lt;br&gt;• Assignment Group&lt;br&gt;• State&lt;br&gt;• Approval Users</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review and approve a post case review document**

Review and approve a post case review document for a resolved case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

When a customer service agent creates a post case review document that requires an approval, the system sends an email notification to the list of approvers. This email contains the following information:

• A short description of the case and the agent assigned to the case.
• Links to the post case review and case records.
• A link to download the post case review document.
• Links to approve the document or suggest changes.

When a post case review record is in the **Awaiting Approval** state, approvers can access the **Approve** and **Suggest Changes** UI actions.

1. Click the link in the email to download the post case review document.
2. Review the document.
3. To suggest changes to the document:
   a) Click the link in the email to suggest changes. Alternately, click the link to open the post case review record and then click **Suggest Changes**.
   b) add the information in the **Work notes** field on the Post Case Review record.
4. To approve the document:
   • Click the link in the email to approve the document.
   • Click the link to open the post case review record and then click **Approve**.

The state of the post case review record changes to **Approved**.

**Re-open a post case review document**

Re-open an approved post case review document if you need to make changes or update information.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

1. Open a customer service case.
2. In the Related Records form section, access the record in the **Post Case Review** field.
3. Click **Re-open** on the Post Case Review form.
   The status of the record reverts to **In Progress**.
4. Make the necessary changes to the fields on the Post Case Review form.
5. Click **Preview** to generate the review document and view it in the Preview Document pop-up window.
6. Optional: Click **Request Approval**.
7. Click **Publish to Case**.

Withdraw post case review approval
Withdraw a post case review document after sending it for approval.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin
1. Navigate to **Case Digest > My Post Case Reviews**.
2. Click and open a post case review which is in **Awaiting Approval** state.
3. Click **Withdraw**.
   The post case review document is now in **In Progress** state and approvers are notified by email that the request for approval is no longer required. You can edit the post case review document and resend it for approval.

Cancel post case review
Cancel a post case review that has not been approved, rejected or no longer requested state.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin
1. Navigate to **Case Digest > My Post Case Reviews**.
2. Click and open a post case review that you want to cancel.
3. Click **Cancel**.

   **Note:** If the post case review state was awaiting approval, approvers are notified by email that the post case review has been cancelled and approval is no longer required.

   The post case review document is now in **Cancelled** state.

Components installed with case digests
Several types of components are installed with the Case Digests plugin.

Tables
The Case Digests plugin adds the following tables:
- Case Digest Configuration (sn_csm_case_digest_config)
- Case Digest (sn_csm_case_digest_task)
- Post Case Review (sn_csm_case_digest_pcr)
- Case Action Summary (sn_csm_case_digest_cas)

The Customer Service Document Template plugin adds the following table:
- CS Document Template (sn_csm_doctemplate_template)

Extension points
The Case Digests plugin includes the following extension points. Customers can use these extension points to customize the publish action.
### Extension point

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension point</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_case_digest.CASPublish</td>
<td>Use this extension point to alter the functionality of publishing a case action summary to a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_case_digest.PCRPublisher</td>
<td>Use this extension point to alter the functionality of publishing a post case review document to a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_case_digest.MajorPCRPublisher</td>
<td>Use this extension point to alter the functionality of publishing a post case review document to a major case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Create cases as a proxy contact

The proxy contact role enables employees to create cases for customer accounts and contacts. Employees can also be proxy case contacts on behalf of customers.

Assign the proxy contact role (sn_customerservice.proxy_contact) to employees in your company who are not fullfillers or do not have other CSM-specific roles.

Employees with the proxy contact role can do the following:

- Create cases on behalf of customers by email, phone, chat, Virtual Agent, and from the Customer Service Portal.
- Create requests on behalf of customers from the Customer Service Portal.

When creating a case, the employee can select a customer contact or a partner contact as the case contact. The employee is also added to the case as the internal contact.

From the Customer Service Portal, employees can do the following for the cases where they are the internal contact:

- View a list of cases.
- View case details.
- Add comments or attachments to a case.
- Accept or reject a case resolution.
- View a list of related work orders.
- Check the status of a case using Virtual Agent.

Customer service agents can create cases and designate an employee with the proxy contact role as the internal contact.

- From Agent Workspace, agents can create cases for employees from interaction records.
- From connect chat sessions with employees, agents can create cases that add the employee to the Internal contact field on the Case form.

### Plugin information

Activate the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts) plugin to enable this feature. This plugin adds the following to Customer Service Management:

- The sn_customerservice.proxy_contact role.
- The ProxyContactHelper script include.
- The \textit{Internal contact} field on the Case form.
- The \textit{Opened for} field on the Interaction form.

\textit{Note}: You need to configure the Interaction form to display the \textit{Opened for} field and the Case form to display the \textit{Internal contact} field.
Configure the Customer 360 ribbon component in Agent Workspace

With the workspace administrator role (workspace_admin), you can configure the Customer 360 ribbon component to display the internal contact for a case.

- If the Contact field (the primary field) is populated on the Case form, the Customer 360 component displays the contact information.
- If the Consumer field (the secondary field) is populated on the Case form, the Customer 360 component displays the consumer information.
- If the Internal contact field (the tertiary field) is populated on the Case form, and the Contact and Consumer fields do not contain any data, the Customer 360 component displays the internal contact (employee) information.

For more information about configuring the Customer 360 ribbon component, see Configure ribbon component attributes.

Internal contact field on Case form

When an employee with the sn_customerservice.proxy_contact role creates a case for a customer account, the Internal contact field on the Case form is populated with the employee's name. This field determines case visibility for the employee. From the Customer Service Portal, employees can see cases that they have created and are identified as the internal contact.

**Note:** This field appears on the Case form in both the platform interface and Agent Workspace.

When an agent creates a case, they can select an employee with the sn_customerservice.proxy_contact role in the Internal contact field.

Creating a case from the Customer Service Portal

An employee with the proxy contact role can create a case for a customer from the Customer Service Portal. As part of creating a case, the employee:

- Selects an account.
- Selects a contact from the available contacts for the account.
- Selects an asset or product for the account.
- Enters a subject and description for the case.

When the case is created, the employee is added to the Internal contact on the Case form.

Creating a case from an interaction record

An agent can create a case for an employee by clicking Create Case on the Interaction form. On the resulting Case form, the Internal contact field:

- Is set to the value from the Opened for field if the employee has the proxy contact role.
- Remains blank if the user in the Opened for field does not have the proxy contact role.

Creating a case via email

Employees can create a case by sending an email to the inbound email address. When the email is received, the system checks to see if the user has the proxy contact role.
• If yes, the case is created and the employee is added to the **Internal contact** field. The content of the email is logged in the case activity stream.
• If no, the case is not created.

**Initiating a chat from the Customer Service Portal**

Employees with the proxy contact role can initiate a chat with an agent directly from the Customer Service Portal or using Virtual Agent. This creates a chat request card with the employee's name in the agent's inbox.

• **Agent Workspace:** when the agent accepts the chat, the interaction record displays the employee name in the **Opened for** field.
• **Platform:** when the agent accepts the chat and creates a case a case from the chat session, the employee name is added to the Case form in the **Internal contact** field.

**Check the status of a case using Virtual Agent**

Employees with the proxy contact role can use Virtual Agent to check the status of a case where they are the internal contact.

After logging in to the Customer Service Portal and initiating Virtual Agent, use the options available with the **Check Case Status** topic.

**Viewing work orders**

From the Customer Service Portal, employees with the sn_customerservice.proxy_contact role can see work orders for the cases where they are the internal contact. Employees can also add attachments to the work orders.

In the portal header, click **Support > Work Orders**.

**Employee notifications**

The system sends an email notification to the employee in the **Internal contact** field on the Case form when:

• The case is opened or closed.
• Comments are added to the case.

**Configure the AWA queues for the proxy contact role**

Modify the Advanced Work Assignment queues and add routing conditions that support the proxy contact role and the **Internal contact** field on the Case form.

Role required: admin

Modify the following AWA queues:

• For the Case service channel: Customer Service Cases
• For the Chat service channel: Customer Service

1. Navigate to **Advanced Work Assignment > Queues**.
2. Select the **Customer Service Cases** queue.
3. In the **Work item routing condition** field, add the following OR condition: **Internal Contact is not empty**.
4. Click **Update**.
5. Select the **Customer Service** queue.
6. In the **Work item routing condition** field, add the following OR condition: **Roles is** `sn_customerservice.proxy_contact`.

7. Click **Update**.

---

### Case and account escalation

Users with the escalation requester role can request and manage case and account escalations. Users with the de-escalator role can de-escalate cases and accounts.

You can use the escalation feature to highlight specific cases or accounts and raise awareness of important customer issues.

Escalating cases or accounts facilitates communication about an issue and enables users to track progress toward a resolution. An escalation provides increased attention to a customer issue and provides a way to track the progress made in resolving the issue. Escalation is an internal process that is not exposed to customers.

**Escalate a case or an account**

Users with the escalation requester role can escalate a case or account.

Role required: `sn_customerservice.escalation_requester` or `sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester`

1. Navigate to the desired case or account.
2. Click the **Escalate Case** or the **Escalate Account** related link.
3. Fill in the fields on the Escalation form, as needed.

**Escalation form fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The number automatically assigned to the escalation request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Record</td>
<td>The case or account for which escalation is requested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request Source</td>
<td>The source of the case escalation request:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Customer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Internal</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>The reason for requesting the case escalation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Inactivity</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Lack of Progress</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Customer Imposed Deadline</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Severity</td>
<td>The escalation severity associated with this escalation, which defines the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>severity level for the escalation and the color used to highlight the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>escalated record in the user interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>High Severity</strong>: escalated records are highlighted in red.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Medium Severity</strong>: escalated records are highlighted in orange.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Template</td>
<td>The escalation template selected by the user who requested the escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch List</td>
<td>The watch list for this escalation record. The watch list includes users on the escalation template and any users that you add for this record. For account escalations, you can <strong>Add account team members to watch list</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment group</td>
<td>For account escalations, the assignment group for this account escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>For account escalations, the customer service agent assigned to this account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request By</td>
<td>The user who requested the escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Justification</td>
<td>Additional information that explains why this escalation is needed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Submit**.

   If the escalation template includes an approval workflow, the approvers review the escalation request and either approve or deny the request (provide a reason).

**Manage an escalated case or account**

Manage and document the progress for an escalation using the case or account escalation record.

Role required: `sn_customerservice_agent` or `sn_customerservice.consumer_agent`

Perform tasks such as changing the escalation severity (which may trigger a different SLA), update the escalation trend, add or remove users from the watch list, and add comments.

- **Case escalations**: When managing a case escalation, the customer service agent typically performs most of the problem resolution work directly in the case record and the escalation record is primarily used for status reporting purposes. For example, updating the escalation trend and comments to escalation stakeholders. All updates to the case escalation record are automatically replicated to the case record as work notes. The escalation SLA is also associated with the case record rather than the escalation record because that is where the agent provides regular updates.

- **Account escalations**: For account escalations, the escalation record takes on a more important role because account escalations are more serious and are often associated with multiple underlying cases. An account escalation is typically assigned to an account escalation manager who works closely with multiple case owners to resolve the customer escalation. The account escalation manager can consolidate the status across the underlying cases and provide regular updates using the escalation record. Therefore, the SLA is associated with the escalation record.

1. Navigate to the desired case or account escalation record.
2. Update the fields on the escalation form as needed.
3. Click **Update**.

**De-escalate a case or an account**

Users with the de-escalation requester role can de-escalate cases or accounts when the cause of the escalation is resolved.

Role required: `sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester`

1. Navigate to the desired escalation record.
2. Click **De-escalate** in the form header.
   
   This opens the De-escalate Case pop-up window.
3. Enter the necessary information in the **De-escalation Justification** field.
4. Click **De-escalate** on the window.

   The state of the escalation record changes to **Closed**.

**Agent calendar**

Customer service agents and field service technicians can use the agent calendar to see work schedules and assignments and also add personal events such as meetings or appointments.

The agent calendar provides a tool for maintaining different work schedules or shifts and assigning agents and technicians to shifts for specific time periods. The calendar has the flexibility to accommodate work schedules that are fixed or varied and shifts that rotate by week, month, or other patterns. The agent calendar administrator creates the calendar configuration, including a schedule configuration for each calendar user and the types of tasks to display on the calendar.

The schedule information stored in the agent calendar is used by other ServiceNow applications and features, such as the assignment workbench, central dispatch, and auto assignment. The assignment workbench uses agent availability, based on upcoming work schedules and personal time off, when evaluating predefined criteria and recommending agents for case assignment. Auto assignment in Service Management core applications, such as Field Service Management and Facilities Service Management, evaluate agent work schedules before assigning tasks.

The agent calendar administrator has access to the Agent Schedule menu in the application navigator. This menu includes the following modules:

- **Event Configuration**: create a configuration for each type of event or task displayed on the agent calendar.
- **Work Schedule**: create one or more work schedules for each calendar user.
- **Agent Personal Events**: create personal schedules for each agent and add events to those schedules.
- **Schedule**: create or modify schedules. For more information, see **Schedules**.

**Viewing the calendar**

Customer service agents and field service technicians with the agent_schedule_user role can access their personal calendars in the following ways:

- **Customer Service > My Schedule**
- **Field Service > Agent > My Schedule**

**Note**: The agent calendar is supported in the mobile application and the mobile web.
The calendar can display a single day, a week, or a month. Buttons in the calendar header allow you to switch views as well as go backward or forward in time. An agent’s scheduled work hours are highlighted in gray and the current day is highlighted in blue. The agent calendar displays work or tasks assigned to the agent as well as personal events. Each type of event is displayed on the calendar using a different color.

Agents can add events to their calendars by double-clicking a specific time slot and entering the details in the New Event popup window or by clicking and dragging. Agents can also move events by dragging and dropping. Click an event to display a popup with event details and double-click an event to open the event record.

Plugins

The Agent Schedule plugin (com.snc.agent_schedule) is activated as part of the Customer Service Management and Field Service Management plugins.

Tables

The Agent Schedule plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent Work Schedule</td>
<td>Stores one or more work schedules for each agent, including the date range for the schedule and the schedule type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_work_schedule]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Personal Schedule</td>
<td>Stores personal calendar events for each agent, such as training, personal time off, or meetings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_events]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Configuration</td>
<td>Stores a configuration for each type of task displayed on the agent calendar, such as case tasks or work order tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_schedule_task_config]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Schedule User Config</td>
<td>Stores the agent’s personalization data for the calendar. A user configuration is created automatically when a user with the agent_schedule_user role accesses their personal calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_schedule_user_pref]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Schedule Relationship</td>
<td>Stores the relationships between agent configurations and event configurations. Relationship entries are created automatically based on a user's read access to the task tables selected in the event configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_schedule_task_config_rel_user_pref]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Schedule Definition Theme</td>
<td>Stores the colors used to display different types of tasks on the agent calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_schedule_definition_theme]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

User Roles

The Agent Schedule plugin adds the following user roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent schedule administrator</td>
<td>Sets up the Agent Calendar configuration. Contains roles:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[agent_schedule_admin]</td>
<td>• agent_schedule_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• schedule_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent schedule user</td>
<td>Allows customer service agents and field service technicians to access and update their personal calendars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configure the agent calendar**

Users with the agent calendar administrator role can perform several calendar configuration tasks.

These tasks include:

- Creating one or more schedule configurations for each calendar user.
- Creating an event configuration for each type of event to display on the calendar.
- Creating a work schedule to assign to an agent.

If necessary, agent calendar administrators can create personal events for a calendar user although the users themselves typically perform these tasks.

Create an event configuration for the agent calendar

Create configurations for each type of entry displayed on the agent calendar. Entries could include case tasks, work order tasks, appointments, or schedule entries such as event types that you could track and manage on the team calendar.

Role required: agent_schedule_admin

The schedule entry uses the Schedule Span [cmn_schedule_span] table to store different types of events.

The following types of schedule entries for event type configurations are available by default:

- Event — Appointment
- Event — Excluded
- Event — Meeting
- Event — Phone
- Event — Time Off
- Event — Other

These configurations are inactive by default. You can activate a configuration by navigating to Agent Schedule > Event Configuration, selecting an event type configuration, and setting the Active field to true for one or more event configuration types you would like to activate. Each configuration displays as a separate event type on the team calendar.

1. Navigate to Agent Schedule > Event Configuration and perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a configuration from an existing event configuration</td>
<td>1. Select the desired configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Right-click the form header and click Insert and Stay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A copy of the selected event type configuration is created.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Fill in the fields on the Event Configuration form, as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A descriptive name for this configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Config Label</td>
<td>Name displayed for this event in the agent calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color theme</td>
<td>Color used to display this type of schedule on the agent calendar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Setup** | Setup method for this configuration.  
  - **Simple**: use condition builder to set up this configuration.  
  - **Scripted**: use advanced scripts to set up this configuration. |
| **Table** | The table where the tasks for this type of configuration are stored. |
| **Filter** | Use condition builder to create the desired conditions for the selected task type.  
  For example, the event configuration for Case Tasks includes a filter on the task **State** field to display only those tasks that are open. |
| **User Field** | A field from the **Table** that provides the user assigned to the task.  
  For example, the event configuration for Case Tasks uses the **Assigned To** field from the Task table [sn_customerservice_task]. When a case task is assigned, it appears on the agent calendar for the user selected in this field. |
| **Event type** | Type of schedule entry. |
| **Display Field** | A field from the **Table** that provides the information to be displayed for this event type on the agent calendar.  
  For example, the event configuration for Case Tasks uses the **Subject** field from the Task table [sn_customerservice_task]. When a case task is assigned, the subject of the task appears on the agent calendar. |
| **Start Date Field** | A field from **Table** that provides the start date for the task.  
  For example, the event configuration for Case Tasks uses the **Expected start** field from the Task table [sn_customerservice_task]. When a case task is assigned, it appears on the agent calendar starting on the date and time specified in this field. |
| **End Date Field** | A field from the **Table** that provides the end date for the task.  
  For example, the event configuration for Case Tasks uses the **Due date** field from the Task table [sn_customerservice_task]. When a case task is assigned, it appears on the agent calendar ending on the date and time specified in this field. |

**Note:** Because the agent schedule administrator can select any fields from the Task Table for the **Start Date Field** and the **End Date Field**, it is possible that the end date may be earlier than the start date. In this event, the task is displayed on the agent calendar between the two points in time.

| **Script** | Use advanced scripts to create the event configuration.  
  **Note:** This field is available when the **Scripted** value is selected from the **Setup** field. |

3. Perform one of the following actions:
   - If you created the configuration from an existing configuration, click **Update**.
   - If you created a new configuration, click **Submit**.

Create a work schedule for an agent or technician

Users with the agent schedule administrator role can create one or more work schedules for a customer service agent or a field service technician.
Role required: agent_schedule_admin

A work schedule includes a date range and a schedule type, such as day shift or evening shift. Agents and technicians can have multiple work schedules.

1. Navigate to **Agent Schedule > Work Schedule**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Agent Work Schedule form, as necessary.

**Agent Work Schedule form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From Date</td>
<td>The first day of the work schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Date</td>
<td>The last day of the work schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>The selected agent or technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Schedule</td>
<td>The selected schedule from the Schedules list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Type           | The type of work that the agent or technician is performing during this schedule:  
|                |   • Primary work                                                            |
|                |   • Other                                                                   |
|                | An agent can have only one primary schedule for a specific range of dates. Primary schedules cannot overlap. |

4. Click **Submit**.

Create a personal event for an agent or technician

Users with the agent schedule administrator role can create personal events that appear on an agent's personal calendar.

Role required: agent_schedule_admin

Agents and technicians typically add personal events to their own calendars.

1. Navigate to **Agent Schedule > Agent Personal Events**.
2. Select the personal schedule for the desired agent.
3. In the **Schedule Entries** related list, click **New**.
4. Fill in the fields on the Schedule Entry form, as necessary.

**Schedule Entry form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Type  | The type of event:  
<p>|       |   • Time off                                    |
|       |   • Appointment                                 |
|       |   • Meeting                                     |
|       |   • Phone call                                  |
|       |   • Excluded                                    |
|       |   • On call                                     |
|       |   • Time off - in approval                      |
|       |   • Time off - rejected                         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Show as      | Show this event on the agent's personal calendar as one of the following:  
  • Busy  
  • Free  
  • Tentative  
  • On call  
  Select **Busy** to exclude the block of time from agent availability calculations for the auto assignment and the case assignment workbench. |
| When         | The start date and time of the personal event.                                                                                                                                                               |
| To           | The end date and time of the personal event.                                                                                                                                                                |
| All day      | Enable this check box if the event lasts all day.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Repeats      | Create a repeating event by selecting the frequency. Depending on the selection, other fields are required to complete the frequency information.  
  • Does not repeat  
  • Daily  
  • Every Weekday (Mon-Fri)  
  • Every Weekend (Sat, Sun)  
  • Every Mon, Wed, Fri  
  • Every Tue, Thu  
  • Weekly  
  • Monthly  
  • Yearly |
| Repeat every | Enter a number for the frequency of the repeated event.                                                                                                                                                     |
| Repeat on    | For weekly events, select a day of the week.                                                                                                                                                               |
| Monthly type | For monthly events, select one of the following. These selections use the day and date in the **When** field as the basis for repetition.  
  • Day of the month  
  • Day of the week  
  • Last day of the month  
  • Last week of the month |
| Yearly type  | For monthly events, select one of the following:  
  • Day of the year: this selection uses the day and date in the **When** field as the basis for repetition.  
  • Floating: for this selection, complete the **Float week**, **Float day**, and **Float month** fields. |
| Repeat until | Select a date for the end of the repeated event.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Float week   | For a floating yearly repeating event, select the week.                                                                                                                                                     |
| Float day    | For a floating yearly repeating event, select the day.                                                                                                                                                      |
| Float month  | For a floating yearly repeating event, select the month.                                                                                                                                                     |
5. Click **Submit**.

Create a schedule to use with the agent calendar

Users with the agent calendar administrator role can create a schedule to use with the agent calendar.

Role required: agent_schedule_admin

Creating a schedule for the agent calendar uses the schedule feature. For more information, see *Schedules*.

Schedules are configured with two types of records.

- Schedule records specify a time zone and a type of schedule and use one or more schedule entries. Schedule records are saved in the Schedule [cmn_schedule] table.
- Schedule entry records specify the time periods that are included or excluded from a schedule. Schedule entries are saved in the Schedule Entry [cmn_schedule_span] table.

1. Navigate to **Agent Schedule > Schedule**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Complete the fields on the Schedule form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Enter a unique name for the schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Zone</td>
<td>Select the time zone for the schedule. If you select <strong>Floating</strong>, the time zone will be relative to whatever is accessing the item at any given time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
<td>Select a parent schedule to constrain the new schedule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Type       | Enter a label that describes the purpose of the schedule. You can also use one of these system terms to determine how to process certain schedules:  
  - **excluded**: excludes time periods from SLA counts.  
  - **maintenance**: specifies time periods where change management activities are allowed. A schedule containing maintenance schedule entries cannot also contain blackout schedule entries.  
  - **blackout**: excludes time periods from change management schedules. A schedule containing blackout schedule entries cannot also contain maintenance schedule entries. |
| Description| [Optional] Describe the schedule. |

**Note:** The Schedule form displays a warning message if there are no active entries defined for the current schedule. If your schedule is a child schedule that only contains exclusions, ignore the message because exclusions are non-active entries.

4. Right-click the header bar and click **Save**.

**Note:** If you create a schedule of type **maintenance** and save the record, a UI policy hides the **Type** field from the form. To view or change the value for the **Type** field, view the list of schedules rather than the schedule form and add the **Type** column if necessary. You can double-click the cell for the value in the **Type** column and modify from the list view.

5. Configure one or more schedule entries.
6. Click **Submit**.

*Use the agent calendar*

Users with the agent calendar user role can add events to their personal calendar and configure the calendar to show or hide different types of events.

Add an event to the agent calendar

Users with the agent schedule user role can add events to their personal calendar.

**Role required:** agent_schedule_user

1. Navigate to your calendar.
   - **Customer Service > My Schedule**
   - **Field Service > Agent > My Schedule**

2. Double-click a timeslot or click and drag over a timeslot on the calendar to open the New Event form.

3. Fill in the fields on the New Event form, as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of event:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Time off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Appointment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Phone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Excluded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• On call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Time off - in approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Time off - rejected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show as</td>
<td>Show this event on the agent's personal calendar as one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• On call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>The start date and time of the personal event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>The end date and time of the personal event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All day</td>
<td>Enable this check box if the event lasts all day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>[Read only] If an agent has selected a specific time zone in their user profile, that time zone is displayed here and is used as the time zone for this event. Subsequent changes to the <strong>Time zone</strong> field in the user profile do not change the time zone designation for this event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeats</td>
<td>Create a repeating event by selecting the frequency. Depending on the selection, other fields are required to complete the frequency information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Does not repeat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Every Weekday (Mon-Fri)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Every Weekend (Sat, Sun)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Every Mon, Wed, Fri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Every Tue, Thu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Weekly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Monthly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Yearly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat every</td>
<td>Enter a number for the frequency of the repeated event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat on</td>
<td>For weekly events, select a day of the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monthly type</td>
<td>For monthly events, select one of the following. These selections use the day and date in the <em>When</em> field as the basis for repetition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Day of the month</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Day of the week</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Last day of the month</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Last week of the month</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearly type</td>
<td>For monthly events, select one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Day of the year: this selection uses the day and date in the <em>When</em> field as the basis for repetition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Floating: for this selection, complete the <em>Float week, Float day, and Float month</em> fields.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat until</td>
<td>Select a date for the end of the repeated event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float week</td>
<td>For a floating yearly repeating event, select the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float day</td>
<td>For a floating yearly repeating event, select the day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float month</td>
<td>For a floating yearly repeating event, select the month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Click Submit.**
The new event appears on the agent calendar and also in the *Schedule Entries* related list on the Agent Personal Schedule form.

**Move an event on the agent calendar**
Users with the agent schedule user role can move events on their personal calendar.

Role required: *agent_schedule_user*

1. **Navigate to your calendar.**
   - **Customer Service > My Schedule**
   - **Field Service > Agent > My Schedule**

2. **Use one of the following methods to move an event.**
### Option

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click an event and drag it to a new day or time</td>
<td>The <em>When</em> and <em>To</em> fields in the event record are updated with the new information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double-click an event to open the event record</td>
<td>Change the date and time information in the <em>When</em> and <em>To</em> fields and click <em>Submit</em>. The event appears on the calendar in the new location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Show or hide event types on the agent calendar

Users with the agent schedule user role can personalize their calendar and show or hide different types of events.

Role required: agent_schedule_user

1. Navigate to your calendar.
   - **Customer Service > My Schedule**
   - **Field Service > Agent > My Schedule**
2. Click the configuration icon in the calendar header to display the Schedule Configuration menu.
3. Enable or disable the switches for the different types of events.
   - An option is enabled when the switch is moved to the right and appears with a green background.
4. Click the configuration icon again to hide the Schedule Configuration menu.
   - The calendar displays the enabled task types.

### Targeted communications

The Targeted Communications application provides the ability to create and send articles and emails to internal and external customers.

Users with the publications author (sn_publications.author) and publications administrator (sn_publications.admin) roles can use the Targeted Communications application to author publication articles and emails for employees, customer contacts and accounts, and consumers. Articles are available for viewing from the self-service portals and can also be sent out as email notifications.

Each publication article includes content and a specified list of recipients and can also include optional email notification. Recipients lists can be created dynamically by using a condition builder to identify the desired conditions, by running scripts, or by manual file upload. Recipients can be added to or removed from a list manually and lists can have both dynamically generated and manually added records of the same type.

Publication authors specify a publish date and an expiration date when creating an article to handle time-sensitive information. Authors can also request a review prior to publishing an article.

The process of publishing articles is based on workflows and two default workflows are provided: one to publish articles instantly and one that requires approval prior to publishing. Publication administrators can update workflows and add users with the publications approver (sn_publications.approver) role to perform reviews. Both authors and administrators can monitor publications and see which users have received and viewed the information.

Customer contacts and consumers can view publications by logging in to the Customer Service Portal or the Consumer Service Portal and clicking the **Publications** link in the portal header. Employees can view these publications by navigating to **Targeted Communications > Publications** in the application navigator.

**Note:** If the optional email notification is selected, all users receive the publication in an email, including consumers who do not have a login ID for the Consumer Service Portal.
Publication article stages

Publication articles progress through several stages which are displayed in a process flow formatter on the Publication form.

### Publication stages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author</td>
<td>The initial state of the publication creation process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>Publications that are waiting for review. A publication cannot be updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when it is in the Review stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ready To Publish</td>
<td>Publications that have been reviewed and are ready to be published.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Published</td>
<td>Publications that have reached their Publish Date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expired</td>
<td>Publications that have reached their Expiry Date or that have been manually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>Pending publications that have been cancelled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

States are shown in a process flow formatter at the top of the Publication form. The current state is indicated by a blue underline. States that have been completed are indicated by a blue check mark.

### Publication lists

The Targeted Communications application menu includes several views of publication records.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Publications</td>
<td>Includes publications in the following stages:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Ready to Publish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Published</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draft Publications</td>
<td>Includes publications that have been created and sent for review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expired Publications</td>
<td>Includes publications that have reached their Expiry Date or have been set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to Expired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recipients lists**

Create recipients lists for active publications.

The list of recipients for an article can include internal users, accounts, contacts, and consumers. When an article is published, the recipients on this list can view the article on the Customer or Consumer Service Portal. Recipients can also receive optional email notifications.

Recipients lists are also used by the Major Issue Management application to create child cases for a major case.
Recipients lists are created in the following ways:

- By creating a list of imported users.
- By creating a dynamic list based on selected conditions.
- By creating a script.

Recipients lists can have both dynamically generated and manually added records of the same type.

The system administrator can manage a scheduled job to refresh recipient lists. This scheduled job, **Targeted Communications Refresh recipient list**, adds new recipients to each of the active published articles. The new recipients receive email notification of the article and are granted access to view the article on the portal.

**Create a recipient list by importing contact information**

Create a recipient list by importing contact information. For contacts, supported file types include xls and csv.

Multiple files can be imported into the same recipient list, with new recipients appended to the recipient list file. The system checks that the accounts and contacts exist in the system and only imports those that exist. Duplicate entries are not created. At the end of the import process, the system displays a status with the number of records imported and rejected.

The system uses the sys_id and the email address attributes to match contacts. It first looks for a matching sys_id match. If not found, it then looks for a matching email address. If neither are found, the record is rejected.

**Create a recipient list by importing account, consumer, or internal user information**

Create a recipient list by importing account, consumer, or internal user information. The supported file type is xls.

The system uses the following attributes to match the imported records:

- **Account**: Uses the sys_id and the account number. Attempts to match the sys_id. If not found, then attempts to match using the account number. If neither are found, the record is rejected.
- **Consumer and User**: Uses the sys_id or the email address. Attempts to match the sys_id. If not found, then attempts to match the email address. If neither are found, the record is rejected.

**Create a recipient list using a script**

Create a recipient list using a script with these supported entities: contact, company/account, consumer, and internal user. The output of the script is an array of sys_ids of the corresponding entity. After creating the recipient list, the system shows the total number of records identified, added to the list, and rejected.

To create a recipient list using a script, select Dynamic Condition in the **Method** field on the Recipients List form and enable the **Show Script** check box. Then create your script in the **Script** field.

**Add or remove an approver**

Add or remove an approver to a publication workflow.

Role required: sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to **Targeted Communications > Publication Workflow**.
2. Select a workflow.
   - The approvers assigned to the workflow are displayed in the **Approvers** field.
3. To add an approver, click **Edit Approvers** next to the **Approvers** field and select an approver from the Users list.
   - This list includes users with the sn_publications.approver role. The selected user is added to the **Approvers** field.
4. To remove an approver, click **Edit Approvers** next to the **Approvers** field and select the approver's name. Then click **Remove**.
   The approver's name is removed from the **Approvers** field.

5. Click **Update**.

Create a recipients list
Create and save a list of users to receive targeted communications.

Role required: sn_publications.author, sn_publications.admin, sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

A recipient list can include internal users, accounts, contacts, or consumers. Create a recipient list using any of the following methods:

- By importing a list of users.
- By creating a dynamic list based on selected conditions.
- By creating a script.

Recipients lists can have both dynamically generated and manually added records of the same type.

**Note:** You must create at least one recipient list before creating a publication.

1. Navigate to **Targeted Communications > Recipients Lists**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Recipients List form.

**Recipients List form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of recipients to include in the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Contacts (customer_contacts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Internal Users (sys_user)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Consumers (csm_consumer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Accounts (customer_account)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>The state of the recipient list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>New:</strong> the list has not yet been generated. Click <strong>Refresh Recipient List</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>In Progress:</strong> the list is currently being generated. (You may only see this state when generating a very large list of recipients.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Complete:</strong> the list has been generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method</td>
<td>The method used to generate the recipient list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Upload File</strong>: create a list by uploading user information from a selected Excel .xlsx file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Dynamic Condition</strong>: create a list by selecting conditions in the condition builder or by adding a script.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** To exclude inactive users from receiving emails, use the condition builder to exclude inactive users from the recipients list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Choose File</th>
<th>If the <strong>Method</strong> is <strong>Upload File</strong>, download an Excel template and then select an .xlsx file that contains the user information.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The templates vary based on the entity selected in the <strong>Type</strong> field. For accounts, the template includes columns for sys_id and account number values. For contacts, consumers, and internal users, the template includes columns for sys_id and email values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Show Script</th>
<th>If the <strong>Method</strong> is <strong>Dynamic Condition</strong>, enable this check box to create a recipients list using a script. Enabling this check box displays the <strong>Script</strong> field.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>The script used to create a recipients list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>The table that stores the user information. Depending on the selection in the <strong>Type</strong> field, this field displays:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contact [customer_contact]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• User [sys_user]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Consumer [csm_consumer]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Account [customer_account]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Field</th>
<th>The field that references the user record in the User (sys_user) table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For the following types of recipient lists, this is the sys_id:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contacts (customer_contacts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Internal Users (sys_user)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Consumers (csm_consumer)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account Field</th>
<th>The field in the selected table that stores the account information.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is displayed for the following types of recipients lists: <strong>Accounts</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Conditions    | Use the buttons in this field to build one or more conditions on the selected table. A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the AND and OR buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the Delete button to the right of a condition. |
4. Click **Submit**.  
   For recipients lists created by file upload, clicking **Submit** validates the records in the Excel file. Following validation, the system displays a pop-up window with the upload results, including valid and invalid user records.

**Edit a recipients list**  
Edit a list of users to receive targeted communications.

Role required: sn_publications.author, sn_publications.admin, sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

The **Recipients** related list includes the **Dynamically Added** column which displays either True or False, depending on how a record was added:

- True for records that are dynamically generated, either by using the condition builder or by running a script.
- False for records that are added manually, either by using the **Edit** button on the **Recipients** related list or by file upload.

The **Active Communication** column is set to True by default for both dynamically and manually added records. This field indicates whether or not the recipient requires active communication.

1. Navigate to **Targeted Communications > Recipients Lists**.
2. Select the desired list.
3. In the **Recipients** related list, click **Edit**.
4. Use the arrows to add or remove records.
5. Click **Save**.

**Create a publication**  
Create a publication with optional email notification to send to customers.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

Two options to consider when creating a publication:

- Include the optional email notification (default)
- Select the type of content: HTML or Wiki

After creating an article, there are two publishing options:

- Submit: sets the stage to **Ready To Publish**
- Send for review: sends the publication to the approver and sets the stage to **Review**

1. Navigate to **Targeted Communications > Create New Publication**.
2. Fill in the fields on the **Publication form**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically generated publication number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Content Type  | The type of data included in the publication. Select one of the following:  
|               |  • HTML: this content can include Rich Text formatted (RTF) text, images, attachments, and links. Enter the publication data in the Content field.  
|               |  • Wiki: this content can include plain text. Enter the publication data in the Wiki field.  
|               | The default selection is HTML.                                                                                                                 |
| Category      | If desired, select a category for the publication. The following categories are available:  
|               |  • Defect  
|               |  • Outage  
|               |  • Information                                                                                                                                |
| Recipient Lists | Select a predefined list to target specific customers. Recipient lists are created by the publication author or administrator.                  |
| Short Description | A brief description or title of the publication.                                                                                               |
| Publish Date  | Select the publication date as any future date. Publications are sent automatically when the publish date and time are reached.               |
| Expiry Date   | Select the expiration date. This date must be at least one day after the Publish Date. Publications are automatically expired when the expiry date and time are reached. |
| Skip Notification | Enable this check box if you do not want to use email notification with this publication. Enabling this check box disables the Email Template field and hides the Include Attach Links field. |
| Email Template | Select a template to use for email notification. The Publication Default email template is provided with the Targeted Communications application. Users with the sn_publications_admin role can create additional email templates. |
| Include Attach Links | Include links to any attachments in the email notification preview.                                                                          |
| Content       | This field appears when you select HTML as the Content Type. Enter the text of the publication in this field. HTML content can include Rich Text formatted (RTF) text, images, attachments, and links. |
Field | Description
--- | ---
Wiki | This field appears when you select Wiki as the Content Type. Click the Wikitext button and enter the text of the publication in this field. Wiki content can include plain text.

3. Click one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Submit</td>
<td>The stage is set to Ready To Publish and the publication is published on the Publish Date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send for Review</td>
<td>The stage is set to Review and the publication is sent to the approver for review. Approvers can navigate to Self-Service &gt; My Approvals to see a list of review requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Publish a publication**

Publish a publication with optional email notification to send to customers.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

When creating a publication, you can include an optional email notification that is sent to all recipients in the recipients list when the publication is published. In this email notification, all of the recipients are included in a bcc list to maintain privacy.

**Note:** To exclude inactive users from receiving emails, use the condition builder to exclude inactive users from the recipients list.

1. Navigate to Targeted Communications > Active Publications.
2. Select the desired publication.
3. Click Publish.
   
The publication is published an email notification is sent to the recipients in the recipients list.

**Create a recurring publication**

Use an existing publication as a template to create multiple copies of a new publication.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

You can specify the recurrence interval and the recurrence start and end date. The number of copies that are created are based on these settings and appear in the Publications related list on the original publication form. Each copy has a different publish date, which is based on the interval. Each copy gets reset to the Author state and each one goes through its own workflow.

1. Do one of the following:
   
   - Navigate to Targeted Communications > Active Publications, open the desired publication, and click the Setup Recurrence related link.
   - Navigate to Targeted Communications > Recurrences and click New.

2. Fill in the fields on the Recurrence form.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Publication Template</td>
<td>The number of the publication being used as a template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you clicked the Setup Recurrence related link, this field displays the original publication number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you clicked Recurrences in the Targeted Communications menu, select a publication from the Publications list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrence Start</td>
<td>Select a date for the first occurrence of the recurring publications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrence End</td>
<td>Select a date for the last occurrence of the recurring publications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrence Interval</td>
<td>Select an interval for the recurring publications:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Biweekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Monthly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Interval in Days</td>
<td>This field appears when you select Custom as the Recurrence Interval. Enter the number of days for the interval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Submit**.

The recurring publications are created based on the selected dates and the recurrence interval and the stage for each copy is set to **Author**. The copies appear on the **Publications** related list on the original publication form, as well as on the Active Publications and the Draft Publications lists. From any of these lists you can open each publication and change the information as necessary. Each copy lists the publication template number in the Recurrence field.

A record of the recurrence appears on the Recurrences list.

*Preview an email notification*

Preview an email notification for a publication before it is sent to customers.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

Preview the following information for an email notification:

- The recipient list
- The subject of the publication
- The text of the publication and any attachments.

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   - **Targeted Communications > Active Publications**
   - **Targeted Communications > Draft Publications**

2. Select the desired publication.

3. Click the **Preview Target Email** related link.

4. View the email notification in the Notification Preview window.

5. If desired, view the publication on the customer portal by clicking the link in the body of the email.

6. Close the Notification Preview window.
Once the publication has been published, the customers in the recipient list should receive the email.

**Update a publication**
You can make changes to a publication that is in the **Author** or **Review** stages.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   - **Targeted Communications** > **Active Publications**
   - **Targeted Communications** > **Draft Publications**

2. Open the desired publication.
   The stage of the publication must be either **Author** or **Review**.

3. Make the desired changes.

4. Click **Update**.

**Send a publication for review**
You can send a publication for review if it is in the **Author** stage.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   - **Targeted Communications** > **Active Publications**
   - **Targeted Communications** > **Draft Publications**

2. Select a publication in the **Author** stage.

3. Click **Send For Review**.
   The publication stage is set to **Review** and the approvers are added to the **Approvers** related list on the Publication form.

   Approvers can navigate to **Self-Service > My Approvals** to see a list of review requests. Approvers also receive an email notification about the review request.

**Review a publication**
Users with the publications approver role that have been added as approvers to the publication workflow can review a publication.

Role required: sn_publications.approver or sn_customerservice_manager

After reviewing, an approver can either accept or reject a publication. If an approver does not review a publication before the **Publish Date**, the publication cannot be approved. The **Approve** button is not displayed and the approver sees a message that the publish date and time has passed. The approver can only reject the publication, which returns it to the **Author** stage.

The **Approvers** related list displays a list of approval tasks and includes most recent comment from each approver.

1. Navigate to **Self-Service > My Approvals**.
2. Select a publication for review from the Approvals list that has a state of **Requested**.
3. Review the publication summary at the bottom of the approval form.
4. Add review comments to the **Comments** field.
5. Click one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approve</strong></td>
<td>The review state changes to <strong>Approved</strong> on the Approvals list and the publication stage is set to <strong>Ready To Publish</strong>. For other approvers of this article, the review state changes to <strong>No Longer Required</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject</td>
<td>The review state changes to <strong>Rejected</strong> on the Approvals list and the publication stage is set to <strong>Author</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View the list of approvers for a publication**

If a publication article has been sent for review, you can see the assigned approvers on the Publication form.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   - Targeted Communications &gt; Active Publications
   - Targeted Communications &gt; Draft Publications
2. Open the desired publication.
3. Click the tab for the **Approvers** related list.
   The Approvers list includes the users with the publications approver role that have been added as approvers to the publication workflow.

**Track a publication**

Access a list of recipients for a publication and see which recipients have viewed the content.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to Targeted Communications &gt; Active Publications.
2. Open the desired publication.
3. Click the **Publication Recipients** related list.
   For each recipient on this list, you can see if the email notification bounced and if the customer viewed the article or any attachments.

**expire a publication**

Expire a published article before it reaches the **Expiry Date**.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

1. Navigate to Targeted Communications &gt; Active Publications.
2. Select an article that has been published.
3. Click **Expire**.
   The publication **Expiry Date** is set to the current date. The publication is removed from the Active Publications list and appears on the Expired Publications list.

**Cancel a publication**

Cancel a pending publication before it reaches the publish date.

Role required: sn_publications.author or sn_publications.admin

You can cancel a publication in any of the following stages: **Author**, **Review**, or **Ready to Publish**.

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   - Targeted Communications &gt; Active Publications
   - Targeted Communications &gt; Draft Publications
2. Select the desired publication.
3. Click **Cancel**.
   The stage of the publication changes to **Cancelled**.
**View a publication**

Internal customers can view the details of a publication from the Targeted Communications menu.

Role required: none

1. Navigate to **Targeted Communications > My Publications**.
2. Select a publication from the Publications list.

**Time recording for Customer Service Management**

Record time worked on cases and case tasks. Time worked entries automatically generate time cards and time sheets for manager approval.

Customer service agents (users with the sn_customerservice_agent role) can record time worked on case-related activities, create time cards and time sheets, and submit for approval. Managers can approve time sheets, define cost rates for different types of activities, and convert to expense lines.

The time recording feature extends the functionality of the **Time Card Management** application to Customer Service Management. Agents can record time worked on cases and tasks directly from the Case or Case Task form and time spent on other activities, such as meetings or training, from the Time Worked form. Time worked entries automatically create time cards for each task and selected work category. Time cards are automatically included in a weekly time sheet.

The time recording feature also extends the functionality of the **Cost Management** application to Customer Service Management. Customer service managers can create labor rate cards, which define different cost rates for different activities. Time sheets use **labor rate cards** to determine costs and to generate expense lines.

Agents can modify the hours recorded on time cards. Once a time sheet is approved and a time card is processed, the agent can still go back and modify the time worked. The time sheet reverts to the **Pending** state and new time cards are created. If an agent adds more time worked records to an approved time sheet for the same week, a new time sheet record is created for the current week.

Managers can view time worked records, time cards, and time sheets for agents in their assignment groups, as well as approve and reject time sheets. After a time sheet is approved, the system processes the time cards and uses rate cards based on the time card category to create expense lines.

**Time recording plugin**

The time recording feature requires the Customer Service Management plugin (com.sn_customerservice) and the Time Recording for Customer Service plugin (com.snc.csm_time_recording).

**User roles**

The time recording feature adds the following roles.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time card user</td>
<td>Record time worked on cases and tasks. View, modify, and delete time worked entries on time cards and submit time sheets for approval. Users with the customer service agent (sn_customerservice_agent) role inherit the timecard_user role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: This role restricts access to the time sheets, time cards, and time worked records created by the agent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time card administrator</td>
<td>Review, approve, and reject time sheets for customer service agents. Users with the customer service manager role (sn_customerservice_manager) inherit the timecard_admin, timecard_approver, and timecard_manager roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: This role restricts access to the time sheets, time cards, and time worked records created by the agents in a manager's assigned groups.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### System properties

The time recording feature adds the following properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.time_card.time_worked</td>
<td>Enables the time recording feature for Customer Service Management. The default setting is <strong>false</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.time_card.default_rate</td>
<td>The default hourly rate used when processing time cards if a rate from a labor rate card is not available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Time Sheet policy

The time recording feature uses the **Default time sheet policy**.

For users with the sn_customerservice_agent role, creating time worked records automatically creates or modifies time cards regardless of the setting for the `com.snc.time_card.time_worked` system property. The time sheet policy controls this functionality. The system administrator can disable the auto-creation of time cards for a specific user with the sn_customerservice_agent role by creating a separate time sheet policy for that user.

### Labor rate cards

The time recording feature provides one labor rate card: CSM Rate Card (Default).

If needed, system administrators can create additional labor rate cards. Navigate to **Cost > Costs > Labor Rate Cards** and click **New** to create a labor rate card.
Record time worked for a case or activity
Customer service agents can record time worked on a case or case task as well as time spent on other activities.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

Agents can record time worked from a case or case task. Time worked can be recorded regardless of the case or task state. Agents can also record time worked from the Time Sheets module by navigating to Time Sheets > Time Recording > My Time Worked.

When an agent creates a time worked record, a time card and time sheet are automatically created for the week based on the work date. The time card is created for the task and the category type. The total hours recorded on each time card are recorded on the current time sheet in the Time Cards related list.

1. To record time worked from a Case form or Case Task form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Platform interface</td>
<td>Navigate to a case or task and click Record Time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Workspace</td>
<td>Navigate to a case or task, click the more UI actions icon (•••), and click Record Time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This action opens a Time Worked form with the Task and User fields already populated.

2. To record time worked from the Time Sheets module:
   a) Navigate to Time Sheets > Time Recording > My Time Worked and click New. This action opens a Time Worked form with the User field already populated.
   b) Select a task number in the Task field.

3. Select the Work Date.
4. Select a Category for the time being recorded.
5. Fill in the Time worked.
6. Provide any additional information in the Comments field.
7. Click one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Platform interface</td>
<td>Click Submit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Workspace</td>
<td>Click Save.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Time Worked form is saved and added to the following lists:

- The Time Worked related list on the Case or Case Task form.
- The Time Cards related list on the current Time Sheet form.
- The Time Worked list in the Time Sheets module.

If this entry is the first time worked entry for the selected category, a time card is created for that category. If a time card for the category already exists, the time worked record is added to that card.

Review time worked for a case or activity
Customer service agents can review time worked on cases and case tasks.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

The Time Worked related list on the Case and Case Task form displays the time worked records that have been created for the case or task. From this related list, agents can review their recorded time, add new time worked records, and also delete records.

1. Navigate to the desired case or case task.
2. Go to the Time Worked related list.
3. To view a time worked record, click the Comments for that record.

Modify or delete time worked entries for cases or activities
Agents can modify and delete existing time worked entries and create new entries after a time sheet has been approved.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

An agent can modify or delete time worked entries for an approved time sheet. Any changes to these entries update existing time cards, creates new time cards if needed, and generates an updated time sheet.

Note: Do not manually edit time cards. Edit the original time worked entries, which generate updated time cards and time sheets.

1. To modify or delete a time worked entry:
   • Navigate to the desired case or case task, click the Time Worked related list, and click the desired entry.
   • Navigate to Time Sheets > My Time Worked and click the desired entry.

2. To modify the entry, change the desired fields and click Update.
3. To delete the entry, click Delete.

Review a time card
Customer service agents can review time cards created from time worked records.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

The Time Worked related list on the Case and Case Task form displays the time worked records that have been created for the case or task. This list also displays the time cards created from the time worked records.

1. Navigate to the desired case or case task.
2. Go to the Time Worked related list.
3. To view a time card, click the Time Card for that record.

   The time card provides a breakdown of the time worked for this case or case task by day.

Review and submit a time sheet for a customer service agent
Agents can review and submit time sheets to managers for approval.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

The total hours worked for each category are recorded on the time card and on the time sheet. From the time sheet, you can see total hours by day and by category.

2. If desired, review the time cards associated with the time sheet in the Time Cards related list.
3. Click Submit Time Sheet.

   The time sheet is submitted to the manager for approval. The state of the time sheet changes from Pending to Submitted and the form becomes read-only. The state of the associated time cards also changes to Submitted.

Review and approve time sheets for customer service agents
Managers can review time cards and time sheets for agents in their assignment groups.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager

When a time sheet is approved, the time cards are processed and used to create expense lines that reference the defined labor rate cards.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Manager > Time Sheets - Pending Approval.
2. Select a time sheet.
3. If necessary, review the time cards associated with this time sheet in the Time Cards related list.
4. Click one of the available actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approve</td>
<td>The state of the time sheet and the associated time cards changes to Processed and these records become read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject</td>
<td>The state of the time sheet and the associated time cards changes to Rejected. The customer service agent can modify the time sheet and submit again for approval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Review expense lines created from time cards
Review the expense lines created from the time cards and time sheets submitted by customer service agents.

Role required: financial_mgmt_user
1. Navigate to Cost > Costs > Expense Lines.
2. Select the desired expense from the Expense Lines list and view the details.

Customer Service Management for Orders
This feature adds support for orders and order line items to the Customer Service Management application.

Customer Service Management for Orders enables customers and consumers to do the following through a self-service portal:

- View orders
- View and create cases for orders
- Contact a customer service agent to report an issue

Customer service agents can respond to customer and consumer requests and create cases for orders.

Plugins
To add support for orders to the Customer Service Management application, activate the Customer Service Management for Orders plugin (com.snc.csm.order). This plugin requires the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice).

This plugin adds the following modules to the Customer Service menu:

- **Orders**: displays a list of customer orders. Click an order to display the Order form.
- **Order Line Items**: displays a list of the individual items within each order in the Orders list. Click an item to display the Order Line Item form.

Creating a case for an order

When creating a case from the Customer or Consumer Service Portals, the end user can select the type of case to create. Based on the selection, the Create Case form includes fields specific to the selected case type.

- **Create Product Case**: includes the Asset and Product fields.
- **Create Order Case**: includes the Order field.
When creating a case from the Customer Service Management application, the customer service agent can select the type of case to create:

- **Product**: opens a new Case form for a product that includes the **Product** and **Asset** fields.
- **Order**: opens a new Case form for an order that includes the **Order** field.

### Tables installed with Customer Service Management for Orders

Customer Service Management for Orders adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orders</td>
<td>Stores the orders associated with an account and contact or with a consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_order]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order Line Items</td>
<td>Stores the individual line items within orders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_order_line_item]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order Cases</td>
<td>Stores information about customer service cases related to orders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_order_case]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order Case Line</td>
<td>Stores information about customer services cases related to orders and order line items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_order_case_line]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Guided Decisions for Customer Service Management

Resolve complex cases faster and more efficiently by guiding customer service agents through a structured troubleshooting process.

### Guided decisions

Guided Decisions is a decision authoring and execution capability in Customer Service Management. A guided decision guides customer service agents through a troubleshooting process based on the context of the case they are working on. It asks them questions based on previous answers and gives guidance on the next step they to take in the resolution process.

Using Guided Decisions has the following benefits:
• Improve first contact resolution: Dynamically guide customer service agents along the optimal path to resolve complex cases.
• Shift to digital faster: Author decision trees and guide customer service agents to take the next optimal action.
• Improve customer service agent productivity: Surface contextual recommendations in the Agent Workspace.

Guided decisions consist of decision trees. A decision tree is a multi-step process consisting of a series of questions, answers, and guidances.

Decision trees contain decision tree nodes, which represent one or more questions and the associated decision or guidance paths. Based on the answers, each decision tree leads to an outcome. The outcome is either a guidance or a follow-on question.

The following is an example of a decision tree structure.
The following is an example of the configuration behind the structure.

Decision strategists, who are typically subject matter experts or knowledge authors, author decision trees. Once a decision tree is created, the guided decision can be added to a playbook.

Customer service agents interact with decision trees as part of a playbook within a case. Based on the conditions set up, the playbook containing the guided decision is displayed in the case. Customer service agents work through the guided decision and complete actions suggested in the guidance.
Activation information

Activate the following plugins, as required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions for Playbook in Workspace</td>
<td>Enables activity types, definitions, and UI components for the display of guided decisions in a playbook on Workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions_playbook_experience]</td>
<td>Note: This plugin installs the Guided Decisions and Guided Decisions - Guidance plugins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions</td>
<td>Enables the framework and execution engine for creating guided decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions - Guidance</td>
<td>Enables the framework for creating a guidance for guided decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions_guidance]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions - Guidance Global Entities</td>
<td>Contains all the global artifacts required for the guided decisions feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions_guidance_global]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Roles**

Ensure that users can perform all the necessary actions by assigning roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_gd_guidance.guidance_user</td>
<td>Read access to guidances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This role is automatically given to customer service agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gd_guidance.guidance_manager</td>
<td>Create, read, update, delete access to guidances. Guidance managers create guidances that are given as an outcome to a series of questions in a decision tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This role is automatically given to customer service managers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gd_core.decision_tree_user</td>
<td>Read access to decision trees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This role is automatically given to customer service agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author</td>
<td>Create, read, update, delete decision trees. Decision authors define decision trees that provide a series of questions to the customer service agent to answer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This role is automatically given to customer service managers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Outsourced Customer Service

Outsourcing is a business practice in which an enterprise hires another company or individuals to perform tasks, handle operations, or provide services that were executed by the enterprise's own employees.

Outsourced Service Providers (OSPs) are organizations that an enterprise engages to provide customer service to external customers for reasons such as regional support, different languages, seasonal availability and so on. Benefits of outsourcing services are as follows:

- Cost savings
- Increase support coverage
- Access to skilled expertise

### Plugin

Users with the system administrator role can activate the Outsourced Customer Service plugin (com.snc.csm_ocs).

**Note:** This plugin requires the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice).

The Outsourced Customer Service plugin adds the **Customer Service > Outsourced Customer Service** module to the application navigator. Users with the administrator role can access this module. The administrator can assign the following roles to users:

- sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager (external OSP manager)
- sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent (external OSP agent)
- sn_csm_ocs.manager (internal OSP manager)

### Outsourced Customer Service Guided Setup

Activating the Outsourced Service Provider plugin adds the Outsourced Customer Service Guided Setup section. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Guided Setup** and use the tasks in this section to configure Outsourced Service Providers.

### Industry data models overview

Industry data models provide a framework that customers can use to create structured and flexible data models that represent their business needs.

The industry data models framework expands the Customer Service Management data model, including the install base model. It provides the flexibility and security needed to support business organizations with internal and external locations, households and consumers, and the relationships that exist between these entities.

Use the industry data models framework to model the service organization structure that is involved in supporting your end customers. With this framework, you can:

- Create a service organization structure that includes internal business locations.
- Assign customer service agents to internal business locations and provide access to the cases and customer information in their business location hierarchy.
- Establish relationships between agents and specific customers that enable agents to manage cases and information for those customers.
- Create households and add consumers as members of those households.
- Establish relationships between consumers, including consumers who are members of the same household.

## Entities included with industry data models

The industry data models feature includes the following entities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service organizations</td>
<td>The internal and external entities that are involved in providing a service to customers.</td>
<td>• Financial service organizations with multiple branches&lt;br&gt;• Automobile manufacturers with multiple dealerships&lt;br&gt;• Government agencies with multiple office locations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A service organization provides the base framework that supports the customer service value chain. This includes internal and external service organizations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can extend the service organization to create new entities as needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal service organizations</td>
<td>The internal entities that belong to a service organization and are involved in providing goods and services.</td>
<td>• Stores&lt;br&gt;• Branches&lt;br&gt;• Centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The internal structure models how company is organized to support customers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External service organizations</td>
<td>The external entities that belong to a business organization and are involved in providing goods and services.</td>
<td>• Franchises&lt;br&gt;• Contractors&lt;br&gt;• Outsourced providers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers (B2B)</td>
<td>The external customers in the business-to-business model who use goods and services.</td>
<td>• Accounts&lt;br&gt;• Contacts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers (B2C)</td>
<td>The external customers in the business-to-consumer model who use goods and services.</td>
<td>• Consumers&lt;br&gt;• Households</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees and staff members</td>
<td>The people who work at internal and external service organizations and assist customers.</td>
<td>• Internal employees&lt;br&gt;• External agents&lt;br&gt;• External staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roles</td>
<td>Job functions that are performed by various users in the service organization.</td>
<td>• Location managers&lt;br&gt;• Location agents&lt;br&gt;• Location consumer agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Responsibility definitions | Definitions of the responsibilities that an agent can perform for a customer or that a consumer can perform for another consumer. Use these responsibilities to create relationships between agents and customers or between consumers. | • Account managers  
• Relationship managers  
• Authorized representatives |
| Relationships          | Relationships that are created between agents and customers or between two consumers, are based on specific responsibilities. Use these relationships to provide additional access to data. | • Relationships between an employee or staff member and a customer  
• Relationships between two consumers |

Plugins for industry data models

Users with the system administrator role can activate the following plugins to enable industry data model features.

Business Location

Activate the Business Location plugin (com.snc.business_location) to enable support for businesses that interact with customers through physical channels such as stores and branches. This plugin automatically activates the following plugins:

• Service Organization (com.snc.service_organization)  
• Customer Service Base Extension Entities (com.snc.cs_base_extension)

Customer Service Household

Activate the Customer Service Household plugin (com.snc.household) to manage customer service for households. This plugin enables you to create households, define the members of a household, and identify relationships between household members.

This plugin automatically activates the Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin (com.snc.cs_base_extension).

Customer Service Base Extension Entities

Activate the Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin (com.snc.cs_base_extension) to provide granular access control through relationships and roles. With this plugin, you can use the Authorized Relationship responsibility definition to create relationships between consumers.

Industry data model responsibilities

A responsibility, or responsibility definition, describes a role or a function that supports a customer. Use responsibility definitions to create relationships between an agent and a customer or between two consumers.

When you create a relationship, you select the users involved in the relationship and the responsibility that one user performs on behalf of another. The responsibility that is assigned to a relationship provides access to customer cases and information.

Industry data models includes responsibility definitions that you can use to create relationships:

• Between agents and accounts, households, or consumers.  
• Between two consumers.
The following responsibilities are provided with the industry data model plugins.

**Note:** Responsibilities are stored in the Responsibility Definition [sn_customerservice_responsibility_def] table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Used in relationship</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Manager</td>
<td>• Account Team Member</td>
<td>Use the Account Manager responsibility to create a relationship between an agent and an account. With this relationship, the agent can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for their accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View account information, including the related entities for an account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage contacts and additional addresses for their accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship Manager</td>
<td>• Consumer Team Member</td>
<td>Use the Relationship Manager responsibility to create a relationship between:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Household Team Member</td>
<td>• An agent and a consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• An agent and a household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With this relationship, the agent can do the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For a consumer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for the consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View household information, including the related entities for that consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For a household:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View household information, including the related entities for that household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage household members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized Representative</td>
<td>• Consumer to Consumer Relationship</td>
<td>Use the Authorized Representative responsibility to create a relationship between two consumers, regardless of household, or between two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Household Member Relationship</td>
<td>consumers within the same household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With this relationship, a consumer can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for another consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View the information of another consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View the install base information of another consumer and create cases for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Sold products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Install base items</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customizing responsibility definitions

You can use the responsibility definitions provided with industry data models plugins. You can also modify these definitions or create your own definitions to meet your business requirements.

**Note:** If you modify the existing definitions or create new definitions, you may also need to update ACLs to reflect the changes.

If you have an existing account manager responsibility definition, you may need to evaluate the functionality of the account manager responsibility definition provided with the industry data model plugins.

**Note:** Creating and using responsibility definitions is a feature available in releases prior to Paris. Customers can create responsibility definitions using the Responsibility Definition (sn_customerservice_responsibility_def) table and use those definitions to create account teams using the Account Team Member (sn_customerservice_team_member) table. For more information, see Create account teams.

Creating a responsibility definition

Users with the system administrator role can create responsibility definitions.

2. Click New and fill in the fields on the Responsibility Definition form.

In the **Type** field, select **User** if this responsibility is to be used in the following relationships:
- Account Team Member
- Consumer Team Member
- Household Team Member

If this responsibility is to be used in the following consumer relationships, set the **Type** field to **None**.
- Consumer to Consumer
- Household Member

For more information, see Create a responsibility definition.

Creating a unique responsibility definition

A responsibility definition can be unique, meaning that the responsibility can only be assigned to one user. To make a responsibility definition unique:

2. Select a responsibility definition.
3. Enable the **Unique** check box on the Responsibility Definition form.
4. Click **Update**.

When creating or updating records in the following tables, the system checks for and enforces unique responsibilities.

- Household Team Member [sn_customer_rel_household_to_user]
- Consumer Team Member [sn_customer_rel_consumer_to_user]
• Account Team Member [sn_customerservice_team_member]

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Responsibility Example</th>
<th>Unique behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Team Member</td>
<td>Account Manager</td>
<td>An account can have only one account manager but a user with the Account Manager responsibility can manage multiple accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Team Member</td>
<td>Relationship Manager</td>
<td>A consumer can have only one Relationship Manager but a user with the Relationship Manager responsibility can manage multiple consumers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Team Member</td>
<td>Relationship Manager</td>
<td>A household can have only one Relationship Manager but a user with the Relationship Manager responsibility can manage multiple households.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The unique behavior of a responsibility definition is not enforced when the responsibility is used for relationships between consumers or household members.

**Industry data model relationships**

Create relationships between an agent and a customer or between two consumers that provide additional access to customer data.

With the industry data model feature, you can create relationships between the following users:

- Between an internal user and an account, household, or consumer.
- Between two consumers.

Relationships are based on responsibilities, or responsibility definitions. When you create a relationship, you select the users involved in the relationship and the responsibility that one user performs on behalf of another. The responsibility that is assigned to a relationship provides access to customer cases and information.

The following relationships are provided with the industry data model plugins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Responsibility used in the relationship</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Team Member</td>
<td>Account Manager</td>
<td>Create a relationship between an internal user and an account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_team_member]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Team Member</td>
<td>Relationship Manager</td>
<td>Create a relationship between an internal user and a consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customer_rel_consumer_to_user]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The internal user in this relationship must also be assigned the relationship agent role (sn_customerservice.relationship_agent).
### Relationships between internal users and customers

Internal users can have relationships with accounts, consumers, and households. These relationships provide internal users with additional access to customer cases and information. An internal user with a relationship to a customer can create and manage cases on behalf of that customer.

Relationships are created using responsibilities. Use the following responsibilities to create relationships between internal users and customers:

- **Account Manager**: use this responsibility to create a relationship between a staff member and an account.
- **Relationship Manager**: use this responsibility to create a relationship between a staff member and a household or a consumer.

Relationships that you create are added to the following related lists:

- Account Staff Relationships on the Business Location form
- Consumer Staff Relationships on the Business Location form
- Household Staff Relationships on the Business Location form
- Account Team on the Consumer form
- Consumer Team on the Consumer form
- Household Team on the Household form

### Relationships between consumers

Consumers can have relationships with other consumers. These relationships enable consumers to view and manage cases and information on behalf of other consumers.

Relationships are created using responsibilities. Use the Authorized Representative responsibility to create relationships between consumers. With this responsibility, you can:

- Create a relationship between two consumers, regardless of household.
- Create a relationship between two consumers within a household.

Relationships that you create are added to the following related lists:
• Member Relationships on the Household form
• Consumer Relationships on the Consumer form

Deleting relationships

When a relationship definition is deleted, all of the relationships that use the definition are also deleted.

When a consumer is deleted, all of the relationships to which the consumer belonged are also deleted.

When a household is deleted, all of the relationships created for the household are also deleted.

When a consumer stops being a current member of a household, all of the relationships created for the consumer within the household are also deleted.

Industry data model tables

Tables that are included with or modified by the plugins that enable the industry data model feature.

The industry data model feature adds new tables or modifies existing tables when you activate the following plugins:

• Business Location (com.snc.business_location)
• Customer Service Household (com.snc.household)
• Service Organization (com.snc.service_organization)
• Customer Service Base Extension Entities (com.snc.cs_base_extension)
• Customer Service Install Base Management (com.snc.install_base)

Business Location plugin

The Business Location plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A business location is one type of service organization. This table stores business location records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Business Location [sn_csm_business_location_internal]</td>
<td>Extends the Business Location [sn_csm_business_location] table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This table stores internal business location records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: An internal business location is a business location with the Internal field set to true.

Customer Service Household plugin

The Customer Service Household plugin adds or modifies the following tables.
### Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Household [csm_household]</td>
<td>Stores consumer household records. For the industry data model feature, this table is updated to support the head of household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Member [csm_household_member]</td>
<td>Stores records of the consumers who have been added to households.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Team Member [sn_customer_rel_household_to_user]</td>
<td>Stores records for each of the household team member relationships that have been created between an internal user and a household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Member Relationship [sn_customer_rel_household_member_relationship]</td>
<td>Extends the Consumer to Consumer Relationship [sn_customer_rel_consumer_to_consumer] table. This table stores records for each of the relationships that have been created between two consumers who belong to the same household.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Service Organization plugin

The Service Organization plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service Organization [sn_customer_service_organization]</td>
<td>Extends the Company [core_company] table. Stores records for service organizations, including business locations and internal business locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Organization Member [sn_csm_service_organization_member]</td>
<td>Stores records for the users who belong to internal service organizations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Organization External Staff [sn_csm_service_organization_external_staff]</td>
<td>Extends the User [sys_user] table. Stores records for the users who belong to external service organizations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin

The Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumer to Consumer Relationship [sn_customer_rel_consumer_to_consumer]</td>
<td>Stores records for each of the relationships that have been created between two consumers, regardless of household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Team Member [sn_customer_rel_consumer_to_user]</td>
<td>Stores records for each of the consumer team member relationships that have been created between an internal user and a consumer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customer Service Install Base Management plugin

The Customer Service Install Base Management plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Sold Product</td>
<td>Stores records for each sold product (products and components) that have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_install_base_m2m_consumer_sold_product]</td>
<td>been sold to a consumer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Existing tables used by industry data models

This table lists the tables from existing plugins that are used by the industry data models feature to support customers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>New columns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)</td>
<td>Responsibility Definition</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Account Team Member</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_team_member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Base Entities (com.snc.cs_base)</td>
<td>Contract (ast_contract)</td>
<td>household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Entitlement</td>
<td>service_entitlement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Install Base Management (com.snc.install_base)</td>
<td>Sold Product [sn_install_base_sold_product]</td>
<td>household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Management for Orders (com.snc.csm.order)</td>
<td>Order [csm_order]</td>
<td>household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>service_organization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Industry data model roles

Roles that are included with the plugins that enable the industry data model feature.

The system administrator can assign these roles to internal users.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Location agent [sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent] | Create and fulfill cases for the accounts and contacts in the agent's business location. | • sn_fsm_servicedesk_agent  
• sn_esm_location_agent |
| Location consumer agent [sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent] | Create and fulfill cases for the consumers and households in the agent's business location. | • sn_fsm_servicedesk_agent  
• sn_esm_location_agent |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Location manager [sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager] | Create and update cases for accounts, contacts, consumers, and households that work with the business locations within their location hierarchy. | • sn_fsm_servicedesk_agent  
• sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent  
• sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent  
• email_client_quick_message_author  
• sn_templated_snip.template_snippet_writer  
• sn_shn.admin  
• approver_user  
• sn_publication.approver |
| Relationship agent [sn_customerservice.relationship_agent] | This role restricts an agent's access to only those cases for the accounts, contacts, consumers, and households that they have a relationship with. This includes the following relationships that are provided with the industry data model plugins:  
• Account Manager: creates a relationship between an internal user and an account.  
• Relationship Manager: creates a relationship between an internal user and a consumer or a household. | • agent_workspace_user  
• sn_fsm_servicedesk_agent  
• snc_internal  
• sn_shn.editor  
• email_composer |
| Service Management agent [sn_esm_location_agent] | A service management agent role for a business location | • sn_lookup_verify_user  
• assignment_workbench  
• knowledge  
• agent_workspace_user  
• chat_admin  
• cmdb_read  
• agent_schedule_user  
• interaction_agent  
• sn_templated_snip.template_snippet_reader  
• sn_shn.editor  
• template_editor  
• email_composer  
• template_editor_global |

**Industry data model table access by role**

The user roles that can access the industry data model tables.
## Industry data model table access by role

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Create</th>
<th>Read</th>
<th>Update</th>
<th>Delete</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service Organization [sn_customer_service_organization]</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSM manager • customer agent • consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Location [sn_csm_business_location]</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSM manager • customer agent • consumer agent • location manager • location agent • location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Business Location [sn_csm_business_location_internal]</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSM manager • customer agent • consumer agent • location manager • location agent • location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Organization Member [sn_csm_service_organization_member]</td>
<td>• CSM manager • location manager (for their hierarchy only)</td>
<td>• CSM manager • customer agent • consumer agent • location manager (for their hierarchy only) • location agent (for their locations only) • location consumer agent (their locations only)</td>
<td>• CSM manager • location manager (for their hierarchy only)</td>
<td>• CSM manager • location manager (for their hierarchy only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household [csm_household]</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSM manager • consumer agent • location manager • location consumer agent • relationship agent (for households they have relationships with) • consumer (for their households)</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSM manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Create</th>
<th>Read</th>
<th>Update</th>
<th>Delete</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Household Member</td>
<td>CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_household_member]</td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for households they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td>• location manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td>• location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for households they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for households they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
<td>• relationship agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
<td>(for households where they have relationships with)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for households they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• account team member</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for accounts that they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• account team member</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• relationship agent (for accounts that they have relationships with)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• consumer (for households where they are head of household or for consumers that they represent)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Team Member</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customer_rel_consumer]</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• location consumer agent (for their locations)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• relationship agent (for consumers that they have relationships with)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Team Member</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
<td>• CSM manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customer_rel_household]</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• consumer agent</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• location consumer agent (for their locations)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
<td>• relationship agent (for households that they have relationships with)</td>
<td>• location manager (for their hierarchy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Industry data model modules*

The industry data model plugins add several modules to the application navigator.

*Business location modules*

- Service Organizations > Business Locations: lists the business locations that have been created.

**Note:** This module is available in Agent Workspace and in the platform interface.

Users with the following roles have access to these modules:

- `sn_customerservice_manager`
- `sn_customerservice_agent`
- `sn_customerservice.consumer_agent`
- `sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent`
- `sn_customerservice.svc_location.consumer_agent`

*Household modules*

- Customer > Households: lists the households that a user has access to.
• Customer > Household Members: lists the consumers that have been added to households.

**Note:** These modules are available in Agent Workspace and in the platform interface.

Users with the following roles have access to these modules:

• sn_customerservice_manager
• sn_customerservice.consumer_agent
• sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent
• sn_customerservice.relationship_agent

**Customer relationship modules**

• Customer Relationships > Consumer Team Members: lists the relationships that have been created between an internal user and a consumer.
• Customer Relationships > Household Team Members: lists the relationships that have been created between an internal user and a household.
• Customer Relationships > Consumer Relationships: lists the relationships that have been created between two consumers, regardless of household.
• Customer Relationships > Household Relationships: lists the relationships that have been created between two consumers who are members of the same household.

**Note:** These modules are only available in the platform interface. You can view relationships in Agent Workspace in related lists. Customer service managers and location managers can also modify account, consumer, and household team member relationships in Agent Workspace.

Users with the following roles have access to these modules:

• sn_customerservice_manager
• sn_customerservice.consumer_agent
• sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager
• sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent

**Industry data model cases**

Location agents and location consumer agents at a business location can create cases for accounts, contacts, consumers, and households.

Staff members with the location agent or location consumer agent role can do the following:

• View information for the customers at their location.
• Create cases for accounts, contacts, households, and consumers.
• Update cases created at their location.
• Create consumers.

**Case location**

A case belongs to a business location. When a case is created by a location agent or manager, the **Service Organization** field on the Case form is automatically updated with the business location to which the agent or manager belongs. If the case is reassigned, this field is updated to that of the new agent or manager.

If the location agent or manager belongs to multiple locations, the **Service Organization** field may be left blank. When you fill in this field, select carefully as the service organization controls a location agent's access to cases.
The Service Organization can be set manually for a new case or changed for an existing case. Changing the Service Organization does not change the assigned agent.

**Case access**

Case access is controlled by the business location in the Service Organization field on the Case form. The following users can access cases:

- Staff members at the business location with the location agent or location consumer agent role.
- Managers at the business location with the location manager role.

Cases for a business location are added to the Cases related list on the Internal Business Location form.

- When a case is created, the service organization on the case is the service organization of the user who creates the case.
- When a case is assigned to an agent, the service organization on the case is updated to the service organization of the assigned agent.

### Case access for consumers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consumer type</th>
<th>Case access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td>Can manage their own cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head of household</td>
<td>Can manage cases for all of the household members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized representative, regardless of household</td>
<td>Can manage cases for the consumer they represent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized representative, inside of household</td>
<td>Can manage cases for the consumer they represent as long as both are current members of the household.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Case access for users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>Required role</th>
<th>Case access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location manager</td>
<td>Location manager</td>
<td>Can manage the cases in their location hierarchy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location staff member</td>
<td>Location agent</td>
<td>Can manage the cases in their locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Location consumer agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account manager</td>
<td>Relationship agent</td>
<td>Can manage cases for their accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer relationship manager</td>
<td>Relationship agent</td>
<td>Can manage cases for their consumers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household relationship manager</td>
<td>Relationship agent</td>
<td>Can manage cases for their households.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Industry data model business locations**

Use the business location entity to create an organizational structure that includes internal business locations such as stores and branches.
A business location is an extension of a service organization. The business location entity enables you to model the internal organizational structure involved in supporting customers. It also enables you to give agents the right level of visibility into customer data.

With the business location entity you can:

- Create internal business locations using a hierarchy, with parent and child locations.
- Associate internal users (users with the snc_internal role) with a business location, which makes them staff members of that location.
- Provide staff members at a business location with access to the customer cases and information for that location.
- Create teams of staff members to support accounts, consumers, and households.
- Provide the staff members on those teams with access that enables them to manage cases for their accounts, consumers, and households.

**Creating a business location**

To create a business location, see [Create an internal business location](#).

A business location can have one assigned manager and multiple assigned staff members. The manager and staff members for a business location are the internal employees (users with the snc_internal role) who work at that location. To assign these users:

- Add the name of the manager in the **Manager** field on the Internal Business Location form.
- Add staff members to the **Members** related list on the Internal Business Location form.

**Accessing business locations**

Managers have access to their business location and to the business locations that are designated as child locations in the hierarchy.

- When a user is added to the **Manager** field, the sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager role is automatically added to that user.
- You can add a user as the manager for multiple business locations.

Staff members with the location agent role or location consumer agent role can perform the following actions:

- Create cases for customers in their business locations.
- Access cases where the location in the **Service Organization** field on the Case form matches their business locations.

Create an internal business location

Create an internal business location.

Role required: admin

A business location has a manager. When you create a business location, you add a user to the **Manager** field on the Internal Business Location form. This user is automatically assigned the location manager role (sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager).

**Note:** Only internal users can be added as managers for internal business locations.

The manager of a business location can access all of the cases in the location hierarchy, including cases for child locations. The manager can also:

- Add staff members to business locations in the location hierarchy.
- Create account team or consumer team relationships with staff members from the location hierarchy.
• View customer information.
• Update cases created in the location hierarchy.
• Create cases for customers in the location hierarchy.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Service Organizations > Business Locations**.
2. Click **New** on the Business Locations list.
3. Fill in the fields on the **Internal Business Location** form.
4. Click **Submit**.

    The location is added to the Business Locations list.

After creating a business location, you can add staff members to the location and create relationships between staff members and accounts, households, and consumers.

### Add staff members to an internal business location

Add users as staff members to an internal business location so that they can support accounts, contacts, consumers, and households.

Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

You can add internal users with the snc_internal role as staff members to an internal business location.

- Administrators and customer service managers can add staff members to any internal business location.
- Location managers can add staff members to the internal business locations that they have access to.

**Note:** An internal user can be added as a staff member to one internal business location.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Service Organizations > Business Locations**.
2. Select a business location.
3. In the Members related list, click **Edit**.
4. Select the desired users and add them to the Members List.
5. Click **Save**.

### Create an account team member relationship

Create a relationship between a staff member at an internal business location and an account.

Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

You can assign internal users who have been added as staff members to an internal business location to an account relationship.

- Administrators and customer service managers can assign a staff member from any location.
- Location managers can assign staff members from the locations that they have access to.

Relationships are based on responsibilities. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that supports a customer or consumer. To create an account team member relationship, use the Account Manager responsibility.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Service Organizations > Business Locations**.
2. Select a business location.
3. In the Account Staff Relationships related list, click **New**.
   
   This related list shows the accounts that have a relationship with any staff member at that location.
4. In the **Account** field, select the account to which the staff member is assigned.
5. In the **Responsibility** field, select **Account Manager**.
6. In the **User** field, select the staff member to fulfill the responsibility.
7. Click **Submit**.
The relationship is added to the Account Staff Relationships related list.

Create a consumer team member relationship
Create a relationship between a staff member at an internal business location and a consumer.
Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager, sn_customerservice_manager, admin
Internal users who have been added as staff members to an internal business location can be assigned a consumer relationship.
- Administrators and customer service managers can assign a staff member from any location.
- Location managers can assign staff members from the locations that they have access to.

Relationships are based on responsibilities. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that supports a customer or consumer. To create a consumer relationship, use the Relationship Manager responsibility.

2. Select a business location.
3. In the Consumer Staff Relationships related list, click New.
   This related list shows the consumers that have a relationship to any staff member for the location.
4. In the Consumer field, select the consumer to which the internal user is assigned.
5. In the Responsibility field, select the Relationship Manager responsibility.
6. In the User field, select the staff member to fulfill the responsibility.
7. Click Submit.
   The relationship is added to the Consumer Staff Relationships related list.

Create a household team member relationship
Create a relationship between a staff member at an internal business location and a household.
Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager, sn_customerservice_manager, admin
Internal users who have been added as staff members to an internal business location can be assigned a household relationship.

Relationships are based on responsibilities. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that supports a customer or consumer. To create a household relationship, use the Relationship Manager responsibility.

2. Select a business location.
3. In the Household Staff Relationships related list, click New.
   This related list shows the households that have a relationship to any staff member for the location.
4. In the Household field, select the consumer to which the internal user is assigned.
5. In the Responsibility field, select the Relationship Manager responsibility.
6. In the User field, select the staff member to fulfill the responsibility.
7. Click Submit.
   The relationship is added to the Household Staff Relationships related list.

Create and manage cases for a business location
Staff members with the location agent role can create and manage cases for their business location.
Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent, sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager
Staff members with the location agent role can do the following:
- View information for the customers at their location.
- Create cases for the accounts, contacts, households, and consumers at their location.
- Create consumers.
• Update cases created at their location.

A case belongs to one business location. When a case is created by a location agent or manager, the Service Organization on the Case form is automatically updated with the business location to which the agent or manager belongs. If the case is reassigned, this field is updated to that of the new agent or manager.

If the location agent or manager belongs to multiple locations, the Service Organization field may be left blank. When you fill in this field, select carefully as the service organization controls a location agent's access to cases.

The Service Organization can be set manually for a new case or changed for an existing case. Changing the Service Organization does not change the assigned agent.

Location agents and managers can create cases for business locations without adding an account or contact or a consumer. The location agent or manager who creates the case is added to the Opened by field.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Cases and click Create New.
2. Optional: Select the type of case that you want to create.
3. Fill in the fields on the Case form.
4. Click Submit.

Industry data model households
The household entity represents a group of consumers that usually share a common address and use services as a group.

A household is made up of consumers who have been added as members of that household.

Note: A household has an address and consumers have their own addresses. These addresses do not need to be the same in order to add a consumer as a member to a household.

With the household entity, you can:

• Create households and add consumers as household members.
• Create cases for households and household members.
• Create relationships between household members. These relationships authorize one household member to manage cases on behalf of another member.
• Create relationships between staff members and households or household members that enable the staff members to manage cases for those households and members.
• Track information for households, including sold products, contracts, and entitlements.

Head of household

A household can have one member designated as the head of household. A consumer who is added as the head of household is automatically added as a member of the household.

The head of household has access to all of the cases and information for the household and the other household members. The head of household can also see:

• The sold products for the household.
• The sold products and install base items for household members.

Household information

Households can have multiple members. These members can be either consumers or consumer users. Consumers can also belong to multiple households.
Membership in a household is defined by the Start Date and End Date on the Household Member form. A household member is considered to be a current member if:

- The Start Date field is empty or is filled in with today's date.
- The Start Date field is filled in with a past date and the End Date field is empty or is filled in with today's date or a future date.

Only one record with current membership dates is allowed for each consumer in a household. A consumer can leave and rejoin a household multiple times. This information is recorded using the start and end dates.

As members are added or removed from a household, the member history is retained. You can find this information in the following related lists on the Household form.

- **Current Members**: the consumers currently in the household.
- **All Members**: current and past members of a household. This list provides a history of the household. Members can appear multiple times in this list.

On the Household form, you can also find information about household cases and products in the following related lists:

- **Cases**: the cases that have been created for all of the members within a household
- **Sold Products**: the products owned by the household. These products can be owned or shared by multiple household members.

**Household member relationships**

The following types of relationships can be created for households and household members. These relationships are included in the following related lists on the Household form:

- **Member Relationships**: relationships that have been established between household members. These relationships are created using the Authorized Representative responsibility. Household members that have an Authorized Representative relationship with another household member can act on behalf of that member and can manage cases and information for that member.
- **Household Team**: relationships that have been established between an agent and a household. These relationships are created using the Relationship Manager responsibility. Agents that have a Relationship Manager relationship with a household can manage all of the cases for that household.

**Consumer relationships**

The following types of relationships can be created for consumers.

- **Consumer Relationships**: relationships that have been established between two consumers, regardless of household. These relationships are created using the Authorized Representative responsibility. Consumers that have an Authorized Representative relationship with another consumer can manage cases for that consumer.
- **Consumer Team**: relationships that have been established between an agent and a consumer. These relationships are created using the Relationship Manager responsibility. Agents that have a Relationship manager relationship with a consumer can access all of the cases for that consumer.

Create or update a household

Create a household.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, admin

A household is made up of a group of consumers who live at a common address and share products and services.
A household can have a designated head of household and multiple current members. The head of household has access to all of the cases and information for the other household members.

A user with the system administrator role can create a household. This user can also delete a household. When a household is deleted, the system clears the references and associations to the household, including members, sold products, cases, and work orders, but does not delete these associated entities.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customers > Households**.
2. Click **New** on the Households list.
3. Fill in the fields on the **Household** form.
4. Click **Submit**.
   
The household is added to the Households list.

Add consumers to a household
Add consumers as members of a household.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, admin

You can add existing consumers from the Consumer table to a household.

- A household can have multiple consumers.
- A consumer can belong to multiple households. One household can be designated as the primary household for that consumer.

Household member records are added to the Household Member table. When a consumer is added to a household, the consumer is assigned a unique household member number that begins with the prefix HM.

The Household form includes the following related lists for household members:

- **Current Members**: consumers that belong to the household as of the current date.
- **All Members**: current members and past members. The customer service manager or admin can indicate that a consumer no longer belongs to the household by adding a date to the **End Date** field. A consumer that has left a household can be added back to that household.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customer > Households**.
2. Select a household.
3. In the Current Members related list, click **New**.
4. Add a user from the Consumer table in the **Consumer** field.
   
The **Household** field is automatically updated with the household selected in step 2.
5. Optional: If desired, add the date that the consumer was added to the household in the **Start Date** field.
   
The **End Date** field can be added if the consumer is removed from the household.
6. Click **Submit**.
   
The consumer is added to the Current Members related list.

On the Consumer form for this consumer, the household is added to the following related lists:

- **Current Households**
- **All Households**

   **Note**: You may need to configure the Consumer form to display these related lists. For more information, see **Configure industry data models**.

Create a relationship between household members
Create a relationship between two consumers who are current members of the same household.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, admin
Relationships are based on responsibilities. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that supports a customer or consumer. To create a relationship between two consumers in a household, use the Authorized Representative responsibility.

2. Select a household.
3. In the Member Relationships related list, click New.
   This related list shows the current relationships that exist between consumers in this household. When you click New, a new Household Member Relationship is displayed with the Household field already filled in.
4. In the Consumer is field, select the consumer in the household to fulfill the responsibility on behalf of another consumer within the same household.
5. In the Responsibility field, select the Authorized Representative responsibility.
6. In the of Consumer field, select the consumer who is being represented by the consumer in the Consumer is field.
7. Click Submit.

The relationship is added to the Member Relationships related list.

Create a relationship between two consumers
Create a relationship between two consumers, regardless of household.

Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

Relationships are based on responsibilities. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that supports a customer or consumer. To create a relationship between two consumers, use the Authorized Representative responsibility.

2. Select a consumer.
3. In the Consumer Relationships related list, click New.
   This related list shows the current relationships that exist for the selected consumer. When you click New, a new Consumer to Consumer Relationship form is displayed with the Consumer is field filled in.
4. In the Responsibility field, select the Authorized Representative responsibility.
5. In the of Consumer field, select the consumer who is being represented by the consumer in the Consumer is field.
6. Click Submit.

The relationship is added to the Consumer Relationships related list.

Create and manage cases for a consumer or household
Staff members with the location agent role can create and manage cases for consumers and households.

Role required: sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent, sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent, sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager

Staff members at a business location who have either the location agent or consumer location agent role can create cases for households and consumers.

Staff members or internal users who have a relationship with a household (based on the Relationship Manager responsibility) can create cases for that household and its members. Users with relationships to a household are listed in the following locations:
• The Household Team related list on the Household form.
• The Household Team Members list.

Relationship managers can perform the following actions on the cases that they can access:
• Add comments and work notes.
• Add attachments.
Close cases.

When a consumer case is created or updated, the consumer receives an email notification. If a household is added to a case, the head of household is also notified when the case is created or updated.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Cases** and click **Create New**.
2. Optional: Select the type of case that you want to create.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Add a consumer.</strong></td>
<td>Select a consumer in the <strong>Consumer</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the consumer belongs to only one household, the <strong>Household</strong> field is automatically updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the consumer belongs to more than one household, select a household from the households that a consumer belongs to in the <strong>Household</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the consumer does not belong to a household, you can leave the <strong>Household</strong> field empty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Add a household.** | Select a household in the **Household** field.                              |
|                     | • If the household only has only one current member, the **Consumer** field is automatically updated. |
|                     | • If the household has multiple current members, select a consumer from the household members in the **Consumer** field. |

4. Fill in the remaining fields on the **Case form**.
5. If desired, add other members of the household to the watch list.

If a user with a Relationship Manager relationship is creating a case for a household or household member, this user is automatically added to the watch list.

6. Click **Submit**.

The case is added to the Cases related list on the Household form.

Create entitlements for a household

Create entitlements for a household so that all household members are covered under the same terms and conditions.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, admin

System administrators and customer service managers can create entitlements for a household. These entitlements apply to the current members of that household.

When a case is created for a household or a consumer, the **Entitlement** field on the Case form lists the available entitlements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If these fields are filled in</th>
<th>The Entitlement field lists these entitlements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Household and Consumer</td>
<td>Entitlements for both the consumer and household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household</td>
<td>Entitlements for the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td>Entitlements for the consumer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Contracts > Entitlements**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Select a household in the **Household** field.

When you select a household, the head of household is automatically added to the **Consumer** field.
4. Optional: If desired, select a different household member in the **Consumer** field.
5. Fill in the remaining fields on the Entitlement form.
   For more information, see *Create entitlements for CSM entities*.
6. Click **Submit**.
   The entitlement is added to the Entitlements related list on the Household form.

Create service contracts for a household

Create service contracts for a household so that all household members are covered under the same terms and conditions.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_manager, admin

System administrators and customer service managers can create contracts for a household. These contracts apply to the current members of that household.

When a case is created for a household or a consumer, the **Contract** field on the Case form lists the available contracts:

- If the **Household** and **Consumer** fields are filled in, the **Contract** field lists the contracts for both the consumer and household.
- If only the **Household** field is filled in, the **Contract** field lists the contracts for the household.
- If only the **Consumer** field is filled in, **contracts** field lists the contracts for the consumer

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Contracts > Service Contracts**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Select a household in the **Household** field.
   When you select a household, the head of household is automatically added to the **Consumer** field.
   
   **Note:** You may need to configure the form layout and add the **Household** field.

4. Optional: If desired, select a different household member in the **Consumer** field.
5. Fill in the remaining fields on the Contract form.
   For more information, see *Create service contracts*.
6. Click **Submit**.
   The contract is added to the Contracts related list on the Household form.

Consumer Service Portal changes

**Work in progress** Changes to the Consumer Service Portal that are added with the Customer Service Household plugin.

**Viewing multiple households on the portal**

Consumers can belong to multiple households and can have one primary household. When the Customer Service Household plugin is activated, consumers who are logged in to the Consumer Service Portal can see the following information on their user profile page:

- The consumer’s primary household in the **Primary Household** field.
- The households that the consumer belongs to in the **Households list**.
Viewing household members on the portal

For consumers who are the head of household, the Support menu includes the **Household Members** menu item, which lists all current members of the household.

Selecting this menu item displays a page that lists the members of the households where the logged-in consumer is the head of household.

Creating cases for other members of a household or other consumers

A consumer can create cases for another consumer in the following instances:

- A consumer who is the head of a household can create cases for other members of the household.
- A consumer who is an authorized representative for another consumer can create cases on behalf of that consumer.

When creating a case, the head of household or authorized representative can select the household member in the **Consumer** field on the record producer.

- If the logged-in consumer belongs to only one household, the household is automatically added to the case when it is submitted.
- If the logged-in consumer belongs to more than one household, the correct household can be selected in the **Household** field on the record producer.
- If the household is selected first, the consumers listed in the **Consumer** field are restricted to the current members of the household.

The default selections for the **Household** and **Consumer** fields on the record producer include the primary household and the logged-in consumer.

Viewing and updating cases on the portal

The logged-in consumer can see the following cases on the portal:

- **All Cases**: all of the cases that belong to their household or that belong to consumers with which they are an authorized representative.
- **My Cases**: the cases created by the logged-in consumer.

The head of household or authorized representative can perform the following actions for the cases that belong to their household:

- Add comments and attachments.
- Accept or reject a solution.
- Close a case.

Consumer case information

When the Customer Service Household plugin is activated, the Ticket Fields details tab includes the **Consumer** field.

Playbooks for Customer Service Management

Playbooks provide step-by-step guidance for completing the tasks needed to resolve specific types of customer service cases.
Use the playbooks feature to easily manage the lifecycle of specific customer service case types. The workflows that are associated with a case type and the steps that need to be completed to resolve cases of this type are detailed in the playbook.

A playbook takes a workflow and breaks it into multiple stages. Each stage includes:

- A list of activities or steps that the agent needs to perform.
- Status indicators that display the current state of each activity or step.
- Check boxes and counters that indicate where an agent is in the workflow.

Playbooks are created using the *Process Automation Designer* platform feature.

**Plugin information**

Users with the system administrator role can activate the Playbooks for Customer Service Management plugin (com.sn_csm_playbook).

This plugin requires activation of the following plugins:

- Playbook Experience (sn_playbook_exp)
- Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)

**Available playbooks**

The following playbooks are available for Customer Service Management from the ServiceNow Store.

*Case playbook for onboarding*

Use the case playbook for onboarding to manage the process for taking on new customers or enrolling customers for new products. This playbook provides an end-to-end lifecycle for the tasks performed during the onboarding process, from initiation to completion.

*Case playbook for complaints*

Use the case playbook for complaints to manage the process for handling customer complaints. This playbook provides an end-to-end lifecycle for the tasks performed during the complaint handling process, from the time a complaint is logged to the final resolution and communication to the customer.

*Case playbook for product support*

Use the case playbook for product support to guide customer service agents through the steps that are required to resolve product issues.

For more information, see *Install a ServiceNow Store application*

*Case playbook for onboarding*

Use the case playbook for onboarding to manage the process for taking on new customers or enrolling customers for new products.

The onboarding playbook is available in CSM Agent Workspace for cases that are created using the Onboarding case type (sn_onboarding_case). The onboarding playbook appears in the Playbook related list on the Case form for onboarding cases.

**Onboarding playbook stages and steps**

A playbook is made up of stages and each stage includes one or more steps. To use a playbook:

1. Expand a stage to see the steps.
2. Perform each of the steps in the stage and mark the steps as complete when finished.
3. When all of the steps in a stage have been completed, the stage is marked as complete and the case moves to the next stage.

The onboarding playbook includes the following stages and steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>Step Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initiate</strong></td>
<td>Collect customer information</td>
<td>This step shows the customer information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For an existing customer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The Account and Contact fields, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The Consumer field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For a new customer (the New customer check box on the Case form is enabled), the fields from the New Customer Information form section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Add or change information in these fields and click Save.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add additional members</td>
<td>This step shows a list of additional members added to the case. Add to this list as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Click Add new.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Select the related party Type, such as a beneficiary who is a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Select the User.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Click Save.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Users added during this step appear in the Member Information card and in the Additional Members related list. You can also add members from the Additional Members related list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Send for pre approval</td>
<td>Use this step to send a pre-approval request for the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Add comments to the Work notes field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Click Send for Pre Approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td>Steps</td>
<td>Step Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre approval</strong></td>
<td>Check approval status</td>
<td>This step includes a list of approvals and approvers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This step shows the list of approvals if an approval workflow is manually configured for an onboarding case. The approval workflow configuration is not provided out of box. If no approval workflow is configured, this step completes automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|             | Update customer information| If the pre-approval request has been approved, this step displays a card with customer fields based on customer type:  
• Account and Contact or  
• Consumer                                                                                                                                   |
|             | Pre approval case task     | An automatically generated case task for pre-approval.                                                                                                                                                      |
|             | Request information from customer | Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post.  
The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal. |
|             | Notify customer            | This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card.  
After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.                                                                                      |
| **Data capture** | Collect documents         | This step displays a document checklist based on the customer type:  
• Document Checklist - Business Customer  
• Document Checklist - Individual Customer  
Check off list items as they are completed.                                                                                                                                                               |
|             |                            | **Note:** If the customer type changes after the case is created, a new checklist of the appropriate type replaces the original checklist.                                                             |
|             | Data capture case task    | An automatically generated case task for data capture. Add work notes, additional comments, or attachments as needed and click Post to add the information to the case activity stream.  
You can close this case task when the document checklist is complete and all items have been checked off or if you provide additional comments. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>Step Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Due diligence</strong>&lt;br&gt;Displays the case tasks created for the case.</td>
<td>This stage displays a card for each case task, including:&lt;br&gt;• Perform Background Checks&lt;br&gt;• Initiate Legal Verification&lt;br&gt;• Review Credit History</td>
<td>The card for each case task includes information about the task, including the task number and state. For each case task, the agent can:&lt;br&gt;• View the case task form.&lt;br&gt;• Request additional information, if the task is in the Awaiting Info state, by entering the request in the Additional comments field. Task cards are automatically completed when the task is completed. Once all tasks are complete, the playbook moves to the Resolve stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resolve</strong>&lt;br&gt;Manages the case resolution activities.</td>
<td>Propose resolution</td>
<td>This step shows the fields from the Resolution Notes form section. Add the resolution details and click Propose Solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Playbook stages and case status

A customer service agent can see the playbook stage and case status as the onboarding case progresses toward a resolution.

The case stage and case status are related to each other as described in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initiate</td>
<td>New</td>
<td>An onboarding case is created in the <strong>Initiate</strong> stage with a status of <strong>New</strong>. An onboarding case can only be in the <strong>New</strong> state during the Initiate stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initiate</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>The state of an onboarding case state changes to <strong>Open</strong> when the case is assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Approval</td>
<td>Open, Awaiting Info</td>
<td>In the Pre-Approval stage, an onboarding case can be in either the <strong>Open</strong> or <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> states. The case moves to the <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Request Info</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Capture</td>
<td>Open, Awaiting Info</td>
<td>In the Data Capture stage, an onboarding case can be in either the <strong>Open</strong> or <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> states. The case moves to the <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Request Info</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due Diligence</td>
<td>Awaiting Info, Under Review</td>
<td>In the Due Diligence stage, an onboarding case can be in the <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> or <strong>Under Review</strong> states. The case moves to the <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Request Info</strong>. The case moves to the <strong>Under Review</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Submit for Review</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolve</td>
<td>Review Complete, Resolved</td>
<td>In the Resolve stage, an onboarding case can be in either the <strong>Review Complete</strong> or <strong>Resolved</strong> states. The case moves to the <strong>Review Complete</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Review Complete</strong>. The case moves to the <strong>Resolved</strong> state when an agent clicks <strong>Propose Solution</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Case playbook for complaints
Use the case playbook for complaints to manage the process for handling customer complaints.

The case playbook for complaints is available in CSM Agent Workspace for cases that are created using the complaint case type. The complaint playbook appears in the Playbook related list on the Case form for complaint cases.

Complaint playbook stages and steps

A playbook is made up of stages and each stage includes one or more steps. To use a playbook:

1. Expand a stage to see the steps.
2. Perform each of the steps in the stage and mark the steps as complete when finished.
3. When all of the steps in a stage have been completed, the stage is marked as complete and the case moves to the next stage.

The complaint playbook includes the following stages and steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>Step Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Intake  | Gather complaint details | This step shows the customer information:  
• The Account and Contact fields, or  
• The Consumer field.  
The agent can add details about the complaint, including:  
• Complaint type: product or location  
• Category: based on the complaint type  
• Sub-category: based on the category  
The agent can also note the complaint details and expected outcome.  
When the fields in this step are complete, click Save. |
| Add involved parties |                       | This step shows a list of the involved parties added to the case. Add to this list as follows:  
1. Click Add new to create an involved party in a new tab.  
2. Select the related party Type, such as a co-complainant who is a customer contact.  
3. Select the User.  
4. Click Save to add the user to the Involved Parties list.  
Users added during this step appear in the Involved Parties list in this step and in the Involved Parties related list. You can also add users from the Involved Parties related list. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>Step Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Verify primary address</td>
<td>This step shows the fields from the Primary Correspondence Address form section on the Details tab. The agent can accept this address or select a different address and click Save.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal. The agent can click Move to Triage to mark this stage as complete and move to the next stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triage</td>
<td>Review related search results</td>
<td>This step points the user to Agent Assist to review the related search results based on contextual search or machine learning (if agent intelligence is enabled). If no results are available, this step is skipped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Review knowledge articles</td>
<td>This step points the user to Agent Assist to review Knowledge articles based on contextual search. If no results are available, this step is skipped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal. The agent can click Submit for Review to mark this stage as complete and move to the next stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Notify customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td>Steps</td>
<td>Step Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research</td>
<td>Research task for complaint case</td>
<td>The research stage includes multiple case tasks that the agent can use as needed. The task information is updated on the task card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The agent can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the View Task icon to open the task form in a new tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Post to add the information in the Additional comments and Work notes fields to the case activity stream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Mark complete which closes the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Task cards are automatically completed when the task is completed. Once all tasks are complete, the playbook moves to the next stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request</td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal. The agent can also click Review Complete to mark this stage as complete and move to the next stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>Notify Customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond</td>
<td>Compose email</td>
<td>This step includes a case task for responding to the customer. In this step, the agent can click Compose Response to create an email draft in a new tab. Compose the text of the email and click Save or Send. Click Mark Complete to close the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the Additional comments field and click Post. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolve</td>
<td>Propose Solution</td>
<td>This step shows the fields from the Resolution Notes form section. Add the resolution details and click Propose Solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>Notify Customer</td>
<td>This step automatically sends an email to the customer and updates the Email details card. After the email is sent, this step is marked as complete.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Case playbook for product support
Use the case playbook for product support to manage the process for resolving product issues.
This playbook can be used by agents who are working on product support cases. It provides step-by-step assistance to help agents complete the various troubleshooting steps and tasks needed to resolve product issues.
The case playbook for product support builds on the Customer Service Management case and is available in Agent Workspace for newly created product support cases. This playbook appears in the Playbook related list on the Case form.

Product support playbook stages and steps
A playbook is made up of stages and each stage includes one or more steps. To use a playbook:

1. Expand a stage to see the steps.
2. Perform each of the steps in the stage and mark the steps as complete when finished.
3. When all of the steps in a stage have been completed, the stage is marked as complete and the case moves to the next stage.

The case playbook for product support includes the following stages and steps.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>Step Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Investigate</strong></td>
<td>Review case details</td>
<td>A case is in the Investigate stage when the state is New or Open. This step shows the customer information: • The Account and Contact fields, or • The Consumer field. It also shows the product information. The agent can add details about the issue and review the information and related search results, such as knowledge articles or similar cases. Click <strong>Save</strong> to save the information and remain on this step. Click <strong>Mark Complete</strong> to save the information and move to the next step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the <strong>Additional comments</strong> field click <strong>Post</strong>. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Work in progress</strong></td>
<td>Create case tasks</td>
<td>A case is in the Work in progress stage when the agent completes the initial research and begins working on the issue. Click <strong>Add New</strong> to create a case task in a new tab. Add information to the task and click <strong>Save</strong> to add the task to the Case Tasks list in this step. When a case task is created, the case work notes are copied to the case task work notes. Agents can create multiple case tasks. When the tasks in the Case Tasks list have been completed, click <strong>Mark Complete</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Request information from customer</td>
<td>Use this step to communicate with the customer. Add information to the <strong>Additional comments</strong> field click <strong>Post</strong>. The information is added to the activity stream on the case, which the customer can see from the web portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resolve and close</strong></td>
<td>Resolve</td>
<td>Add details to the <strong>Resolution code</strong> and <strong>Resolution notes</strong> fields on the Case form and click <strong>Save</strong>. This information is added to the card in this step. Click <strong>Propose Solution</strong> to send an email to the customer and mark the step as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Close case</td>
<td>This step shows the following read-only fields: • Closed by • Closed The case is closed when the customer accepts the case resolution from the self-service portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mobile experience for Customer Service Management

Manage customer service cases from a mobile device with the Customer Service Management mobile application. Stay connected and access information in real time to complete tasks quickly.

Customer service agents and managers can use the Customer Service Management mobile application to review case details and quickly complete case tasks. Agents and customer service managers can perform routine actions and approvals effectively anytime and anywhere. Activate the Customer Service Mobile Plugin (com.sn_cs_mobile) to use the available features. For using the change request feature, Customer Service with Service Management (com.sn_cs_sm) plugin is required. For activating plugins, see Activate a plugin.

Note: The Customer Service Management mobile application supports product cases.

Customer Service mobile application applet launcher for agent

With the customer service agent role (sn_customerservice_agent), you can:

- Get a quick overview of your case load, including new cases, critical cases, and those that need attention.
- Accept and reassign cases.
- Add comments or work notes to cases.
- Review case details, activity stream, and related information such as SLAs, case tasks, and child cases.
- Edit case information such as priority.
- Propose major cases.
- Receive push notifications for assigned or updated cases.
- Search for cases using keywords

With the system administrator role, you can configure the Customer Service Management mobile application in the following ways:

- Configure pages to display the desired data.
- Configure the functions associated with swipe actions and top menu actions.
• Configure and create push notifications.

![Customer Service mobile application applet launcher for manager](image)

With the customer service manager role (sn_customerservice_manager) you can:

• Search for cases using keywords
• Review and approve change requests
• Approve escalations

**Activate the Customer Service Mobile plugin**

The Customer Service Management mobile application runs on the ServiceNow® mobile platform.

To use the Customer Service Management mobile application, activate the Customer Service Mobile plugin (com.sn_csm_mobile). This plugin activates the following plugins:

• Mobile Agent Native Client plugin (com.glide.sg.agent_native_client)
• Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)
• Customer Service Case Action Status (com.sn.csm_action_status)

To provide support for major cases, you can activate the optional Major Issue Management plugin (com.sn_majorissue_mgt).

Once the Customer Service Management mobile application is activated and configured, agents can download the ServiceNow Agent mobile app on their mobile devices and access ServiceNow instances.

**Note:** You can activate the Customer Service Mobile plugin (com.sn_csm_mobile) from the Customer Service Management guided setup.

For more information, see *Activate a plugin.*
Customer Service mobile application overview

Customer service agents and managers can use the applet launcher and applets in the Customer Service mobile application to view notifications and manage customer service cases.

Applet launchers

Applet launchers serve as landing pages or home pages. When you log in to your instance, you see an applet launcher and the applets configured to display on that launcher. The system administrator configures the applet launcher and applets for the Customer Service Management mobile application.

Navigation bar

The navigation bar appears at the bottom of the mobile application screen. This bar includes the following tabs that you can use to access different applets and application launch pages:

• **Cases**: displays the main case page. Use this applet launcher to access case management functionality.
• **Notifications**: view a list of the notifications that have been pushed to the agent. Tap a notification in the list to see the details, then tap the details open the case.
• **Settings**: manage settings for the mobile application.

Applets and cards

Select an applet from the applet launcher screen. Each applet contains one or more screens used to display records that correspond to the applet function. The Active Cases applet, for example, displays a list of all active case records.

The cases in the list are displayed as cards, with the case status displayed at the top of the card. To use the cards:

• Swipe a card left or right to see the available actions, then tap the desired action.
• Tap a card to see the record details such as activity, related list, and escalations if any.
• In the detail view:
  • Tap the top menu to see additional actions, then tap the desired action.
  • Select the back button to return to the list.

Applets provide a filter option if there is more than one case in the list. When you tap the applet, you see a list of filters that you can use to narrow down the list of cases.

Agent applets

Customer service agents have access to the following set of applets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applet</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Cases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needs Attention Cases</td>
<td>Cases that are waiting for the agent to take action. Includes cases in the Open, Awaiting Info, and Resolved states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Cases</td>
<td>Cases that are assigned to the agent. Includes cases Open, Awaiting Info, and Resolved states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Cases</td>
<td>Cases in the New state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applet</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active Critical Cases</td>
<td>Priority 1 cases in the Open, Awaiting Info, and Resolved states.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Cases in these lists are sorted by the last updated date in descending order, with the most recent updated case displayed first.

**Customer service card layout**

In a list view, case cards display the following information:

- Case state
- Case number
- Short description
- Contact
- Account

In the major case list view, case cards display the following information:

- Major case state
- Case number
- Short description
- Account

**Case form related lists**

Customer service agents can access the following Case form related lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLAs</td>
<td>Displays a list of SLAs for a case. View the following information for SLAs included in this list:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SLA Stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SLA Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Actual Elapsed Percentage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Actual Elapsed Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Detail view is not available from the SLA related list.
### Related list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Tasks        | Displays a list of case tasks. View the following information for case tasks included in this list:  
  - State  
  - Number  
  - Subject  
  - Assigned to  
  - Priority  

**Note:** Detail view is not available from the Tasks related list.

| Child Cases | Displays a list of child cases for a case. View the following information for child cases included in this list:  
  - Case number  
  - State  
  - Short description  
  - Account  
  - Contact  

Click a child case to view additional details on the Case form.

### Notifications

Agents can receive notifications in the Customer Service mobile application when cases are assigned, are commented, or need attention. The following notifications are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case assignment</td>
<td>When a case is assigned to an agent by someone else, a notification is sent to the agent selected in the Assigned to field. The notification includes the case number, state, priority, and short description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case comments</td>
<td>When information is added to a case in the Additional comments or Work notes fields by someone other than the assigned agent, a notification is sent to the user selected in the Assigned to field. The notification includes the case number, priority, and short description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needs attention flag is checked</td>
<td>When the Needs attention flag is checked on the Case form, a notification is sent to the agent in the Assigned to field. The notification includes the case number, state, priority, and short description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case escalation</td>
<td>When an escalation is raised, users who are part of the group that has permissions to approve are notified. The approvers review and approve them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change requests</td>
<td>When a change request is raised, users who are part of the group that has permissions to approve are notified. The approvers review and approve them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Get started with the Customer Service mobile application**

Use the ServiceNow Agent mobile app to access the Customer Service mobile application. Then log in to an instance as an agent or manager and work on your customer service cases.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_manager

1. Depending on your device, go to the Apple App Store or the Google Play Store and download the ServiceNow Agent mobile app.
2. *Log in to an instance.*
3. Tap **Customer Service** to open the application and display the applet launcher.
4. Manage your customer service cases based on your role. For more information about the agent and manager tasks, see *Use mobile application to perform agent and manager tasks.*

**Use mobile application to perform agent and manager tasks**

Customer service agents manage cases and real-time notifications help in taking immediate action. Customer service managers can approve escalations and perform tasks on major issues with a swipe.

Agents (sn_customerservice_agent) and customer service managers (sn_customerservice_manager) can perform routine actions and approvals effectively anytime and anywhere.

**Agent tasks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent tasks</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accept a case</td>
<td>Swipe left and tap <strong>Accept</strong>.</td>
<td>Accept a case that has been assigned to you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Add comments to a case       | • Swipe right and tap **Add Comments**.  
                               • Tap the top menu and select **Add Comments**.       | Add information to the case **Work Notes** or **Additional Comments** fields.                  |
| Assign a case to another agent | • Swipe left and tap **Assign**.  
                               • Tap the top menu and select **Assign**.        | This action is available for unassigned cases. Select to display the **Assignment Group** and **Assigned To** fields and make the assignments. |
| Assign a case to yourself    | • Swipe left and tap **Assign to me**.  
                               • Tap the top menu and select **Assign to me**.  | Assign an unassigned case to yourself.                                                         |
<p>| Close a case                 | Tap the top menu and select <strong>Close Case</strong>.        | Select to display the <strong>Resolution Code</strong> and <strong>Resolution Notes</strong> fields, which are mandatory fields for completing this action. Enable the check box to add the resolution code to the <strong>Additional Comments</strong> field. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent tasks</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit a case</td>
<td>Tap the top menu and select <strong>Edit Case</strong>.</td>
<td>You can edit the following fields in the Case form:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Needs attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Assignment group: selecting an assignment group clears the value in the <strong>Assigned to</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigned to: if a group is selected in the <strong>Assignment group</strong> field, the list of available users belong to that group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open a case</td>
<td>Tap the top menu and select <strong>Open Case</strong>.</td>
<td>Open a case and change the state from <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> or <strong>Resolved</strong> to <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propose a case as a major case</td>
<td>Tap the top menu and select <strong>Propose Major Case</strong>.</td>
<td>Propose a case as a major case candidate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This action is available if the Major Issue Management plugin is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propose a solution for a case</td>
<td>Tap the top menu and select <strong>Propose Solution</strong>.</td>
<td>Select to display the <strong>Resolution Code</strong> and <strong>Resolution Notes</strong> fields, which are mandatory fields for completing this action. Enable the check box to add the resolution code to the <strong>Additional Comments</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reassign a case to another agent</td>
<td>Swipe left and tap <strong>Reassign</strong>.</td>
<td>Available for assigned cases. Select to display the <strong>Assignment Group</strong> and <strong>Assigned To</strong> fields and change the assignments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request more information</td>
<td>• Swipe left and tap <strong>Request Info</strong>.</td>
<td>Add the request to the <strong>Additional Comments</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tap the top menu and select <strong>Request Info</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search for a case using keywords</td>
<td>Enter search keyword in the search bar.</td>
<td>All cases except those in &quot;Closed&quot; state are listed. From the top menu, you can request for information, escalate a case, propose a solution and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(role: sn_customerservice_agent or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate a case (role:</td>
<td>• Tap the top menu and select <strong>Escalate Case</strong> and fill in the</td>
<td>Enter the following information and click <strong>Submit</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_agent or</td>
<td>required information.</td>
<td>• <strong>Request Source</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.escalation_requester</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Reason</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Escalation Severity</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Escalation Template</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Escalation Justification</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent tasks</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View escalation</td>
<td>Click Escalations tab.</td>
<td>You can view details of the escalation such as escalation justification and the requester's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View change request (role: sn_customerservice_agent and sn_change_read)</td>
<td>Click on Change Request field on the case form.</td>
<td>The Change Request form view displays details about the schedule, planning, conflicts, and details of the change activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Manager tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manager tasks</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Approve escalations (role: approver_user) | • Navigate to My Approvals > Escalations.  
• Tap the top menu or swipe left.  
• Click Reject or Approve. | • Pending approvals are displayed based on the oldest request.  
• Click the Approved tab to check the escalation you approved.  
• Note: When an escalation is raised, users who are part of the group that has permissions to approve are notified. The approvers review and approve them. |
| Review and approve change requests (role: approver_user) | • Navigate to My Approvals > Change Requests on the case form.  
• Approve or Reject the change request that is in Assess state on the Change Requests form. | A change request requires team members or a manager to assess the change request. They evaluate the request and approve or reject.  
• Note: When a change request is raised, users who are part of the group that has permissions to approve are notified. The approvers review and approve them. |

Chat Zoom Connector

Resolve issues quickly and engage better with customers with video and screen sharing options in Zoom using the ServiceNow® Chat Zoom Connector application.

Request apps on the Store

Visit the ServiceNow Store website to view all the available apps and for information about submitting requests to the store. For cumulative release notes information for all released apps, see the ServiceNow Store version history release notes.
Overview

The Chat Zoom Connector application integrates the chat communication channel with the Notify communication channel by managing and initiating a Zoom meeting directly from a chat. An interaction record is created for each Zoom meeting initiated from a chat.

As an agent, you can use the Chat Zoom Connector application to initiate Zoom meetings from a customer chat and optionally record the meeting.

As an agent manager, you can access an interaction record of type Zoom to view the meeting details such as the meeting URL, participants, and recording.

To get started with the Chat Zoom Connector application, see Configure Chat Zoom Connector.

Key features

- Initiate Zoom meetings using the Quick Actions list in chats.
- Track Zoom meetings as interactions on the ServiceNow platform.
- Track participants in Zoom meetings.
- Post the meeting recording to the interaction activity stream.

Example scenario

The following example scenario shows the use of the Chat Zoom Connector application in resolving a configuration issue with an agent initiating a Zoom meeting directly from a customer chat.
Agent resolving a customer issue over Zoom

1. A customer engages with Support over chat to report an issue for a product.
2. An agent receives the chat request and realizes that the issue can be resolved through a minor configuration change.
3. The agent initiates a Zoom meeting using the Quick Actions list in the chat and invites the customer to join the meeting.
4. The customer shares the screen over Zoom and the agent guides the customer on updating the configuration and resolves the issue.

Pre-chat surveys

Use pre-chat surveys to capture preliminary information from a customer. From the responses received, Advanced Work Assignment (AWA) routes chat conversations to appropriate queues and groups. Before entering into a chat conversation, the assigned agent can review the context of the issue.
Pre-chat features

Pre-chat surveys provide the following advantages that help agents efficiently handle chat conversations:

Preconfigured pre-chat surveys

Pre-chat surveys determine the pre-chat questions presented to users. Preconfigured surveys are activated by default in the base system, but in order to avoid conflicts with previous configurations, customers who have upgraded have to manually activate them. These preconfigured surveys are:

- CSP Pre-Chat Survey - Collects preliminary information for logged-in customers.
- CSP Anonymous Pre-Chat Survey – Collects preliminary information for users who are not logged in.

You can define a different survey or modify these predefined surveys. For more information, see Define pre-chat survey configurations.

Routing chats to the correct queue

Advanced Work Assignment (AWA) leverages information captured through pre-chat surveys to route a chat to the right queue.

Identifying topics related to the chat issue

When customers enter a response to the standard pre-chat question "Please briefly describe your issue," Natural Language Understanding can help determine the appropriate Virtual Agent conversation topic. Relevant topics are automatically displayed to end users (requesters) rather than prompting them to choose from a list of conversation topics.

Configuring Pre-chat if you have upgraded

Some settings need to be configured if you have upgraded your ServiceNow® instance. For more information, see Configure Pre-chat after upgrading.

Plugins

You must activate the Consumer Service Portal (com.glide.service-portal.consumer-portal) and Glide Conversation Server (com.glide.cs) plugins. To activate the plugins, see Activate a plugin.

Configuring Customer Service Management

Use the Customer Service Management guided setup to configure the features, components, and integrations that you need to provide service and support to your customers.

Planning your Customer Service Management implementation

These questions about business models, customers, products and services, and the structure of your customer service organization can help you determine your customer service requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What type of services and support do you provide?</th>
<th>Customer Service Management supports these business models:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Business-to-business (B2B)</td>
<td>- Business-to-consumer (B2C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| What type of customers do you support?                                   | With the business-to-business (B2B) model, you can support accounts and contacts. Additionally, you can set up the following:  
  - Customer relationships  
  - Account teams  

  With the business-to-consumer B2C) model, you can support individual consumers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| What type of products do you support?                                   | With Customer Service Management, you can support:  
  - Product models and assets  
  - Product relationships  
  - Asset relationships  
  - Install base  
  - Service contracts and entitlements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| How is your customer service organization structured?                   | Customer Service Management can provide the following structure:  
  - Agent groups and group managers  
  - Skills required by agent groups                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| How do you route cases to your customer service agents?                 | Customer Service Management provides the following routing options:  
  - Matching rules  
  - Assignment rules  
  - Assignment workbench  
  - Advanced Work Assignment (AWA) for Workspace                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| How do your customers communicate with customer service agents?         | Customer Service Management provides the following communication channels:  
  - Chat  
  - Phone  
  - Email  
  - Self-service web portals  
    - Customer Service Portal (B2B)  
    - Consumer Service Portal (B2C)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| How do you capture and share knowledge with your customers?            | With Customer Service Management, you can use:  
  - Knowledge bases  
  - Knowledge search                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Activate Customer Service Management**

You can activate the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) if you have the admin role. This plugin includes demo data and activates related plugins if they are not already active.

Role required: admin

The Customer Service Management plugin activates these related plugins if they are not already active.
## Plugins automatically activated with Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Enables you to evaluate, score, and rank items, and provide normalized or weighted results from any table in the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.assessment_core]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Management</td>
<td>Manage your assets, consumables, and software licenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.asset_management]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment Workbench</td>
<td>Customer service managers can use the workbench to evaluate agents based on configurable criteria, such as skills and availability, and then assign tasks to the desired agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.assignment_workbench]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect Support</td>
<td>Builds on the Connect messaging platform and enables chat in a support queue. Agents can use chat to provide assistance to end users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.connect.support]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect Support Routing</td>
<td>Enables the routing of Connect Support requests to the appropriate chat queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.connect.support.routing]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Service Portal</td>
<td>This plugin enables the Consumer Service Portal, a web-based portal based on the Service Portal application that you can use to provide information and support to consumers. The Consumer Service Portal plugin activates these related plugins if they are not already active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.service-portal.consumer-portal]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Workspace</td>
<td>Enables Agent Workspace for Customer Service Management, a configurable service desk application that provides agents with an integrated and intuitive user experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.agent_workspace.csm]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Portal</td>
<td>This plugin enables the Customer Service Portal, a version of the web portal based on the Service Portal application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.service-portal.customer-portal]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Social Integration</td>
<td>Adds the necessary data schema changes for social integration scenarios.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_cs_social]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Spoke</td>
<td>Provides actions for flow designers to use when creating Customer Service Management business processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.customer_service.spoke]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explicit Roles</td>
<td>Adds the snc_external and snc_internal roles. For more information, see Explicit roles in CSM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.explicit_roles]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glide Conversation Server</td>
<td>Enables the Virtual Agent web clients, Connect Support, conversation branding settings, and Live Agent conversation settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.cs]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Openframe</td>
<td>An interface used to integrate external communication systems with the Now Platform. This plugin provides a UI frame that is accessible and available anywhere within ServiceNow application screens. The Customer Service Management application uses a combination of Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) and OpenFrame to provide phone support for customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_openframe]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plugin</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process Flow Formatter</td>
<td>Provides a graphical summary of the stages in a process. The formatter is typically shown at the top of forms that are part of a process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Matching Engine</td>
<td>Provides a tool for rule-based, task-to-resource matching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skills Management</td>
<td>Implements user and user group skills; based on the same principle as roles management with the mechanism of inheritance between user groups and users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Special Handling Notes                     | Activates the Special Handling Notes application, which enables users to quickly view brief messages about records. These notes can be displayed in an embedded list or related list on a record form or in a pop-up window. This plugin is installed with the Customer Service Management and Field Service Management applications. To use special handling notes with other tables:  
  - Configure the table and any related fields to use special handling notes.  
  - Configure the form to show special handling notes. |
| State Flows                                | Customize transitions from one state to another in tables derived from the Task [task] table and configure the system to perform work during transitions to specific states. |
| Subscriptions and Activity Feed Framework  | Provides a generic set of artifacts to handle subscriptions for any defined subscribable object.  
  Any entity can be defined as a subscribable object and a set of subscribers can subscribe to the objects. When an event occurs related to the subscribable object, activities can be tracked and subscribers can be notified. |
| Task Activities                            | Enables support for activities on task tables.                               |
| Virtual Agent Service Portal Widgets       | Activates the Service Portal as a Virtual Agent web client.                 |

1. Navigate to System Applications > All Available Applications > All.
2. Find the plugin using the filter criteria and search bar.
   You can search for the plugin by its name or ID. If you cannot find a plugin, you may have to request it from ServiceNow personnel. To request a plugin, follow the steps in Request a plugin.
3. Click Install, and then in the Activate Plugin dialog box, click Activate.

**Note:** When domain separation and delegated admin are enabled in an instance, the administrative user must be in the global domain. Otherwise they will receive the following error: Application installation is unavailable because another operation is running: Plugin Activation for <plugin name>.
You can activate several related plugins after activating the Customer Service Management plugin (com.sn_customerservice). For details, see Additional plugins for Customer Service Management.

**Additional plugins for Customer Service Management**

After Customer Service Management is activated, you can activate additional plugins that provide demo data and enable various features.

You must have the admin role to activate these additional plugins. For details, see Activate a plugin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent Schedule</td>
<td>Enables customer service agents and field service technicians to see work schedules and assignments and also add personal events such as meetings or appointments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.agent_schedule]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anonymous Connect Support</td>
<td>Enables consumers to chat with consumer service agents from the Consumer Service Portal without logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.glide.connect_anonymous_support]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Assignment Workbench Demo</td>
<td>Provides demo data, such as sample cases and users, so that the Assignment Workbench product features can be demonstrated on a non-production instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.case_assignment_workbench_demo]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Digests</td>
<td>Enables users to send case status updates and root cause analysis to customers and key internal stakeholders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_csm_case_digest]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts</td>
<td>Enables users who are internal to an organization to be the proxy case contact on behalf of customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTI Softphone</td>
<td>This plugin is a demo application that enables Twilio integration using the Notify application and OpenFrame to provide soft phone functions and call center capabilities. The application includes the capabilities to make, receive, transfer, hold, and mute calls. The Customer Service Management and Incident Management applications provide Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) demo workflows. Activate the respective applications to run the workflows. The CTI Softphone plugin activates these related plugins if they are not already active:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.cti]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Central</td>
<td>Enables customer service agents to access all customer information and activity in a single, centralized view on Agent Workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_csm_customer_central]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Communities</td>
<td>Enables users to connect, engage, and collaborate with employees, customers, partners, and prospects. Available to customers who are licensed for Customer Service Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_customer_communities]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Case Action Status</td>
<td>Provides a Customer Service-specific application of the Action Status Automation feature. Use this plugin to display and track blocking tasks for customer service cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.csm_action_status]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plugin</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service CTI Demo Data</td>
<td>Provides demo data for the CTI Softphone application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.customerservice_citi_demo]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Document Template</td>
<td>Enables you to configure the fields from a table record that are included in an output document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_csm_doc_template]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Install Base Management</td>
<td>Enables customers to capture the current state of a customer's install base and establish the relationship to any downstream entities that might impact their functioning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.install_base]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.customerservice.demo]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Management for Orders</td>
<td>Extends Customer Service Management to support order-related issues by integrating with order management systems to create and resolve customer requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.csm.order]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Mobile</td>
<td>Enables the mobile user interface for Customer Service Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_csm_mobile]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations</td>
<td>Provides predefined Customer Service Virtual Agent topics (chatbot conversations) designed to help your customers complete common self-service tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_csm.virtualagent]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service with Field Service Management</td>
<td>This plugin provides an integration between the Customer Service Management and Field Service Management applications. Customers and consumers can view case-related work orders from the Customer Service and Consumer Service Portals. In the Field Service Management application, users can view account and contact information on work orders and work order tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.csm_fsm_integration]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_cs_sm_request]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.sn_cs_sm]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service with Service Portfolio Management</td>
<td>Provides an integration between the Customer Service Management and the Service Portfolio Management (SPM) application. This integration gives customer service managers, customer service agents, and service owners visibility into sold products and their service offerings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_csm_spm]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incident Assignment Workbench Demo</td>
<td>Intelligent agent recommendation through dynamic matching rules/criteria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(com.snc.incident_assignment_workbench_demo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions</td>
<td>Enables the framework and execution engine for creating guided decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions - Guidance</td>
<td>Enables the framework for creating a guidance for guided decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions_guidance]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Decisions for Playbook in Workspace</td>
<td>Enables activity types, definitions, and UI components for the display of guided decisions in a playbook on Workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[com.snc.guided_decisions_playbook_experience]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plugin</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Knowledge Product Entitlements  
[com.snc.kb_product_entitlements] | This plugin enables customer service administrators to restrict customer access to designated knowledge bases and knowledge articles on the customer self-service portal.  
This plugin adds the Knowledge Product Entitlements menu to the application navigator. |
| Major Issue Management  
[com.sn_majorissue_mgt] | A set of capabilities used to manage customer-facing communications and resolution processes for common issues. |
| Outsourced Customer Service  
(com.snc.csm_ocs) | The Outsourced Customer Service plugin adds the Outsourced Customer Service module to the application navigator. Users with the administrator role can access this module. |
| Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service  
[com.snc.pa.customer_service] | Performance Analytics content pack that includes Customer Service base system KPIs. |
| Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service Management - Advanced  
| Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Customer Service  
| Performance Analytics - Context Sensitive Analytics for Customer Service  
[com.snc.pa.cs.context_sensitive_analytics] | This plugin you to open context-sensitive dashboards in customer service forms based on UI actions.  

**Note:** You can activate Performance Analytics solutions on instances that do not have Performance Analytics to evaluate the functionality. However, to collect scores for indicators you must license Performance Analytics. |
| Performance Analytics Premium for Customer Service  
[com.snc.pa.premium.cs] | Installing this plugin removes the limitations of the out of box Performance Analytics. |
| Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management  
[com.snc.csm_ml] | Enables customers to leverage machine learning algorithms for searching related cases in Customer Service Management. Activation of this plugin on production instances may require a separate license. Contact ServiceNow for details.  
The Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin activates these related plugins if they are not already active:  
• Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice)  
• Predictive Intelligence for Contextual Search plugin (com.snc.contextual_search_ml)  
• Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results plugin (com.snc.adv_cxs_results_email_script) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proactive Customer Service Operations [com.snc.proactive_cs_ops]</td>
<td>Enables customers to create cases proactively from alerts either manually or through automation and track the accounts and the corresponding install base items affected by the alert.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service [com.snc.pa.self_service_analytics_csm] | Tracks case reduction (deflection) metrics and self-service KPIs using performance analytics dashboards. Activation of this plugin on production instances may require a separate Performance Analytics license. Contact ServiceNow for details. The Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service plugin activates these related plugins if they are not already active:  
  - Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice)  
  - Self-Service Analytics Core plugin (com.snc.self_service_analytics_core)  
  - Self-Service Analytics PA plugin (com.snc.pa.self_service_analytics) |
| Self Service Password Reset [com.snc.password_reset] | This plugin allows locally authenticated users to request a temporary password if they forget their current one. Customer contacts can request a new password from the customer self-service portal. The Self Service Password Reset plugin activates the Password Reset plugin (com.glideapp.password_reset) if it is not already active. |
| Special Handling Notes Demo Data [com.snc.shn_demo] | Provides demo data for the Special Handling Notes application. |
| Targeted Communications [com.sn_publications] | Provides a tool for publishing and distributing content and articles to both internal and external customers. |
| Targeted Communications Demo Data [com.snc.publications_demo] | Provides demo data for the Targeted Communications application. |
| Walk-up Experience for CSM [com.snc.walkup_for_csm] | Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management application enables you to set up a contact channel to support both online check-in and onsite check-in to a pre-established walk-up service center. |

### Customer Service properties

Use system properties to customize the Customer Service Management application.

These properties control settings for several different features, including email communication, asset contact relationships, and the Consumer Service Portal.

To access these properties, navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**.

### Configure foundation data

With Customer Service Management, you can import or create customer information including names, addresses, and phone numbers; account details; products and assets; and service contracts. You can also assign roles to users and create customer relationships.

Role required: admin
Foundation data includes all of the data that you need to configure in order to support your customers. This includes information about:

- Customers (external users)
- Customer relationships
- Users (internal users such as agents and employees)
- Customer and user roles
- Products and assets
- Service contracts and entitlements

You can import and configure most of this foundation data using the Customer Service Management guided setup. This feature takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

To create new data, such as adding new accounts and contacts, you can use the Customer Service Management application.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**.
   
The guided setup reopens with a page of different categories of Customer Service Management features that you can configure.
3. In the Foundation Data category, click **Get Started**.
   
The Foundation Data page opens with a list of tasks to configure the different types of customer information.
4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

### Foundation Data configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import Accounts</td>
<td>In the business-to-business (B2B) model, an account is a supported external customer. Import and verify existing account data. <strong>Note:</strong> After importing customer account data, you must also set the account code system property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Contacts (B2B)</td>
<td>A contact is a user who is an employee of an account. Import and verify existing contact data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Consumers (B2C)</td>
<td>A consumer is a customer in the business-to-consumer (B2C) business model. Import and verify existing consumer data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Users</td>
<td>A user is an individual who can access your instance. Import and verify existing user data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Groups</td>
<td>A group is a set of users who share a common purpose. Import and verify existing group data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Group Members</td>
<td>The users associated with a group are listed as group members. Import and verify existing group member data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Assign Roles                  | Roles control access to features and capabilities. The Customer Service Management application provides two types of roles:  
                               | • Internal roles for agents and managers  
                               | • External roles for customers, customer partners, and consumers  
                               | Assign the necessary roles to internal and external users.                                                                                                                                 |
| Create Customer Relationships | Create relationships between partners, contacts, and customers to make account and asset management easy and flexible.  
                               | You can create the following types of relationships:  
                               | • Bi-directional account relationships  
                               | • Account hierarchy  
<pre><code>                           | • Contact relationships                                                                                                                                 |
</code></pre>
<p>| Import Product Models         | A product is a type of good or service that your company sells and supports. Product models identify different types of products, such as service, hardware, software, or consumables. |
| Import Sold Products          | Sold products are products and components that have been sold to an account or a consumer. Importing sold products provides an overview of the complete product sold to an account or consumer. |
| Create product model and catalog items relationships | Enable self-service for customers to request services on products by creating relationships between product models and catalog items. |
| Import Install Base Items     | Install base items represent the instances that have been configured for a customer. Each install base item references the configuration item record for the customer. |
| Import Installed Products     | Installed products create an association between sold products and install base items. Installed products also provide information on the sold products and how they are deployed or installed. |
| Import Assets                 | An asset is a specific product or instance that is supported for a customer. There are different types of assets and Information for each type of asset is stored in a different table. |
| Create Asset Contact Relationships | Assign assets to the customer contacts who are responsible for managing those assets. If desired, enable a property that limits access to asset information to just the assigned contacts. |
| Create Service Contracts      | A service contract contains information about the type of support that is provided to a customer and can include coverage for specific assets. It can also include multiple service entitlements and SLAs. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Entitlements</td>
<td>An entitlement defines the type of support that a customer receives as well as the supported communication channels. Entitlements are counted and tracked using two types of units: cases and hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Account Teams</td>
<td>Account teams are made up of employees who fulfill specific jobs or roles for a particular account. Create these roles, or responsibility definitions, and then assign them to employees and contacts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configure accounts and contacts**

An account is a supported external customer and a contact is a user who is an employee of an account.

Role required: admin

There are two types of accounts: customer accounts and partner accounts. The **Customer** and **Partner** fields on the Account form denote the account type. An account can be a customer account, a partner account, or both.

A partner is a supported external customer that sells to and supports other customers. A partner can report and manage cases on behalf of customers. A partner can also be a customer.

**Note:** After importing customer account data, you must also set the account code system property.

An account can have multiple contacts but a contact can be associated with only one account. A contact can have one or more associated assets and service contracts. A contact can also have a user ID and can log in to the customer portal.

**Note:** A contact is a user in the system. If you create a contact, that person is also added to the User table (sys_user).

- You can import existing accounts and contacts using guided setup.
- You can create new accounts and contacts using the Customer Service Management application.

**Import accounts and contacts with guided setup**

Use Customer Service Management guided setup to import existing accounts and contacts.

Role required: admin

After importing customer account data, you must also set the account code system property.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Foundation Data category, click **Get Started**.
3. Click one of the following:
   - **Import Accounts**
   - **Import Contacts**
4. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
5. Create a transform map.
6. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
7. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Set the account code property

After importing customer account information, update the **com.snc.cs_base.last.generated.code.tree.path** property with the correct account code value.
Role required: admin

The `com.snc.cs_base.last.generated.code.tree.path` system property stores the Account Code value for the most recently created customer account in the Account (customer_account) table.

When you create a new customer account record, the system uses this property to determine a unique account code value for the account. The property is then updated with this latest assigned value so that the next account code value can be set as a unique value for the next account record insert.

The value of the `com.snc.cs_base.last.generated.code.tree.path` property must match the value of the Account Code field for the last inserted customer account record. When you create customer account records by importing data from other sources or instances, these values can get out of sync. If these values do not match, the system generates an error upon creation of the next new record in the Account table:

```
java.sql.BatchUpdateException: Duplicate entry for key account_path
```

Use the steps below to fix this error.

1. Determine the account code for the last created account.
3. Set the `com.snc.cs_base.last.generated.code.tree.path` property to the value determined in step 1.

Create customer accounts
An account is a supported external customer. Use the Customer Service Management application to create account records.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

There are two types of accounts: customer accounts and partner accounts. The Customer and Partner fields on the Account form denote the account type. An account can be a customer account, a partner account, or both.

A partner is a supported external customer that sells to and supports other customers. A partner can report and manage cases on behalf of customers. A partner can also be a customer.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Customer and click one of the following actions:
   - To create a customer account, click Accounts.
   - To create a partner account, click Partners.

2. Click New and fill in the fields on the Account form.
3. Click Submit.

Create additional account addresses
An account can have multiple addresses, such as a main address as well as shipping and billing addresses.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

The main address for an account is stored in fields on the Account form. Shipping and billing addresses for an account are created and stored in the Addresses related list. An account can have multiple shipping and billing addresses.

2. Click the number of the desired account.
3. In the Addresses related list, click New.
4. Fill in the fields on the Location form.
5. Select an address type, either Billing or Shipping.
6. Optional: Enable the Primary field.
   - If you have multiple billing or shipping addresses, use this field to designate one as the primary address.
7. Click Submit.
Create customer contacts
A contact is a user who is an employee of an account. Use the Customer Service Management application to create contact records.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

An account can have multiple contacts but a contact can be associated with only one account. A contact can have one or more associated assets and service contracts. A contact can also have a user ID and can log in to the customer portal.

Note: A contact is a user in the system. If you create a contact, that person is also added to the User table (sys_user).

2. Click New and fill in the fields on the Contact form.
3. Enter the contact information, such as the name, email address, and phone number.
4. Enter the name of the contact's company in the Account field.
5. Select the Timezone.
7. Select a Notification setting.
8. Click Submit.

After a registration request is approved, the customer contact receives an email with a user ID and temporary password. When logging in for the first time, the contact is asked to change the password.

Configure consumers
A consumer is a customer in the business-to-consumer (B2C) business model.

Role required: admin

Consumers can have multiple addresses, one of which is the primary address.

• You can import existing consumers using guided setup.
• You can create new consumers using the Customer Service Management application.

Import consumers with guided setup
Use Customer Service Management guided setup to import existing consumers.

Role required: admin

Consumers can have multiple addresses, one of which is the primary address.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup and click Get Started
2. In the Foundation Data category, click Get Started and then click Import Consumers (B2C).
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Create consumers
A consumer is a customer in the business-to-consumer (B2C) business model. Use the Customer Service Management application to create consumer records.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

Consumers can have multiple addresses, one of which is the primary address.

2. Click New and fill in the fields on the Consumer form.
3. Enter the consumer information, such as the name, email address, and phone numbers.
4. Fill in the fields on the Primary Address tab.
   A consumer can have multiple addresses but only one primary address. The primary address is stored in the Primary Address tab on the Consumer form and in the Addresses related list.
5. Optional: Set the desired fields on the Preferences tab.
6. Click Submit.
   The record is added to the Consumers table (csm_consumer). The primary address is added to the Addresses related list and the Primary field is set to true.

Create additional consumer addresses
Consumers can have multiple addresses, including one primary address.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

The primary address is stored in the Primary Address tab on the Consumer form and in the Addresses related list. When you fill in the fields in the Primary Address tab and click Submit, this information is added to the Addresses related list as the primary address, with the Primary field set to true. Any changes made to the Primary Address fields are also updated in the related list. A consumer can have only one primary address.

Other addresses, such as billing or shipping addresses, can be created and stored in the Addresses related list. For these other addresses, the Primary field is set to false.
2. Click the number of the desired consumer.
3. In the Addresses related list, click New.
4. Fill in the fields on the Location form.
5. To denote this address as the primary address for the consumer, enable the Primary check box.
   A consumer can have multiple addresses but only one primary address.
6. Click Submit.

Configure users and groups
A user is an individual who can access your instance and a group is a set of users who share a common purpose. The users associated with a group are listed as group members.

Role required: admin

Group information is used across most processes in the Now Platform for assigning work to teams and requesting approvals.

Any rule that is applied to a group is automatically assigned to group members; for example, roles and assignment rules.

- You can import existing users and groups using guided setup.
- You can create new users and groups using the Now Platform user administration feature.
  - Create a user
  - Create a user group
  - Add a user to a group

Assign roles to CSM users
Roles control access to features, capabilities, and data in the Customer Service Management application.

Role required: admin

Before you can assign roles to your users, make sure that these users have already been configured.
- Configure users and groups
• **Configure accounts and contacts**
• **Configure consumers**

You can assign roles to individual users or groups. Apply roles to groups and the members of those groups inherit those roles.

The Customer Service Management application provides two types of roles: internal roles for agents and managers and external roles for customers, customer partners, and consumers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Roles</th>
<th>External Roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• sn_customerservice_agent</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Business-to-business (B2B) Partner</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sn_customerservice.consumer_agent</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.partner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.partner_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.consumer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• You can assign roles to users and groups using guided setup.
• You can also assign roles to users and groups using the Now Platform user administration feature.
  • *Assign a role to a user*
  • *Assign a role to a group*

### Create customer relationships

The Customer Service Management application provides the ability to establish different types of relationships between partners, customers, and contacts.

These relationships make account and asset management easy and flexible. The table below describes the available customer relationships.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Bi-directional account relationship | Create a relationship between:  
• A partner account and a customer account.  
• Two customer accounts.  
A bi-directional account relationship is created using a defined account relationship type. | An account relationship allows partner account contacts with the partner role or the partner administrator role to create and manage cases for their partner account. |
| Account hierarchy | Create a parent-child relationship between accounts. | An account hierarchy allows an account contact with the customer administrator role to manage the child accounts. |
### Relationship Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Benefit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contact relationship</td>
<td>Add a contact from a third account to either of the accounts in an account relationship.</td>
<td>A contact relationship allows a contact with the customer role or customer administrator role to manage the account for which the contact relationship has been established.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Bi-directional account relationships**

A bi-directional account relationship is a relationship that exists between two accounts. You can create account relationships between two customer accounts or between a partner account and a customer account.

A bi-directional account relationship is based on a defined account relationship type. Creating a bi-directional account relationship is a two-step process that involves:

- Defining the types of relationships that exist between your partners and customers.
- Using these relationship types to create relationship records between selected accounts.

You can view relationship records on the Account form for either account in the relationship. These records are stored in the **Account Relationships** related list.

For relationships between a partner account and a customer account, partner account contacts with the partner role or the partner administrator role can create and manage cases for their customer accounts.

---

**Account relationship types**

An account relationship type defines a relationship that can exist between accounts. Users with the system administrator role can define the following account relationship types:

- Account to account
- Partner to account

When creating an account relationship type, you define the following information on the Account Relationship Type form:

- The type of **source** account (account or partner).
- The type of **target** account (account or partner).
- The relationship between the source account and the target account.
- The reverse relationship between the source account and the target account.
Account Relationship Type form

Note: One default account relationship type is provided for partner accounts.

Account relationship records

Once an account relationship type has been defined, users with the customer service manager role can use it to create relationship between specific accounts or partners. An account relationship record includes the following information:

- A source account, selected in the **Account From** field.
- A target account, selected in the **Account To** field.
- The account relationship type that this relationship record is based on.
- The relationship and the reverse relationship of the selected accounts.

View a relationship record from either account:

- The relationship (**Account From** > **Account To**) appears in the **Account Relationships** related list on the source account record.
- The reverse relationship (**Account To** > **Account From**) appears in the **Account Relationships** related list on the target account record.

Select the account relationship record from either account to see the Account Relationship form.
Account Relationship form

You can also view account relationship records that use a specific account relationship type. This information appears as a related list on the Account Relationship Type form. This list shows the source account (Account From field) and the target account (Account To field) for each account relationship record.

Create an account relationship type

Create an account relationship type by defining the types of source and target accounts and providing a name for the relationship between these accounts.

Role required: admin

Use the steps below to create an account relationship type.

You can edit an existing account relationship type by changing the types of source and target accounts and the name of the relationship that exists between these accounts. If that account relationship type is currently being used by any account relationship records, the Relationship and Reverse relationship fields in those records are automatically updated.

You can also delete an existing account relationship type.

- If there are no account relationship records that use the account relationship type, then it is simply deleted.
If there are active account relationship records that use the account relationship type, an attempt to delete that relationship type results in a warning message. Deleting an account relationship type also deletes the relationship records based on that type.

Account relationship types can be set to inactive at any time.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Account Relationship Types.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Account Relationship Type form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationship type</td>
<td>A unique name that identifies the type of relationship. For example, Service Provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>The type of source account for this relationship type; can be either an account or a partner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship</td>
<td>A text field where you can name the relationship from the source account to the target account. For example, Service provider for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>The type of target account for this relationship type; can be either an account or a partner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse relationship</td>
<td>A text field where you can name the reverse relationship from the target account to the source account. For example, Customer of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Sets the account relationship type as active or inactive. Active account relationship types can be used to create account relationship records. An account relationship type can be set to inactive at any time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
   The new account relationship type appears on the Account Relationship Types list.

Create an account relationship record
Create an account relationship record by selecting the account relationship type and then selecting the accounts involved in the relationship.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

The system administrator can create a relationship record for an account from the Account Relationships related list on the Account Relationship Type form.

The customer service manager and the system administrator can create a relationship record for an account from the Account Relationships related list on the account or partner record.

Deleting a relationship record for an account also deletes the reverse relationship record.

**Note:** Deleting a relationship record does not have any impact on customer service cases that refer to the relationship record.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Customer > Accounts or Partners.
2. Select an account.
3. From the Account Relationships related list, click New.
4. Fill in the fields on the Account Relationship form.
Account Relationship form fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account From</td>
<td>The source account for this relationship. If you are creating the relationship from an account or partner record, this field is automatically filled in; otherwise, make a selection from the Accounts list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship Type</td>
<td>Select the account relationship type for this record. If you are creating the record from an Account Relationship Type form, this field is automatically filled in. Otherwise, make a selection from the Account Relationship Types list, which shows all active account relationship types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account To</td>
<td>The target account for this relationship.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Submit.

Once a relationship record has been created, it appears in two places:

- The relationship appears in the Account Relationships related list on the source account record.
- The reverse relationship appears in the Account Relationships related list on the target account record.

Account hierarchy

Use the account hierarchy feature to create a parent-child relationship between accounts.

An account hierarchy represents the legal entity structure of the accounts and their relationships. It also represents an account's customers, assets, and service entitlements.

Customer administrators can do the following for all of the accounts in the hierarchy:

- View and create cases.
- View assets and users.
- View and manage contacts.

Contacts of the parent account can also access all of the child accounts.

The system administrator defines the hierarchy between accounts on the Account form. From the Account form for the child account, select the parent in the Parent Account field. If this field is not filled in, the account is a top-level account.

After the account hierarchy has been defined, it is displayed on the Account form for the parent account. If a parent account is updated or deleted, the hierarchy for any child accounts is also updated.

View the account hierarchy

The account hierarchy uses a tree structure to show the parent, child, and sibling accounts. Two different views of the account hierarchy are available. In both views, the current account is highlighted in the account structure.

- The parent view displays the current account, the parent account (if applicable), and any child or sibling accounts.
- The full view displays the entire structure of the organization from the root account.

Customer service agents can:

- Expand and collapse the tree structure.
- Switch between the parent view and the full view.
- Click an account to open the related Account form.
Account hierarchy in CSM Agent Workspace

From the Account form, customer service agents can click the open hierarchy icon ( ) in the Name field to see the parent-child account relationships in the Account Hierarchy pop-up window. The account hierarchy is available for accounts that have a parent or child account.

Agent Workspace for CSM Account Hierarchy pop-up window

Account hierarchy in the platform interface

Customer service agents can view account information in the Account Hierarchy section on the Account form.
ServiceNow Paris Customer Service Management

Create an account hierarchy
Create a parent-child relationship between two accounts.

Role required: admin

2. Select the desired child account.
3. Select the parent for this account in the Parent Account field.
4. Click Update.
   The account hierarchy is displayed in a tree map on the Account form for the parent account.

Contact relationships
Use a contact relationship to add a contact from a different account to either of the accounts in an established account relationship.

A contact relationship allows a contact with the customer role or customer administrator role to manage the account for which the contact relationship has been established. These contacts can view information and perform actions on behalf of the accounts, such as creating or updating cases from the customer portal.

When you create a contact relationship, you select a user from the Contact field. This field displays the contacts from:

- Both accounts in the account relationship
- All accounts in the account hierarchy

Then you select a responsibility for the contact. The responsibilities available for selection are those responsibility definitions created with a type of Contact.

Note: A contact can only be assigned one responsibility per account.

The contact name, account, and responsibility appear in the Contact Relationships related list on the Account form.
Customer service managers can create and delete contact relationships for accounts. Managers and agents can view a list of contact relationships for an account.

**Create a contact relationship for an account**

Create a contact relationship for an account by selecting a contact and then assigning a responsibility to that contact.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

A contact can only be assigned one responsibility per account.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customer > Accounts** or **Partners**.
2. Select an account.
3. In the **Contact Relationships** related list, click **New**.
4. Fill in the fields on the **Contact Relationship form**.
5. Click **Submit**.

The contact name, account, and responsibility are added to the **Contact Relationships** related list.

**Configure products**

Configure product data including product models, sold products, install base items and installed products.

Role required: admin

- **Product models**: A product is a type of good or service that your company sells and supports. Product models identify different types of products, such as service, hardware, software, or consumables.

  ![Note: Product models require the Model Management plugin (com.snc.model).]

- **Sold products**: The products and components that have been sold to an account or a consumer.
- **Install base items**: Items that represent the instances that have been installed or provisioned for a customer.
- **Installed products**: Provide information on the sold products and how they are deployed or installed. Use installed products to create an association between sold products and install base items.

- You can import the following product data using guided setup.
  - Import product models with guided setup
  - Import sold products with guided setup
  - Import install base items with guided setup
  - Import installed products with guided setup

- You can create new product data using the Customer Service Management application.
  - Create a product model
  - Create sold products
  - Create install base items
  - Create installed products

- You can configure the following relationships and associations after importing or creating product data:
  - **Product models**
    - Associate service offerings to product models
    - Configure product model and catalog item relationships
    - Configure form views for product model and catalog item relationships
    - Associate catalog items to product models
  - **Sold products**
    - Associate service offerings with sold products
• Associate sold products with contracts

Import product models with guided setup
A product is a type of good or service that your company sells and supports. Product models identify different types of products, such as service, hardware, software, or consumables.

Role required: admin

Information for each type of product model is stored in a different table. For example, service product models are stored in the Service Model [cmdb_service_product_model] table.

Note: Product models require the Model Management plugin (com.snc.model).

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup and click Get Started.
2. In the Foundation Data category, click Get Started and then click Import Product Models.
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Create a product model
Create a record for a type of product that your company sells and supports.

Ensure that the Model Management plugin (com.snc.model) is installed.

Role required: model_manager

A product model is a specific version or configuration of a product. Build hierarchical product models that represent the set of products that your organization offers to its customers and define relationships between different product models. Define whether a product is tracked as an asset, a CI or both as well as identifying or creating the CI and asset class that captures the configuration information for product models.

Product models provide customer service agents and customers with a common understanding of the products being used by a particular customer. Customers can view the products purchased on the Customer Service Portal and can open cases for any issues they are facing.

2. Click New.
3. Select the type of product model to create:
   • Application Model
   • Consumable Model
   • Contract Model
   • Facility
   • Hardware
   • Service
   • Software
4. Fill in the fields for the selected product model, as appropriate
   See Model form fields for field descriptions.
5. Click Submit.

Note: In the Sold to Accounts or Sold to Consumers related list, you can see all the accounts and consumers that the product model has been sold to.
Associate service offerings to product models

Associate service offerings to product models to enable customers to choose service offerings for products.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

One service model can have multiple service offerings.

2. Click a product model.
3. On the Service Offering related list, click New or Edit to add an existing service offering to the product model.

Configure product model and catalog item relationships

Enable self-service for customers to request services on products by creating relationships between product models and catalog items.

Role required: admin

Create relationships between product models and catalog items. You can associate multiple catalog items to a product model.

The Customer Service Install Base Management plugin automatically activates the Product Model and Catalog Items Relationship plugin. With these plugins, the following roles are automatically assigned to customer service managers:

- sn_product_catalog_admin (create, edit, delete access)
- sn_product_catalog_viewer (read access)

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Foundation Data category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

Product model and catalog item relationships

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assign roles</td>
<td>If customer service managers need to edit or create catalog items, assign a role specific to the Service Catalog Management application, such as catalog_manager or catalog_admin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure form views</td>
<td>Add the Catalog Items Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Product Model Relationships related list to any of the Service Model forms, for example, service model, in the product catalog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Configure form views for product model and catalog item relationships

Configure form views for product model and catalog item relationships to enable customers to request services on products from the service catalog on the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

2. Click a product model.
3. Add the Catalog Items Relationships related list to the Product Model form to enable customer service managers to create relationships between product models and catalog items.
4. Add the Catalog Items Relationships related list to the Service Model form to enable customer service managers to create relationships between service models and catalog items.

Associate catalog items to product models
Associate catalog items to a product model to enable customers to request services on products from the service catalog on the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Products > Product Models**.
2. Click a product model.
3. In the **Catalog Item** field, add the catalog item you want to associate to the product model or create a new one.

   **Note:** You can associate multiple catalog items to a product model.

---

**Configure install base**

Track which products and services have been purchased by a customer, how they have been installed or provisioned, along with the detailed configuration for each installed item.

Role required: admin

Install base requires the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base).

Capture the install base for a customer by creating sold products, install base items, and installed products to enable customer service agents to easily trace issues back to the right product, instances of that product, and other entities that might impact their functioning.

Before setting up your install base, create your product data by creating or importing product models. For more information, see *Configure products*.

There are three parts to setting up your install base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sold Products</th>
<th>Create a sold product to provide customers, consumers, and customer service agents with a view into the products and services that have been sold to an account or a consumer.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Install Base Items</td>
<td>Create an install base item to track instances that have been provisioned for an account or consumer. An install base item can be any configuration item that has been made accessible to customers. For Software as a Service (SaaS) products, an install base item refers to an application service configuration item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installed Products</td>
<td>Create an installed product to track information on the instances that a sold product is deployed on at an account or consumer. A sold product can have multiple installed product records depending on the number of instances of the product in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can create sold products, install base items, and installed products as individual records, import them in bulk, or create them from an Account or Consumer record.

Customer service agents can view install base information in Agent Workspace. Customers can view install base information on the Customer Service Portal.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Foundation Data category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
Install base

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import Sold Products</td>
<td>Import sold products to track the products or services sold to an account or consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Install Base Items</td>
<td>Import install base items that represent the items installed or provisioned for a customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Installed Products</td>
<td>Import installed products to create an association between sold products and install base items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Import sold products with guided setup

Sold products are products and components that have been sold to an account or a consumer. Use guided setup to import sold products so that you can track the products or services sold to an account or consumer.

Role required: admin

This provides an overview of the complete product sold to an account or consumer. A sold product can have child and parent sold items in a hierarchical structure.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service** > **Administration** > **Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Foundation Data category, click **Get Started** and then click **Import Sold Products**.
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Import install base items with guided setup

Install base items represent the instances of the product that have been configured for a customer.

Role required: admin

Each install base item references the configuration item record for the customer.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service** > **Administration** > **Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Foundation Data category, click **Get Started** and then click **Import Install Base Items**.
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Import installed products with guided setup

Installed products provide information on the sold products and how they are deployed or installed. Import installed products to create an association between sold products and install base items.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service** > **Administration** > **Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Foundation Data category, click **Get Started** and then click **Import Install Base Items**.
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Create sold products
Create a sold product to track the products or services sold to an account or consumer.

Ensure that the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is installed.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

Sold products are products and components that have been sold to an account or a consumer. It provides an overview of the complete product sold to an account or consumer. A sold product can have child and parent sold products in a hierarchical structure. If issues arise with a configuration item, customer service agents can trace which sold product is affected on the Case form.

From the Sold Products form, you can edit install base items, create entitlements and cases, and add contracts.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Products > Sold Products.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields on the form.

   Sold product form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the product or service sold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Sold Product</td>
<td>Parent sold product, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Account associated with the sold product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td>Consumer associated with the sold product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Product model the sold product belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Offering</td>
<td>Service offering associated with the sold product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   *Note: If you enter an account, the Consumer field is hidden.
   *Note: If you enter a consumer, the Account field is hidden.
   *Note: If the product model already has a service offering associated with it, this field is automatically populated.

4. Right-click the form header and select Save.
   The Child Sold Products, Install Base Items, Cases, Entitlements, and Contracts related lists are displayed.
5. Fill out the related lists as required.

   Sold product related lists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child Sold Products</td>
<td>Click New to create a child sold product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Base Items</td>
<td>Click Edit to edit an install base item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>Click New to add a case to the sold product. The system displays any open cases that are related to the sold product automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Related list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Related list</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entitlements</td>
<td>Click <strong>New</strong> to add an entitlement for the sold product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contracts</td>
<td>Click <strong>Edit</strong> to associate a contract with the sold product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
- Customer service managers create entitlements. Customer service agents can view entitlements.
- You can also associate a contract with a sold product from the Service Contracts form. Customer service managers associate contracts to sold products. Customer service agents can view contract information.

6. **Click Update.**

The sold product is added to the account or consumer selected. Click an account or consumer to see a list of all sold products related to the account or consumer. You can also view a list of sold products per product model.

**Note:** You can also create sold products directly from an account or a consumer.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customer > Accounts** or **Customer Service > Customer > Consumer**.
2. Click an account or a consumer.
3. Click the **Sold Products** related list.
4. Click **New**.

### Associate service offerings with sold products

Associate a service offering with a sold product giving customer service agents visibility into sold products and their service offerings.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Products > Sold Products**.
2. Click a sold product.
3. In the **Service Offering** field, select an existing service offering.
4. Click **Update**.

### Associate sold products with contracts

Capture complete information on a customer’s install base by associating sold products to contracts.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_manager or admin

Associate sold products to contracts so that your customer service agents working on cases can:

- Check a sold product and view any contracts that exist for the sold product.
- View which products have been sold to the customer under the contract.
- Track when sold products were added to the contract, and how long they are covered for.

You can also associate a sold product with a contract from the Sold Product form.
A sold product can be part of multiple contracts. If a sold product is deleted, it is also deleted from any associated contracts. If a contract is deleted, the sold product remains.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Contracts > Service Contracts**.
2. Click a contract you want to add a sold product to.
3. On the **Products Covered** related list, click **Edit** to associate sold products to the contract.
   The list of sold products is filtered based on the account.
   
   Click **Run filter** to see a list of all sold products. You can only add the sold products that belong to the account selected or to the account hierarchy.
4. Click **Save**.
5. On the **Products Covered** related list, click the **Add All Child Sold Products** related list action to add all child sold products to the contract without having to select each item individually.
6. Click **Update**.

Create install base items
Create an install base item that represents the instance of the product that has been configured for a customer.

Ensure that the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is installed.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

An install base item is any configuration item that has been made accessible to customers. For Software as a Service (SaaS) products, an install base item refers to an application service configuration item. Each install base item references the configuration item record for the customer. If issues arise with a configuration item, customer service agents can trace which install base items the case is affecting.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Products > Install Base Items**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill out the fields on the form.

### Install Base Item form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Unique Id of the install base item. This system automatically fills out this field, but you can change it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the install base item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Item</td>
<td>Configuration item associated with the install base item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** sn_customerservice_manager must have the app_service_user role to create install base items for the Application Service CI class. For more information, see [Application services](#).

Service models have a specific model category called Application Service, which links a service model to the Application Service CI class. For more information, see [Create a service model](#).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>Account associated with the install base item.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Note:** If you enter an account, the Consumer field is hidden.
### Field | Description
--- | ---
Contact | Account contact primarily responsible for the install base item.
Consumer | Consumer associated with the install base item.
**Note:** If you enter a consumer, the **Account** field is hidden.
Owned by | Business manager of the install base item. If the business manager is entered in the configuration item, this field is automatically entered with information from the configuration item.
Supported by | If the configuration item contains this information, this field is automatically entered with the information from the configuration item.
Service Context | Service associated to the underlying CI for calculating impact severity from Event Management. For more information, see *Service health status for install base.*
**Note:** This field is only available if you are have the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin installed. The health status of an install base item only displays if an install base item has a CI and a service context associated to it. Configure the form layout to add this field.

4. Right-click the form header and select **Save**.
   The **Sold Products**, **Entitlements**, and **Cases** related lists are displayed.

5. Fill out the related lists as required.

   **Install base item related lists**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sold Products</td>
<td>Click <strong>Edit</strong> to edit a sold product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entitlements</td>
<td>Click <strong>New</strong> to add an entitlement for the install base item. <strong>Note:</strong> Customer service managers can create entitlements. Customer service agents can view entitlements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>Click <strong>Edit</strong> to edit a case related to the install base item. Any open cases that are related to the install base item are displayed automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click **Update**.
   The install base item is added to the account or consumer selected. Click an account or consumer to see a list of all install base items related to the account or consumer.

   **Note:** You can also create install base items directly from an account or a consumer.
Create installed products

Create an installed product to create an association between sold products and install base items. Installed products provide information on the instances that a sold product is deployed on.

Ensure that the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is installed.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Products > Installed Products.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields on the form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Install Base Item</td>
<td>Instance the sold item is deployed on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sold Product</td>
<td>Sold product deployed to the customer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

Configure assets

An asset is a specific product or instance that is supported for a customer.

Role required: admin

Assets can have serial numbers or asset tag numbers and can be allocated to individual accounts or to a contact within an account. Assets can also have associated support contracts.

Note: Customer Service Management leverages the Asset Management application to create and maintain assets. Ensure that the Asset Management plugin (com.snc.asset_management) is activated.

- You can import existing assets using guided setup.
- You can create new assets using the Customer Service Management application.

Import assets with guided setup

Use Customer Service Management guided setup to import existing assets.

Role required: admin

There are different types of assets and information for each type of asset is stored in a different table. For example, hardware assets are stored in the Hardware [alm_hardware] table.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup and click Get Started
2. In the Foundation Data category, click Get Started and then click Import Assets.
3. Upload data from an external data source into an import set.
4. Create a transform map.
5. Execute the transform map to transfer the data.
6. Verify that the data records are imported into the target table.

Create an asset
Create a record for a specific instance of a product.
Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin
Customer Service Management leverages the Asset Management application to create and maintain assets. Ensure that the Asset Management plugin (com.snc.asset_management) is activated.

2. Click New.
3. Select the type of asset to create:
   - Hardware
   - Software License
   - Consumable
   - License
   - Facility
4. Fill in the fields for the selected asset type on the Asset form, as appropriate.
5. Click Submit.

Create asset contact relationships
Assign an asset to a customer contact who is responsible for managing that asset.
Account and partner contacts can see all of the assets related to an account. To limit access to an asset, you can create an asset contact relationship and assign the asset to one or more contacts. Then you can enable the associated property to restrict access to the asset information to the assigned contacts.

The system administrator can add a primary contact to an asset by selecting a user in the Primary Contact field on the Asset form. This field references the Contacts table and is filtered by the asset’s account.

The system administrator can also create relationships with additional contacts from the Asset Contacts related list on the Asset form. When you create an asset contact relationship, you can select contacts from:
   - The account that the asset belongs to.
   - The partner of the account that the asset belongs to.
   - Any contacts added to these accounts using contact relationships.

After adding contacts to an asset, enable the related property to limit access. When enabled, the following access is limited from the customer portal:
   - When a user clicks My Assets, the list shows only those assets for which the user is a contact.
   - When a user clicks Create Case, the Asset field on the Create Case form shows only those assets for which the user is a contact.

Assign a primary contact to an asset
Users with the system administrator role can assign a primary contact to an asset.
Role required: admin

2. Click the desired asset.
3. Select a Primary Contact.
   This field references the Contacts [customer_contact] table and is filtered by the account selected in the Account field.
4. Click Update.
The contact is added to the Asset Contacts related list on the asset form.

Assign a contact to an asset

Users with the system administrator role can assign a contact to an asset.

Role required: admin

Users with the sn_customerservice.customer_admin can also assign a contact to an asset from the Customer Service Portal.

2. Click the desired asset.
3. Click New in the Asset Contacts related list.
   This displays a new Asset Contact form. The Asset field displays the selected asset and is read-only.
4. Select a Contact.
   The contacts available for selection are the contacts from the asset's account.
5. Click Submit.
   The contact is added to the Asset Contacts related list.

Enable the asset contact relationship property

Limit access to asset information to the assigned contacts by enabling the associated property.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Properties.
2. Enable the Restrict Assets based on Contacts assigned to the assets property.
3. Click Save.

Create service contracts

Service contracts define the type of support that customers receive.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

A contract can include an account and contact or a consumer and the specific assets that are covered. A contract can also include multiple service entitlements and SLAs.

2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Contract form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically created contract number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The name of the account associated with this contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td>The name of the consumer associated with this contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract administrator</td>
<td>The individual who is responsible for managing the contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approver</td>
<td>The user who approves or rejects the contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract number</td>
<td>The number assigned to the contract by the customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>The current state of the contract:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Expired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Canceled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starts</td>
<td>The date that the contract starts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ends</td>
<td>The date that the contract ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A name for the contract.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Right-click the form header and select **Save**.
   The **Entitlements**, **Assets Covered**, **Terms and Conditions**, **Contracts**, **Cases**, and **Products Covered** related lists are displayed.

5. On the **Products Covered** related list, click **Edit** to associate sold products to the contract.
   The list of sold products displayed is filtered based on the account. Click **Run filter** to see a list of all sold products, but you can only add the sold products that belong to the account selected or to the account hierarchy.

6. Click **Submit**.
   You can also click **Submit For Review** to place the contract in the **Draft** state and send an email to the **Approver** to review the contract.
   Customer service agents can view contract information in Agent Workspace and customers can view contract information on the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

### Configure entitlements

An entitlement defines the type of support that a customer receives as well as the supported communication channels.

Role required: `sn_customerservice_manager` or `admin`

You can associate an entitlement with a product, an asset, an account, or a contract. An entitlement check is performed when a case is opened. This check takes into consideration the existing cases for the specific account, product, asset, and service contract. Entitlements can also have associated workflows that drive recommended activities for a case.

Entitlements are counted on a per unit basis. The **Unit** field on the Service Entitlement form defines the unit type, either cases or hours.

The **Total Units** field defines the total number of cases or hours available for this entitlement and the **Remaining Units** field tracks the number of units remaining. These counters are active if the **Per Unit** field is enabled.

The **Remaining Units** field is updated using business rules.

- When using cases as the unit type, the **Update case entitlement on Close** business rule updates this field when a case for a product, asset, company, or contract that has an associated entitlement is closed.
- To use hours as the unit type, customers must create a separate business rule. For example, create a rule that is applied to the amount of time an agent spends on a case. When a case is resolved, deduct the hours spent from the total service hours available in the entitlement.

Keep these guidelines in mind as you create entitlements.

- Product entitlements: when creating an entitlement for a product, select the product from the **Product** field. If you select only a product and not a company, contract, or asset, this creates a generic entitlement and the entitlement counter fields cannot be used.
- Asset entitlements: when creating an entitlement for an asset, select a company first and then the only assets that are shown are those belonging to that company.
Contract entitlements: when creating an entitlement for a contract, select the contract and then the assets that are covered as a contract line item. The resulting contract entitlement is valid for the assets listed within that contract.

Create entitlements for customer service entities
Associate entitlements with customer service entities

Create entitlements for CSM entities
Create an entitlement for a Customer Service Management entity such as an account or a product.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

   You can also create an entitlement from the Entitlements related list on the Account and Contract forms.
2. Click New at the top of the Entitlements list.
3. Fill in the fields on the Entitlement form.

Service Entitlement form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The product model associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The name of the account associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract</td>
<td>The contract number associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>The asset tag number or the serial number of the asset associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Check this box to enable the entitlement. Active entitlements are available for selection when creating a new case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>One or more communication channels associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Web</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Base Item</td>
<td>The install base item associated with the entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure the form layout to add the Install Base Item field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>This field is only available if the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sold Product</td>
<td>The sold product associated with the entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure the form layout to add the Sold Product field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>This field is only available if the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business hours</td>
<td>The schedule associated with this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start date</td>
<td>The start date for this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End date</td>
<td>The end date for this entitlement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Units</td>
<td>The total number of units designated for this entitlement. This field is active if the Per unit check box is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaining Units</td>
<td>The number of available units that are remaining for this entitlement. This field is active if the Per unit check box is enabled. This field is updated using business rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>The type of unit being measured for this entitlement: Cases or Hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per unit</td>
<td>Select this check box to enable unit counters. If enabled, the Total Units and Remaining Units fields are activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When using cases as the unit type, the **Update case entitlement on Close** business rule updates this field when a case for a product, asset, company, or contract that has an associated entitlement is closed.
- To use hours as the unit type, customers must create a separate business rule. For example, create a rule that is applied to the amount of time an agent spends on a case. When a case is resolved, deduct the hours spent from the total service hours available in the entitlement.

4. Click **Submit**.

**Associate entitlements with CSM entities**

Associate an entitlement with a Customer Service Management entity such as an account, contract, asset, product, or install base item.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Contracts > Entitlements**.
2. Select an entitlement from the Entitlements list.
3. Click the lookup icon to the right of one of the **Product, Account, Contract, Asset, or Install Base Item** fields.
4. Select the desired entity from the list.

**Note:** If you select an entity in more than one of the fields listed above, the selections available in subsequent fields are filtered by the selections already made.

5. Click **Update**.

**Customer service case entitlement calculation**

When a customer service agent creates a case, the system uses a configurable method to derive the entitlement based on several fields related to the case record.

These fields include:
- Account
- Consumer
- Product
• Asset
• Contract
• Case Channel

If the Proactive Customer Service Operations plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_ops) is active, the system also considers these fields:
• Sold Product
• Install Base

Relative weights are assigned to each field. Entitlements are calculated based on the weight and precedence. The entitlement with the highest score is assigned to the case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Weight/Precedence Assigned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account / Consumer</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset / Sold Product / Install Base item</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The entitlement calculation uses the `global.CSManagementUtils` script and the `getFirstEntitlement` method.

### Create account teams

Account teams are made up of both employees and customer contacts who fulfill specific jobs or roles for a particular account.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

These roles are created using responsibility definitions. A responsibility definition describes a role or a function that is needed to support a customer account.

The system administrator creates the responsibility definitions, or roles, as needed. The system administrator can create two types of responsibility definitions: one for an employee and one for a contact.

Note: The system administrator can delete definitions that are no longer used. A definition can only be deleted if it has no entries.

Once these definitions, or roles, are created, the customer service manager can use these roles to:
• Build an account team by selecting an account and then selecting roles and assigning them to employees.
• Add contact relationships to an account by selecting an account and then selecting roles and assigning them to contacts.

The users who have been assigned to this role are displayed in the **Account Team Members** related list on the Responsibility Definition form.
• Create a responsibility definition.
• Assign a team member to an account.

*Create a responsibility definition*

Define a role or responsibility needed to support an account.

Role required: admin

Create responsibility definitions that you can use to create account teams or contact relationships.
If you are using the industry data models feature, you can also create responsibility definitions to use in customer and consumer relationships.

2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Responsibility Definition form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the role or responsibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unique**
Select this check box if this role should only be assigned to one employee or contact. Enabling this check box prevents the creation of duplicate entries for a role.

**Note:** The unique behavior of a responsibility definition is not enforced when the responsibility is used for industry data model relationships between consumers or household members.

**Type**
The type of role:
- Select **User** if this role should be performed by an employee. When assigning this role, the list of available users comes from the Users [sys_users] table.
- Select **Contact** if this role should be performed by a customer contact. When assigning this role, the list of available users comes from the Contacts [customer_contact] table.
- Select **None** if this responsibility definition is to be used when creating relationships between consumers.

**Note:** Only responsibility definitions with **Type** set to **User** can be used in the following industry data model relationships:
- Account Team Member
- Consumer Team Member
- Household Team Member

4. Click Submit.

**Assign a team member to an account**
Assign a team member to an account by selecting the employee and the employee's role or responsibility.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

The system administrator can assign a team member to an account from the **Account Team Members** related list on the Responsibility Definition form.
The customer service manager can assign a team member to an account from the Account Team Members related list on the account or partner record.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Customer > Accounts or Partners.
2. Select an account.
3. From the Account Team Members related list, click New.
4. Fill in the fields on the Account Team Member form.

### Account Team Member form fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The account to which the user is assigned. If you are assigning a user from an account or partner record, this field is automatically filled in; otherwise, make a selection from the Accounts list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsibility</td>
<td>The role or responsibility selected for this employee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>The employee selected to fulfill the role or responsibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Submit.

### Fix external user role assignments

You may have external users (contacts or consumers) on your instance that have been assigned internal roles. If so, you can use the Customer Service Management guided setup to evaluate and correct these role assignments as needed.

Because external users with internal roles can result in access issues, it is recommended that external users only be assigned external roles.

Use the tasks in the Fix External User Role Assignment category guided setup category to evaluate the contacts and consumers with the following role assignments:

- The snc_internal role only.
- The snc_internal role and one or more external roles.
- The snc_internal role and one or more additional internal roles.
- The snc_internal role and one or more additional internal and external roles.

Review the list of users in each group and tag those users with incorrect role assignments. Then run the scheduled job to fix the role assignments.

ℹ️ **Note:** You can also review and update external user roles using a query-based list. For more information, see KB0829930.

### Using guided setup to fix external user role assignments

With the system administrator role, you can use guided setup to fix external user role assignments.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Fix External User Role Assignment category, click Get Started.

The Fix External User Role Assignment page opens with a list of tasks to evaluate groups of external users.
4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.
   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

### Fix External User Role Assignment tasks

The following table describes the different configuration tasks in the Fix External User Role Assignment category.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External users with possible non-intentional internal role assignment</td>
<td>This is a set of contacts and consumers with the following role assignments:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The snc_internal role only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The snc_internal role and one or more external roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended that you do not assign internal roles to external users. Review the contacts in this list and fix the role assignment as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External users with possible intentional internal role assignments</td>
<td>This is a set of contacts and consumers that have the following role assignments:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The snc_internal role and one or more additional internal roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The snc_internal role and one or more additional internal and external roles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended that you do not assign both internal and external roles to the same user. Review the users in this list and fix the role assignment as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External users with intentional internal role assignments</td>
<td>This is a set of contacts and consumers that have:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The snc_internal role that is contained by another role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended that you do not assign internal roles to external users. Review the users in this list and fix the role assignments as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid such role assignments in future</td>
<td>To prevent external users from being assigned the snc_internal role in the future, enable the following property:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>glide.security.explicit_roles.enable_internal_user_blacklist</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click <strong>Configure</strong> to navigate to the property and verify that the value is true. If false, set the value to true.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fix roles for external users with possible non-intentional internal role assignments

Review and fix roles for external users that may have non-intentional internal role assignments.

Role required: admin

It is recommended that you do not assign internal roles to external users. Use this procedure to review and fix the contacts and consumers that may have the following role assignments:
• snc_internal role only
• snc_internal role and one or more external roles

Note: This guided setup task uses scheduled jobs to identify and fix role assignments. When fixing role assignments, the scheduled job fixes 3000 users at a time. If there are more than 3000 users in this group, change the configuration of the job so that it runs periodically.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup and click Get Started.
2. In the Fix External User Role Assignment category, click Get Started and then click External users with possible non-intentional internal role assignment.
3. Run the scheduled job to tag users that may have non-intentional user role assignments.
   Users are tagged with the Ext-user-non-intentional tag.
4. Review the list of tagged users and remove the tag from any users for which you do not need to fix role assignments.
   If necessary, configure the list to display the Tag column.
5. Run the scheduled job to fix the role assignments for the users with the Ext-user-non-intentional tag.
   This scheduled job makes the following changes:
   • For users with the snc_internal role only, it removes the snc_internal role and adds the snc_external role.
   • For users with the snc_internal role and one or more external roles, it removes the snc_internal role.

Fix roles for external users with possible intentional internal role assignments

Review and fix roles for external users that may have intentional internal role assignments.

Role required: admin

It is recommended that you do not assign internal roles to external users. Use this procedure to review and fix the contacts and consumers that may have the following role assignments:

• snc_internal role and one or more additional internal roles
• snc_internal role and one or more additional internal and external roles

Note: This guided setup task uses scheduled jobs to identify and fix role assignments. When fixing role assignments, the scheduled job fixes 3000 users at a time. If there are more than 3000 users in this group, change the configuration of the job so that it runs periodically.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup and click Get Started.
2. In the Fix External User Role Assignment category, click Get Started and then click External users with possible intentional internal role assignments.
3. Run the scheduled job to tag users that may have intentional user role assignments.
   Users are tagged with the Ext-user-intentional tag.
4. Review the list of tagged users and remove the tag from any users for which you do not need to fix role assignments.
   If necessary, configure the list to display the Tag column.
5. Run the scheduled job to fix the role assignments for the users with the Ext-user-intentional tag.
   This scheduled job makes the following changes:
   • For users with the snc_internal role and one or more additional internal roles, it removes the snc_internal role and all other internal roles, and adds snc_external role.
• For users with the snc_internal role and one or more additional internal and external roles, it removes the snc_internal role and all other internal roles.

This scheduled job runs all of the delete business rules on the User Role [sys_user_has_role] table.

**Fix roles for external users with intentional internal role assignments**

Review and fix roles for external users that have intentional internal role assignments.

Role required: admin

It is recommended that you do not assign internal roles to external users. Use this procedure to review and fix the contacts and consumers that have the following role assignments:

• snc_internal role that is contained by another role

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Fix External User Role Assignment category, click **Get Started** and then click **External users with intentional internal role assignments**.
3. Run the scheduled job to tag users that have intentional user role assignments. Users are tagged with the **Ext-user-contained-role** tag.
4. Review the list of tagged users.
5. Manually fix the role assignments for the desired users.

**Prevent future internal role assignments for external users**

Enable a property to prevent external users from being assigned the snc_internal role.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Fix External User Role Assignment category, click **Get Started** and then click **Avoid such role assignments in future**.
3. Set the **glide.security.explicit_roles.enable_internal_user_blacklist** property to true.

**Configure customer service case types**

Configure case types to handle different types of customer issues. A case type identifies the processes and the data needed to resolve a specific type of issue.

For each case type, you create a table that extends the Case table and configure a number of items, such as business rules and client scripts, that drive customer issues of this type from creation to resolution. When creating cases, agents can select the case type that corresponds to the customer issue.

There are a sequence of tasks that enable you to configure case types for Customer Service Management. To configure Proactive Customer Service Operations, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**
3. In the Case Types category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
## Case types configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Case Types</td>
<td>The first step in creating a case type is to create a table for the case type that extends the Case table (sn_customerservice_case). Note: This table should be created in a scope other than global.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can create a table for the case type using one of these methods:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Guided Application Creator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Platform table creation feature (navigate to System Definition &gt; Table and click New)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The extended table for the case type inherits most of the functionality of the Case table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Up View Rules</td>
<td>View rules determine the form views that are available to users. Create view rules that determine the conditions for when the system displays the Case Type table in a specified view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Up States for State Flows</td>
<td>State flows enable you to customize transitions from one state to another in tables derived from the Task [task] table, including the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table and tables extended from Case. You can configure the system to perform work during transitions to specific states. Create choice records for each of the states to be used in state flows for the case type. When creating your desired states, set the Table field to the table for the case type and the Element field to State.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Up UI Policies</td>
<td>UI policies dynamically change the behavior of information on a form, such as setting a field to read-only or making a field mandatory. The case type inherits the following UI policies from the Case table:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Show or hide major case information section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Make Partner Contact Read only If Partner is empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can configure additional UI policies for the Case Type form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Up Client Scripts</td>
<td>Client scripts allow the system to run JavaScript on the client when client-based events occur, such as when a form loads or when a field changes value. The case type inherits the following client scripts from the Case table:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                             | • Empty Partner Contact on Partner Change  
|                             | • Empty Case Form on Account Change  
|                             | • Hide Request Related List  
|                             | • Hide SM section and list if no plugin  
|                             | • Hide Related Records Section  
|                             | You can configure additional client scripts for the case type.                                                                                                                                              |
| Set Up Business Rules       | A business rule is a server-side script that runs when a record is displayed, inserted, updated, or deleted, or when a table is queried. Use business rules to accomplish tasks like automatically changing values in form fields when certain conditions are met, or to create events for email notifications and script actions. You can set up the desired business rules for the Case Type table. |
| Set Up Case Type UI Actions | UI actions include the buttons, links, and context menu items that appear on lists and forms. A case type inherits the UI actions from the Case table. You have the following options when setting up UI actions for a case type:  |
|                             | • Create new UI actions for the case type. If you create a new UI action, select the Case Type table in the Table field on the UI Action form.  
|                             | • Use any of the inherited case UI actions.  
|                             | • Use a combination of the two.  
<p>|                             | You can also block any inherited case UI actions that you do not want. To block an action, update the CSUIActionsimpl script include. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set Up Case Types</td>
<td>Register a newly created case type by creating a case type definition record. This record is stored in the Case Type table (sn_case_type) and includes the following information:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                      | • The name of the case type  
• The table created for the case type  
• An optional category  
• A short description  
• A field for setting the case type to active  |
|                      | The Case Type table extends the Application File table (sys_metadata). This table includes a **Domain** column that customers can use to add their own logic. |
|                      | To create a case type definition record, navigate to **Customer Service > Manage Case Types** and click **New**.                                                                                               |
|                      | After creating and saving the case type definition record, you can configure the following process information for the case type using the related lists on the Case Type form: |
|                      | • State flows  
• Special handling notes  
• SLAs  
• Email templates  
• Quick messages  
• Reports  |
<p>| Note:                | These related lists only display information for the new case type. They do not include information for the base case.                                                                                     |
|                      | <strong>Set Up Notifications</strong>                                                                                                                          |
|                      | Notifications keep users informed about different activities and events. You can determine the conditions when a notification appears by creating a record in the Notification table. |
|                      | <strong>Set Up Roles</strong>                                                                                                                                     |
|                      | Create one or more roles to control access to the case type features and capabilities. Then grant these roles access to the desired applications and modules. For agents to work on a case type, configure the case type role to contain the sn_customerservice_agent role. |
|                      | <strong>Set Up ACLs</strong>                                                                                                                                     |
|                      | Use Access Control List rules (ACLs) to restrict access to data. These rules require users to pass a set of requirements before they can interact with data.                                           |
|                      | For external customers to see a case type, add ACLs that provide read or create access for external users.                                              |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Set Up Case Type Selection Conditions                     | When creating a case of a specific type, an agent clicks **Create Case** and then selects from a list of available case types. The system presents the case types that have been configured for the agent's role. To set up case type selection conditions, use Flow Designer to configure the **Get Case Types** flow and modify the conditions that determine visibility for a case type. There are two different implementations of the **Create Case** UI action:  
  • The Customer Service plugin provides a **Create Case** UI action that agents can use as follows:  
    • To create a base case.  
    • To create a case for one specific case type. For example, if your organization always creates the same type of case and you have created only one extension of the Case table, you can modify this UI action to create a case of that specific case type.  
  • The Customer Service Case Types plugin also provides a **Create Case** UI action that agents can use to create a case based on a selected case type. After clicking this UI action to create a case, the agent selects the desired case type from a list of multiple available case types. |
<p>| Set Up Record Producers                                  | A record producer is a specific type of catalog item that enables users to create task-based records, such as case records, from the service catalog. Create a record producer that exposes the new case type on the Customer Service Portal. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Set Up Case Digest for Case Types</strong></td>
<td>The case digest feature enables agents to proactively communicate with customers and internal stakeholders about cases. While a case is in progress, agents can send periodic case summaries that describe actions taken, next steps, and other case-related information. When the work on a case has been completed, agents can create a post case review that includes information such as the root cause, mitigation plan, and preventive actions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>Using case types with the case digest feature requires the Customer Service Case Types plugin (com.snc.csm_case_types) and the Case Digests plugin (com.sn_csm_case_digest).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases that are created from a selected case type can use Case Action Summaries and Post Case Reviews. To create the mapping that identifies the case type fields that are copied to Post Case Review and Case Action Summary records:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Create a configuration for the desired case type. Navigate to <strong>Case Digests &gt; Configuration</strong> and click <strong>New</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Create new records in the CSM Table Map table (csm_table_map) to map the <strong>Send Case Action Summary</strong> and <strong>Create Post Case Review UI</strong> actions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Case Digests related list on the Case Type form shows the case action summaries and post case review configurations for a case type.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Set Up Contextual Search for Case Types</strong></td>
<td>Navigate to <strong>Contextual Search &gt; Table Configuration</strong> and create a table configuration record to add contextual search to the case type. In this record, configure the <strong>Table</strong> field as the case type and the <strong>Search Context</strong> field as Case Knowledge Base Search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Set Up Agent Workspace for Case Types</strong></td>
<td>To configure Agent Workspace differently for each case type, follow the Agent Workspace Guided Setup. You can configure the following features specific to each case type: • Workspace lists • Notifications • Highlighted values • Ribbon settings • Form headers • Action assignments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**. This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.
Configure ribbon settings for case types

Create a new ribbon configuration for a case type or enable ribbon configurations to be inherited by the case type.

Role required: admin

In the Customer Service Management application, a case type represents the data and processes that are needed to resolve a specific type of customer issue. The system administrator can create a table for a new case type that extends the Case table (sn_customerservice_case). The extended table for the case type inherits most of the functionality of the Case table.

As part of configuring forms, you can configure ribbon settings for case types. The ribbon appears at the top of the form and includes components that display customer and case information, such as Customer 360, Timeline, and Active SLA. Each component has a ribbon setting that stores configuration information about that component.

Case types that are extended from the Case table can display these components in the ribbon on the Case form. For case types, you can do the following:

• Create new ribbon settings for case extensions, or
• Modify existing ribbon settings so that the case extensions inherit the ribbon component behavior.

To create new ribbon settings, see *Set up ribbons in workspace*.

To modify ribbon component behavior, use the procedure below.

1. Navigate to **Workspace Experience > Forms > Ribbon Settings**.
2. Click the component name in the Ribbon Settings list. For example, click Customer 360.
3. On the Ribbon Setting form for the selected component, enable the **Inherit** check box.
4. Click **Update**.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 for each component to be displayed in the ribbon.

Configure case management

Configure the Customer Service Management features and components that agents and managers use to create and resolve cases.

The customer service case is the primary entity of the customer service application. An agent creates a new case to identify a customer's question or issue and to track the activities related to resolving the issue. An agent also uses a case to track all of the communication to and from the customer, including the communication channels being used.

Case activities include any action that is taken to resolve an issue. This can include phone calls or emails, knowledge base research, conversations with subject matter experts, and dispatch requests to field service agents, as well as other activities.

From the Case form, an agent can associate and store the related information, such as the customer's name, phone number, and company; account information; product and asset information; service contract and entitlement details, and any associated service level agreements (SLAs).

**Note:** These steps may also apply to case type configuration.

To configure case management, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create the Case Form View</td>
<td>The Case form displays detailed information about a customer issue or problem. Create a Case form view to display the desired fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create SLA Definitions</td>
<td>Customer Service Management uses service level agreements (SLAs) with customer service cases. An SLA can be attached to a service contract, to a company, and to a product and can be configured to start, pause, and stop based on any customer service case attributes. After creating the necessary SLAs, associate them with customer service cases from the SLAs related list on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Routing and Assignment</td>
<td>The case routing feature uses matching rules and assignment rules to identify cases that meet certain conditions and then route those cases to customer service agents. Create matching rules to identify cases and then create assignment rules to route cases to agents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Assignment Workbench          | The assignment workbench uses configurable criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate the agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking. Managers can view these results and click one button to assign a task. To configure the assignment workbench:  
• Create matching criteria.  
• Create an assignment workbench configuration. |
<p>| Special Handling Notes        | Use special handling notes to bring important case information to an agent’s attention. Create a configuration for the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table and then configure the form layout to display the notes in a pop-up window or a related list. |
| Escalation Management         | Escalating a case or account raises awareness about important customer issues, facilitates communication, and enables users to track progress toward a resolution. Create escalation templates and severity definitions to control the escalation process. |
| Major Issue Management        | Major issue management enables customer communication for issues that impact a wider audience. Use this feature to proactively identify impacted customers, create cases for these customers, provide information, and manage the resolution process. |
| Case Action Status            | The case action status feature enables customer service agents to easily identify cases that need attention and quickly prioritize their work. Visual indicators in the Action Status column on the case list highlight case status. |
| Auto Close Resolved Cases     | Automatically close cases in the Resolved state if customers do not take any action.                                                                                                                       |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CaseDigests</td>
<td>Case digests enable agents to proactively communicate with customers and internal stakeholders about cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Summaries: while a case is in progress, agents can send periodic case summaries that describe actions taken, next steps, and other case-related information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Post case reviews: when the work on a case has been completed, agents can create a post case review that includes information such as the root cause, mitigation plan, and preventive actions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.  
This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Configure a Case form view**

The Case form contains detailed information about a customer issue or problem. Configure a Case form view to display the desired fields and related lists.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Cases > Create New**.
2. Configure the form layout to add the fields you require.

   **Note**: If you are using Customer Service Install Base Management and Proactive Customer Service Operations, add the **Sold Product** field.

3. Configure the form layout to add the related lists you require.

   **Note**: If you are using Customer Service Install Base Management and Proactive Customer Service Operations, add the **Affected Install Base Items** related list.

4. Click **Submit**.

**Create SLA definitions for customer service cases**

A service level agreement (SLA) is a record that specifies the time within which service must be provided.

Role required: admin

The Customer Service Management application uses service level agreements with customer service cases. An SLA can be attached to a service contract, to a company, and to a product and can be configured to start, pause, and stop based on any customer service case attributes.

After creating the necessary SLAs, you can associate them with customer service cases from the **SLAs** related list on the Case form.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Cases > All**.
2. Select the desired case from the Cases list.
3. From the **SLAs** related list, click **New**.
4. Fill in the fields on the **Task SLA** form.
5. Click **Submit**.
Configure case routing and assignment

The case routing feature uses matching rules and assignment rules to identify cases that meet certain conditions and then route those cases to customer service agents.

Role required: admin

Matching rules are based on two defined sets of conditions: one that identifies specific case attributes and another that identifies the agent resources best suited to handle cases with these attributes.

Assignment rules automatically assign tasks to users and groups when the conditions in a matching rule are met.

Create an assignment rule for a matching rule using the Create assignment rule related link on the Matching Rule form.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create matching rules for case routing</td>
<td>Matching rules are based on two defined sets of conditions, one that identifies specific case attributes and another that identifies the agent resources best suited to handle cases with these attributes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create assignment rules for case routing</td>
<td>Assignment rules automatically assign tasks to users and groups when the conditions in a matching rule are met.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Create a matching rule for case routing

Create a matching rule for a customer service case that identifies the case attributes as well as the agent resources.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Routing and Assignment > Matching Rules.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Matching Rule form.

   This form contains the following sections:

   • Basic rule information
   • Applies to: use this section to create rule conditions
   • Resource: use this section to create agent and agent group conditions

Matching Rule form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the matching rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execution order</td>
<td>The order in which this matching rule is to be executed. Similar to business rules, matching rules are processed based on execution order, from the lowest to the highest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enable this check box to activate the matching rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies To</td>
<td>The table that stores the task for which the matching rule is being created. The default is the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Use the buttons in this field to build one or more conditions on the selected table. A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the AND and OR buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the X to the right of a condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Resource      | The type of resource matching method to use for this rule: Simple, Advanced, Scripted, Selection Criteria. Select Simple to assign a task to a specific user. 1. Click the lookup icon next to the Resource field. 2. Select a Table name. 3. Select a Document from the table. 4. Click OK. Select Advanced to create a specific set of resource conditions. Then use the condition builder in the Resource field to identify these conditions. Select Scripted to create a customized script for identifying resources, with the goal of returning a list of users that have the same skills as the task. The task under consideration is set in the context of the script. For example:  

```javascript
//current has the task record for which the rule is being executed.
var task = current;
var skills =
  task.getValue("skills");
var skillUtil = new
global.SkillsUtils();
var skilledUsers =
  skillUtil.getAllSkilledUserIds(skills);
return skilledUsers;
```

Select Selection Criteria to create a matching rule for use with the assignment workbench. Create then rule and then add matching criteria using the Select Criteria related list on the Matching Rule form. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>This field changes depending on the resource matching type selected in the Matching field. For <strong>Simple</strong> matching, use this field to select a table and a user. For <strong>Advanced</strong> matching, use the condition builder in this field to build one or more conditions to identify a resource. These conditions can be based on user role, agent group, specific skills, work load, or agent availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule based filtering</td>
<td>This field applies to <strong>Advanced</strong> matching. Enable this check box to filter resources that are in schedule (work hours) at the time of routing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>For <strong>Scripted</strong> matching, use this field to create a customized script for identifying resources. An example script is included. The expected return from a customized script is an array of resource sys_ids.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Click Submit.**
   The rule appears in the Matching Rules list.

5. Open the newly created rule from the Matching Rules list and add the desired matching criteria.

6. From the **Select Criteria** related list, click **New**.

7. **Select a Criterion.**

8. **In the Use for field,** specify how you want the matching criterion to be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ranking and display</td>
<td>Use the criterion to determine agent ranking and displays it in a column on the workbench.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display only</td>
<td>Displays the criterion in a column on the workbench but does not use it to determine agent ranking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranking only</td>
<td>Uses the criterion to determine agent ranking but does not display it on the workbench.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. **Select a **Ranking Method**.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More is better</td>
<td>For example, more availability is better when determining the agent ranking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less is better</td>
<td>For example, fewer assigned cases are better when determining agent ranking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. **Click Submit.**
    The criterion appears on the Matching Rule form in the **Select Criteria** related list.

11. Optional: From the **Select Criteria** related list, set a **Threshold** for the criterion.
    A threshold sets a minimum requirement for a criterion. If necessary, personalize the list and add the **Threshold** field.

**Create an assignment rule for case routing**
Create a rule that assigns those cases that meet the matching rule criteria to a customer service agent.

Role required: admin

1. Open the desired matching rule.
2. **Click the Create assignment rule related link.**
You can also create an assignment rule by navigating to **Routing and Assignment > Assignment Rule** and clicking **New**.

3. Fill in the fields on the Assignment Rule form.

**Assignment Rule form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the assignment rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td>The name of the application to which this assignment rule belongs. The default application is <strong>Global</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order in which this assignment rule is executed. Similar to business rules, assignment rules are processed based on execution order, from the lowest to the highest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enable this check box to activate the matching rule. Only active assignment rules take effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applies To</td>
<td>The table that stores the task for which the assignment rule is being created. This list shows only those tables and database views that are in the same scope as the assignment rule. If you select a custom table that extends the task table, you must clear the instance cache by navigating to https://&lt;instance_name&gt;.service-now.com/cache.do in order for the assignment rule to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>The conditions in which the assignment rule will apply. Use the buttons in this field to build one or more conditions on the selected table. A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the <strong>AND</strong> and <strong>OR</strong> buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the <strong>X</strong> to the right of a condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign To</td>
<td>The user to be assigned to the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>The assignment group to be assigned to the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>A script to determine advanced assignment rule functionality. Scripts provide access to current.variable_pool variables.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Update**.
Configure assignment workbench

The assignment workbench uses configurable criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate the agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking. Managers can view these results and click one button to assign a task.

Role required: admin

There are three types of matching criteria available for selection:

- Simple match
- Aggregate
- Scripted

After creating matching criteria, create a configuration for the assignment workbench by creating a matching rule of the type Selection criteria and selecting the desired matching criteria.

If necessary, set the assignment workbench properties.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create assignment workbench matching criteria</td>
<td>The assignment workbench uses configurable matching criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking. To create matching criteria, select the type and then use the fields related to that type to build the query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create an assignment workbench configuration</td>
<td>After creating matching criteria, create a configuration for the assignment workbench by creating a matching rule of the type Selection criteria and selecting the desired matching criteria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure assignment workbench properties</td>
<td>Configure the properties related to the assignment workbench display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Create assignment workbench matching criteria

Create one or more matching criteria that can be used in an assignment workbench configuration.

Role required: admin

The assignment workbench uses configurable matching criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking. The Matching Criteria [matching_dimension] table stores the individual criterion that can be added to a matching rule to create an assignment workbench configuration.

1. Navigate to Routing and Assignment > Criteria.
2. Click New.
3. Enter a Name and a Description for the criterion.
4. Select the Type of matching criterion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple Match</td>
<td>Creates a one-to-one match. For example, match the time zone of an agent with the time zone of a task location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate</td>
<td>Takes a simple query as an input and provides aggregate results. The query returns a set of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scripted</td>
<td>Includes a scripted query which returns a list of users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. To create a **Simple Match** criterion, fill in the following fields.

**Simple match criterion fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applies to</td>
<td>The type of task that this criterion applies to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>The field from the selected task table that you want to match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Table</td>
<td>The table that stores the resource to use for this matching criterion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Matching Field</td>
<td>The field from the resource table that you want to match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Field</td>
<td>The resource field to be displayed for the task records that match the resource records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. To create an **Aggregate** criterion, fill in the following fields.

**Aggregate criterion fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate Table</td>
<td>The type of task that this criterion applies to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate Filter</td>
<td>Use the condition builder to create a query that returns a set of users from the selected task table. For example, create a query that returns customer service cases with the following states: New, Open, Awaiting info.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate Field</td>
<td>The field from the selected task table to be displayed for the task records that match the query conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. To create a **Scripted** criterion, fill in the following fields.

**Scripted criterion fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>Create a customized script which returns a list of users. An example script is included. The expected return from a customized script is an array of resource sys_ids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate Field</td>
<td>The field from the selected task table to be displayed for the task records that match the query conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Optional: Enter a **Display Name**.

9. Optional: Enable the **Use Reference** field.

If you use a reference field, fill in the following fields.
Reference fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reference Table</td>
<td>The table that stores the referenced information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Filter</td>
<td>Add filter conditions to return the desired reference information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference Field</td>
<td>The field from the selected reference table to be displayed for the records that match the filter conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Filter Label</td>
<td>The label for this field that appears on the assignment workbench</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Click Submit.

Create an assignment workbench configuration
Use a matching rule to create a configuration for the assignment workbench.

Role required: admin

The assignment workbench configuration is stored in a matching rule that is based on the Selection criteria matching type. The default configuration uses the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule, which includes three of the four default matching criteria:

- Availability Today
- Matching Skills
- Assigned Cases

You can modify or create matching criteria and then modify the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule as needed or you can create your own configuration.

1. Navigate to Routing and Assignment > Matching Rules to access the Matching Rules list.
2. Click New.
3. Enter a Name for the matching rule.
4. If desired, enter an Execution Order for the matching rule.
   This is the order in which this matching rule is to be executed. Similar to business rules, matching rules are processed based on execution order, from the lowest to the highest.
5. In the Applies To tab, select the Table that stores the task for which the matching rule is being created.
6. Use the Conditions field to build one or more conditions on the selected table.
   A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the AND and OR buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the X to the right of a condition.
8. Click Submit.
9. From the Matching Rules list, open the matching rule that you just created.
10. In the Select Criteria related list, click New.
    This opens the Select Criterion form.
11. Select a Criterion from the Matching Criteria list.
12. Select how the criterion is to be used in the Use for field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ranking and Display</td>
<td>Uses the criterion to determine agent ranking and displays it in a column on the workbench.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. **Select a Ranking Method.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display Only</td>
<td>Displays the criterion in a column on the workbench but does not use it to determine agent ranking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranking and No Display</td>
<td>Uses the criterion to determine agent ranking but does not display it on the workbench.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. **Click Submit.**

15. Repeat steps 10 through 14 for each criterion to add to the matching rule.

16. If desired, change the weight of a criterion by double-clicking the **Weight** field in the **Select Criteria** related list and entering a new weight.

   Each matching criterion has an assigned weight. By default, the matching criteria in the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule have an assigned weight of 10. You can assign a higher weight to the criteria that are more important.

17. If desired, set the threshold for a criterion by double-clicking the **Threshold** field in the **Select Criteria** related list and entering a threshold number.

   A threshold sets a minimum requirement for a criterion. It may be necessary to personalize the list and add the **Threshold** column.

18. If desired, set a criterion active or inactive by double-clicking the **Active** field in the **Select Criteria** related list and selecting **true** or **false**.

   Changing this setting has an immediate impact on the agent ranking. It may be necessary to personalize the list and add the **Active** column.

---

**Configure assignment workbench properties**

Configure the properties related to the assignment workbench display.

Role required: admin

1. **Navigate to Routing and Assignment > Properties.**

2. Set the following properties, as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title for the macro button</td>
<td>Creates the title for the macro button on the task form. The default is <strong>Find Agents</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[assignment_workbench.find.agents.title]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When enabled opens the assignment workbench in a new window</td>
<td>Opens the assignment workbench in a new window. The default is <strong>False</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[assignment_workbench.new.window]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of agents per page</td>
<td>Set this property to 20, 30, or 50 agents. To get better performance, do not use more than 50 agents per page. The default is <strong>30</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[assignment_workbench_no_of_agents]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Click Save.**

---

**Configure special handling notes**

Use special handling notes to bring important case information to an agent’s attention.

Role required: admin

---
Configure the desired entity tables to use special handling notes and then configure the corresponding forms to display either the Special Handling Notes list or pop-up window.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

## Special Handling Notes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure an entity table to use special handling notes</td>
<td>Configuring an entity to use special handling notes adds the Create Special Handling Notes related link to the corresponding form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure a form to show special handling notes in a list or pop-up window</td>
<td>Configure a form to display special handling notes in either a list or a pop-up window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure the necessary properties to display special handling notes</td>
<td>Configure properties that determine the frequency and the number of special handling notes that are displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

*Configure an entity table to use special handling notes*

Configure an entity table to use special handling notes.

Role required: sn_shn.admin

Configuring an entity to use special handling notes adds the Create Special Handling Notes related link to the corresponding form.

1. Navigate to Special Handling Notes > Configuration.
2. Click New.
3. Select a table in the Table name field.
4. If desired, select one or more Related Fields.
   
   You can also display notes from related entities by including those fields in the configuration. For example, you can display notes for the account and contact associated with a customer service case by selecting the Account and Contact fields on the Case form.
5. Click Submit.
   
   The configuration is added to the Special Handling Configuration list.

*Configure a form to show special handling notes*

Display special handling notes on a form in a list or pop-up window.

Role required: sn_shn.admin

1. Navigate to a form.
2. Right-click the form header and select Configure > Form Layout.
3. Select one of the following from the Available column and move it to the Selected column.
   
   • Special Handling Notes List
   • Special Handling Notes Pop Up
4. Click Save.

*Configure special handling notes properties*

Configure the necessary properties to display special handling notes.
Role required: sn_shn.admin

1. Navigate to Special Handling Notes > Properties.
2. Configure the following properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display special handling notes only once per session</td>
<td>Special handling notes are displayed each time you access a record. Enable this property to display special handling notes only once per session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of notes displayed in the Special Handling Notes pop-up window</td>
<td>Increase or decrease this number as desired. The default is 20 alerts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width of the Special Handling Notes pop-up window in pixels</td>
<td>The width of the pop-up window in pixels. The default width is 500. If you specify less that 300, the window automatically uses the default width.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Save.

Configure escalation management

Escalating a case or account raises awareness about important customer issues, facilitates communication, and enables users to track progress toward a resolution.

Role required: admin

An escalation provides increased attention to a customer issue and provides a way to track the progress made in resolving the issue. Create escalation templates and severity definitions to control the escalation process.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

### Escalation Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create escalation templates</td>
<td>An escalation template determines how an escalation request is processed and includes the type of escalation (case or account); an approval list or workflow (if approval is required), and an escalation watch list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create escalation severity definitions</td>
<td>The escalation severity defines the type of escalation and the color used to represent the cases and accounts of this escalation severity in the user interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Create a case or account escalation template

Create a template for each type of case or account escalation.

Role required: admin

An escalation template determines how an escalation request is processed and includes the type of escalation (case or account); an approval list or workflow (if approval is required), and an escalation watch list.

2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Escalation Template form, as needed.
### Escalation Template form fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the escalation template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip Escalation Approval</td>
<td>Enable this check box to skip the need for approval. If skipped, escalations are automatically approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Default Approval Workflow</td>
<td>Enable this check box to use the default approval workflow (Escalation - Approval) provided with the escalation feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If using the default approval workflow, select an Approval Group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Case Assignment Group Manager to Approvers</td>
<td>For case escalation, enable this check box to add the manager of the case assignment group to the list of approvers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval Group</td>
<td>If the Use Default Approval Workflow check box is enabled:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For the Case Escalation type, you can select an additional approval group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For the Account Escalation type, you must select an approval group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If there are no approvers, escalation requests are automatically approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Approval Workflow</td>
<td>The workflow used to approve escalation requests. Use the default Escalation-Approval workflow or select a different workflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of escalation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Case Escalation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Account Escalation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Watch List</td>
<td>Add users to the escalation template watch list. These users receive notifications for all escalations that use this escalation template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For an account escalation, the account team is automatically added to the watch list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Users can also be added to the watch list on the escalation record.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Submit**.

*Create a case or account escalation severity*

The escalation severity defines the type of escalation and the color used to represent the cases and accounts of this escalation severity in the user interface.

Role required: admin

The assigned severity allows agents to easily identify escalated cases and accounts on lists and forms. The escalation feature provides two escalation severity definitions:
• **High Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in red.
• **Medium Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in orange.

The user interface determines which fields are highlighted for escalated cases and accounts:

* **Agent Workspace**: Field indicators and field highlights appear on the Short description field for escalated cases and on the Name field for escalated accounts.

  **Note**: You can move indicators and highlights to any field that is not a hyperlinked field.

* **Platform interface**: Escalated case and account numbers are indicated with a colored dot on a list and a colored background on a form.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Escalation Severity**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Enter a **Name** for the severity.
4. In the **Style** field, enter a color.

   To configure additional escalation severity records, the system administrator must configure a new style with the desired color. For more information, see *Highlight list fields*.
5. Click **Submit**.

### Configure major issue management

Major issue management enables customer communication for issues that impact a wider audience. Use this feature to proactively identify impacted customers, provide information to these customers, and manage the resolution process.

Role required: admin

This feature enables you to efficiently manage the communication and resolution process for issues that impact multiple customers. With major issue management, you can identify impacted customers who have not yet reported an issue and proactively create cases for these customers.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**.
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Issue Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate Major Issue Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Customer Service Properties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

* **Activate Major Issue Management**

   Activate the Major Issue Management plugin to use the major issue management feature.

   Role required: admin

   This plugin requires:

   • Customer Service [com.sn_customerservice]
   • Targeted Communications [com.sn_publications]
• Task Communications Management [com.snc.task_communication_management]

Major issue management uses the Targeted Communications recipients lists feature to identify impacted customers.

**Note:** If you have installed the Proactive Customer Service Operations plugin, the Major Issue Management plugin is activated by default.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.sn_majorissue_mgt.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Configure case synchronization**
Configure the major issue management system properties to enable synchronization between major cases and associated child cases.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**.
2. Enable the **Synchronize fields from parent to child case** property.
3. In the **Comma separated list of fields that synchronize from parent to child cases** property, add a comma-separated list of fields that synchronize from the major case to each of the associated child cases.
4. Optional: The **Processes SLA asynchronously during parent to child case creation and synchronization** property is enabled by default. Set this property to false to process the SLA synchronously.
5. Click **Save**.

**Configure case action status**
The case action status feature enables customer service agents to easily identify cases that need attention and quickly prioritize their work.

Role required: admin

Visual indicators in the Action Status column on the case list highlight case status:

- A blue indicator highlights cases that require attention, such as cases that have been updated by customers or internal users and are waiting for input or review.
- A red indicator highlights cases that are blocked, such as cases that have open related task records or are waiting for customer feedback.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

**Case Action Status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Case Action Status</td>
<td>Activate the Case Action Status plugin (com.snc.csm_action_status) plugin to enable the case action status feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure actionable case flows</td>
<td>Enable or disable the actionable case flows that are provided with the Case Action Status plugin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.
Activate Case Action Status
Activate the Case Action Status plugin to use the case action status feature.

Role required: admin

Case action status provides a Customer Service-specific application of the Action Status Automation feature, which tracks blocking tasks created for customer service cases and updates the action status indicators.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.snc.csm_action_status.
3. Click **Activate**.

Configure actionable case flows
The Case Action Status plugin provides several actionable case flows that create and resolve blocking tasks for different case-related actions.

Role required: admin

These case flows are enabled by default. If you do not want to create blocking tasks for a specific action, disable the associated flow.

![Note: The Case Action Status plugin provides case flows that create and resolve blocking tasks for problems associated with cases. To get complete functionality, you must also activate the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm). For more information, see Integrate with Service Management.]

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Actionable Case Flows**.
2. Review the list of case flows.
3. Set the **Active** field to false for the desired case flows.

Configure auto close resolved cases
Use the auto close resolved cases feature to automatically close cases in the Resolved state if customers do not take any action.

Role required: admin

Enable this feature by activating the **Auto Close Resolved Cases** Flow Designer flow. You can also create a configuration that enables both the system and agents to exclude cases from auto closure.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Auto Close Resolved Case Flow</td>
<td>Activate the Auto Close Resolved Cases Flow Designer Flow, which identifies cases in the Resolved state that are waiting for a customer response and takes the following actions:&lt;br&gt;• Sends a reminder notification to the customer after 5 days with no response that the case is pending solution acceptance.&lt;br&gt;• Closes the case and sends a reminder notification to the customer after 10 days that the case has been auto closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure Business Rules for Auto Close Field

Configure the following business rules to enable or disable the Auto Close field on the Case form:
- Mark for Auto Close
- Clear Auto Close

Configure Auto Close Flag

The Auto Close Resolved Cases Flow Designer flow uses the Auto Close flag to exclude cases from auto closure. This flag is hidden by default. To use this flag, configure the Case form to display the Auto Close field.

4. To perform a task, click Configure.
This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Configure case digests**

The case digests feature enables you to provide periodic updates and resolution information about high priority customer service cases to customers and internal stakeholders.

Role required: admin

The case digests feature includes two types of case communication:
- **Case action summary**: while a case is in progress, agents can send periodic case updates that describe actions taken, next steps, and other case-related information.
- **Post case review**: when the work on a case has been completed, agents can a post case review document that captures details about the issue, such as the root cause, mitigation plan, and preventive actions.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started
3. In the Case Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

**Case Digests**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Case Digests</td>
<td>Activate the Case Digests (com.sn_csm_case_digest) plugin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Create Assignment Rules       | Assignment rules automatically assign tasks to users and groups when the rule conditions are met. Two rules are provided with the case digests feature that assign the post case review and case action summary records to the case agent:
  - Auto assign the CAS to case agent
  - Auto assign the PCR to case agent

For more information, see *Case action summary and post case review assignment rules*.

Create Approval Workflows

The case digests feature includes one approval workflow that triggers the approval process for post case reviews. This workflow provides a one-step process that obtains a list of approvers from the Approval group and Approval users fields on the Post Case Review form.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Document Templates</td>
<td>Document templates identify, organize, and format the content from the case digest record that is included in generated documents. Two document templates are provided with the case digests feature, one for post case reviews and one for case action summaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a Case Digest Configuration</td>
<td>Case digest configurations handle different types of case review processes based on business needs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Mapping for Case Types</td>
<td>Create the mapping that identifies the case type fields that are copied to post case reviews and case action summaries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.** To perform a task, click **Configure**.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Activate Case Digests**

Activate the Case Digests plugin to use the case digests feature.

Role required: admin

The Case Digests plugin automatically activates the following plugins:

- Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)
- Customer Service Document Template (com.sn_csm_doc_template)
- ServiceNow Document Viewer (com.snc.documentviewer)
- Targeted Communications (com.sn_publications)

The Case Digests feature uses the recipient lists feature from the Targeted Communications plugin (sn_publications).

When creating a case action summary record, users with the sn_esm_agent role can select a recipient list of the type Internal Users. Selecting the Publish to Case & Notify UI action on the Case Action Summary form sends an email notification to the users included in the selected recipient list.

**Note:** The Publish to Case & Notify UI action is available when a list has been selected in the Additional internal recipients field.

For more information, see **Recipient lists**.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.sn_csm_case_digest.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Create a document template**

Create a template to use for generating case action summaries or post case review documents.

Role required: admin

Document templates identify the information to be included in case action summaries and post case review documents. Create a document template to select, organize, and format the content included in the generated documents. You can create a new template or modify an existing template. Two document templates, **CAS Template** and **PCR Template**, are included with the Case Digests plugin.

1. Navigate to **Case Digest > Administration > Document Templates**.
2. Click **New** to create a template.
   
   You can also modify an existing template by clicking the template name and opening the template form.
3. Fill in the following fields on the CS Document Template form.
Create a case digest configuration

Create case digest configurations to handle different types of case review processes.

Role required: admin

As part of creating a case digest configuration, you can define the specific information from a customer service case that needs to be captured as part of the review. Two configurations are included with the Case Digests plugin:

- CAS Configuration
- PCR Configuration

1. Navigate to Case Digest > Administration > Configuration.
2. Click New to create a new configuration.
   You can also modify an existing configuration by clicking the configuration name and opening the configuration form.
3. Fill in the following fields on the Case Digest Configuration form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The configuration name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Name</td>
<td>The table that contains the fields to include in the document template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Case Action Summary [sn_csm_case_digest_cas]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Post Case Review [sn_csm_case_digest_pcr]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header Image</td>
<td>Click to add an image file to use in the document header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footer Text</td>
<td>Text to include in the document footer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Header Position</td>
<td>The position of the image within the header:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>The content to include in the generated case action summary or post case review document. Add content by selecting fields from the table identified in the Table Name field. Selected fields are added to the text editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal content</td>
<td>The content in the case action summary that is for internal users only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This field is available if the Case Action Summary table is selected in the Table name field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Description
--- | ---
Table name | The table that contains the fields to include in the configuration.
  - Case Action Summary [sn_csm_case_digest_cas]
  - Post Case Review [sn_csm_case_digest_pcr]
Order | Determine the order for the configuration. When multiple configurations match for a case, the configuration with the lowest order number is used.
Document template | Select a template to use when creating a case action summary from the Case Action Summary form or a post case review document from the Post Case Review form.
  
You can select from a list of templates that have been defined for the table selected in the Table name field.
Case table | A read-only field that displays the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table.
Approval workflow | If using an optional approval workflow, select the workflow from the Workflow list.
Case condition | Use the condition builder to select the case conditions to which this configuration applies.

4. Click **Submit** or **Update**.

Create a case digest table map
Create a table map to configure the fields that are copied from the case record to the post case review or the case action summary records.

Role required: admin

Two table maps are included with the Case Digests plugin. The **PCR Map** uses the Case (sn_customerservice_case) table as the source table and the Post Case Review (sn_csm_case_digest_pcr) table as the target table. The **PCR Map** maps the following fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case field</th>
<th>Post Case Review field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sys_id</td>
<td>Case number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Root Cause Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close notes</td>
<td>Solution provided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **CAS Map** uses the Case (sn_customerservice_case) table as the source table and the Case Action Summary (sn_csm_case_digest_cas) table as the target table. The **CAS Map** maps the following fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case field</th>
<th>Case Action Summary field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sys_id</td>
<td>Case number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To access the CSM Table Map list, navigate to **csm_table_map_list.do**.
2. Click **New** to create a new table map. You can also modify an existing table map by clicking the map name to open the map form.

3. Fill in the following fields on the CSM Table Map form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mapping name</td>
<td>The table map name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Read only. The application for this table map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API Name</td>
<td>Read only. The API for this table map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Field Mapping</td>
<td>Enables advanced field mapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Table</td>
<td>The source table for the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Table</td>
<td>The target table for the map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enables the mapping from the source to the target tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Advanced Condition</td>
<td>Enables advanced condition mapping, which uses a script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Condition</td>
<td>The script to use if the Use Advanced Condition field is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>Use the condition builder to select the conditions that apply to the table map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>Order of priority for processing multiple matching map definitions simultaneously to resolve dependencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there is only one matching table map, the system uses that map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there are multiple matching table maps with the same order, the system uses the map with the older created date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If there are multiple matching table maps with different orders, the system uses the map with the highest order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Submit**.

5. From the CSM Table Map list, select the table map created in step 2.

6. In the Basic Field Mapping form section, click **New**.

7. Select a **Source Field** and a **Target Field**.

8. Enable the **Active** check box.

9. Enter a number in the **Order** field.

10. Click **Submit**.

11. Repeat steps 7 through 10 for each field to be mapped.

12. Click **Update** on the CSM Table Map form.

---

**Create a table map for case types**

Create table maps to configure the case type fields that are copied from a case record to the post case review or the case action summary records.

Role required: admin
Case Type tables extend from the Case table but do not inherit the table mappings.

1. Access the CSM Table Map list by navigating to csm_table_map_list.do.
2. Create two new table map records in the Case Digest scope, one for the post case review mapping and one for the case action summary mapping.
3. In the first record:
   a) Select the desired Case Type table in the **Source Table** field.
   b) Select the Post Case Review (sn_csm_case_digest_pcr) table in the **Target Table** field.
   c) Click **Submit**.
4. In the second record:
   a) Select the desired Case Type table in the **Source Table** field.
   b) Select the Case Action Summary (sn_csm_case_digest_cas) table in the **Target Table** field.
   c) Click **Submit**.
5. For the two new case type table map records, map the fields from the source table to the target table in the Basic Field Mapping form section.
   For details, see Create a case digest table map.
6. Click **Update**.

**Configure Proactive Customer Service Operations**

Configure various aspects of Proactive Customer Service Operations based on the specific requirements of your organization.

There are a sequence of tasks that enable you to configure Proactive Customer Service Operations. You can perform these tasks based on the plugin you activated. Certain setup tasks apply only if you activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin and this is noted at the top of each task.

To configure Proactive Customer Service Operations, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**
3. In the Proactive Customer Service Operations category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

**Proactive Customer Service Operations configuration tasks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure form views</td>
<td>Configure the form layout and related lists for the different views of the Case, Install Base Item, and Account forms to display the fields you require.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate an alert rule to automatically create a proactive case from an alert</td>
<td>Configure an alert rule to automatically create a proactive case when an incident is created from an alert that has one or more affected install base items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure proactive case flows</td>
<td>Automate workflows for proactive case creation to improve your operational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>efficiency and respond to customer issues faster.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Activate Proactive Customer Service Operations**

Activate the Proactive Customer Service plugin to use Proactive Customer Service Operations.

Role required: admin

Proactive Customer Service Operations is only available for customers who are licensed for the Customer Service Management application.

To activate Proactive Customer Service Operations, activate the Proactive Customer Service Operations Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_ops). This plugin is not active by default.


1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.snc.proactive_cs_ops.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Activate Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management**


Role required: admin

Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management is only available for customers who are licensed for the Customer Service Management application.

To activate Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management, activate the Proactive Customer Service with Event Management plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_itom). This plugin is not active by default.

Activating this plugin also activates the Proactive Customer Service Operations (com.snc.proactive_cs_ops) and Event Management (com.glideapp.itom.snac) plugins.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.snc.proactive_cs_itom.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Configure form views for Proactive Customer Service Operations**

Configure the form layout and related lists for the different views of the Case, Install Base Item, and Account forms to display the fields you require.

Certain fields on the forms can only be added if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin. This is noted in the following table.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service**.
2. Add the following fields to forms and related lists, as required.
Configure form views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>1. Click Cases &gt; Proactive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Add the <strong>Proactive</strong> field to the <strong>Proactive Case</strong> and <strong>Workspace</strong> view, and other views as required:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Proactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Alert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Note: The Alert field is only available if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. * Note: This only applies if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add the following fields to the <strong>Affected Install Base Items</strong> related list, <strong>Proactive Case</strong> and <strong>Workspace</strong> view, and other views as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Health Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Health Status Last Updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>* Note: This only applies if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Click Customer &gt; Accounts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 2. Add the following fields to the **Install Base Items** related list for the **Case** and **Workspace** views, and other views as required. | • Health Status  
| | • Health Last Updated | |
| Install Base Item  | \* Note: This only applies if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin. |
| 1. Click Products > **Install Base Items**. |                                                                 |
| 2. Add the **Service Context** field to the **Default** and **Workspace** views. | |

Activate an alert rule to automatically create a proactive case from an alert

Configure an alert rule to automatically create a proactive case when an incident is created from an alert that has one or more affected install base items.

This task only applies if you are have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin.
Role required: evt_mgmt_admin

2. Click Create Proactive Case.
3. Select the Active check box.
4. Click Update.

When an incident is created from an alert that contains affected install base items, a case is automatically created. The case number is added to the Case field on the Alert form.

Configure proactive case flows

Automate workflows for proactive case creation to improve your operational efficiency and respond to customer issues faster.

This task only applies if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin.

Role required: admin

Configure the flow designer to automate the next steps in processing a proactive case. You can automate that a proactive case is proposed to a major case or is directly promoted to a major case. If promoted directly to a major case, child cases are automatically created when multiple customers are impacted.

If a single account is affected, you can also automate that an account and primary contact are associated to a case.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Proactive Case Flows.
2. Click the Process Proactive Cases Created from Alerts flow.
3. Click the Process Proactive Cases for Single and Multiple Accounts subflow.
4. In the Major Case Status field, set the initial status of the major case for multiple accounts.
   By default, this field is set to None. Based on your selection, the proactive case is either Proposed, Accepted, or None. If you set the status to Accepted, child cases are created automatically.
5. In the Affected Account Threshold field, enter the number of affected accounts required for a proactive case to be eligible for major case processing.
   The default is two.
6. Select the Process Case for Single Account check box to associate an account and primary contact to the case if a single account is affected.
   This also applies if multiple install base items from the same account are affected.
7. Click Done.

Configure Skills Management

Manage skill data in a central location for customer service agents and work items.

Role required: admin

To configure skills management, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started
3. In the Skills Management category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skills Management configuration tasks</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manage skills</td>
<td>Organize skills data of agents and work items in a centralized location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign skills to work items</td>
<td>Create rules to identify skills and automatically associate them with work items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign skills to customer service agents</td>
<td>Identify skills each agent has to work on tasks and assign it to the agent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mandatory skills**

Use the mandatory skills feature to identify any skills that are required for agents and technicians to work on customer service cases and field service work orders and tasks. Then assign cases and tasks to agents and technicians who have those required skills.

When assigning cases, work orders, and work order tasks, the assignment tools consider the mandatory skills, filter out agents and technicians who do not have these skills, and then rank the remaining agents.

- If agents with the mandatory skills are available, the cases and tasks are assigned to these agents.
- If agents with the mandatory skills are not available, then agents with any other, non-mandatory skills identified in the cases and tasks are ranked and assigned.

Field service dispatchers (wm_dispatcher), field service technicians (wm_agent), customer service managers (sn_customerservice_manager), and customer service agents (sn_customerservice_agent) can specify both skills and mandatory skills for cases and tasks.

Mandatory skills is an optional feature. Mandatory skills can be identified on the assignment workbench. In addition to the Skills list, the assignment workbench includes a Mandatory Skills Added list. Agents are ranked in the workbench based on the number of skills that match the skills identified in the Skills list. If the mandatory skills feature is being used, then the agents displayed are filtered by the skills listed in the Mandatory Skills Added list and then ranked by the other matching criteria.

*Configuring the mandatory skills feature*

Configure the mandatory skills feature for use with the Customer Service Management and Field Service Management applications.

Mandatory skills is an optional feature included with the Customer Service Management and Field Service Management plugins. Use the steps below to configure this feature with the desired application.

**Customer Service Management configuration**

To configure the mandatory skills feature for use with Customer Service Management:

- In the Case form:
  - Configure the form layout to use the Task Skills [task_m2m_skill] table.
  - In the Task Skills table, set the Mandatory field to True to identify skills that are mandatory to complete a task.

  **Note:** The Case form should use either the Skills field or the Task Skills table, but not both.

- [Optional] For existing cases that have data populated in the Skills field on the Case form, run the Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M script to move this data to the Task Skills table. By default, this fix script migrates the skills from existing entries in the Case, Work Order, and Work Order Task tables to the Task Skills table. For more information, see Migrate skills to the Task Skill table.

- If you are using the assignment workbench, replace the Matching Skills matching criteria with the Matching Skills - Mandatory Skills Support matching criteria. For more information, see Matching rules for case assignment.
Field Service Management configuration

To configure the mandatory skills feature for use with Field Service Management:

- Enable the `work.management.use.mandatory.skills` system property.
- Configure the Work Order form and the Work Order Task form to use the Task Skills `task_m2m_skill` table.
- [Optional] For existing work orders and tasks that have data populated in the `Skills` field on the Work Order and Work Order Task forms, run the `Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M` script to move this data to the Task Skills table. By default, this fix script migrates the skills from existing entries in the Case, Work Order, and Work Order Task tables to the Task Skills table and configures them as optional skills. For more information, see *Migrate skills to the Task Skill table*.
- If you are using dynamic scheduling, update the task filter for the dynamic scheduling configuration and replace the *Matching Skills for Dynamic Scheduling* matching criteria with the *Matching Mandatory Skills for Dynamic Scheduling* matching criteria. For more information, see *Create a task filter*.

For configuring optional skills, navigate to Field Service > Administration > Configuration, click the Assignment tab and set *Auto-selection of agents for tasks requires them to have skills* to one of the following:

- All - indicates that the agent must have all optional skills listed in the task for task assignment.
- Some - indicates that the agent must have at least one optional skill listed in the task for task assignment.
- None - indicates that the agent is not required to have any optional skill.

Mandatory Skills system properties

The `Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M` script migrates skills from existing tasks to the Task Skills `task_m2m_skill` table. Configure the task tables included in the migration using the `skills_management.migration` system property.

The mandatory skills feature adds the following system properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System parameter</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>work.management.use.mandatory.skills</code></td>
<td>Enables the mandatory skills feature and indicates that the Task Skills <code>task_m2m_skill</code> table is being used for work orders and work order tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true/false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>skills_management.migration</code></td>
<td>Lists the task tables to migrate to the Task Skills <code>task_m2m_skill</code> table when an admin runs the <code>Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M</code> script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: choice list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: <code>wm_task,customerservice_case,wm_order</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** To open the System Property `[sys_properties]` table, enter `sys_properties.list` in the navigation filter.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System parameter</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.skills_management.task_skill_migrated_table</td>
<td>Contains a list of tables for which the Skills field has already been migrated to the Task Skills [task_m2m_skill] table. If the table name is listed in this property, the data has been migrated and will not be migrated again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: choice list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Migrate skills to the Task Skill table*

Migrate data from the Skills field to the Task Skills table to utilize mandatory skills support for executing tasks in a case or work order.

Role required: wm_admin, admin

The Task Skills [task_m2m_skill] table stores skills and mandatory skills.

In the Customer Service Management application, the assignment workbench uses the Task Skills table instead of the Skills field in the Case table to display agents based on the evaluation criteria for task assignments.

In the Field Service Management application, the work order task assignments done using auto-assignment, dynamic scheduling, and central dispatch use the Task Skills table instead of the Skills field in the Work Order and Work Order Task tables to assign agents for task assignments.

1. **Add a system property** with the following settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a system property for a table in the Customer Service Management application.</td>
<td>Make sure that you are logged in to the Customer Service Management application. Note: Configure the System Properties form to display the Suffix field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In the Suffix field, enter the name of the system property as follows: com.snc.skills_management.&lt;table_name&gt;_migrate_skills, where &lt;table_name&gt; is the name of a case task table from which the skills need to be copied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create a system property for a table in the Field Service Management application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a system property for a table in the Field Service Management application.</td>
<td>Make sure that you are logged in to the Global application. In the Name field, enter the name of the system property in the following format: com.snc.skills_management.&lt;table_name&gt;_migrate_skills, where &lt;table_name&gt; is the name of a work order or work order task table from which the skills need to be copied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. In the Type field, set the value to true.

3. Click *Update*.

4. Navigate to System Definition > Fix Scripts and run the Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M fix script.

The skills are copied to the task_m2m_skill table. The name of the table from which the skills are copied gets appended to the com.snc.skills_management.task_skill_migrated_tables system property. When the script is run again, it ignores all tables from which skills have already been migrated.
Configure communication channels

Configure communication channels to provide users with options to email, call, or chat with your teams for help. You can also integrate with social media.

Role required: admin

You have the following options for setting up communication channels:

- Set up the **Customer Service email channel.**
  Customers can send emails to create new cases and update current cases as well as receive email updates from agents as cases progress. Customer Service Management uses the ServiceNow **email accounts** feature to create and maintain email accounts.
  
  - **Configure one or more email addresses.**
  - **Configure an email address for a product.**
  - **Configure an email subject line prefix.**
  - **Set email communication channel properties.**
  - **Create an email client template.**
  - **Create quick messages.**
  - **Configure signatures in quick messages and email client templates.**
  - **Create rules for incoming emails and create and assign cases.**

- Set up the **Customer Service phone channel.**
  External customers can reach out to customer service agents using the phone communication channel. Customer Service Management uses both Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) and OpenFrame to provide phone support for customers, as well as the Notify application and the Twilio Voice product.

  OpenFrame is included with Customer Service Management. The CTI Softphone plugin (com.snc.cti) and the Customer Service CTI Demo Data (com.snc.customerservice_cti_demo) plugin must be activated separately. The Notify plugin (com.snc.notify) is activated as part of the CTI Softphone plugin.
  
  - **Set up the phone communication channel.**
  - **Associate a phone number with a workflow.**
  - **Create an OpenFrame configuration.**

- Set up the **Customer Service chat channel.**
  The chat communication channel uses the Connect Support feature to provide chat capability from the Customer Service Portal and Consumer Service Portal. You can also enable Virtual Agent to create or use predefined chatbot topics (conversations) for your users.
  
  - **Configure the customer service chat queue.**
  - **Add an agent to the chat support assignment group.**
  - **Activate Virtual Agent for CSM.**
  - **Activate Customer Service Virtual Agent conversations.**
  - **Integrate Customer Service Virtual Agent with Facebook Messenger.**

- Set up the **social media integration** feature to support case resolution through social media channels.
  
  - **Create a social media profile** for an account, contact, or consumer.
  - **Create a social media log entry** for a case.

Configure the chat channel

Configure the chat channel with the ServiceNow® Connect Support feature. You can also enable Virtual Agent to create or use predefined chatbot topics (conversations) for your users. You can also give users the option of switching to a live agent from a virtual agent.
Agents must be added to the Customer Service chat support assignment group before they can receive chat requests. This assignment group is used by the Customer Service chat queue to route the chat requests.

**Configure the customer service chat queue**

Define the customer service agents, default chat messages, schedule, and escalation path for the customer service chat queue.

Role required: admin

The Customer Service Management chat communication channel uses the ServiceNow [Connect Support](https://www.servicenow.com) feature.

---

**Set up chat queue**

1. Navigate to **Collaborate > Administration > Queues**.
2. Select **Customer Service** from the Chat Queues list.
3. Fill in the fields, as appropriate.

**Chat Queue form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Not used in Connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment group</td>
<td>User group that contains the support staff for the queue. Any user in the group can view the queue in the Connect sidebar and accept chats. No other users can access the queue. This field must be populated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average wait time</td>
<td>Average time it takes for an agent to accept a chat in the queue. This value is automatically calculated. Do not manually edit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm problem</td>
<td>Not used in Connect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate to</td>
<td>Different queue to which an agent can escalate a chat. For example, there is a queue for high priority support chats. When a queue is defined in this field, agents can access the Escalate option in conversations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial agent response</td>
<td>Message that users see when an agent accepts their chat. For example, Thank you for contacting support. We are looking into your question now and will be with you shortly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Message that users see when they attempt to start a chat outside the defined queue Schedule. You can use HTML to format the message and include links or media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Initial phrase that users see when they start a new chat in the queue. For example, How can I help you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Schedule that defines when the queue is available. Leave the field blank to make the queue available all the time. Users cannot start a new conversation in the queue outside the schedule hours.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

*Activate Virtual Agent for CSM*

Activate Virtual Agent for CSM to use the predefined Customer Service Virtual Agent topics (chatbot conversations) designed to help your customers complete common self-service tasks.

The Virtual Agent plugin (com.glide.cs.chatbot) must be activated. If Virtual Agent is not currently activated, contact ServiceNow to activate it.

Role required: admin

Activate the Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations plugin (com.sn_csm.virtualagent) to access the predefined Customer Service topics.

*Customer Service Virtual Agent conversations*

Predefined Customer Service Virtual Agent chatbot conversations enable your customers to get help with the product. Integrating Natural Language Understanding (NLU) models with your virtual agent chatbot topics enables chatbots to analyze, understand, and navigate the user to the right topic based on the inferred intent.

A conversation topic defines the dialog between the Virtual Agent (chatbot) and the user to accomplish a specific goal.

*Activating Virtual Agent conversations*

The system administrator or a virtual agent admin must do the following to enable the chatbot conversations:

- Enable the Glide Virtual Agent plugin (com.glide.cs.chatbot).
- Enable the Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations plugin (com.sn_csm.virtualagent).
- *Publish a Virtual Agent topic* the following read-only pre-defined virtual agent chatbot topics:

  - **Note:** You can duplicate a topic and then customize it.

  - Check Case Status

  Users can search cases and check the status of an existing case.
• Get Help with a Product
  Users can get help on an issue with a product, search relevant knowledge articles, or create a case for the issue.

• Get Help
  This topic is for users who are not logged in and want to chat anonymously. Users can use keywords and search relevant knowledge articles or choose to be transferred to a live agent. You can integrate this topic with the Virtual agent - Facebook messaging integration to enable chat using your messaging application.

• Get Help with an Order
  Users can get help on an issue with an existing order, search relevant knowledge articles, or create a case for the issue.

• Submit Request
  Users can submit a request for searching and using one of the catalog items.

• Create Case
  Creates a case from Virtual Agent when no relevant topics for the issue you have are displayed.

• Update Case
  Users can update a case from Virtual agent.

Your users can run the published topics in your chat support client.

Activating Virtual Agent conversations with NLU

• The Customer Service NLU Model for Virtual Agent Conversations (com.sn_csm.nlu) plugin is automatically enabled when you enable the Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations plugin (com.sn_csm.virtualagent).
  After you enable the plugin, you can view the following read-only intents for the Customer Service NLU for VA models in Studio:
  • CheckCaseStatus
  • GetHelp
  • GetHelpWithProduct
  • GetHelpWithOrder
  • SubmitRequest

  Each intent corresponds to a chatbot topic. To customize an intent, you can import an existing intent from the Customer Service NLU for Virtual Agent model and then link the NLU model with the associated intent for the topic.

• Enable ServiceNow NLU in the general settings.

Integrate Customer Service Virtual Agent with Facebook Messenger
Integrate the Customer Service Virtual Agent with Facebook Messenger to enable bot conversations in the messenger.

• Install the Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice) plugin.
• Install the Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations plugin (com.sn_csm.virtualagent).
• Make sure Virtual Agent is integrated with Facebook Messenger.
• Make sure you have the token and secret for the messenger.

For information on integrating the Virtual Agent with Facebook Messenger and for retrieving the messenger token and secret, see Set up Virtual Agent integration for consumer messaging apps.

Role required: virtual_agent_admin or admin
With this integration, you can get help using Virtual Agent chatbot conversations. For more information on getting help, see Customer Service Virtual Agent conversations.

1. In the application navigator, enter `sys_cs_adapter_configuration_page_messenger_list.do`.
2. Select `sample-fb-messenger-app`.
   You have to be in the Customer Service Virtual Agent Conversations application to edit the record.
3. In the Messenger Page ID field, enter your company’s Facebook page ID.
4. Right-click and select `Save`.
5. In the Provider Auth field, click the information icon and open the Message Auth record:
   - Go to the Outbound message creation field, click the information icon and open the Token Verification record.
   - In the Token field, enter the token for the messenger application.
   - Click Update.
6. In the Message Auth record:
   - Go to the Inbound message verification field, click the information icon, and open the Hash Message Verification record.
   - In the Secret field, enter the app secret for the messenger application.
   - Click Update.

Configure Pre-chat after upgrading
If you have upgraded, some settings need to be configured to use Pre-chat effectively.

Role required: admin

For information about using pre-chat surveys to capture preliminary information from a customer, see Pre-chat surveys. If you have upgraded, you must manually adjust some settings to use Pre-chat most effectively.

1. Make the predefined pre-chat surveys active.
   a) Navigate to Collaboration > Pre-Chat Survey.
   b) Select the CSP Pre-Chat Survey, which collects preliminary information for logged-in customers.
   c) In the form, select Active.
   d) Click Submit.
   e) Repeat this process for the CSP Anonymous Pre-Chat Survey, which collects preliminary information for users who are not logged in.

2. Disable the legacy form-based chat widget from appearing in the portal header.
   a) Type `sys_properties_list.do` from your instance.
   b) Search for the `csp.legacy_chat` property.
   c) Set the property value to true.
   d) Click Update.

   The Chat option from the portal header is disabled.

3. Include the chat widget to appear on the Consumer Service Portal page.
   a) Navigate to Service Portal > Agent Chat.
   b) Click CSP Chat.
   c) Select Active.
   d) Click Submit.
Configuring the email channel

Set up email addresses that customers can use to submit cases to your team. To help direct cases to specific teams, you can designate email addresses to specific product. As agents work on the cases, they can also email customers with updates and proposed solutions.

Customer Service Management uses the Email Accounts application to create and maintain email accounts. The system administrator can create multiple incoming email addresses that customers can use to communicate with customer service agents. The system administrator can also create one outgoing email address.

After the incoming and outgoing email addresses are created, the system administrator can set these properties for the email communication channel:

- Establish one of the incoming email addresses to automatically create a case.
- Enable a prefix to include in the subject line of an email to any of the incoming email addresses that automatically creates a case.
- Create cases for customers who are not currently in the system.

The system administrator can also create a channel configuration to associate any of the incoming email addresses with specific products.

Configure an email address for a product

Users with the system administrator role can configure an email address that creates a case for a specific product.

Role required: admin

Create a configuration that links a product to a specific email address. This configuration is created in the Channel Configuration (sn_customer_service_channel_config) table.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Channels.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the email configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Type</td>
<td>This field displays the Email configuration type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The product model associated with this email configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>The check box to activate the email configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email address</td>
<td>The email address for this configuration. Enter one of the incoming email addresses that the system administrator created using the Email Accounts application.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

Configure an email subject line prefix

Users with the system administrator role can configure a prefix to include in an email subject line that creates a case.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Properties.
2. In the Email subject prefix format for new case field, enter the prefix.
   The default prefix is Case:
3. Click Save.

*Customer service email properties*

Users with the system administrator role can set several properties for the Customer Service Management email communication channel.

After creating the incoming and outgoing email addresses that customers use to communicate with customer service agents, the system administrator can set the following email-specific properties. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties** to access these properties.

**Customer Service Management email properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case email address [glide.cs.email.case_queue_address]</td>
<td>One of the incoming email addresses that automatically creates a customer service case. For incoming email, the system checks the address to see if it matches the address in the Case email address property. If yes, the system creates a customer service case. If it does not match, or if this property is not set, the system then checks the Email subject prefix format for new case property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email subject prefix format for new case [glide.cs.email.new_case_prefix]</td>
<td>The prefix included in the subject line of an email to any of the incoming email addresses that automatically creates a customer service case. Case: is the default prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create case for non matched user [sn_customerservice.email.create_case_for_non_matched_user]</td>
<td>Enable the creation of new customer service cases when emails are received from users with email addresses that do not currently exist in the system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Configure signatures in quick messages and email client templates*

Configure signatures in quick messages and email client templates to include attributes of the logged-in user such as name, phone number, or designation. Ensuring that customers receive emails with uniform signatures enhances the user experience.

You can create predefined content in quick messages or email client templates. Including ${current_user} and ${current_user.title} in the message body substitutes the agent name and designation when an agent replies to a customer. The agent saves time when the signature is automatically appended. Following is an example of the message body text template.

```plaintext
Hi ${consumer.name}${contact.name},

Thank you for writing to us.

<<<Please type your response here before sending this email>>>

We hope this information was helpful.
For any further information, please reply to this email.

Regards,
${current_user}
${current_user.title}
```

When an agent replies to the customer with the template that you have predefined, the following message is automatically filled. The ${current user} is replaced by John Jason, which is the agent name and ${current_user.title} is replaced by the agent designation.

```plaintext
Hi Amy Chen,
```

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
Thank you for writing to us.

<<<Please type your response here before sending this email>>>

We hope this information was helpful.
For any further information, please reply to this email.

Regards,
John Jason
Customer Service Representative

Similarly, you can refer to the attributes in the sys_user table such as the address or phone number.

The following video provides an overview of configuring signatures in quick messages and email client templates.

Disable email responses from the case activity stream
By default, customer service agents can respond to cases using options within a customer email thread instead of having to use another email client. Admins may disable this option for a business manager who does not want agents to interact with customers directly.

Role required: admin

Agents can use the Reply, Reply All, and Forward buttons in the case activity stream to respond to customer emails. This feature is enabled by default. Users with the system administrator role can disable this feature and hide these buttons if needed from the Agent Workspace application.

1. Select the gear icon in the banner frame to access the System Settings window.
2. Click Developer.
3. Select Agent Workspace under Application.
4. Create a system property sn_agent_workspace.activity_email_options_enabled.
5. Set the property value to false.

As an agent, you will be unable to reply or forward emails.

Creating rules for incoming emails that create and assign cases
Create your email-related business processes using Inbound Email Flows. Once you receive an email on a specified support email address, you can define rules to create cases and assign the cases to specific teams.

In previous releases, incoming emails were processed through inbound email actions. Admins created separate email actions to support different business processes using scripts.

Inbound Email Flows provide powerful configuration capabilities to manage emails along with your customer service processes through a visual Flow Designer interface. Business managers can define inbound email flows without having to depend on admins or developers to write complex scripts. Email flows use conditional logic to incorporate multiple business processes in one flow.

The following example email flows are available by default once you activate the Customer Service Management plugin. Enable the email flows for activating the email processing rules to automatically create and update cases.

- Create case from email
- Update case using Reply

Note:
- The execution order of the inbound email flows take a higher precedence than inbound actions (that is if an email flow executes, it prevents execution of inbound actions).
The user who sends an email should have the necessary roles to perform operations specified in the flow, else the operation stops while executing.

The following example email flows are installed with the platform. These flows are not required for any of the CSM email processing rules:

- Handle email replies
- Logging a problem

Define rules to process incoming emails and to create and assign cases

Define your email-related business processes using Inbound Email Flows, which enables you to manage emails along with your customer service processes through a visual **Flow Designer** interface without having to design or request complex scripts.

Role required: admin, sn_customerservice_manager

Email flows use conditional logic to incorporate multiple business processes in one flow. When designing inbound email flows, note the following:

- The execution order of the inbound email flows take a higher precedence than inbound actions (that is if an email flow executes, it prevents execution of inbound actions).
- The user who sends an email should have the necessary roles to perform operations specified in the flow or the operation will stop.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Flow Designer > Inbound Email Flows**.
2. Select a default flow.
   - The available flows are:
     - Create case from email when a user sends a new email
     - Update a case when you use the reply option
3. Click the **Inbound Email** trigger.
4. Modify the default email filter conditions or select **New Criteria** to add conditions.
5. Select a Reply Record Type table.
6. Click **Done**.
7. Click an existing action and expand it.
8. Provide information for the action or click + to add a new action, flow logic, or subflow.
9. Click **Done**.
10. Verify the email flow and modify it if necessary.
11. Click **Save**.
12. Click **Activate**.
    The defined inbound email flow is activated.

**Configuring the phone channel**

Configure phone support for customers with Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) and OpenFrame.

*Create an OpenFrame configuration*

This configuration specifies the OpenFrame window settings as well as the URL to be launched within OpenFrame.

Role required: admin

As part of the OpenFrame configuration, users with the admin role can select one or more user groups. Access to the configuration is limited to the users that have the openframe user role and that belong to the selected groups.

1. Navigate to **OpenFrame > Configurations** to display the OpenFrame Configurations list.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields, as appropriate.

**OpenFrame Configuration form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the OpenFrame configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>The title that appears in the OpenFrame window header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtitle</td>
<td>The subtitle that appears in the OpenFrame window header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order number for the configuration. If users have multiple OpenFrame configurations, they can only access the configuration with the lowest order number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> When upgrading, the <strong>Order</strong> field for the existing default OpenFrame configuration is set to 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable collapsed view</td>
<td>Enables the expand and collapse capability for the OpenFrame window. When collapsed, users can still access call control actions. The default setting is <strong>False</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show presence indicator</td>
<td>Enables the indicator that displays agent availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group</td>
<td>The user groups selected for this configuration. Access to this configuration is limited to the users that have the openframe user role and that belong to the selected groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you do not select any groups, the configuration is available to all users with the openframe user role.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>The URL to be launched within OpenFrame. This URL can be an absolute path or a path that is relative to the ServiceNow instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Denotes this configuration as active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>The width of the OpenFrame window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>The height of the OpenFrame window, not including the OpenFrame header height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icon Class</td>
<td>The class of icons used for the OpenFrame window (retina-icons.css). Only supports icon-phone and icon-video values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title Icon</td>
<td>The icon displayed on the OpenFrame window header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>Can be used to store any JSON encoded string.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
Several fields on the OpenFrame Configuration form can also be set by using the OpenFrame API. These fields include: Title, Subtitle, Width, Height, and Title Icon.

4. Click Submit.

OpenFrame CTI events
Use OpenFrame events to achieve better integration between AWA and CTI and aide in improved phone routing.

OpenFrame CTI events is enabled by default upon installation of Openframe and Advanced Work Assignment for CSM plugins. As a CTI Integrator, ensure that you subscribe to the following events using the Openframe API ‘subscribe’ option.

- openframe_awa_agent_presence
- openframe_awa_workitem_offered
- openframe_awa_workitem_accepted
- openframe_awa_workitem_rejected
- openframe_agent_off_interaction

Events are sent to OpenFrame when the agent's presence state changes, work item is offered to an agent, work item is accepted or rejected by an agent, and agent is off chat along with the availability on each channel.

Add and activate OpenFrame configuration by going to OpenFrame > Configurations.

Social media integration
Support case resolution through social media communication channels.

When working with customers or consumers to create and resolve cases, agents can select Social as the communication channel and add a social profile to the Case form. Any communication with customers or consumers that takes place through social media is recorded on the Case form in the Social Logs related list.

Customer service managers can create one or more social profiles for a user by recording a user's social profile information on a specific social media channel such as Twitter or Facebook. Managers can create social profiles for accounts, contacts, and consumers from the Social Profiles related list on the entity form. Agents have read-only access to these profiles.

Integration with Customer Service Management
The social media communication channel is integrated with the following Customer Service Management forms: Case, Account, Contact, and Consumer.

On the Case form, the Channel field includes the Social option. Selecting this option adds the Social Profile field to the Case form, in which you can select a specific social media channel. The Social Logs related list captures the details of social media conversations.

The Account, Contact, and Consumer forms include the Social Profiles related list. Customer service managers can create one or more profiles for each of these entities.

Plugins
The Customer Service Social Integration plugin (com.sn_cs_social) is activated as part of the Customer Service Management plugin.

Tables
The Customer Service Social Media plugin adds the following tables.
### Configure the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

Configure the Customer and Consumer Service Portals to provide information and support for your customers.

Role required: admin

The Customer and Consumer Service Portals are self-service web portals based on the ServiceNow Service Portal application.

The Customer Service Portal supports your business-to-business (B2B) customers and the Consumer Service Portal supports your business-to-consumer (B2C) customers.

Use the portals to provide information and support for your customers. The portals provide a basic format that customers can use to search for information or request assistance from a customer service agent. They include the following features:

- A header with links for different customer activities.
- A search feature that customers can use to search for information from several repositories.
- Links to information sources such as the knowledge base, the user community, and customer support.

**Note:** The Customer Service Portal is automatically installed when you activate the Customer Service plugin. To activate the Consumer Service Portal, activate the Consumer Service plugin.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**.
3. In the Customer Service Portal (B2B) or the Consumer Service Portal (B2C) category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

### Customer and Consumer Service Portal configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customize the Customer Service Portal</td>
<td>Customize the Customer Service Portal to meet your needs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate the Consumer Service Portal</td>
<td>Activate the Consumer Service Portal plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customize the Consumer Service Portal</td>
<td>Customize the Customer Service Portal to meet your needs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.
Activate the Consumer Service Portal

Activate the Consumer Service Portal plugin to use the Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
3. Click Activate.

Customize the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

Customize the Customer and Consumer Service Portals to meet your needs.

Role required: admin

Navigate to Service Portal > Service Portal Configuration.

Some of the components that you can customize include:

• **Branding**: Configure the portal branding to give your Customer Service Portal its own look and feel.
• **Menus**: Configure the portal header menu to set up the main menu, one of the main navigation controls for your users.
• **Homepage**: Assign a homepage to the portal.
• **Widgets**: Use Service Portal widgets to define the content in your portal.
• **Roles**: Configure page security by role to either set up pages to be public (no login required) or to filter them by user role.

Consumer Service Portal properties

Properties that the system administrator can set to limit the number of registered products per consumer, the number of open cases per consumer, and the number of attachments per consumer record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_attachments_per_record</td>
<td>Maximum consumer attachable items per record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type</strong>: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Default value</strong>: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Location</strong>: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_new_cases_daily</td>
<td>Maximum new cases that a consumer can create per day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type</strong>: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Default value</strong>: 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Location</strong>: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_comments_per_case_daily</td>
<td>Maximum comments that a consumer can post per day on a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type</strong>: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Default value</strong>: 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Location</strong>: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_products</td>
<td>Maximum registered products per consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Portal usage calculation

Portal usage enables you to track how your customers and employees are using the portal. The Customer Portal Usage dashboard provides information about portal visits resulting in session counts.

To view the Customer Portal Usage dashboard, navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Portal Usage.

**Note:** You can ignore the bot session usage that is captured as part of this dashboard.

A user session is a period of activity on the Customer or Consumer Service Portal by one of the following users:

- **External:** an external user, typically a customer or consumer, who is logged in.
- **Anonymous:** a user who is not logged in.

A user session times out after a specific period of inactivity.

User access to the self-service portals is tracked as follows: per session, per day, and per portal. If the same user logs in from multiple browsers or devices, each login is counted as a separate visit. Each first call of a portal page starts a session and, at midnight (server time), the system restarts another session. This means that a user cannot have a session longer than 24 hours.

The default session timeout is 30 minutes. This setting can be adjusted using a system property. For more information about modifying the session timeout setting, see Manage user sessions.

### Site visit calculation examples

A user logs in, logs out, and then logs in again:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>User activity</th>
<th>Billable count incremented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>User visits the portal as an anonymous or guest user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>User logs in</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>User logs out</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>User logs in immediately after logging out</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A user logs in and continues the session past midnight:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>User activity</th>
<th>Billable count incremented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>User visits the portal as an anonymous or guest user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>User logs in</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>User session continues past midnight</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>User logs out</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Customer Service Portal user roles

Several different roles allow customers to create and edit cases and manage users from the customer portal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User role</th>
<th>What this user can do on the Customer Service Portal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Customer [sn_customerservice.customer] | • Create a case for this user's account.  
  • View a list of cases created by this user.  
  • Edit cases created by this user.  
  • View a list of assets belonging to this user's account.  
  • Search for information. |
| Customer case manager [sn_customerservice.customer_case_manager] | • Create a case for this user's account and for child accounts.  
  • View a list of cases created by this user and view cases for child accounts.  
  • Edit cases created by this user and edit cases for child accounts.  
  • View a list of assets belonging to this user's account and to child accounts.  
  • Search for information.  
  • Create a case on behalf of another contact in this account.  
  • View a list of cases belonging to this account.  
  • Edit cases belonging to the account. |
| Customer administrator [sn_customerservice.customer_admin] | • Create a case for this user's account.  
  • Create a case on behalf of another contact for this account.  
  • View a list of cases belonging to this account.  
  • Edit cases belonging to this account.  
  • View a list of assets belong to this user's account.  
  • Search for information.  
  • Manage users for this account. |
| Partner [sn_customerservice.partner] | • Create a case for this user's account.  
  • Create a case on behalf of customer accounts.  
  • View a list of cases belonging to this user.  
  • Edit cases belonging to this user.  
  • View a list of assets belong to this user's account.  
  • Search for information. |

**Note:** The customer case manager role is not automatically added to the `sn_customerservice.contact_role_assignment` system property. To expose this role to customer and partner administrators, navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Properties and add it to this property.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User role</th>
<th>What this user can do on the Customer Service Portal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Partner administrator [sn_customerservice.partner_admin] | • Create a case for this user's account.  
• Create a case on behalf of customer accounts.  
• View a list of cases belonging to this account and to customer accounts.  
• View a list of assets belong to this account and to customer accounts.  
• Edit cases belonging to this account and to customer accounts.  
• Manage users for this account and for customer accounts. |

**Limit access to product model data on the Customer Service Portal**

Use a system property to limit customer access to data in the Product Models table.

From the Customer Service Portal, product model data can be accessed by external users with the sn_esm_user role. System administrators can use the `csm_cmdb_model.customer_visible_flag` system property and the **Customer Visible** field on the Product Models table (cmdb_model) and child tables to limit this access.

The `csm_cmdb_model.customer_visible_flag` system property enables the **Customer Visible** field for the tables listed below. By default, this property is set to false. When set to true, the system uses the setting in the **Customer Visible** field to determine access to product model data on the Customer Service Portal.

- Product Models table (cmdb_model)
- Software Models table (cmdb_software_product_model)
- Application Models table (cmdb_application_product_model)
- Consumable Models table (cmdb_consumable_product_model)
- Facility Models table (cmdb_facility_product_model)
- Hardware Models table (cmdb_hardware_product_model)

The Model Categories table (cmdb_model_category) does not have a **Customer Visible** field. Access to model categories data is restricted by using the **Customer Visible** field on the Product Model table. Only the categories for the products which are visible in the Product Model table will be visible in the Model Categories table.

For upgrades from Jakarta to madrid, the **Customer Visible** field is added to each record in the Product Models table and set to false.

To limit access:

1. Set the `csm_cmdb_model.customer_visible_flag` system property to true.
2. Customize the Product Models table (cmdb_model) and add the **Customer Visible** column.
3. Set the value of the **Customer Visible** field to true for the product models that should be visible to external customers.

External users can see these product using these product models if the products are linked to the customer account.

**View the number of bot-based sessions**

CSM portal usage sessions are billable to customers, but sometimes customers are unnecessarily charged for sessions generated due to bots, crawlers, and DDOS attacks. You can view the number of bot-based sessions to ensure that customers are not incorrectly billed.

Role required: admin, usage_admin
For all new portals you create, bot sessions are captured in the Service Portal Bot Sessions [ua_sp_bot_session] table and all session types are captured in the Service Portal Usage [ua_sp_usage] table.

1. Navigate to **Reports > View/Run**.
2. Search for customer portal usage.
3. Click the **Customer Portal Usage** report.

The report shows the session count for all sessions and a separate count of sessions generated due to bots, crawlers, and DDoS attacks.

**Multi-factor authentication for Customer and Consumer Service Portals**

Multi-factor authentication, also known as two-step verification, is a security requirement that asserts a user enter more than one set of credentials.

Enable multi-factor authentication for Customer and Consumer Service Portal users so that access to the self-service web portals is more secure from potential vulnerabilities. For more information, see *Multifactor authentication (MFA)*.

**Multi-factor authentication properties**

Use properties to enable role-based multi-factor authentication criteria and configure the behavior.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Multi-factor authentication [glide.authenticate.multifactor]</td>
<td>Select this check box to allow users and administrators to use this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of times a user can bypass setting up multi-factor authentication [glide.authenticate.multifactor.setup.bypass.count]</td>
<td>Enter a number that represents how many times a user can choose to skip the additional passcode requirement. This gives your users the ability to still log in the instance if they do not have their mobile device with them. If you disable this feature and then re-enable it, the counter starts over again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time in minutes, the one time code sent to user's email address is valid for [glide.multifactor.onetime.code.validity]</td>
<td>Enter a number in minutes that specifies how long the reset code is valid. See <em>Log on with multi-factor authentication</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional time in seconds for which the code will be valid to accommodate for the clock skew. Max value is 60 seconds.</td>
<td>Enter a number in seconds with a maximum of 60. By default, the instance validates the code entered by the user against the single app-generated code generated at whatever the current time is. You can skew the time window with this property and allow one or more codes generated during a time window to be considered valid. The property's value is used in the following calculation: current time - x/2 and current time + x/2, where 'x' is the value of this property. If you use the value of 10, for example, the instance considers any codes generated by the app between the time range [the current time - 5 seconds] and [current time + 5 seconds] to be valid. Use this property to prevent log in issues where the user is unable to enter the correct code in the default time allotted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configure roles for multi-factor authentication**

Add the following external roles to the multi-factor roles:

- sn_customerservice.customer
- sn_customerservice.consumer

Users with these roles will be required to use multi-factor authentication. For more information, see [Require MFA for a role](#).

**Set up CSM Agent Workspace**

Set up CSM Agent Workspace for your agents so they can engage with customers, answer questions, create cases, and resolve issues.

To set up CSM Agent Workspace:

1. Activate the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice).
2. Set up Agent Workspace.
3. Set up the necessary communication channels and routing.
4. Set up additional components specific to CSM Agent Workspace.

**Activate Customer Service**

The Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice) plugin provides the CSM Agent Workspace functionality. For more information, see [Activate Customer Service Management](#).

Additional plugins are required for phone integration. For details, see:

- [Agent Workspace phone integration with OpenFrame and computer telephony integration (CTI)](#)
- [Configure Agent Chat for Agent Workspace](#)
The FSM Agent Workspace (com.snc.agent_workspace.fsm) plugin activates Field Service for CSM Agent Workspace. Enable this plugin to perform field service tasks in CSM Agent Workspace, such as creating work orders for cases and managing work orders and tasks.

**Note:** The FSM Agent Workspace plugin activates the Agent Workspace (com.agent_workspace) plugin.

**Set up Agent Workspace**

You can set up Agent Workspace either by using Agent Workspace Guided Setup or by following the setup instructions in the Agent Workspace documentation. For details, see *Set up Workspace*.

**Set up communication channels and routing**

Enable agents to chat with customers or to receive and place customer calls. You can also set up routing that automatically directs chats to the appropriate agents. For more information about communication channels, see *Phones and chat in Workspace*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Channel</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chat</td>
<td>CSM Agent Workspace uses Agent Chat to enable customers to ask questions and receive information through live or automated chat.</td>
<td>Configure Agent Chat for Agent Workspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>CSM Agent Workspace uses a combination of OpenFrame and computer telephony integration (CTI) to enable third-party phone integration.</td>
<td>Agent Workspace phone integration with OpenFrame and computer telephony integration (CTI)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Set up CSM Agent Workspace components**

Complete these tasks to set up the components that are specific to CSM Agent Workspace.

*Create or modify a landing page*

The landing page is an agent’s initial view of the workspace. The CSM Landing Page is included with the CSM Workspace plugin. You can modify this landing page or you can clone this page to create a new page.

*Configure ribbon components and ribbon component attributes*

The form ribbon includes components that display information about a record. You can add the Customer 360, Timeline, and SLA components to the Case form ribbon. You can also configure attributes for the Customer 360 and Timeline components.

*Configure service catalogs for CSM Agent Workspace*

Customer service agents use service catalogs to fulfill catalog item requests. You can configure the Service Workspace Portal to use the catalogs that contain the desired items.
Create a CSM Agent Workspace landing page

Create landing pages for different agents and teams by cloning the CSM Landing Page and adding or modifying components and visualizations.

Role required: admin

The CSM Landing Page is included with the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice). You can add Performance Analytics information to this landing page by activating the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service Management - Advanced plugin (com.snc.pa.customer_service_advanced). This plugin adds a section for My Organization's Performance, which includes analytics for CSAT and New vs Closed Cases.

1. Navigate to Workspace Experience > Administration > Landing Pages.
2. Click the CSM Landing Page.
3. Click Clone Page.

Note: The Clone Page action is available when the application scope is CSM workspace.

4. Fill out the form.

The settings in the Layout and Available Child Slots fields determine how the content renders on the page.

### Landing page attributes and layout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of your landing page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component defaults to sn-page and is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order for the landing page. If you have multiple landing pages, the order determines the landing page precedence. Pages with a lower order value take precedence over pages with a higher order value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Determines whether the landing page is active. This field must be enabled for a landing page to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Page Title</td>
<td>A title to display on the page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Child Slots</td>
<td>A predefined style of child slots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layout</td>
<td>The layout of the columns on the page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Update to save your landing page.
6. Optional: Configure permissions for users to access the landing page.
   a) Click the UX Page Element Permissions related list.
   b) Click New.
   c) Select the role or group for the landing page to be visible.
   d) Click Submit to save your permissions.

Any page element (including sub elements) can have a restriction to a given set of roles or groups. If there are no element permissions set on roles or groups, then all users see the element. If there are some element permissions set, then a user needs just one role or group assignment to see the element.

7. Configure a container:
   a) Click the UX Page Elements related list.
   b) Click New Container or select an existing container.
c) Fill out the form.

Container attributes and layout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of your container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component defaults to sn-page-container and is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent element</td>
<td>The landing page your container resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slot</td>
<td>The component placement within the parent element's slot configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order the page shows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Border</td>
<td>Enable if you want a border around your container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Container Title</td>
<td>A title to display on the container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Select a type of styling for your visualization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Child Slots</td>
<td>A predefined style of child slots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layout</td>
<td>The layout of the columns on the page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Configure a widget:
   a) Click New Visualization or select an existing widget.
   b) Fill out the form.

Widget attributes and layout

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of your widget.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component</td>
<td>The component defaults to sn-page-widget-visualization and is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent element</td>
<td>The container that your widget resides in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slot</td>
<td>The component placement within the parent element's slot configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order the component shows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Select the report you want to render:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Single score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Trend by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• List</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Choose and populate either Report or PA Widget, but you cannot display both.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PA Widget</td>
<td>Select the PA widget you want to render:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Single score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Time series</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Choose and populate either Report or PA Widget, but you cannot display both.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional Widget Label</th>
<th>A label to display on the widget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size Variant</td>
<td>Select the size of the widget. Choices include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Extra Large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Not all size variants apply to all widgets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Border</th>
<th>Check if you want a border around your widget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refresh Interval</td>
<td>Determines the number of minutes before a widget refreshes with new data. The interval begins when a user navigates away from a landing page, and ends when the user comes back to the landing page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** There is no auto-refresh, but a user can click a refresh button at any time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Additional Details</th>
<th>Any additional information to note about the widget.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visualization SysID [Read Only]</td>
<td>Designated ID for the widget.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report Type [Read Only]</td>
<td>The type of report that renders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Click **Update** or **Submit** to save changes to the page element.
10. Click **Update** to save changes to the landing page.

### Configure ribbon components

Configure ribbon components to give your agents only the information they need.

Role required: workspace_admin

You can configure attributes for the following Customer Service Management ribbon components:

- **Customer 360**: displays customer information such as the contact or consumer name, email address, and phone numbers. This component includes fields for both a primary user and a secondary user. If the system does not find a valid primary user in the configured table, it then queries for the secondary user.

  **Note:** With the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts) plugin, a tertiary user, the internal contact, is also available.

- **Timeline**: displays a summary of case activities, including case state changes and interactions between the agent and the customer. It also shows how much time that the agent and customer, or requester, spent on the case. The
timeline ribbon component uses the resolution shaper configuration for the selected entity table, for example, the Case table.

**Note:** If the Resolution Shaper Configs table (sys_resolutionshaper_config) does not have a record for the selected entity table, the timeline component displays a message that a configuration is not available.

1. Navigate to **Workspace Experience > Forms > Ribbon Settings** and then click the desired component.
2. To configure the Customer 360 component, click **Customer 360**, fill in the fields in the Ribbon Component Attributes section of the form, and click **Update**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary user</td>
<td>The reference field from the table selected in the <strong>Table</strong> field that provides customer information for the primary user. For example, <strong>Contact</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary reference table</td>
<td>The table that stores information for the <strong>Primary user</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary fields</td>
<td>The reference fields from the <strong>Primary reference table</strong> that provide additional information for the <strong>Primary user</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary user</td>
<td>The reference field from the table selected in the <strong>Table</strong> field that provides customer information for the secondary user. For example, <strong>Consumer</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary reference table</td>
<td>The table that stores information for the <strong>Secondary user</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary fields</td>
<td>The reference fields from the <strong>Secondary reference table</strong> that provide additional information for the <strong>Secondary user</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary user</td>
<td>The reference field from the table selected in the <strong>Table</strong> field that provides customer information for the tertiary user. For example, <strong>Internal contact</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary reference table</td>
<td>The table that stores information for the <strong>Tertiary user</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary fields</td>
<td>The reference fields from the <strong>Tertiary reference table</strong> that provide additional information for the <strong>Tertiary user</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The fields for the tertiary user are available with the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts) plugin.

3. To configure the timeline component:
   a) Click **Timeline**.
   b) In the Ribbon Component Attributes section of the form, select a role in the **Fulfiller role** field.

All of the case activities that are performed by the user with the selected fulfiller role are displayed in the timeline component as from the fulfiller. The other case activities are displayed as from customers. For CSM, the default fulfiller role is sn_esm_agent.

The timeline ribbon component uses the resolution shaper configuration for the selected entity table. In this configuration, you can set the labels for the fulfiller and requester fields that appear in the timeline.

The **Fulfiller Label** on the Resolution Shaper Config form should match the timeline component **Fulfiller role** attribute. For example, if the **Fulfiller role** is set to sn_esm_agent, which is an agent role, the **Fulfiller Label** should refer to an agent.

For more information about the resolution shaper configuration, see **Customer service case timeline**.

**Note:**
Changes that you make to the resolution shaper configuration affect both Agent Workspace and the platform interface.
c) Click **Update**.

### Configure service catalogs for CSM Agent Workspace

Customer service agents use service catalogs to fulfill catalog item requests. You can configure the Service Workspace Portal to use the catalogs that contain the desired items.

Role required: sp_admin, admin

1. Navigate to **Service Portal > Portals**.
2. Click **Service Workspace Portal**.
3. Click the **Catalogs** related list and then click **Edit**.

   **Note:** If you are not able to edit the **Catalogs** related list, make sure you are in the Service Catalog - Service Workspace application.

4. Add the desired catalogs to the Catalogs list (for example, Customer Service).
5. Click **Save**.

   The catalog items belonging to the configured service catalogs are shown in Agent Workspace.

### Configure Customer Central

Provide customer service agents with all the information about a customer in one central place by configuring the Customer Information and Customer Activity views for Customer Central.

Role required: admin

Customer Central provides customer service agents with all the information about the customer in one central place. It enables them to quickly zoom in on the customer issue and provide efficient and empathetic service to their customers.

Customer Central consists of two views, Customer Information and Customer Activity, that are displayed on the interaction record. Both views are highly configurable and can be adapted to suit the needs of your business.

For more details, see **Customer Central**.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**.
3. In the Customer Central - Customer Information or Customer Central - Customer Activity category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

   **Customer central configuration tasks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Customer Central</td>
<td>Activate the Customer Central plugin to use customer central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure the Customer Information view</td>
<td>Configure the display of the customer information view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure the Customer Activity view</td>
<td>Configure the display of the customer activity view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.
Activate Customer Central

Activate the Customer Central plugin to use Customer Central.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
2. Search for the plugin com.sn_csm_customer_central.
3. Click Activate.

Note: To use Customer Central demo data, activate the Customer Service Management Demo Data (com.snc.customerservice.demo) plugin.

Create data for Customer Central

When upgrading from an existing release, customers must run a fix script to create data for Customer Central.

Role required: admin

This task applies to customers upgrading their release version only. Running the fix script creates data in the Activities table for Customer Central.

Note:
Run this fix script immediately after installing Customer Central to avoid the creation of duplicate records. Avoid running the fix script multiple times as this also creates duplicate records.

1. Navigate to System Definition > Fix Scripts.
2. Click the Create activities for last N days data fix script.
3. Select the Active check box.
4. Click Run Fix Script.

Configure Customer Central properties

Set how many days you want to display data from in Customer Central.

Role required: admin

This property applies to both the Customer Information and Customer Activity views.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Administration > Properties.
2. Enter the number of days you want to display data from in Customer Central.
   The default is set to 30.

Configure the Customer Information view

Configure the display of the Customer Information view.

Role required: admin

The Customer Information view displays all touch points that a customer has had with a contact center in the form of information cards.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started
3. In the Customer Central - Customer Information category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
Customer Central - Customer Information configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure your settings for the Customer Information view</td>
<td>Set the Customer Central properties as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure customer information lists</td>
<td>Configure the lists to display on the Customer Information view. For example, a list can be recent cases or recent chat interactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure customer information reports</td>
<td>Configure which reports to display on the Customer Information view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure customer information records</td>
<td>Configure the records to display on the Customer Information view. For example, a record could provide information on the contact or consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure customer information report groups</td>
<td>Configure the groups of reports to display in a single section on the Customer Information view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure customer information contexts</td>
<td>Associate each list, record, report, and report group configuration you created with a consumer or contact context, depending on who you want to display the information for.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.

   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

*Configure lists for the Customer Information view*

Configure lists for the Customer Information view.

Role required: admin

Lists are displayed in the Customer Information view in Agent Workspace.
1. Navigate to Customer Central > Customer Information > List Configurations.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Enter a title for the list configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context table</td>
<td>Select a context table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Relationship | Enter the relationship between the context and the list.  
1. To create a new relationship, click the Lookup icon and then New.  
2. Enter a name for the relationship.  
3. In the Applies to table, select either the contact or consumer context table.  
4. In the Queries from table select the table from which this list retrieves data.  
5. In Query with, type a script to specify the records to include from the table for the relationship queries. For example:  
```javascript
current.addQuery("contact", parent.sys_id);
```
   
"contact" => is the name of the column in the list table that stores the context ID, for example, contact ID.  
"parent.sys_id" => is the unique key in the contact table that holds the contact record.  
Note: If building a new relationship, ensure that the exact column name from the list table that stores the context ID is specified here. |
| View     | Select the name of the view that has the set of columns to display for this list. For information on how to create a view, see Configure the list layout. |
| List limit | Enter the number of records to display in the list. You can access the remaining records using pagination. |

4. Click Submit.

*Configure reports for the Customer Information view*

Configure which reports to display on the Customer Information view.

Role required: admin

Reports are displayed in the Customer Information view in Agent Workspace.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Enter a title for the report.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Context table | Select a Context table.  
  
  **Note:** For example, enter Contact if you want to display all the information about a customer contact. |
| Report      | Select a report.  
  
  **Note:** Only pie charts, doughnuts, and single score charts are supported. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationship</td>
<td>Enter the relationship between the context and the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. To create a new relationship, click the Lookup icon and then New.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Enter a name for the relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. In the Applies to table, select either the contact or consumer context table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. In the Queries from table select the table from which this list retrieves data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. In Query with, enter a script to build the relationship between the context table and the report table. You can also specify any filter conditions if needed. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>current.addQuery(&quot;contact&quot;, parent.sys_id);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;contact&quot; =&gt; is the name of the column in the report table that stores the context ID, for example, contact ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“parent.sys_id” =&gt; is the unique key in the contact table that holds the contact record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If building a new relationship, ensure that the exact column name from the report table that stores the context ID is specified here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Click Submit.**

Configure records for the Customer Information view

Configure the records to display on the Customer Information view. For example, a record could provide information on the contact or consumer.

Role required: admin

Records are displayed in the Customer Information view in Agent Workspace.
1. Navigate to Customer Central > Customer Information > Record Configurations.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Enter a title for the record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context table</td>
<td>Select a Context table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For example, enter Contact if you want to display all the information about a customer contact.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationship</td>
<td>Enter the relationship between the context and the record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. To create a new relationship, click the Lookup icon and then New.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Enter a name for the relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. In the Applies to table, select the table on which the list appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Enter either contact or consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. In the Queries from table select the table from which this list retrieves data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. <strong>In Query with</strong>, enter a script to build the relationship between the context table and the record table. You can also specify any filter conditions if needed. For example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>current.addQuery('sys_id', parent.sys_id);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“sys_id” =&gt; is the name of the column in the record table that stores the context ID, for example, contact ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“parent.sys_id” =&gt; is the unique key in the contact table that holds the contact record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If building a new relationship, ensure that the exact column name from the record table that stores the context ID is specified here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Fields     | Select the fields to display on the record.                                  |

4. Click **Submit**.

**Configure report groups for the Customer Information view**

Configure the groups of reports to display in a single section on the Customer Information view.

**Role required:** admin

Report groups are displayed in the Customer Information view in Agent Workspace.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Enter a title for the report group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context table</td>
<td>Select a Context table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: For example, enter Contact if you want all the information about a customer contact to be displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report configurations</td>
<td>Select the list of reports to be displayed in the group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
Configure customer information contexts for the Customer Information view

Associate each list, record, report, and report group configuration you created with a consumer or contact context, depending on who you want to display the information for.

Role required: admin

Configure customer information cards to display each of the list, record, or report configurations for a consumer or contact. Each customer information card corresponds to a card on the Customer Information view.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Customer Information > Customer Information Contexts.
2. Click the contact or consumer record that you want to add your configuration to.
3. On the Customer Information Cards related list, click New.
4. Add your configuration to create a customer information card.
5. Click Submit.

Note: Repeat these steps for every configuration that you want to add to the contact or consumer record. You can also change the layout and order in which to display the cards on the Customer Information view.

Configure the Customer Activity view

Configure the display of the Customer Activity view.

Role required: admin

The Customer Activity view provides customer service agents an overview of all interaction that a customer has had with a contact center in the form of an activity feed.

There are two panels on the Customer Activity view. On the left, the facets categorize the customer touch points and a customer service agent can filter to display the data they want. On the right, the activity feed displays more detailed information on each of the facets in reverse chronological order.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Customer Central - Customer Activity category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Customer Activity - Customer Information configuration tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure component attributes for the Customer Activity view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure activity types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure activity groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure activity type templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure activity contexts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.

This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.
Configure component attributes for the Customer Activity view
Set the Customer Activity view component attributes, as required.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Administration > Related Items.
2. Click Customer Activity.
3. Click Advanced View.
4. Click the Component Attributes tab.
5. Set the following component attributes, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>childFacetsListSize</td>
<td>Number of child facets to display. Default value is 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activitiesListSize</td>
<td>Number of activities to display in the activity feed. Default value is 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Avoid making changes to the other component attributes in this list.

Configure activity types for the Customer Activity view
Create an activity type to display in the activity feed on the Customer Activity view.

Role required: admin

An activity type is an action that a contact or consumer performs. These actions are displayed in the activity feed on the Customer Activity view.

Activity types are displayed in the Customer Activity view in Agent Workspace.
Learn more about configuring activity types from the following video tutorial.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Feed Configuration > Activity Types.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Enter a name for the activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity message</td>
<td>Enter the message that is displayed on the activity tile in the activity feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: If the message is not yet defined, you can create a message. Refer to the video above on how to create a message.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity source</td>
<td>Enter the table on which the activity is performed. For example, if creating a case is the activity, the Case table is the Activity Source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actor</td>
<td>Enter the person performing the activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Select an Object, which is the unique key that identifies the object on which the activity is performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter conditions</td>
<td>Specify any condition that must be met for the activity to be displayed in the activity feed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Active    | Deselect the **Active** check box to not display the activities corresponding to this type in the activity feed.  
**Note:** If you deselect this check box, deselect the corresponding facet. If not, the facet displays with no data. |
| Verb      | Select a verb that describes the activity performed.                          
**Note:** If the verb is not yet defined, you can create a verb. Refer to the video above on how to create a verb. |
| Target    | Select the second person involved in the activity. Not all activities have a second person. |

4. Click **Submit**.  
**Note:** Once you create a new activity type, a new business rule is created.

5. In the notification message, click the link to the business rule.  
**Note:** The business rule is required to create a record in a central activity table each time the action is performed. The central activity table improves the performance of rendering the feed during runtime. Create a business rule for each activity type.

6. In the Advanced tab, update the script.  
The following is an example script.

```javascript
var actSubCtx = global.ActivitySubscriptionContext.getContext();
if (current.contact) {
    actSubCtx.getActivityService().createActivity(current, verb, ",", ",
    ", module);
}
current: current variable in business rules holds the GlideRecord of the table on which the business rules is triggered. If this business rule is on Case table, current will hold the GlideRecord of the case.
verb: verb that is configured in the Verb field of the created activity type
module: module that is configured in the Module field of the created activity type

**Note:** If there is already a Create Activity business rule, a notification message will also be displayed. You can update the script as required.

**Configure activity groups for the Customer Activity view**
Create an activity group and then add activity types to the activity group.  
Role required: admin

An activity group is a logical grouping of activity types. An activity group is displayed in the activity feed based on the facet selected.

Activity groups are displayed in the Customer Activity view in Agent Workspace.
Learn more about configuring activity groups from the following video tutorial.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Feed Configuration > Activity Groups.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Select a name for the activity group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table name</td>
<td>Select the table that stores the object on which the activities in this group are performed. Usually, it is the same as the Activity Source selected in the Activity Type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Once you have created an activity group, select it from the Activity Group list and add the activity types to the group.
5. On the Activity Types related list, click New.
6. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activity type</td>
<td>Select the activity type you want to add to the activity group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Click Submit.

Configure activity type templates for the Customer Activity view

Create an activity type template to define how to display the activity type data on each of the activity tiles in the activity feed.

Role required: admin

You can define which fields are displayed, where it is displayed on the tile, and the order of the display.

Learn more about configuring activity type templates from the following video tutorial.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Feed Configuration > Activity Type Templates.
2. Click New.
3. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Enter a name for the template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity Type</td>
<td>Select the activity type to add the template for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icon</td>
<td>Select an icon to use for the activity type.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

5. Once you have created an activity type template, select it from the Activity Type Template list to configure the fields and order of fields to display.

6. Click New to create template fields for the activity type.

7. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Select a Type to determine whether you want to select fields from the activity source or activity group table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Select the field you want to add.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show label</td>
<td>Select this check box to show the field label on the activity tile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Select the Position to determine whether the field should appear as content or as a sub-header on the activity tile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>Select the order the field should appear on the activity tile.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: You cannot configure HTML fields for display in the subheader on the activity tile.

Note: Only one field is displayed as content on the activity tile.
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable link to activity group record</td>
<td>Select this check box to display the field as a link to the activity group record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display as time ago</td>
<td>Select this check box to display the field in time ago format.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This only applies to fields including time or date information.

8. Click **Submit**.

**Associate activity groups and activity types to activity contexts**

Add the activity groups and activity types you created to an activity context, depending on who you want to display the information for.

Role required: admin

An activity context is the person or user who is interacting with the customer service agent. There are two predefined activity contexts: consumer and contact. Add the activity groups and activity types you created to an activity context, depending on who you want to display the information for.

Learn more about associating an activity group to an activity context from the following video tutorial.

Learn more about associating an activity type to an activity context from the following video tutorial.

1. Navigate to **Customer Central > Customer Activity > Activity Contexts**.
2. Open the contact or consumer record that you want to add your configuration to.
3. On the Activity Context Groups related list, click **New**.
4. Add the activity group.
5. On the Activity Context Types related list, click **New**.
6. Fill out the fields, as required.

### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activity type</td>
<td>Add the activity type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetch from activities</td>
<td>Deselect Fetch from Activities if a business rule is not defined for this activity type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter conditions</td>
<td>Add filter criteria to apply filter conditions on the source table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source mapping field</td>
<td>Select the field in the Source table that is related to the context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Context mapping field</td>
<td>Select the field in the Context table to map to the field selected in <strong>Source mapping</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced mapping</td>
<td>Select Advanced Mapping and write a script in the <strong>Advanced mapping script</strong> field if the source and context mapping is not sufficient.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Click **Submit**.

**Create facets for activity contexts**

Create facets to group the data and enable customer service agents to filter and display the data they want to see in the activity feed.

Role required: admin
An activity context is the person or user who is interacting with the customer service agent. There are two predefined activity contexts: consumer and contact. Facets group the data, which enables customer service agents to filter and display the data they want to see in the activity feed. Each facet represents an activity group.

Facets are displayed in the Customer Activity view in Agent Workspace. Dynamic facets display record details associated with the facet.
Static facets display a subcategorization of the facets without any record details.

1. Navigate to Customer Central > Customer Activity > Activity Contexts.
2. Open the contact or consumer record that you want to create facets for.
3. On the Facets related list, click New.
4. Fill out the fields, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Enter a Name for the facet. This is the name of the facet that appears on the Customer Activity view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity context group</td>
<td>Add an activity context group for the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facet type</td>
<td>Select whether the facet is dynamic or static. Dynamic displays record details associated with the facet. Static displays a subcategorization of the facets without any record details. Static facets can also be associated to a facet group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Learn more about configuring facets from the following video tutorial.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>Enter the order the facet should appear in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facet group</td>
<td>If you selected facet type Static, associate the facet to a group. If you associate the facet to a facet group, this facet becomes a subcategory of the facet group you selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icon</td>
<td>Select an icon for the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facet title</td>
<td>If you selected facet type Dynamic, choose the field of the record to display as the facet title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facet fields</td>
<td>If you selected facet type Dynamic, select the fields to display for each record.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Submit**.

**Configure the Customer Service mobile application**

Configure the Customer Service mobile application and customize it for agents who use the application instance on their mobile devices.

Role required: admin

The Customer Service Mobile plugin (com.sn_csm_mobile) enables the Customer Service mobile application.

1. Navigate to **System Applications > Studio**.
2. In the Select Application pop-up window, click **Customer Service Mobile**.
   
   The Customer Service mobile application opens in the Studio, which is a guided app creator. For more information about using the Studio, see [Getting started with mobile app creation using the guided app creator](#).
3. Customize the application to display the desired applets and data and configure agent actions and notifications.

**Configure industry data models**

Configure industry data models to enable a foundational data model framework. You can use this framework to create structured and flexible data models that represent your business needs.

Role required: admin

Industry data models provide the core framework and guidance for building and modeling the entities that are involved in the customer service value chain. This framework introduces new entities, such as service organizations, internal business locations, and households. It also introduces roles and relationships that provide both flexibility and control in granting access to customer cases and information.

With the industry data models plugins, you can support:

- Internal business locations and staff members
- Households and household members

For more information about this feature, see [Industry data model overview](#).

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup**.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click **Get Started**.
3. In the Industry Data Model category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
Customer central configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Plugins</td>
<td>Activate the plugins:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Business Location (com.snc.business_location)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Customer Service Household (com.snc.household)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Forms and Lists</td>
<td>Configure forms to add the fields and related lists that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>support the business location and household models.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Roles</td>
<td>Roles control access to features, capabilities, and data. The industry data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>model plugins add roles that you can assign to internal and external users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in your organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Relationships</td>
<td>Use relationships to provide internal and external users with additional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>access to customer data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relationships are based on responsibility definitions. When you create a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>relationship, you select the users involved in the relationship and the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>responsibility that one user performs on behalf of another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The industry data model plugins provide both relationships and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>responsibility definitions that you can use to create relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>between users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**. This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Activate Business Location**

Activate the Business Location plugin to manage customer service for internal business locations.

Role required: admin

The Business Location plugin (com.snc.business_location) enables support for businesses that interact with customers through physical channels such as stores and branches. This plugin automatically activates the following plugins:

• Service Organization (com.snc.service_organization)
• Customer Service Base Extension Entities (com.snc.cs_base_extension)

The Service Organization plugin enables support for internal and external entities in your customer service structure. The Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin provides granular access control through relationships, user profile attributes, and roles.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.snc.business_location.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Activate Customer Service Household**

Activate the Customer Service Household plugin to manage customer service for households.

Role required: admin

The Customer Service Household plugin (com.snc.household) enables you to create households, define the members of a household, and identify relationships between household members. This plugin automatically activates the
Customer Service Base Extension Entities plugin (com.snc.cs_base_extension), which provides granular access control through relationships, user profile attributes, and roles.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin com.snc.household.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Configure forms and related lists**

Configure forms to add the fields and related lists that are necessary to support the business location and household data models.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup** and click **Get Started**.
2. In the Industry Data Model category, click **Get Started**.
3. Click **Configure Forms and List**.
4. Add the following related lists to the Consumer form for these views: Case and Workspace.
   - Current Households
   - Household Member > Consumer (All Households)
   - Consumer Relationships
   - Household Relationships
   - Consumer Team Member > Consumer (Consumer Team)
   - Sold Products
5. Add the following related lists to the Service Organization form for these views: Case and Workspace.
   - Members
   - Cases > Service Organization (Cases)
   - Account Staff Relationships
   - Consumer Staff Relationships
   - Household Staff Relationships
6. Add the following related lists to the Household form for these views: Case and Workspace.
   - Current Members
   - Household Member > Household (All Members)
   - Household Member Relationship > Household (Member Relationships)
   - Household Team Member > Household (Household Team)
   - Case > Household (Cases)
   - Entitlement > Household (Entitlements)
   - Contract > Household (Contracts)
   - Sold Product > Household (Sold Products)
7. Add the following related lists to the Sold Products form for these views: Case and Workspace.
   - All Consumers
   - More Consumers
8. Add the **Primary Household** field to the Consumer form for these views: Case and Workspace.
9. Add the following fields to the Case form for these views: Case and Workspace.
   - Service Organization
   - Household
   - Updated by
10. Add the **Household** field to the Entitlement form for these views: Case and Workspace.
11. Add the **Household** field to the Service Contract form for these views: Case and Workspace.
12. Add the **Household** field to the Sold Product form for these views: Case and Workspace.

**Assign roles**

Assign roles to your internal and external users to provide the right access to service organizations, business locations and households.

Role required: admin

The industry data model plugins add the following roles to Customer Service Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location agent</td>
<td>[sn_customerservice.svc_location_agent] Create and fulfill cases for the accounts and contacts in the agent's business location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location consumer agent</td>
<td>[sn_customerservice.svc_location_consumer_agent] Create and fulfill cases for the consumers and households in the agent's business location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location manager</td>
<td>[sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager] Create and update cases for accounts, contacts, consumers, and households that work with the business locations within their location hierarchy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Relationship agent                        | [sn_customerservice.relationship_agent] Manage cases for the accounts, contacts, consumers, and households that the agent has relationships with. This includes the following relationships that are provided with the industry data model plugins:  
  • Account Manager: creates a relationship between an internal user and an account.  
  • Relationship Manager: creates a relationship between an internal user and a consumer or a household. |

• You can assign roles to users using the industry data model guided setup.
• You can also assign roles to users using the Now Platform user administration feature: Assign a role to a user

**Create relationships**

Use relationships to provide internal and external users with additional access to customer data.

Role required: admin

With the industry data model feature, you can create relationships between the following users:

- Between an internal user and an account, household, or consumer.
- Between two consumers.

Relationships are based on responsibility definitions. These definitions describe a role or a function that supports a customer. When you create a relationship, you select the users involved in the relationship and the responsibility that one user performs on behalf of another.

The industry data model plugins provide:

- Relationships that you can create between users.
• Responsibility definitions that you can assign to a user in a relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Used in relationship</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Manager</td>
<td>• Account Team Member</td>
<td>Use the Account Manager responsibility to create a relationship between an internal user and an account. With this relationship, the internal user can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for their accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View account information, including the related entities for an account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage contacts and additional addresses for their accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationship Manager</td>
<td>• Consumer Team Member</td>
<td>Use the Relationship Manager responsibility to create a relationship between:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Household Team Member</td>
<td>• An internal user and a consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• An internal user and a household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>With this relationship, the internal user can do the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For a consumer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for the consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View household information, including the related entities for that consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For a household:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View household information, including the related entities for that household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage household members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorized Representative</td>
<td>• Consumer to Consumer Relationship</td>
<td>Use the Authorized Representative responsibility to create a relationship between two consumers, regardless of household, or between two consumers within the same household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Household Member Relationship</td>
<td>With this relationship, a consumer can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Create and manage cases for another consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View the information of another consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• View the install base information of another consumer and create cases for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Sold products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Install base items</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customer Relationships**.
2. Select the desired relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Team Members</td>
<td>Create a relationship between an internal user and an account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Team Members</td>
<td>Create a relationship between an internal user and a consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Team Members</td>
<td>Create a relationship between an internal user and a household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Relationships</td>
<td>Create a relationship between two consumers, regardless of household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Relationships</td>
<td>Create a relationship between two consumers within a household.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. From the selected relationship list, click **New**.
4. Fill in the following fields for the selected relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Account Team Member         | • **Account**: select the account to which the internal user is assigned.  
                              | • **Responsibility**: select the **Account Manager** responsibility.    
                              | • **User**: select the internal user to fulfill the responsibility.     |
| Consumer Team Member        | • **Consumer**: select the consumer to which the internal user is assigned. 
                              | • **Responsibility**: select the **Relationship Manager** responsibility.
                              | • **User**: select the internal user to fulfill the responsibility.     |
| Household Team Member       | • **Household**: select the household to which the internal user is assigned. 
                              | • **Responsibility**: select the **Relationship Manager** responsibility.
                              | • **User**: select the internal user to fulfill the responsibility.     |
| Consumer to Consumer Relation | • **Consumer is**: select the consumer to fulfill the responsibility on behalf of another consumer. 
                              | • **Responsibility**: select the **Authorized Representative** responsibility. 
                              | • **of Consumer**: select the consumer who is being represented by the consumer in the **Consumer is** field. |
| Household Member Relationship | • **Household**: select the desired household.                          
                              | • **Consumer is**: select the consumer in the household to fulfill the responsibility on behalf of another consumer within the same household. 
                              | • **Responsibility**: select the **Authorized Representative** responsibility. 
                              | • **of Consumer**: select the consumer who is being represented by the consumer in the **Consumer is** field. |

5. Click **Submit**.
   The relationship is added to the relationship list.

Account, Consumer, and Household Team Member relationships are also added to the corresponding related lists on the Business Location form.
• Account Staff Relationships
• Consumer Staff Relationships
• Household Staff Relationships

Consumer to Consumer and Household Member relationships are added to the following related lists:
• Household form > Member Relationships
• Consumer form > Consumer Relationships

**Enable Walk-up Experience for business locations**

Enable support for both online and on-site check-in for the stores and branches in your service organization.

Role required: admin

Enabling walk-up support for business locations requires the following applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Customer Service Management</em> (com.sn_customerservice)</td>
<td>Use this application to provide service and support for your external customers through communication channels such as web, email, chat, and telephone. Create cases as needed and route cases to available customer service agents with the necessary skill sets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| *Business Location* (com.snc.business_location) | Use this application to model your organizational structure to include internal business locations such as stores and branches.  
  The Business Location application is part of the *Industry Data Models* feature, which provides a framework that customers can use to create structured and flexible data models. |
| *Walk-Up for CSM* (com.snc.walkup_for_csm) | Use this application to set up a contact channel that can support both online and on-site check-in at a walk-up service center. |

1. Identify the internal business location in your organization where you want to enable the walk-up service experience.

   An internal business location is an extension of a service organization. These locations typically include stores and branches. Internal business locations are stored in the Internal Business Location [sn_csm_business_location_internal] table.

   Navigate to Customer Service > Service Organizations > Business Locations to view the Internal Business Locations list.

   For more information, see Industry data model business locations.

2. Create a location record for the selected internal business location.

   Locations are used by ServiceNow® applications to locate users, facilities, and configuration items. Locations are stored in the Location (cmn_location) table.

   For more information, see How locations are defined.

   a) Navigate to User Administration > Locations.
   b) Right-click the form header and select View > Default view.
   c) Click New and fill in the fields on the Location form.
d) In the **Company** field, enter the internal business location identified in step 1.

e) Click **Submit**.

3. Enable the walk-up experience for the location created in step 2.

   Follow the steps in *Configure Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management* to complete the necessary configuration tasks.

4. Add the CSM walk-up technician role (sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician) to the staff members at the business location who will be assisting walk-in customers.

   This completes the configuration to enable the walk-up experience for a business location.

If desired, you can enable Customer Central for location agents.

*Enable Customer Central for location agents*

After enabling Walk-up Experience for business locations, you can enable Customer Central for location agents.

Role required: admin

1. Enable the Customer Central - Customer Information tab for location agents.
   a) Access the Customer Central - Information REST API.
      1. Navigate to **System Security > Access Control (ACL)**.
      3. Add **sn_esm_location_agent** to the list of required roles.

   For more information, see *Customer Central API*.

   b) Add the **sn_esm_location_agent** role to all of the reports referred to in the Report Configuration [sn_customercentral_report_config] table.

   For more information, see *Configure reports for the Customer Information view*.

   c) Add the **sn_esm_location_agent** role to the **kb_use** read ACLs.

2. Enable the Customer Central - Customer Activity tab for location agents.
   a) Add the **actsub_user** role to the **sn_esm_location_agent** role.

**Configure Guided Decisions for Customer Service Management**

Configure decision trees and guidances to create a guided decision.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_guidance.guidance_manager, or sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

A guided decision is a structured troubleshooting process for customer service agents to work through. For more details, see *Guided Decisions for Customer Service Management*.

Access the Guided Decision menus and use the modules to configure guided decisions.

1. Navigate to **Guided Decisions**.

2. Complete the following tasks to configure the feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Guided Decisions</td>
<td>Activate the Guided Decisions for Playbook in Workspace plugin to use Guided Decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure decision trees</td>
<td>Create a decision tree that customer service agents can use to troubleshoot solutions to cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure guidances</td>
<td>Customize default guidances to display as outcomes of decision trees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add guided decisions to playbooks</td>
<td>Add the guided decision to a playbook, so customer service agents can access the guided decision in cases they are working on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Activate Guided Decisions for Customer Service Management**

Activate the Guided Decisions for Playbook in Workspace plugin to use Guided Decisions.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
2. Search for the plugin `com.snc.guided_decisions_playbook_experience`.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Configure decision trees**

Create a decision tree that customer service agents can use in a guided decision to troubleshoot solutions to cases.

Role required: admin, `sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author`

A decision tree is a multi-step process consisting of a series of questions and answers. Based on the answers, each question leads to an outcome. The outcome is either a guidance or a follow-on question.

Decision trees contain decision tree nodes and paths that link the nodes. Each decision tree has a root node called the start node.

Decision tree nodes represent one or more questions and the associated paths that link the nodes, which can be decision paths or guidance paths.

A decision tree node with decision paths leads to one or more decision tree nodes. A decision tree node with guidance paths leads to a guidance and provides a solution.

Each decision tree node consists of:

- Decision inputs: A decision input is a question. For each question, you configure input options that a customer service agent can use to answer the question.
- Input mappings: Input mappings enable you to reuse values that you have used in other decision tree nodes by mapping from one decision tree node to another.
- Paths: A path provides possible outcomes of the decision tree node.
  - A decision path links one decision tree node to the next decision tree node of type decision.
  - A guidance path links one decision tree node to a decision tree node of type guidance.
1. Navigate to Guided Decisions > Decision Trees.
2. Click New.
3. Enter a name and description for the decision tree.
   
   **Note:** This is the start node for your decision tree.

4. Click Submit.

*Create decision inputs*

Create decision inputs for each decision node. These appear in the form of a question on Agent Workspace.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

In decision inputs, you define the questions for the customer service agent to answer. Decision inputs can be one or multiple questions. Configure the input variables and conditions for each
decision node. You can also map inputs among different decision tree nodes within a decision

1. Navigate to Guided Decision > Decision Trees.
2. Click the decision tree you want to add decision inputs to.
3. In Decision Tree Nodes, click the start node of your decision tree.

   Note: The first decision input is always a task.

4. Click Create Input.
5. In the Type field, select the type of the decision input.
6. In the **Label** field, enter the text to appear on Agent Workspace.
7. Enter the choices or default values, as required.
8. Click **Submit**.

**Create decision paths**
Create decision paths to set the conditions for when the next question is displayed.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

Based on the answer the customer service agent provides to a question in one decision node, a decision path guides them to the next decision node for the next question.

1. Navigate to **Guided Decisions > Decision Trees**.
2. In Decision Tree Nodes, click the start node of your decision tree.
3. Click **Create Decision Path**.
4. In the **Label** field, enter a label for the decision path.
5. Set the conditions for when to display the next question.
6. Click **Update**.

**Note:** You can create as many decision paths as required.

**Create guidance paths**
Create guidance paths to set the conditions for when a guidance is displayed.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

Based on the answers the customer service agent gives to a question in one decision node, a guidance path takes them to the next decision node to provide guidance.

1. Navigate to **Guided Decisions > Decision Trees**.
2. In Decision Tree Nodes, click the start node of your decision tree.
3. Click **Create Guidance Path**.
4. In the **Label** field, enter a label for the guidance path.
5. Set the conditions for when to display the guidance.
6. Click **Update**.

**Note:** You can create as many guidance paths as required.

**Associate guidances to guidance paths**
Associate a guidance to a guidance path so customer service agents can view a recommendation on what to do next.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

A guidance is an outcome of a decision tree.
Select one of the three guidances that are delivered by default to attach to your guidance path:

- Provide Resolution
- Create Work Order
- Attach Knowledge Article

You can then enter guidance inputs, as required.

1. Navigate to Guided Decisions > Decision Trees.
2. In Decision Tree Nodes, click the guidance path you created.
3. Select the guidance to include in your guidance path.
4. Depending on the guidance you selected, enter guidance inputs, as required.

Note: If you selected the Attach Knowledge Article guidance, enter the knowledge article to link to.
If you selected the Provide Resolution guidance, enter the case, resolution notes, and a resolution code.
If you selected the Create Work Order guidance, enter the task to link to.

5. Click **Create Input Mapping** to link the task associated to the guidance to the task in the start node.
6. Click **Update**.

*Create input mappings*
Create input mappings to reuse values from one decision node input in another decision node input.

Role required: admin, sn_gd_core.decision_tree_author

You can create input mappings for each decision input you create. Input mapping copies the values from the source input of the source node you select, to the destination input of the destination node.

1. Navigate to **Guided Decisions > Decision Trees**.
2. In Decision Tree Nodes, click the decision tree node you want to copy the decision input values from.
3. Click **Create Input Mapping**.
4. In the **Source Node** field, enter the decision input node you want to copy from.
5. In the **Source Input** field, enter the source input to copy.

**Note:** The **Destination Node** is automatically filled with the value of the decision node you are creating the input mapping from.

6. In the **Destination Input** field, select the destination input that contains the decision input you want to copy the values to.
7. Click **Submit**.

**Add guided decisions to playbooks**
Add the guided decision to a playbook, so customer service agents can work through it to resolve cases more efficiently.

Role required: admin, pd_content_author

A playbook is set of steps that defines a process. A decision tree can be added as one of the steps within a playbook.

Playbooks are displayed in cases on Agent Workspace based on trigger definitions defined for each playbook in the Process Automation Designer. For more details, see *Process Automation Designer*. Based on the context of the case the customer service agent is working on, the playbook and any associated guided decisions are displayed.

For more details on playbooks for Customer Service Management, see *Playbooks for Customer Service Management*.

1. Navigate to **Process Automation > Process Automation Designer**.
2. Click the playbook you want to add the decision tree to.
3. Click **Add an activity**.
4. Select **Guided Decisions for Playbook > Guided Decisions**.
5. In the **Label** field, enter a name for the guided decision.
6. Enter a description.
7. Select a start rule.
8. Click **Configure activity**.
9. Select the decision tree you want to add to the guided decision.
10. Click **Update**.
11. Click **Save**.

The decision tree is added to the playbook. Depending on the context of the case, customer service agents can access the guided decision from cases on Agent Workspace.
Configure trending case topics

Train solution definitions to identify clusters of cases that point to similar underlying issues and find any related major cases for the clusters.

Role required: admin

Access the menus and use the modules to train the solution definitions to identify trending case topics.

For more details, see *Trending case topics*.

1. Navigate to **Predictive Intelligence** and then either **Similarity > Solution Definitions** or **Clustering > Solution Definitions**.
2. Complete the following tasks to train the solution definitions for trending case topics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Train the clustering solution definition to automatically group similar cases into topics</td>
<td>Configure a clustering solution definition to cluster similar cases into groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Train the similarity solution definition to find similar existing major cases</td>
<td>Configure a similarity solution definition to find similar major cases for the clusters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Train the clustering solution definition to automatically group similar cases into topics**

To enable clustering of similar cases into topics, you must first update and train the clustering solution definition.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml).

Role required: admin

By default, a clustering solution definition for clustering groups of cases into topics is already available. A clustering solution definition groups similar records into clusters so you can address them collectively or identify patterns.

You can modify the fields, filters, update frequency, and training frequency.

1. Navigate to **Predictive Intelligence** > **Clustering** > **Solution Definitions**.
2. In the Clustering Definitions list, search for and select the Grouping of Cases into Topics solution definition (ml_sn_sn_csm_ml_global_grouping_of_cases_into_topics).
3. On the Clustering Definition form, verify the default field values.
4. Change the fields and filters, as required.
5. To change the frequency with which the model for clustering solution definition must be rebuilt, edit the **Update Frequency** field.
6. To change the frequency with which to include new records in the model for the clustering solution definition, edit the **Training Frequency** field.
7. In the Training Request Schedule related list, view the schedule for training the Grouping of Cases into Topics solution definition.
8. Click **Update & Retrain**.
9. Open the Grouping of Cases into Topics solution definition.
10. In the ML Solutions related list, view the training solution progress in the **Progress** column.

**Note:** Alternatively, you can click the link for the solution in the **Active** column. On the ML Solution form, click the **Show training progress** related link to check the training solution progress.

11. Click the **Cluster Visualization** tab.

The clusters that were formed for the given solution are displayed in a tree map in descending order of size from top left to bottom right. Each node is colored from red to green depending on the cluster quality.
Train the similarity solution definition to find similar existing major cases

To enable finding related major cases in a cluster, you must first update and train the similarity solution definition.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml).

Role required: admin

By default, a similarity solution definition for finding similar existing major cases in a cluster is already available. A similarity solution definition collects and compares your existing records to new similar records.

You can modify the fields, filters, update frequency, and training frequency.

1. Navigate to **Predictive Intelligence > Similarity > Solution Definitions**.
2. In the Similarity Definitions list, search for and select the Major Issue Detector solution definition (ml_sn_global_major_issue_detector).
3. On the Similarity Definition form, verify the default field values. For more information about the Similarity Definition form fields, see **Create and train a similarity solution**.
4. Change the fields and filters, as required.
5. To change the frequency with which the model for similarity solution definition must be rebuilt, edit the **Update Frequency** field.
6. To change the frequency with which to include new records in the model for the similarity solution definition, edit the **Training Frequency** field.
7. In the Training Request Schedule related list, view the schedule for training the Major Issue Detector solution definition.
8. Click **Update & Retrain**.
9. Open the Major Issue Detector solution definition.
10. In the ML Solutions related list, view the training solution progress in the **Progress** column.

   **Note:** Alternatively, you can click the link for the solution in the **Active** column. On the ML Solution form, click the **Show training progress** related link to check the training solution progress.

Configure Outsourced Customer Service

Configure the various aspects of Outsourced Customer Service based on the specific requirements of your organization.

Role required: admin

There are a sequence of tasks that enable you to configure Outsourced Customer Service. You can perform these tasks based on the plugin you activated. Certain setup tasks apply only if you activated the Outsourced Customer Service plugin and this is noted at the top of each task.

To configure Outsourced Customer Service, use the Outsourced Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Outsourced Customer Service > Guided Setup**.
   The Outsourced Customer Service Guided Setup page is displayed.
2. On the Onboarding Outsourced Service Provider (OSP) window, click **Get Started**.
3. View the list of tasks to configure the feature.

   **Onboarding Outsourced Service Provider configuration tasks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setup Outsourced Service Provider</td>
<td>Creates an OSP by specifying the internal manager and setting up transfer group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Outsourcing Criteria</td>
<td>Defines outsourcing criteria based on account, consumer, asset, and sold product. OSP agents can view all the cases matching the outsourcing criteria. For example, consumer based criteria can be defined for all Spanish speaking consumers or all consumers based out of Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onboard Manager</td>
<td>Onboard OSP manager for managing cases and agents. Once onboarding is complete, a password reset email is sent to the manager's email id.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Assignment Groups</td>
<td>Creates a group and associates it to an OSP manager. OSP manager assigns cases to the agents assigned to the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onboard Agent</td>
<td>Onboard agents for an OSP for fulfilling cases. Once onboarding is complete, a password reset email is sent to the agents email id.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. On the Case Routing and Assignment window, click **Get Started**.
6. View the list of tasks to configure the feature.

**Case Routing and Assignment configuration tasks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Matching Rules</td>
<td>Rules to identify customer service cases that meet certain conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Assignment Rules</td>
<td>Cases that meet certain conditions based on the rules created are routed to customer service agents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. To perform a task, click **Configure**.
   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

**Create Outsourced Service Provider**

An enterprise creates Outsourced Service Providers to provide customer service to external customers.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Outsourced Service Providers**.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Outsourced Service Provider form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The OSP's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Provider Type</td>
<td>Customer or Field service provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manager</td>
<td>OSP Internal manager who tracks the performance of the OSP and acts as the point of contact for the OSP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Website</td>
<td>The OSP's URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>Any note regarding the OSP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Enter <strong>Phone</strong> or <strong>Fax phone</strong> number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>The OSP's postal address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Option | Description
--- | ---
Case Transfer | Search and select the **Case transfer group** which is the default group to which the case is assigned when an OSP agent transfers the case.

4. Click Submit.

Define outsourcing criteria so that cases matching the criteria are visible to the OSP managers and agents.

**Define outsourcing criteria**

OSP managers and agents view cases based on the defined outsourced criteria. Defining outsourcing criteria can be based on account, asset, consumer, or sold product. For example, consumer based criteria could be defined for all Spanish speaking consumers or all consumers based out of Australia.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Outsourced Service Providers**.
2. Click the OSP name.
3. Click **Outsourcing Criteria** related list.
4. Click **New**.
5. Fill in the fields on the new record form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description for the outsourcing criteria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>The table that stores the task for which the outsourcing criteria is created. Select either <strong>Account</strong>, <strong>Asset</strong>, <strong>Consumer</strong>, or <strong>Sold Product</strong> tables.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> **Note:** **Sold Product** is available only when Customer Service Install Base Management (com.snc.install_base) plugin is active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>The conditions that will get applied to the table selected above.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the buttons in this field to build one or more conditions on the selected table. A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the <strong>AND</strong> and <strong>OR</strong> buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the X to the right of a condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click Submit.

OSP managers and agents can now view assigned cases which meet the condition under **All Cases**, **Unassigned Cases**, **My Cases**, and **Open Cases**. For example, if an OSP organization is created with outsourcing criteria as all Spanish speaking consumers or consumers based out of Australia, an agent belonging to this OSP can view all Spanish speaking consumers or all consumers based out of Australia.

Create groups and set assignment rules for the OSPs.

**Onboard Outsourced Service Provider staff**

An administrator creates OSPs after which OSP managers and agents must be onboarded to manage and fulfill cases. As an administrator you can onboard both the OSP managers and agents.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Outsourced Service Providers**.
2. Click on an existing OSP.
3. Click **Onboard Staff** related link.

4. Fill in the fields on the Outsourced Service Provider form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The first name of the OSP manager or agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The last name of the OSP manager or agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>A unique ID for the OSP manager or agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The OSP manager or agent's email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Phone</td>
<td>The OSP manager or agent's mobile phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Phone</td>
<td>The OSP manager or agent's business phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment Group</td>
<td>Select the group which was created while creating an OSP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The **Outsourced Service Provider** field is pre-filled with the OSP name you have selected.

5. Click **Submit**.

The onboarded staff records are visible under the **Service Organization Staff** related list.

**Note:**
Once onboarding is complete, a password reset email is sent to the manager's or agent's email address.

---

### Create groups and assignment rules

An administrator creates groups and associates it to an OSP. This group is the default group to which the case is assigned when an OSP agent transfers the unresolved case back to an enterprise.

Role required: admin

1. Select an OSP you have created.
2. Go to **Groups** related list.
3. Click **New**.
4. Fill in the fields on the Outsourced Service Provider form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The OSP group name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group email</td>
<td>Group email distribution list or the email address of the group's point of contact, such as the group manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manager</td>
<td>The OSP manager’s name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Category for this group. For example, a group designated as type catalog is a service catalog group and can also be accessed under the Service Catalog &gt; Catalog Policy &gt; Fulfillment Groups module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Helpful information about the group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Submit**.
6. Click **Group Staff** related list to view the list of members for the selected group.
7. Click **Assignment Rules** related list to define assignment rules.
8. Click **New**. For more information about creating assignment rules, see *Routing and assigning customer service cases*.
9. Click **Submit**.
Configure Walk-up Experience for Customer Service Management

Configure various aspects of Walk-up Experience based on the specific requirements of your organization. Walk-up Experience users with the sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin role and administrators can activate and configure the application to meet specific requirements.

There is a sequence of tasks that enable you to configure CSM Walk-up Experience. Perform these tasks based on the plugin you activated.

You can configure appointments, decide when to send notifications to users, establish and configure physical queue locations and operating schedules, integrate with CSAT surveys, and associate stockrooms with queue locations. You can also customize your Walk-up Experience portal with a unique logo and branding.

To configure CSM Walk-up Experience, use the configuration tasks listed in the table below which takes you through the entire configuration process.

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration.
2. Complete the following tasks to configure the CSM Walk-up Experience feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSM Walk-up Experience configuration tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate CSM Walk-up Experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Walk-up Locations for configuring locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Schedules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Appointment Configurations for configuring appointments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Portal Configurations for configuring a portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Notifications for configuring notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surveys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Domain separation and the CSM Walk-up Experience application

This section is an overview of domain separation as it pertains to the CSM Walk-up Experience application and how it relates to Service Portal pages, interaction queues, and configurations. Domain separation enables you to separate data, processes, and administrative tasks into logical groupings called domains. You can then control several aspects of this separation, including which users can see and access data.

Support level: Basic

- Business logic: Ensure that data goes into the proper domain for the application’s service provider use cases.
- The application supports domain separation at run time. This includes domain separation from the user interface, cache keys, reporting, rollups, and aggregations.
- The owner of the instance must set up the application to function across multiple tenants.

Use case: When a service provider (SP) uses chat to respond to a tenant-customer’s message, the client must be able to see the SP’s response.

Overview

Domain separation in the CSM Walk-up Experience application is supported at the Basic level. However, the application depends on the Service Portal, which is not supported for domain separation. Domain separation pertains to the CSM Walk-up Experience application in the following ways:

- Walk-up location queues support domain separation to define which end users can access each location queue.
- The Interaction table supports standard domain separation for data security. Interaction tickets are opened for a specific domain.
- Walk-up location queues and interactions support domain separation. Therefore, fulfillers also work within a domain-separated environment when addressing interaction tickets associated with a location queue.
- Management and administration configurations reside in the walk-up location queue records. Therefore, those configurations are available to the respective domain managers and admins.
- While the Service Portal pages are not domain separated, the CSM Walk-up Experience application's portal pages retrieve data within the user’s specific domain. Therefore, those pages can be reused across different service portals designed and configured for separate domains. The admins must build each portal themselves.
- The Domain field is available on the wu_location_queue table. Setting domain here ensures users only see queues that are part of their domains during online check-in.
- For Advanced Work Assignment routing to operate, each wu_location_queue must include a work item routing condition. This condition explicitly adds a reference to the domain the queue is part of.

Note: The appointment booking feature is not domain separated. Since Appointment [itil_appointment] table data is not domain separated, list views could reveal data across domains.

How domain separation works in the CSM Walk-up Experience application

For this application to be the most effective, walk-up administrators should configure walk-up locations accordingly. Configure the wu_location_queue record to meet a user need, which affects the requester experience. Each domain configured to the location queue record has its own set of rules. The same applies to other tables within the Walk-up application as well.
Elements of the Service Portal that are used as part of the walk-up experience are as follows:

- **Portal (Walk-up)**
- **Pages** (walkup_online_checkin, walkup_queue_on_site, walkup_home, walkup_survey, walkup_check_in)
- **Theme (Walk-up theme)**
- **Widgets** (Online check-in experience, walk-up queue on site, walk-up check-in, walk-up exit survey, walk-up home, walk-up schedule)

To learn more, see *Domain separation in Service Portal*.

For data separation, the CSM Walk-up Experience application uses the walk-up user (Requester/Walkup login user) domain to determine in which domain the requester data should be placed.

- Requesters can check in only in locations for which they have visibility.
- Requesters are able to select the Reasons that belong only to their own domain.
- Interaction records are created in the Requester’s domain.

For the Fulfiller side, the application uses the domain of the walk-up user (walk-up technician/ manager/ admin) to determine which records are visible.

- By domain separation rules, Fulfillers can work only on interactions that are visible to them.
- Fulfillers are able to configure only walk-up location records that belong to their domain, are in the global domain, or have the parent-child hierarchy.
- The same visibility rules apply for the Many to Many [wu_m2m_location_queue_reason] tables that control the mapping between a location and reason.
- The walk-up context records also have domain separation support. This support ensures technicians to view detailed requester information only for the records that are visible by domain separation rules.

### Domain-separated tables

As part of the CSM Walk-up Experience, records in the following tables can be domain separated.

- Walk-up location queues [wu_location_queue]
- Walk-up reasons for visit [wu_reason]
- Walk-up reasons [wu_m2m_location_queue_reason]
- Walk-up contexts [wu_context]
- Interactions [interaction]

### CSM Walk-up Experience portal security and access

Security is built into the application to prevent end-user facing devices at the Walk-up Experience onsite portal from offering elevated role privileges to users. The Walk-up Experience onsite portal is accessed by an account containing only the sn_walkup.walkup_login role.

### Understanding Walk-up Experience portal security

Accessing the onsite Walk-up Experience portal requires the singularly assigned sn_walkup.walkup_login role. The user record with this role cannot contain any other roles. Since most user records contain multiple roles, the
sn_walkup.walkup_login role is assigned to a user record account, not a human user. The security feature prevents the onsite portal check-in device from permitting users who may try accessing the portal with an elevated privilege role.

The sn_walkup.walkup_login role is granted to a user record for an account used to log in to the check-in device. Device can typically be a tablet, at the onsite Walk-up Experience portal. It is not an actual human being with an assigned role, but an account with a role. For example, a technician opening the onsite Walk-up portal for business logs in to the check-in device using the user record that contains the sn_walkup.walkup_login role. Again, the portal can only be accessed by a user record that contains this role only. A user cannot access the portal with the admin role or if the user record contains roles other than the sn_walkup.walkup_login role.

**Access to Walk-up Experience**

Technicians opening up the onsite Walk-up location for business, or joining the support team during operation hours, access the user record account. Technicians with sn_walkup.walkup_login role can log in to the Walk-up Experience portal. Internal and external users can access the onsite Walk-up Experience portal via a check-in device, typically a tablet, to enter a queue. Internal, authenticated users can also access an online queue check-in via desktop.

**Configure the Walk-up Experience portal**

Create engaging walk-up center service portals featuring your logo, portal theme, desired catalog, links to a knowledge base and social community, and more.

Walk-up Experience includes a complete base-system Walk-up Portal with theme. The Walk-up Portal pages are meant to be used as built. You can create custom portal pages to meet your needs by copying the portal pages and associated widgets and making changes to the copies. You can configure both an online check-in portal and a physical check-in portal for your walk-up locations.

There are several ways to configure the Walk-up service portal:

1. **Service Portal application**: Modular user interface framework for quick and easy building and customization of application portals.
2. **Service Portal Walk-up form**: Requires CSS and HTML experience.

Role required: admin or sn_walkup.walkup_admin


**2. To customize the base-system walk-up portal with your unique branding, title, logo, theme colors, layout, properties, widgets, and more, or to create a new walk-up portal**, refer to Service Portal for detailed information.

**3. Alternatively, to configure the Walk-up service portal using the Service Portal Walk-up form**, navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Portal Configurations. The Service Portals list opens.

**4. In the Service Portals list**, click Walk-up or search for it in the list header search box.

**5. Click the form menu icon**

and select Configure > Form Design. The form designer opens.

**6. In the form designer header drop-down list** select or search for any of the configurable walk-up forms to customize your portal appearance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up context [wu_context]</td>
<td>Configure an online check-in channel for users to join a walk-up queue before physically arriving at the walk-up location. Identifies a walk-up user and the description of the associated interaction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Configure Walk-up Experience Service Channel

Configure the Walk-up Experience service channel to meet the needs of your walk-up agents. You can configure the way the tasks are assigned and manage interactions in the Agent Workspace.

**Role required:** admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

The Walk-up Experience service channel is viewed and configured through Advanced Work Assignment. You can modify default values and conditions as required.

1. Navigate to **Advanced Work Assignment > Service Channels**.
   - The Service Channels list displays.
2. Select **Walk-up** to open the Walk-up Experience service channel.
3. Refer to **Create a service channel** for detailed information regarding the Service Channel Walk-up form values and conditions.
   - For more information regarding Advanced Work Assignment service channels configuring capacity and utilization, inbox layout, and overriding agent capacity for selected agents, see **Service channels**.

### Configure Walk-up Experience Notifications

As an administrator you can create and use notifications to notify requesters about events that impact them while they are getting their issue addressed through walk-up experience. Requesters are notified of online appointments they have taken or when their issue is assigned to a store representative by email.

**Role required:** admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

Walk-up Experience includes several base-system notifications that you can use or customize to notify walk-up visitors about specific information and interactions, including:

**Walk-up Experience notifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Abandoned</td>
<td>Notifies when a walk-up interaction is closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Threshold Notification</td>
<td>Notifies visitors when they are close to being next in line for support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Assigned</td>
<td>Notifies when an interaction is assigned to a technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Closed</td>
<td>Notifies when a walk-up location is closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Navigate to **CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Notifications**.
2. Click an available walk-up notification to view basic properties, as well as information about when to send it, who will receive it, and what the notification will contain. The walk-up notification form appears.
3. To modify a walk-up notification, edit any of the form fields.
4. To create a new walk-up email or push notification, click New and refer to Create an email notification or Create a push message.

For complete information regarding using the System Notification application, refer to Notifications.

Configure Walk-up Experience schedules

Once you know the hours of operation for your Walk-up Experience location, you can either access the base-system default schedules or create new schedules to associate with your walk-up location.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Schedules. The Schedules list opens. You can view all available base-system default schedules, such as 8-5 weekdays excluding holidays.
2. To modify an existing base-system schedule, click the schedule name, otherwise click New to create a schedule if none of the default schedules apply for your walk-up location.
3. Complete the Schedule New record form or modify fields on an existing form.

To complete this process and for detailed information on creating, modifying, and using schedules in the system, including a definition of all form fields, refer to Schedules.

Walk-up Experience appointment booking

With the CSM Walk-up Experience appointment booking feature, walk-up users can view available appointment windows. The users can also select and book an appointment for a walk-up location using the online Walk-up Check-in feature.

Create time windows for walk-up queue locations enabling requesters to book service appointments.

The Appointment Booking plugin (com.snc.appointment_booking) must be activated to use the application. Appointment booking adds the Appointment Booking menu to the application navigator and the following modules:

- Appointment Booking Configuration: Use this module to create an appointment booking. Configure an application and then configure each service within that application.
- Appointment Bookings: Use this module to view a list of appointments that have been booked for services. This list includes the work orders associated with each appointment.

Appointment booking requires configuration at both the application level, in this case, Walk-up Experience, and at the walk-up queue service level, represented by the actual location of the walk-up queue.

The Walk-up Experience application configuration contains settings that apply to all the service locations within the application that support appointment booking.

A service configuration is required for each of the walk-up queue locations within the application that offer scheduled appointments. A service configuration includes settings that apply only to that specific walk-up queue service location.

Note: Both the application configuration and the service configuration must be active to book appointments.

For detailed information about the Appointment Booking application, refer to Appointment booking.
Configure appointment booking
Create or modify appointment booking configurations for Walk-up Experience services. A service is defined as the actual physical location of a walk-up queue. The information stored in the Walk-up Experience application configuration applies to all services or queue locations within the application.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Appointment Configurations.
2. Click New to create a new service configuration. Alternatively, you can click an existing service configuration to modify data.
3. In the Appointment Booking Service Configuration form, fill in the following fields as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the service configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Activates appointment booking for the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If deactivated, customers cannot schedule appointments for the service but can still create work orders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>The name of the appointment booking configuration to which this service belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability table</td>
<td>The table calculates appointment availability. For Walk-up Experience, choose Walk-up Appointment [wu_appointment].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holiday Schedule</td>
<td>The holiday schedule to use when determining availability. Appointment booking evaluates the holiday schedule when determining the number of available appointments and excludes any day in the schedule that is set to <strong>Exclude</strong>. Click the lookup icon and select a schedule from the Schedules list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Holiday schedules are useful when you set the assignment method for tasks to <strong>manually</strong>, which does not consider agent schedules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalog item</td>
<td>The service in the service catalog for which you are creating this appointment booking configuration. Click the lookup icon and select the associated service from the Record Producers list. You must create a record producer for each walk-up service location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The catalog item must exist in the service catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you are using appointment booking with work orders, create a work order template before you configure appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The field on the record provider that determines the appointment location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                  | Note: Ensure the **Location** field on both this form and the Walk-up Location Queue (wu_location_queue) form are configured in alignment. Contains the `location` reference variable, which is a Location (cmn_location) record. Selecting **Location** from the search list icon ensures you are aligning with the same time zone as the walk-up location you are configuring for. When you select **Location**, the online appointment scheduling calendar displays in the user time zone. If you leave this field empty or if you have not configured the user preference for the instance to have an associated time zone, the appointment scheduling calendar defaults to display in the user time zone.  
If a user in Europe has User preferences for **Time zone** configured for Europe/Brussels and the Appointment Booking Configuration for the **Location** field is set to a cmn_location with the time zone US/Pacific, then the appointment scheduling calendar displays in the US/Pacific time zone.  
When a user creates an appointment, the system defaults to use the schedule associated with the Walk-up Location Queue (wu_location_queue), regardless of the **Location** field value of this record producer. |
| Appointment is mandatory | Enable this check box if it is required for a customer to create an appointment when requesting this service.  
- If enabled, the **Appointment** field appears on the record producer and the user must select an available appointment before submitting the service request.  
- If disabled, the user can submit the service request without selecting an appointment. |
<p>| User contact     | The field on the record producer that determines for whom the appointment was created. Set this field to <strong>Contact</strong>. This is a reference field that looks for a sys_user variable on the record producer. |
| Booking          |                                                                                  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appointments per window</td>
<td>The number of available appointments for each configured appointment time slot. This number determines the number of available appointments displayed on the Select Appointment window. Enter a number in this field if the assignment method for tasks is set to manually. If set to either using auto-assignment or using dynamic scheduling, this setting does not apply, unless a location is not provided. Then the configuration defaults to the number of appointments per window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead time</td>
<td>The number of hours or days from the current time after which you have booked an appointment for this service. Define the lead time in hours or days. The default is 4 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future bookable max days</td>
<td>The number of days before the current day for which an appointment can be booked for this service. The default is 14 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reschedule / Cancel by time</td>
<td>The number of hours or days prior to an appointment start time that are required for cancelling an appointment or rescheduled. If a user attempts to cancel or reschedule an appointment within this number of hours, the Cancel button is not available. Define the time in hours or days. The default is 4 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointments</td>
<td>The length or duration of the appointment window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment window</td>
<td>Note: Allow enough time to start and complete the work within this window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work duration</td>
<td>The amount of time required to complete all tasks created by the record producer. You set the duration for a task when it is created which is used to determine availability. The default is 1 hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel duration (round trip)</td>
<td>An estimated value of the average travel time required (round trip) for the agent performing the task. Set the value to 0 since the work is performed onsite and travel time is not needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Schedule</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookable days</td>
<td>The days of the week for which appointments can be booked. The default is Monday through Friday. Bookable days should reflect the appointment schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Appointment schedules are separate from the walk-up queue location schedule but should be the same days and hours as the walk-up queue location schedule.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily start time</td>
<td>The start of the work day and the earliest start time for an appointment window. The default is 9:00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily end time</td>
<td>The end of the work day and the latest end time for an appointment window. The default is 18:00 PM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include daily break</td>
<td>Enable this check box to schedule a break for each bookable day, then select the break start and end times. Can define one break which applies to all days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment booking preview</td>
<td>Provides a preview of the appointment windows and times based on the selected start and end times, break time, and appointment window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **Click Submit.**

**Walk-up Experience appointment booking administration**

Create or modify and enable the CSM Walk-up Experience application configuration and the individual service location configurations for the **Appointment Booking** feature.

Administrators can create, modify, and enable the Walk-up Experience application configuration. Appointment booking administrators (appointment_booking_admin) can create, modify, and enable configurations for service locations within the Walk-up Experience application.

**Walk-up Experience** is an application level configuration provided with the base system appointment booking feature. You can include as many service level configurations as needed. The service level configurations apply to the individual walk-up queue locations that exist. Administrators can modify these configurations as needed or use them as examples to create new configurations.

For detailed information on appointment booking administration, refer to **Administer appointment booking.**

**Enable Walk-up Experience appointment-booking**

Enable or disable the appointment booking feature for Walk-up Experience as well as for the individual walk-up service locations available to customers.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

The Appointment Booking plugin (com.snc.appointment_booking) must be activated to use the application.

When you enable appointment booking, the **Schedule an appointment** tab appears on the online check-in page. Users choose a reason for the appointment and select a date a time from the available appointments.

1. Navigate to **Appointment Booking > Appointment Booking Configuration.**
2. **Click Walk-up Experience.**
   - The **Walk-up Experience** configuration is provided with the base system **Appointment Booking** feature.
3. Click **Active** to enable appointment booking for the Walk-up Experience application. Alternatively, if the feature is active you can deactivate it by clicking **Active.**
4. In the Appointment Booking Service Configuration related list, click the name of a service.
   - For Walk-up Experience, the physical location of a walk-up queue defines a service. Every walk-up queue associated with your application is a service that you must configure for appointment booking.
   - The Appointment Booking Service Configuration form for the selected service opens.
5. **Click Active** to set the field to true.
6. **Click Update.**

**Walk-up Experience appointment booking configuration**

Create or modify appointment booking configurations for the Walk-up Experience. You can view or modify the Walk-up Experience application appointment booking configuration and create or modify related service appointment configurations.

The base system Walk-up Experience application includes a default appointment booking configuration that can be modified. By default, the information stored in the Walk-up Experience application appointment booking configuration applies to all services within that application. Services within the Walk-up Experience application are defined as the actual walk-up queue locations. You can create new appointment booking service configurations for the Walk-up Experience application or modify existing configurations.
For example, you may want to configure one walk-up queue to accept appointment booking every day from Monday to Friday, but for another queue, you only want appointment booking available on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday. By configuring appointment booking at the service level, you can achieve this goal.

Specific Walk-up Experience set-up criteria for appointment booking include the following configurations:

- Define different appointment schedules and time windows per queue location.
- Define the time window in which you want to support appointments. For example, 15 minutes vs. 30 minutes.
- Define the time window capacity. For example, the maximum number of appointments per time window.

View or modify a Walk-up Experience appointment booking configuration

View the base system default appointment booking configuration to determine if the criteria meets your walk-up appointment booking requirement. You can modify the configuration to manage appointment booking. The information stored in the Walk-up Experience appointment booking configuration applies to all the services within the application.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

The Walk-up Experience configuration is provided with the Appointment Booking feature.

1. Navigate to Appointment Booking > Appointment Configurations.
2. To view the Walk-up Experience configuration, click the configuration name.
3. In the Appointment Booking Configuration form, view or modify the following fields as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the application configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Table</td>
<td>Appointments are created for the tasks in the selected table. The Walk-up Appointment [wu_appointment] table is the default table for the Walk-up Experience configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability Method</td>
<td>Use one of two methods to determine appointment availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Number of appointments per slot: Define a specific number of appointments per time slot. Use this method if the task assignment is set to manually which is the default setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Scripted: Use this configuration setting to determine availability if the task assignment method is set to using auto assignment or dynamic scheduling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Activates the application configuration and enables appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto acceptance</td>
<td>If the application configuration setting for Process lifecycle is set to task-driven, an agent must accept or reject an assigned task. Enable the Auto acceptance check box to override this configuration setting for appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal View</td>
<td>Display available appointments for a single day or for a week on the online Self Service Walk-up Check-in portal or from the Service Portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
Create or modify a Walk-up Experience appointment booking service configuration

Create or modify appointment booking configurations for Walk-up Experience services. A service is defined as the actual physical location of a walk-up queue. The information stored in the Walk-up Experience application configuration applies to all services, or queue locations, within the application.

Role required: admin or sn_apptmnt_booking.appointment_booking_admin

To use the appointment booking feature, administrators must create a configuration for each service, or queue location, that is available to walk-up customers. Service configurations are created within the Walk-up Experience application configuration, as part of the Appointment Booking application.

1. Navigate to Appointment Booking > Appointment Booking Configuration.
2. Click Walk-up Experience.
3. In the Appointment Booking Service Configuration related list, click New to create a new service configuration. Alternatively, you can click an existing service configuration to modify data.
4. In the Appointment Booking Service Configuration form, fill in the following fields as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Activates appointment booking for the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If deactivated, customers cannot schedule appointments for the service but can still create work orders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Information

| Name                      | The name of the service configuration.                                      |
| Configuration             | The name of the appointment booking configuration to which this service belongs. |
| Availability table        | The table that is used to calculate appointment availability. For Walk-up Experience, choose Walk-up Appointment [wu_appointment]. |

Holiday Schedule

<p>| Holiday Schedule          | The holiday schedule to use when determining availability. Appointment booking evaluates the holiday schedule when determining the number of available appointments and excludes any day in the schedule that is set to Exclude. Click the lookup icon and select a schedule from the Schedules list. |
|                          | <strong>Note:</strong> Holiday schedules are useful when the assignment method for tasks is set to manually, which does not consider agent schedules. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catalog Item</td>
<td>The service in the service catalog for which this appointment booking configuration is being created. Click the lookup icon and select a service from the Record Producers list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The catalog item must exist in the service catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you are using appointment booking with work orders, create a work order template before you configure appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The field on the record provider that determines the appointment location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment is mandatory</td>
<td>Enable this check box if it is mandatory that a customer create an appointment when requesting this service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If enabled, the <strong>Appointment</strong> field appears on the record producer and the user must select an available appointment on the <strong>Select Appointment window</strong> before submitting the service request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If disabled, the user can submit the service request without selecting an appointment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User contact</td>
<td>The field on the record provider that determines who the appointment is being created for. This is a reference field that looks for a sys_user variable on the record producer, for example, <strong>Contact</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timezone</td>
<td>The appointment window based on the <strong>Timezone</strong> field specified in the user contact record or the location where the appointment for the task is scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointments per window</td>
<td>The number of available appointments for each configured appointment time slot. This number determines the number of available appointments that are displayed on the Select Appointment window. Enter a number in this field if the assignment method for tasks is set to <strong>manually</strong>. If set to either <strong>using auto-assignment</strong> or <strong>using dynamic scheduling</strong>, this setting does not apply, unless a location is not provided. Then the configuration defaults to the number of appointments per window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead time</td>
<td>The number of hours or days from the current time after which an appointment can be booked for this service. Define the lead time in hours or days. The default is 4 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future bookable max days</td>
<td>The number of days in advance of the current day for which an appointment can be booked for this service. The default is 14 days.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reschedule / Cancel by time</strong></td>
<td>The number of hours or days prior to an appointment start time that are required for an appointment to be canceled or rescheduled. If a user attempts to cancel or reschedule an appointment within this number of hours, the Cancel button is not available. Define the time in hours or days. The default is 4 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appointments</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appointment window</strong></td>
<td>The length or duration of the appointment window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>Allow enough time for the work to be started and completed within this window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Work duration</strong></td>
<td>The amount of time required to complete all tasks created by the record producer. This duration is set for a task when it is created. Used to determine availability. The default is 1 hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Travel duration (round trip)</strong></td>
<td>An estimated value of the average travel time required (round trip) for the agent performing the task. Set the value to 0 since the work is performed onsite and travel time is not needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily Schedule</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bookable days</strong></td>
<td>The days of the week for which appointments can be booked. The default is Monday through Friday. Bookable days should reflect the appointment schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>Appointment schedules are separate from the walk-up queue location schedule but should be the same days and hours as the walk-up queue location schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily start time</strong></td>
<td>The start of the work day and the earliest start time for an appointment window. The default is 9:00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily end time</strong></td>
<td>The end of the work day and the latest end time for an appointment window. The default is 18:00 PM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Include daily break</strong></td>
<td>Enable this check box to schedule a break for each bookable day, then select the break start and end times. Can define one break which applies to all days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appointment booking preview</strong></td>
<td>Provides a preview of the appointment windows and times based on the selected start and end times, break time, and appointment window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. Click Submit.

Configure daily schedules for Walk-up Experience service appointment booking

Specify different daily hours of operation for your Walk-up Experience location appointment booking.

Role required: admin or sn_apptmnt_booking.appointment_booking_admin

Create a unique appointment booking schedule for each day of the week or for specific days of the week. For example, you can set the appointment booking availability schedule to run all day, from 9:00am to 5:00pm, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday. Tuesday and Thursday appointment availability schedule can run from 9:00am to 12:00pm. You can completely remove appointment booking for a specific day of the week, for example, Friday.
Note: To specify unique daily booking schedules, while using your associated appointment booking configuration, create new Schedule Entries to exclude the hours appointment booking is not available.

1. To configure, for example, Tuesday and Thursday appointment availability schedule from 9:00am to 12:00pm, navigate to Walk-up Experience > Schedules.
2. Select the schedule you use, for example, the 8-5 weekdays excluding holidays schedule.
3. In the Schedule Entries related list, click New.
The Schedule Entry New record form appears.
4. Name the new record Excludes and fill in the form to create a unique daily booking schedule for Tuesday and Thursday appointments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name the record. For example, name the record Excludes to indicate the hours excluded from appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Choose Excluded as the type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show as</td>
<td>Choose Busy as the reason for the exclusion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>Indicate the date to begin using this booking availability schedule. Also indicate the time to exclude booking availability for this date. For example, the hours of 12:00pm through 5:00pm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeats</td>
<td>Indicate the recurrence for this availability schedule. For example, Weekly on Tue and Thu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat until</td>
<td>Specify how long you want this availability schedule to run by selecting an end date.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Click **Submit**.

6. To verify that Tuesday and Thursday appointment booking is only available from 9:00am to 12:00am, navigate to your online Walk-up Check-in application.
   
   If configured for view, You can access the online Walk-up Check-in application from the Service Portal Home page or under Self-Service in the left navigation bar.

7. Select the walk-up location for which you are verifying the schedule.
8. Click **Schedule an appointment** and select a reason for the visit.

9. Select a date for the appointment.

The **Select Appointment** window displays the first available appointment, by week and day.

10. Determine that appointments are only available on Tuesdays and Thursdays from 9:00am to 12:00pm.

Activate and configure appointment booking reminders for Walk-up Experience

Configure scheduled appointment reminders for Walk-up Experience users. Reminders ensure users attend appointments in a timely manner or reschedule or cancel an appointment if they can no longer attend.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

In order for appointment booking reminders to operate, you must activate the **Appointment Booking Reminders** Scheduled Job, which is not active by default. In addition, the **Appointment reminder** field does not appear on
the Appointment Booking Service Configuration form by default. You must add it to the form and configure reminders. Reminders are inactive unless a configuration is set.

1. To activate the Appointment Booking Reminders Scheduled Job, navigate to System Definition > Scheduled Jobs.
2. Search for Appointment Booking Reminders by name and click to open.
3. Click the Active field to activate the scheduled job.
4. Click Update.
5. To add the Appointment reminder field to the Appointment Booking Service Configuration form, navigate to Walk-up Experience > Administration > Appointment Configurations.
6. Select a Walk-up Experience service configuration from the list. The Appointment Booking Service Configuration form opens.
7. Click the menu button ( ) and scroll to Configure > Form Layout.
8. Select Appointment reminder from the Available list and move it to the Selected list using the add button.
9. Click Save.
   The Appointment Booking Service Configuration form displays with the Appointment reminder field.
10. To configure an appointment reminder, choose an amount of time, in hours, from the Appointment reminder field drop-down list. The hour or hours you choose represents the amount of time before a scheduled appointment that you want to send a reminder, for example, 2 hours before a scheduled appointment.
11. Click Update to add the appointment reminder configuration.

Configure Walk-up Experience locations

Administrators define walk-up locations while setting up walk-up experience for an organization. This information will be shown to requesters when they schedule their appointment or check-in at a service store.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

The administrators can configure the following for CSM locations:

• create, modify, or remove (mark inactive) walk-up location queues
• allocate schedule for appointments, AWA conditions
• set conditions to automatically route work items
• location unavailable temporarily
• location address and picture
• specify reasons-for-visit options
• configure how interactions display for each walk-up location

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Walk-up Locations.
2. Click New.
3. Complete the form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fields</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Provide a detailed name for the location, such as the city or building it is located at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Provide a description of the location, if desired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Select a schedule for operation days and hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment Booking</td>
<td>Add and configure an appointment booking schedule for the walk-up location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Channel</td>
<td>Search for and choose the Walk-up service channel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Define condition here</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select whether or not to automatically route work items to this queue using a condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Condition mode</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choose either <strong>Simple</strong> mode or <strong>Advanced</strong> mode to automatically route work to the queue. Simple mode is the default. With simple mode you can select from pre-built conditions. For example, select <strong>Location is X</strong> [search and select location]. With advanced mode you can provide your own scripting and code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Work item routing condition</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure and specify who will provide customer support at a walk-up location. Location is determined by physical address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Active</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check to make this queue location active.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Enable away state</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Check to allow an away state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Away message</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify a display message for when the location is temporarily closed. This is for hours other than the scheduled closed times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Stockroom</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select a stockroom to supply assets for the location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Location</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select the physical address of your location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Location image</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click to add an image of your location. For example, this can be an image of the city or building where the walk-up location is located.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Access Type</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select external or both types of users so that the appropriate walk-up locations are visible to users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Click the Management tab to complete the Management section of the form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Fields</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Position notification</strong></td>
<td>Select the queue position that triggers a notification to visitors when they are close to being assisted at the location. For example, when a visitor is third in line to be assisted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Last check-in</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify the last available check-in time in minutes. For example, 30 minutes before closing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Enable online check-in</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allow visitors to check in to the location remotely from a laptop or mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Enable appointment delegation</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enable users to book an appointment for someone else.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** When you enable appointment delegation, the **Appointment delegation group** field appears. Select a group to allow appointment delegation. Add a new group of users if an appropriate group does not exist. Only users in this group will have the choice of scheduling for themselves or another user when they book an appointment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Name configuration</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Select a name configuration to display visitor information on the onsite queue TV monitor and online check-in screen. The first name will always display. However, you can show first and last name, first name with last name initial only, or first name only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Appointment routing time</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Specify the amount of time, in minutes, to route the work item to an agent prior to an appointment time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Hold time
Enter an amount of time, in minutes, that you want to put an interaction on hold before attempting to route it again to a technician. For example, entering 5 will put the interaction on hold for 5 minutes before rerouting.

### Show estimated wait time
Enable the estimated wait time to show for walk-up queues.

**Note:** The wait time is calculated from the average wait time of the queue and how many users are currently in the queue. All estimated wait times are rounded to the nearest whole minute.

The estimated wait time calculation requires the use of Service Owner Workspace to calculate the average wait time. Service Owner Workspace uses the Advanced Work Assignment queueing system to obtain the average wait time.

Estimated wait times display in the following places:
- Online check-in.
- Onsite check-in and onsite queue screen (TV).
- **Status** widget on the Service Portal

### Audio Playback
Specify when the audio confirmation will play, for example, when a requester checks into an onsite queue, when a requester checks in online, or both. The default mode is **None**.

### Audio File
Specify an audio file to play when a requester checks into a queue. The base-system default file is walkup_checkin.mp3.

**Note:** Only mp3 file formats are supported across all browsers.

You may need to provide additional browser permissions to use an audio file on the Safari browser.

5. Click the **Administration** tab to complete the administration section of the form.

### Queue time display
Chose from **None, Check-in time**, or **Time waited** to be displayed on the location wall monitor.

### Queue message
Specify a welcome message for your location wall monitor.

### Check-in greeting
Create a check-in message to guide visitors to sign into the queue at the designated check-in monitor.

### Closed message
Create a message to alert visitors that it is outside the hours of operation and the location is closed.

### Closed phone number
Select your country from the drop-down menu to display the Customer Support phone number.

### Closed record producer
Search for and select a record producer to display and link to during closed hours, such as **Create incident**.
Closed image
Click to add an image indicating the walk-up location is closed. The image displays on the wall monitor to alert walk-in visitors that the location is closed.

Max search results
Specify how many search results to provide for contextual searches.

Contextual search config
Configure which search context will provide results at the location.

Enable unregistered user entry
Check to allow users who do not have a user name in the system to check in to the location for support. For example, guests visiting the location (opposed to employees).

Enable lookup user entry
Check so that when users begin typing their names they can quickly see and select their names from a list.

Enable technician info
Check to allow the display of available technician names on the location wall monitor.

Enable technician avatar
Check to allow the display of technician avatars on the location wall monitor.

Header logo
Click to add a header logo. The header logo is location specific. If no logo is specified, by default, the Walk-up Portal logo is used.

Queue logo
Click to add a logo for the designated walk-up location wall monitor. Design this logo to work correctly with a black background. If no logo is specified for the queue, by default, the Header logo is used. If no Header logo is specified, the Walk-up Portal logo is used.

6. Right-click in the form header and select Save.
Several tabs appear.
• Interactions
• Walk-up Appointments
• Reasons for Visit
• Assignment Eligibility
• Work Item Sort Order

7. Click the Interactions tab to view interactions or configure how the walk-up Interactions list should display.
You can use the filter icon ( ) and the personalize list icon ( ) to modify.

8. Click the Walk-up Appointments tab to view appointments or configure how the Walk-up Appointments list should display. You can use the filter icon ( ) and the personalize list icon ( ) to modify.

9. Click the Reasons for Visit tab to view, modify, or create a reason for visit option.
The base system includes three active reasons:
• I need something
• Something is not working
• Laptop refresh
• Other

10. Click the Assignment Eligibility tab to view, modify, or create an assignment rule for your walk-up queue locations. Assignment rules are configured in the Advanced Work Assignment product.

11. Click the Work Item Sort Order tab to view, modify, or create an Work Item Sort Orders for your walk-up queue locations.
12. Click **Update** to save the new or modified location queue.

**Remove a Walk-up Experience location**

If you permanently close down a physical Walk-up Experience location, you can also remove the location from the Walk-up Location Queues table.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Walk-up Locations.
2. Click the name of the walk-up location you want to remove to open the location queue record.
3. Click **Delete** in the form header.
   A confirmation pop-up appears ensuring you want to delete the record.
4. Click **Delete**.
   The Walk-up Experience location queue is removed from the application.

**CSM Walk-up Experience customer satisfaction surveys**

With Walk-up Experience surveys, users can rate their satisfaction with walk-up location interactions, providing management with feedback to improve the walk-up experience.

Two base-system predefined Walk-up Experience surveys are provided:

- **Walk-up CSAT survey**: Onsite one-click sentiment-analysis survey where the user can quickly rate service based on a 1 - 3 scale, where 1 is a negative experience and 3 is a positive experience. The survey uses an image scale of three faces with different sentiments (sad, neutral, and smiling).

  ![Sad Face](image1)
  **Sorry to hear.**
  ![Neutral Face](image2)
  **Got it. Good to know.**
  ![Smiling Face](image3)
  **Awesome! Good to know.**

- **Walk-up Experience Satisfaction Survey**: A survey link is sent via email when walk-up interactions are closed. It uses sentiment analysis for the overall experience, wait-time experience, technician experience, technician professionalism, and additional comments. This survey is based on a 1 - 5 numeric rating scale, where 1 is very unsatisfied and 5 is very satisfied.

Walk-up administrators and managers can modify these surveys and the associated trigger conditions. Managers and administrators can review responses by question and see a scorecard for each survey on the **Walk-up Experience Dashboard** module. User comments provide feedback that is used to improve the performance of walk-up interactions.

For more detailed information about working with surveys, sentiment analysis, trigger conditions, and survey questions, see **Survey Management**.
Configure Walk-up Experience survey
Define surveys so that requesters can provide feedback on their satisfaction with the service quality received at a location.

Role required: admin or sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin

Creating a new customer satisfaction survey requires that you first define a new survey and then use the Survey Designer to design, configure, and make it available to users.

1. To view and use a base-system predefined survey in the Walk-up Experience application, navigate to **CSM Walk-up Experience > Administration > Surveys**.
   The Assessment Metric Types list opens displaying the available walk-up surveys.
2. To modify an existing walk-up survey, click the survey name, otherwise navigate to **Survey > View Surveys** and click **New** to define a new survey if none of the base-system surveys are optimal for your walk-up location. The Survey Definition New record form opens.
3. To modify or complete the form, refer to **modify a survey definition**.

System properties for configuring Walk-up Experience for guest users
System properties enable you to configure the Walk-up Experience for guest users so they can access the Walk-up Check-in widget from the Service Portal Home Page and schedule appointments online.

Properties to configure Walk-up Experience application
As an admin, in your instance, enter **sys_properties.list** in the filter navigator and add the following properties. The default values are listed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.guest_user_walkup_enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enables or disables Walk-up Experience for guest user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.captcha.enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enables or disables the CAPTCHA validation from the welcome page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.max_confirmation_validity_in_minutes</td>
<td>15 mins</td>
<td>The time to confirm the appointment booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.max_otp_validity_in_minutes</td>
<td>5 mins</td>
<td>The time that the one-time password the user receives to modify or cancel the appointment is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.max_guest_appointments_per_location</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>The number of appointments the guest user can book per location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_guest_walkup_cs.captcha.timeout</td>
<td>10 mins</td>
<td>The time after which the CAPTCHA validation on the welcome page times out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Add a Walk-up Experience online check-in link on the Service Portal home page
Configure a Walk-up Experience link to enable guest users to check in online to a walk-up location via Service Portal.

Service Portal for Enterprise Service Management (com.glide.service-portal.esm) must be activated.

Role required: admin and sp_admin

1. In your instance, enter **sp_page.list** in the filter navigator.
2. Select **ID** from the **Search** drop-down list and enter csm_index in the **Search** field.
3. Click **csm_index**.
4. Scroll down and click the **Open in Designer** related link.
5. Drag the **walk-up check-in link** from the **Widgets** list in the left pane and drop it on the Service Portal home page where you want the link to appear.

**Configure Auto-Responder notifications**

Configure the Auto-Responder feature for sharing relevant content in email notifications for deflecting cases.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see **Activate a plugin** and **Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions**.

Role required: admin

When you install and activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml), the following related plugins are also activated:

- Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice)
- Predictive Intelligence for Contextual Search plugin (com.snc.contextual_search_ml)
- Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results plugin (com.snc.adv_cxs_results_email_script)

You can also configure the Auto-Responder feature for tasks other than customer service cases. For more information, see **Configure Auto-Responder for tasks other than cases**.

1. **Enable Auto-Responder.**
2. **Train the similarity solution for finding Auto-Responder notification content.**
3. Optional: **Configure the search context for Auto-Responder.**
4. Optional: **Limit the number of articles in Auto-Responder notifications for cases.**
5. Optional: **Include advanced contextual search results in Auto-Responder notifications.**

**Note:** By default, any knowledge articles viewed in the last 30 days by the user are not included in the email notification. You can use the `getViewedContent` extension point to modify the filter out by the duration of the last viewed content.

6. Optional: **Enable text search recommendations in Auto-Responder notifications.**
7. Optional: **Include cases logged using specified communication channels in Auto-Responder notifications.**
8. Optional: **Include knowledge articles from custom portals in Auto-Responder notifications.**

**Note:** When you configure the Auto-Responder feature to use a custom portal, the default configuration for the customer service portal and consumer service portal are not used. Ensure that you use this configuration when you have your own custom portal and don’t want to use the customer service portal or consumer service portal.

**Enable Auto-Responder**

Enable the Auto-Responder feature to include content suggested for deflecting cases in email notifications.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see **Activate a plugin** and **Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions**.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties.**
2. In the Auto-Responder Recommendations section, select the check box for the **Enable auto-responder recommendations** property (sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.enable).
3. Click **Save.**
Train the similarity solution for finding Auto-Responder notification content

Update and train a similarity solution definition to enable the Auto-Responder feature to suggest content by comparing the short description of a customer service case with those of existing knowledge articles.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see [Activate a plugin](https://docs.servicenow.com/applications/predictiveintelligence/solution.html) and [Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions](https://docs.servicenow.com/applications/predictiveintelligence/solution.html).

Role required: admin

A similarity solution definition collects and compares your existing records to new similar records. The Similar Knowledge Articles All similarity solution selects knowledge articles for customer service cases from the predefined knowledge bases in the consumer service portal and customer service portal. To select knowledge articles from any custom knowledge base in a portal or from a knowledge base in any custom portal, you must modify this similarity solution.

For a similarity solution to work correctly, the Knowledge [kb_knowledge] table in the Knowledge View [sn_customerservice_knowledge_view] database view must have at least the required number of records set in the configuration of your ServiceNow instance. The default minimum number required is 10,000.

If the Knowledge Management Advanced plugin (com.snc.knowledge_advanced) is activated, the tables for knowledge article templates (such as FAQ, How to, What Is, KCS Article) are also added to the Knowledge View [sn_customerservice_knowledge_view] database view. For a similarity solution to show results from each template type, each of the tables for the template type must have at least the required number of records. If a table doesn’t have the required number of records, you might not see the results from that table. For more information, see [Database View support for Predictive Intelligence](https://docs.servicenow.com/applications/predictiveintelligence/solution.html).

1. Navigate to Predictive Intelligence > Similarity > Solution Definitions.
2. In the Similarity Definitions list, search for and select the Similar Knowledge Articles All solution definition (ml_sn_sn_customerservice_global_similar_knowledge_view_articles).
3. On the Similarity Definition form, verify the default field values for knowledge articles.

Note: If the application scope isn’t set to Customer Service application, you cannot edit the form and a warning message appears. To make the form editable, click the word here at the end of the message.

### Similarity Definition form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Label</td>
<td>Unique name for your similarity solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Corpus</td>
<td>Defines which knowledge articles and cases are selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default, the All Articles and Cases word corpus is available to search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for knowledge articles similar to a customer service case short description.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Modify the word corpus to use the knowledge base defined for your portal. If you have defined custom tables for knowledge articles and article templates, you must include their fields in the word corpus content. For more information about the word corpus and word corpus content, see [Create a word corpus](https://docs.servicenow.com/applications/predictiveintelligence/solution.html).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Table or database view that contains the knowledge article records. Set the value to the Knowledge View [sn_customerservice_knowledge_view] database view unless you use a different table or database view for storing knowledge articles. This database view joins the Knowledge [kb_knowledge], What Is [kb_template_what_is], How To [kb_template_how_to], FAQ [kb_template_faq], and KCS Article [kb_template_kcs] tables for viewing all fields in a knowledge article. After you assign a table value, the number of records that match the filter conditions is displayed as a link. <strong>Note:</strong> The What Is [kb_template_what_is], How To [kb_template_how_to], FAQ [kb_template_faq], and KCS Article [kb_template_kcs] tables are available only if the Knowledge Management Advanced plugin is activated. For more information, see <a href="#">Activate the Knowledge Management Advanced plugin</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields</td>
<td>Fields from the Knowledge View [sn_customerservice_knowledge_view] database view selected for similarity comparison with the case short description. The fields must be the same as the fields you define for the Word corpus content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter</td>
<td>Filter conditions applied on the database view to filter knowledge article records for Auto-Responder recommendations. Click <strong>Add Filter Condition</strong> to apply conditions to the Field records you're using as a base to retrieve your similarity results. For example, for the customer service portal, you would set a [Workflow] (\text{[is]}) [Published] AND [Knowledge base] is [Customer Service] filter condition. For a custom portal, you select the knowledge base of the custom portal in the [Knowledge base] condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Table</td>
<td>Table that contains the case records that you want to compare with knowledge article records. Set the value to the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table unless you use a different table for storing case records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Fields</td>
<td>Fields from the case selected for similarity matching with knowledge article fields. By default, the short description field of a customer service case is used for the similarity match with knowledge article fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ServiceNow  Paris  Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Processing Language</td>
<td>Dominant language of the dataset you're training on the solution definition. By default, English processing is applied to all datasets. For example, if you select Italian, the system processes the data in both English and Italian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The term &quot;processing&quot; indicates some of the language-specific steps used as part of training a solution. These steps might include tokenizing words, removing stop words, and stemming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stopwords</td>
<td>Common terms in the processing language that are excluded from the search, for example, prepositions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you select your processing language, the system automatically adds a Stopwords list that uses the same language. For example, if your processing language is Italian, the Default Italian Stopwords list appears. The Default English Stopwords list appears by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency with which the model for the similarity solution definition must be retrained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency with which to include new records in the model for the similarity solution definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information, see *Create and train a similarity solution*.

4. Optional: In the Training Request Schedule related list, update the schedule for training the Similar Knowledge Articles All solution definition.

By default, the training request schedule is **Periodically** and runs after every 30 days.

5. Click **Update & Retrain**.

6. Open the Similar Knowledge Articles All solution definition (ml_sn_sn_customerservice_global_similar_knowledge_view_articles) and in the ML Solutions related list, view the training solution progress in the **Progress** column.

When **Progress** is 100%, in the ML Solutions related list, you can include more useful content in the Auto-Responder notification by reviewing the similarity examples based on the similarity score and updating the similarity score threshold value.

7. Optional: Update the similarity score threshold.
   a) In the **Active** column, click the link for the solution.
   b) Review the similarity examples by clicking the **Similarity Examples** related link on the ML Solution form.
      For more information, see *Review solution similarity examples*.
   c) In the Solution Statistics related list on the ML Solution form, enter the required value in the **Similarity Score Threshold** field, right-click the ML Solution form, and then click **Save**.
      For more information, see *Update your similarity score threshold*.

When the solution is complete, the knowledge articles similar to the fields selected for a customer service case are sent as Auto-Responder recommendations.
Configuring the search context for Auto-Responder

You can configure the predefined search context for customer service cases to include relevant search resources in Auto-Responder email notifications.

The Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml) includes the predefined **Case Email Autoresponder KB search** search context for customer service cases configured for use in the Auto-Responder feature. This search context uses the predefined Search Knowledge Articles searcher that provides knowledge articles as search results.

By default, the **Case Email Autoresponder KB search** search context includes contextual search results based on Predictive Intelligence. You can edit this search context to include any additional resources. For more information, see **Define a search context**.

**Note:** To provide other relevant recommendations to resolve a customer service case when Predictive Intelligence results are insufficient or unavailable, you can also enable the text search recommendations in the Auto-Responder email notification. For more information, see **Enable text search recommendations in Auto-Responder notifications**.

Limit the number of articles in Auto-Responder notifications for cases

Send the most relevant knowledge articles in Auto-Responder notifications for customer service cases by limiting the number of knowledge articles that are included.

- Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see **Activate a plugin** and **Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions**.
- Set the application scope to Customer Service using the application picker. For more information, see **Application picker**.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **Contextual Search > Table Configuration**.
2. Search for **Case [sn_customerservice_case]**.
3. Click the **Case [sn_customerservice_case]** link in the **Name** column corresponding to the row containing the **Case Email Autoresponder KB Search** search context.
4. In the Email Configurations related list, double-click the value in the Limit column for the **Case auto-responder recommendations** row.
5. Enter the maximum number of knowledge articles you want to include in the Auto-Responder email notifications for customer service cases and click the save icon (✔).
   The maximum allowed limit value is 20. If you enter a limit value of more than 20, the Auto-Responder email notification includes up to 20 articles only.
6. On the Table Configuration form, click **Update**.

Include advanced contextual search results in Auto-Responder notifications

Use scripted extension points to include the advanced contextual search results in email notifications for content suggested by the Auto-Responder feature.

- Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see **Activate a plugin** and **Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions**.
- Set the application scope to Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results. For more information, see **Application picker**.

Role required: admin
The Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results plugin (com.snc.adv_cxs_results_email_script) installs the csm_AdvancedEmailSearchResults script, CSMAdvancedEmailSearchResults script include and CSMAdvancedEmailSearchResultsExtensionPoint extension points.

The csm_AdvancedEmailSearchResults script is preconfigured for the customer service portal and consumer service portal.

Using extension points makes it easier to integrate customizations without actually altering the base code. You can extend standard base functionality using customized scripts. For more information, see Using extension points to extend application functionality.

An implementation is available in the base system for scripted extension points. You can modify the data and add additional fields.

1. Navigate to System Extension Points > Scripted Extension Points.
2. In the API Name column, search for and click sn_adv_emailscript.CSMAdvancedEmailSearchResultsExtensionPoint.
3. On the Extension Point form, select a script include to use the CSMAdvancedEmailSearchResultsExtensionPoint extension points.
   - Modify the existing script by going to the Implementations related list and clicking CaseAutoresponder.
   - Create and register a custom script include.
     For more information, see Register a custom script include.
4. Modify the script to use the extension points available through the CSMAdvancedEmailSearchResults script include.
   You can create multiple implementations for each extension point and provide an order number for each implementation. The implementation that has the lowest order number is executed first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Implementation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Include a custom portal and search for knowledge articles from the knowledge base associated with the custom portal.</td>
<td>Modify the updateSearchRequestConfig extension point to include the custom portal for your tasks other than customer service cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Applies only to tasks other than customer service cases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter out the content by the duration of the last viewed content.</td>
<td>Modify the getViewedContent extension point by entering the last viewed content duration in days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: By default, any knowledge articles viewed in the last 30 days by the user are not included in the email notification.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Define the layout of the email notifications.</td>
<td>Modify the printSearchResults extension point to specify a custom layout for the Auto-Responder email notifications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. On the Extension Point form, click Update.

Enable text search recommendations in Auto-Responder notifications

Configure the Auto-Responder feature to send recommendations that match a text search of a case short description to resolve a customer service case when Predictive Intelligence results are insufficient or unavailable.

- Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see Activate a plugin and Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions.
• Set the application scope to Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results using the application picker. For more information, see Application picker.

Role required: admin

By default, the Auto-Responder feature is configured to send contextual search results based on Predictive Intelligence. Knowledge articles that have significant text similarity with the short description of a case are sent as Auto-Responder recommendations.

You can configure the Auto-Responder feature to send knowledge article recommendations that match a text search of the case short description when the recommendations sent through the Predictive Intelligence feature aren't sufficient or the feature is disabled.

1. In the navigation filter, enter sys_properties.list.
2. Search for the sn_adv_emailscript.textsearch.enable property.
3. In the Value field, enter true.
4. Click Update.

Include cases logged using specified communication channels in Auto-Responder notifications

Send Auto-Responder email notifications for customer service cases logged using a communication channel.

• Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see Activate a plugin and Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions.
• Set the application scope to Customer Service using the application picker. For more information, see Application picker.
• Ensure that the required channel is already set up for use. For more information, see Configure communication channels.

Role required: admin

By default, the Case auto-responder recommendations notification is configured to send Auto-Responder email notifications for customer service cases logged using emails. You can configure it to include other communication channels such as web, phone, chat, social, community, alert, and virtual agent.

1. Navigate to System Notification > Notifications.
2. Search for Case auto-responder recommendations.
3. In the Name column, click the Case auto-responder recommendations link.
4. In the Conditions field, click Add Filter Condition or Add "Or" Clause to set the filter condition for a communication channel.

   Note: The default filter condition is [Channel] [is] [Email] AND [Active] [is] [true].

For example, to send Auto-Responder notifications for customer service cases logged using a mobile phone in addition to email, you would click Add Filter Condition and create the condition [Channel] [is] [Phone] AND [Active] [is] [true].

Include knowledge articles from custom portals in Auto-Responder notifications

Configure the Auto-Responder feature to suggest knowledge articles from a custom portal.

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml). For more information, see Activate a plugin and Predictive Intelligence for CSM solution definitions.

Role required: admin
By default, the Auto-Responder feature is configured to suggest knowledge articles from customer service portal and consumer service portal. Use this procedure only when you have your own custom portal and don’t want to use the default customer service portal or consumer service portal.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Properties.
2. In the text box for the Custom portal URL containing the knowledge article parameter property (sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.customportal), enter your custom portal URL containing a knowledge article parameter such as sys_kb_id or kb_number.
   Example format: https://<instance-name>.service-now.com/csm?id=kb_article_view&sys_kb_id=<sys_kb_id>
3. Click Save.

After you configure the sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.customportal property, you must configure the Similar Knowledge Articles All similarity solution definition to use the knowledge base of the custom portal. For more information, see Train the similarity solution for finding Auto-Responder notification content.

Configure Auto-Responder for tasks other than cases

Configure the Auto-Responder feature to send helpful resources for tasks other than customer service cases.

- Activate the Email Notification Script for Contextual Search Results plugin (com.snc.adv_cxs_results_email_script). For more information, see Activate a plugin.
- Set the application scope to the scope of your task table using the application picker. For more information, see Application picker.
- Ensure that you have defined a search context for your task to include recommended resources in the Auto-Responder email notifications. For more information, see Define a search context.
- Ensure that you have configured a table for the search context associated with your task. For more information, see Configure table for a contextual search.

Role required: admin

1. Configure the Notification [sysevent_email_action] table for your task to use the csm_AdvancedEmailSearchResults script.
   a) Navigate to System Notification > Notifications.
   b) Select the Notification [sysevent_email_action] table for your task.
   c) In the What will it contain related list, enter ${mail_script:csm_AdvancedEmailSearchResults} in the Message HTML field.
   d) Optional: Ensure that notifications are not sent if there are no search results by entering the hasResults() function in the Advanced condition field of the When to send related list. The hasResults() function checks whether search results exist. You can use the return value of the function to prevent the system from sending an email notification if there are no search results. For more information, see Advanced conditions for email notifications.
   
   Tip: Refer to the Case auto-responder recommendations notification that uses the hasResults() function for returning the search results value. To view a notification, navigate to System Notification > Notifications.
   e) Click Update.

2. Map your task table configuration with the email notification for your task.
   a) Navigate to Contextual Search > Table Configuration.
   b) Click the task table configuration link in the Name column corresponding to the row containing the search context for your task.
c) In the Email Configurations related list, link your task table configuration with the Notification [sysevent_email_action] table.
   • To create another email configuration for a user field, click New.
   • To edit an existing email configuration, click the preview email configuration for email notification icon and then in the Email Configuration window, click Open Record.

d) On the Email Configuration form, verify the default field values for your task, or fill in the values for a custom configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Email Configuration form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) Update or submit the Email Configuration form.
   • For a new configuration, click Submit.
   • For an existing configuration, click Update.

3. Optional: Enable contextual search results based on text searches in addition to search results based on Predictive Intelligence to be included in Auto-Responder notifications.
   For more information, see Enable text search recommendations in Auto-Responder notifications.

4. Optional: Configure a custom portal and include advanced contextual search results in email notifications.
   For more information, see Include advanced contextual search results in Auto-Responder notifications.

Configure Customer Service Analytics and Reporting Solutions

Enable Customer Service Performance Analytics Analytics and Reporting Solutions to view preconfigured dashboards with actionable data visualizations to improve your business processes.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Performance Analytics > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Customer Service category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.
Performance Analytics for z configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Performance Analytics for Customer Service Management</td>
<td>Activate the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service (com.snc.pa.customer_service) plugin to add Performance Analytics configuration records to your instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Indicator Sources</td>
<td>Review the provided indicator sources to ensure they match your Customer Service application table structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Indicators</td>
<td>Review the provided indicators to ensure that the metrics you want to measure are tracked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Breakdown Sources</td>
<td>Review the provided breakdown sources to ensure they match your table structure and include the elements you want.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Breakdowns</td>
<td>Review breakdowns to ensure that you can filter scores by the appropriate elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collect Data</td>
<td>Run historical data collection once to collect scores on existing data, and enable scheduled data collection to begin collecting scores on new data automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Analytics Hub</td>
<td>View the Analytics Hub for indicators that you collected data for to begin exploring your scores.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Dashboards</td>
<td>View the provided dashboards to get an overview of your scores and view multiple metrics in a single location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click **Configure**.  
   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

Configure the Performance Analytics components for the Outsourced Customer Service dashboard

Run diagnostics, review and customize components, and start collecting data.

A Now Platform administrator must have installed the content pack plugins or ServiceNow Store application for this Analytics and Reporting Solution.

Role required: **pa_admin**

1. Run all diagnostics on all records, as described in .  
   These diagnostics can catch many mismatches between the configuration of your Analytics and Reporting Solutions and your tables.

2. Navigate to **Performance Analytics > Administration Console**.

3. Click the **Dashboards** link in the **Explore and Manage** tile.

4. Verify the names of the dashboards that have been installed with this Analytics and Reporting Solution

5. Open the **Indicator Sources** tab.

6. For each dashboard included in this Analytics and Reporting Solution:  
   a) Filter the indicator sources on the dashboard name.
This screenshot shows the indicator sources filtered on the Outsourced Service Provider dashboard from the Self-Service Analytics for CSM Analytics and Reporting.
b) Review the facts table, conditions, and frequency of the indicator sources compared to the data structure on your own instance.

c) If necessary, open an indicator source and make corrections.

d) If you are editing an indicator source record, go to the Indicators related list and review the **Conditions** field for each indicator.

Changing the indicator source can also affect the additional conditions on the individual indicators.

7. If you changed the time field stamps in any indicator sources, also change any related Performance Analytics scripts.

For more information, see .

8. Open the Breakdown Sources tab.

9. For each dashboard included in this Analytics and Reporting Solution:
   a) Filter the breakdown sources on the dashboard name.
   b) Review the conditions on the breakdown source as described in .

10. Navigate to **Performance Analytics > Jobs**.

11. Set up and run the historical job for this Analytics and Reporting Solution, <name of historical job>.

    Follow the procedure in

12. Edit and activate the scheduled data collection job for this Analytics and Reporting Solution, <name of scheduled job>.

    Follow the procedure in .

**Outsourced Customer Service dashboard**

The Outsourced Customer Service dashboard lets you see the number of SLAs breached, unassigned open and resolved cases, average resolution time taken to resolve cases and so on. Use the information on this dashboard to spot problem areas and plan your case management strategy going forward. You can select and view the dashboard by choosing the OSP name.
Dashboard of all Outsourced Service Providers
Dashboard with Outsourced Service Provider selected

End user and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External OSP Manager</td>
<td>sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal OSP Manager</td>
<td>sn_csm_ocs.manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indicators

**Outsource cases: Unassigned open cases**
Number of open cases that are unassigned to the OSP agents.

**Outsourced cases: open cases with breached SLAs**
Number of cases that have remained open past the time required by the Service Level Agreement (SLA).

**Outsource cases: open cases**
Number of cases that are in open state.

**Outsourced cases: Average overall CSAT**
Average customer satisfaction based on survey results. For more information about CSAT, see Customer service satisfaction surveys.

**Outsourced cases: Number of resolved cases**
Number of cases that the OSP agent has worked on and moved to resolved state.

**Outsourced cases: Summed duration of resolved cases**
The total time taken by the OSP agents to resolve the cases.

**Outsourced cases: Number of transferred cases**
Number of cases that are transferred to a ServiceNow internal agent when an OSP agent could not resolve the case.

Breakdowns

The Outsourced Service Provider dashboard uses the Case Assignment Group breakdown. Select one or more groups to view data for only those groups. By default, data from all groups is shown on the dashboard.

Reports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unassigned Open Cases</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>The number of cases that are in open state and is not yet assigned to an OSP agent. In this report, for example, there are 42 cases that are yet to be assigned. The OSP manager views the number of such cases at a glance and assigns them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active SLAs Breached</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>This report shows all breached SLAs that are still active In this report, for example, there are 42 such active SLAs. The OSP manager views the number of breached SLAs at a glance which helps in taking immediate action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure the Analytics and Reporting Solution for Self Service Analytics for Customer Service

Run diagnostics, review and customize components, and start collecting data.

A Now Platform administrator must have installed the content pack plugins or ServiceNow Store application for this Analytics and Reporting Solution.

Role required: pa_admin

1. Run all diagnostics on all records, as described in Performance Analytics diagnostics. These diagnostics can catch mismatches between the configuration of your Analytics and Reporting Solutions and your tables.

2. Navigate to Performance Analytics > Administration Console.

3. Click the Dashboards link in the Explore and Manage tile.

4. Verify the names of the dashboards that have been installed with the Self-Service Analytics Analytics and Reporting Solution.
   • Self-Service Analytics

5. Open the Indicator Sources tab.

6. For each dashboard included in this Analytics and Reporting Solution:
   a) Filter the indicator sources on the dashboard name.
b) Review the facts table, conditions, and frequency of the indicator sources compared to the data structure on your own instance.

**Important:** Pay particular attention to time stamp fields such as Resolved or Created that are referenced in the **Conditions** field. You may need to use different time stamp fields.

c) If necessary, open an indicator source and make corrections.

d) If you are editing an indicator source record, go to the Indicators related list and review the **Conditions** field for each indicator.

Changing the indicator source can also affect the additional conditions on the individual indicators.

7. If you changed the time field stamps in any indicator sources, also change any related Performance Analytics scripts.

   For more information, see *Update Performance Analytics scripts*.

8. Open the Breakdown Sources tab.

9. For each dashboard included in this Analytics and Reporting Solution:
   a) Filter the breakdown sources on the dashboard name.
b) Review the conditions on the breakdown source as described in Review the breakdown sources.


11. Set up and run the historical job for this Analytics and Reporting Solution, [SSA] Self-Service Analytics Data Collection.
    Follow the procedure in Run historical data collection for an Analytics and Reporting Solution

12. Edit and activate the scheduled data collection job for this Analytics and Reporting Solution, [SSA] Self-Service Analytics Data Collection.
    Follow the procedure in Schedule data collection for an Analytics and Reporting Solution.

Activate the Analytics and Reporting Solution for Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service

Activate the content pack plugins or ServiceNow Store application for the Analytics and Reporting Solution.

Activate the full, subscription version of Performance Analytics on the instance where you are activating this Analytics and Reporting Solution. You can activate Performance Analytics on a sub-production instance without purchasing a subscription. For more information, see Activate your Performance Analytics subscription.

**Note:** The data for the Communities and Virtual Agent tabs on the Self-Service Analytics dashboard are generated when the Communities plugin (com.sn_communities) and Glide Virtual Agent plugin (com.glide.cs.chatbot) are activated respectively.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
3. Install the application.

   When you install this application, you also activate the following plugins:
   - Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)
   - Self-Service Analytics PA (com.snc.pa.self_service_analytics)
   - Self-Service Analytics Core (com.snc.self-service_analytics_core)

Configure Chat Zoom Connector

Install and set up the Chat Zoom Connector application to interact with customers using Zoom meetings initiated from a chat.

This task provides general steps to set up the Chat Zoom Connector application for initiating Zoom meetings from a chat.

1. Integrate the Zoom account of your company with your ServiceNow instance using the Zoom spoke.
   For more information, see Set up Zoom the spoke.
2. Set up the Notify Zoom connector in Zoom for associating the Notify communication channel with Zoom meetings.
   The conference call details of the Zoom meetings are stored in the Notify Conference Calls [notify_conference_call] table. For more information, see Set up Notify Zoom connector.
3. Install the Chat Zoom Connector application.
   For more information, see Install a ServiceNow Store application.

**Note:** The Chat Zoom Connector application installs the CSMZoomInteractionImpl script include, which is preconfigured for the Customer Service application. It also installs the sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint extension point, which enables the copying of any...
Configure application-specific field values for Zoom interactions

Use scripted extension points to enable the copying of application-specific field values to interaction records for Zoom meetings initiated from chats.

Install the Chat Zoom Connector application. For more information, see Install a ServiceNow Store application.

Role required: admin

You can enable the copying of any application-specific fields from a parent chat interaction record to its Zoom interaction record by using the `sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint` extension point. The parent chat is the chat from which the Zoom meeting was initiated.

By using extension points, you can easily integrate customizations without having to alter the base code. You can extend standard base functionality using customized scripts. For more information, see Using extension points to extend application functionality.

An implementation is available in the base system for scripted extension points. You can modify the data and add additional fields.

1. Navigate to System Extension Points > Scripted Extension Points.
2. In the API Name column, search for and click `sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint`.
3. On the Extension Point form, select a script include to use the `sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint` extension point.
   - Create and register a custom script include.
     - For more information, see Register a custom script include.
   - Modify the existing script include by going to the Implementations related list and clicking a script include in the Class column. The script includes are displayed in the Class column.

   **Note:** By default, the `ZoomInteractionExtPoint` and `CSMZoomInteractionImpl` script includes that use the `sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint` extension point are available for Global and Chat Zoom Connector applications.
   - The `ZoomInteractionExtPoint` script include for the Global application copies the field values from the parent chat interaction record to the Zoom interaction record.
   - If the Customer Service application is installed, the `CSMZoomInteractionImpl` script include for the Chat Zoom Connector application copies the value of the Consumer, Account, and Contact fields from the interaction record of the parent chat to the Zoom interaction record. The `CSMZoomInteractionImpl` script include is available only when the Customer Service application is installed.

4. Include application-specific fields by adding the `sn_chat_zoom.ZoomInteractionExtPoint` extension point in the script include.
   - You can create multiple implementations for an extension point and provide an order number for each implementation. The implementation that has the lowest order number is executed first.
5. On the Extension Point form, click Update.

Activate the quick action for Zoom meetings

Activate the Zoom quick action to initiate Zoom meetings using the quick action from a chat.
Install the Chat Zoom Connector application. For more information, see Install a ServiceNow Store application.

Role required: admin

By default, the Zoom quick action is inactive. Activate this quick action to enable agents to initiate Zoom meetings from a chat.

1. Navigate to Quick Actions > Actions.
2. In the Name column, search for and select Zoom.
3. On the Quick Action form, select the Active check box.
4. Click Update.

By default, the Zoom quick action is associated with chats when the Chat Zoom Connector application is installed. In addition, if the Conversational SMS service channel application is installed, the quick action is also associated with SMS conversations. For more information, see Conversational SMS service channel and Quick actions in Workspace Agent Chat.

Administer Customer Service Management

Use a number of features and tools to administer the Customer Service Management application.

Anonymous chat

Consumers can chat with a consumer service agent without logging in to the Consumer Service Portal.

From the Consumer Service Portal, guest users can click the Live Chat link in the portal header to initiate a chat session with a consumer service agent. Clicking this link opens a form that requests some basic information, including the user's name, email address, and type of issue. Completing and submitting the form creates a chat request that is routed to the appropriate agent queue based on the selected issue type. Once the assigned agent accepts the request, a chat session is established. If necessary, the agent can create a consumer record or a case for the guest user, or transfer the chat to another agent.

Setting up anonymous chat

Setting up the anonymous chat feature involves the following steps.

2. Modify the default anonymous chat record producer or create a new record producer.
3. Create one matching rule for each agent queue.
4. Configure anonymous chat properties.
5. If necessary, modify the Connect actions to provide the desired functionality for consumer service agents in chat conversations. The anonymous chat feature includes these actions: Create Case for Guest and Create Consumer and Case for Guest. For more information, see Administer Connect Actions.

Anonymous chat plugins

The anonymous chat feature requires two plugins which are activated as part of the Consumer Service Portal plugin:

- Anonymous Connect Support (com.glide.connect.anonymous_support): enables the anonymous chat feature for Connect.
- Connect Support Routing (com.glide.connect.support.routing): routes Connect Support requests to the appropriate chat queue.
Anonymous chat record producer

The form used to request information from a guest user is a configurable record producer based on the Consumer Interaction table (sn_customerservice_customer_interaction), which is a new table in the Istanbul release. When a guest user submits the form, the information provided is stored as a record in the Customer Interaction table. This record is used for routing the chat request.

The default anonymous chat record producer, What can we help you with?, is located at Service Catalog > Catalog Definition > Record Producers. This is a public record producer. You can modify this record producer or create your own. If you choose to create your own, see Section 3 in the Making a record producer and catalog item public on a CMS page [KB0551300] article. You must also set the glide.sc.use_user_criteria property to false.

For more information, see Record Producer.

Anonymous chat routing

Information provided by the guest user assists with routing and also provides the context of the request to the consumer service agent. The chat request is routed to the appropriate agent queue based on the type of issue selected. The routing for anonymous chat requests uses matching rules. Create one matching rule for each queue and tie a chat request to a chat queue based on the selected issue type. Matching rules for anonymous chat are based on the Customer Interaction table.

The following matching rules are provided:

- Anonymous Connect - Billing Support
- Anonymous Connect - Order Support
- Anonymous Connect - Product Support

These rules are based on the selections in the Issue Type field on the default anonymous chat record producer.

Anonymous chat properties

There are two properties related to the anonymous chat feature. Set these properties to limit the number of chat requests created by guest users.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connect.support.max_guest_sessions_per_hour</td>
<td>Limit maximum number of guest conversations created in the last hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Collaborate &gt; Connect Support &gt; Support Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connect.support.guest_sessions_rate_limit_reached_message</td>
<td>Message shown to user when rate limit for guest conversations is breached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: Guest Chat is currently not available, please retry later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Collaborate &gt; Connect Support &gt; Support Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Modify the anonymous chat record producer

Modify the default anonymous chat record producer to gather the desired information from guest users.

Role required: admin

This record producer requests information from a guest user on the Consumer Service Portal and stores the information as a record in the Consumer Interaction table (sn_customerservice_customer_interaction). The record is then used for routing the chat request.

1. Navigate to Service Catalog > Catalog Definition > Record Producers.
2. Click What can we help you with?.
3. Modify the record producer as necessary, including the variables in the Variables related list.
   For more information, see Create a record producer.
4. Click Update.

Create a matching rule for anonymous chat

Create one matching rule for each agent queue.

Role required: admin

A chat request is tied to a chat queue based on the selected issue type.

1. Navigate to Routing and Assignment > Matching Rules.
2. Click New.
3. Enter a Name for the matching rule.
4. In the Table field, select Customer Interaction.
5. In the Conditions field, use the condition builder to create the following conditions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Select one of the categories created for anonymous users to define an issue on the record producer: • Product Issue • Billing Issue • Order Issue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click Submit.

Configure anonymous chat properties

Users with the system administrator role can set properties to limit the number of chat requests created by guest users.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Collaborate > Connect Support > Support Administration > Properties.
2. Set the following properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit maximum number of guest conversations created in the last hour.</td>
<td>Limits the number of guest chat requests that can be created in a one-hour timeframe. The default value is 200.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message shown to user when rate limit for guest conversations is breached.</td>
<td>The message that is displayed on the Consumer Service Portal when the limit on the number of guest chat requests has been reached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Click **Save**.

**Respond to an anonymous chat request**
Select a chat request from the chat queue and respond to a guest user's question or comment.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

1. Navigate to **Collaborate > Connect Chat**.
The Connect workspace opens in a new tab.

2. Click the support tab of the Connect sidebar, indicated by a headset icon.
The support tab displays **Queues** to which you belong. It also displays your open support conversations under **Cases**. When a consumer starts a support conversation or an agent transfers a conversation to a queue, any agent who belongs to the associated queue has the option to accept the conversation. An agent can also request to transfer a conversation directly to you.

3. Accept a conversation in one of the following ways.
   - Accept a conversation from a queue
   - Accept a transfer request

4. Respond to the guest user and help resolve the issue.
   By default, your messages are added to the conversation record as comments and are visible to the user.

If necessary, you can create a consumer record for a guest user and create a consumer service case from the conversation to track the issue. You can also transfer the conversation to a different agent or queue, or escalate the conversation to a higher priority queue. For more information, see **Connect Support**.

**Customer Service Management Flow Designer actions**
Use Flow Designer actions as building blocks to create Customer Service Management business processes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Get Case</td>
<td>Retrieve a case record using the case number. If multiple records are found, only the first record is returned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Case</td>
<td>Create a case using one or more attributes. This action mimics the structure of the Case table (sn_customerservice_case) and exposes all of the fields present on the Case table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Quick Case</td>
<td>Create a case using the customer, description, channel, priority, and category attributes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Task on Case</td>
<td>Create a case task and optionally associate it with a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Case</td>
<td>Update a case by providing the case reference and the fields that you want to update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Case</td>
<td>Assign a case using matching rules. To use this action, you must first define the matching rules that match cases with resources (assignment groups, agents).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate Case</td>
<td>Request case escalation. This action does not automatically approve escalation. Approval is based on the selected escalation template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate Account</td>
<td>Request account escalation. This action does not automatically approve escalation. Approval is based on the selected escalation template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Work Note to Task</td>
<td>Add a work note to a task or to task extended objects (for example, a case or case task).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Comment to Task</td>
<td>Add a comment to a task or to task extended objects (for example, a case or case task).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Domain separation in Customer Service Management**

This is an overview of domain separation and Customer Service Management. Domain separation enables you to separate data, processes, and administrative tasks into logical groupings called domains. You can then control several aspects of this separation, including which users can see and access data.

**Support level: Basic**

- Business logic: Ensure that data goes into the proper domain for the application’s service provider use cases.
- The application supports domain separation at run time. This includes domain separation from the user interface, cache keys, reporting, rollups, and aggregations.
- The owner of the instance must set up the application to function across multiple tenants.

Use case: When a service provider (SP) uses chat to respond to a tenant-customer’s message, the client must be able to see the SP's response.

**Overview**

Domain separation for Customer Service Management is designed for:

- **Customers using the application in a domain-separated environment or in a hybrid environment.** With domain separation, a customer can grant access to end users (contacts or consumers) to other entities in addition to customer service cases. For example, contacts or consumers can access problems, changes, or projects. System administrators can synchronize the CSM account model with the domain structure and maintain data separation for entities that do not have account-based data separation enabled.
- **Managed service providers (MSPs) using the application to provide customer support.** In this scenario, an MSP can provide support to multiple customers, where domains are necessary to contain all relevant customer data and processes. For example, an MSP providing support to customers related to billing questions, contract renewals, or other non-service operations.
- **Managed service providers offering the application as a service that customers can provide to their customers.** In this scenario, an MSP can offer Customer Service Management as a service to customers who, in turn, use the application to support their end customers. This scenario requires additional configuration due to domain support for some of the core entities in the platform such as Product Model.

**How domain separation works in Customer Service Management**

Domain separation for Customer Service Management aligns each customer account to one domain. To use domain separation with the application, all customer accounts must be assigned to a domain.

The customer account is the main entity within Customer Service Management. All entities related to the account, such as contacts and cases, are created in the same domain as the account. This rule also applies for all entities on customer service cases, including addresses, assets, and contacts.

When a new account is created, a domain of the same name is also created and assigned to the account. All related entities for an account, such as contacts and cases, must reside in the same domain. When a related entity for a domain separated account is created, the entity is assigned to the account domain.
Setting up domain separation for Customer Service Management

Domain separation for Customer Service Management requires the domain separation plugin. Contact ServiceNow to activate domain separation.

Domain separation for Customer Service Management also requires enabling the `csm_auto_account_domain_generation` property. This property is installed with Customer Service Management and is available only after the domain separation plugin is active. Contact ServiceNow to enable this property.

When the `csm_auto_account_domain_generation` property is enabled, the Customer Service Management application automatically creates a domain of the same name when a new account is created.

Note: Enabling the `csm_auto_account_domain_generation` property does not add domains for existing accounts. It only creates domains for newly created accounts. Adding domains for existing accounts requires a migration script.

Changes to Customer Service Management tables

Domain separation for Customer Service Management adds the **Domain** and **Domain Path** fields to the Account [customer_account] table. These fields are not exposed by default. Customers can customize lists and forms to view these fields.

Account domains and related entities

When creating related entities for an account, the domain for the related entities is set to the account domain. Related entities include:

- Contacts
- Cases
- Assets
- Contracts
- Entitlements
- Addresses
- Social profiles
- Escalations
- Sold Products
- Installed Products
- Install Base Items
- Affected Install Base Items
- Sold Product Covered

Changing the domain for an account also changes the domain for all the account’s related entities.

Domain visibility for customer service agents and managers

Users with the customer service agent (sn_customerservice_agent) and customer service manager (sn_customerservice_manager) roles must be manually assigned to the **TOP/MSP/Default** domain. Agents and managers cannot see case or account details until they are assigned to the **TOP** domain.
Domain separation for case and account escalation

Escalation template records and escalation severity records are domain separated. By default, these records reside in the global domain. Users can configure the Escalation Template and Escalation Severity forms to display the Domain field and set the domain as needed.

When an escalation record is created from a case or account, it is created in the account domain.

Domain separation and entity relationships

With domain separation in Customer Service Management, you can further control visibility and access to data by using contact, partner, and parent-child relationships.

Partner-customer account relationships

In partner-customer account relationships, the partner account can see data in the customer account’s domain. When setting up an account relationship, the domain visibility direction is From > To. The account in the From field contains the domain of the account in the To field.

When a partner admin creates a case for a customer account, the case is created in the customer account's domain so that all relevant parties can access the case.

In partner-customer account relationships where the customer account has child relationships, the partner admin can create a case for the customer account but not for the child accounts. The partner admin can only create cases for the account with which the relationship has been established.

Contact relationships

In contact relationships, the contact included in the relationship can see data for the specified account domain.

Parent-child relationships

The account hierarchy feature creates a parent-child relationship between accounts. This relationship is defined by selecting the parent in the Parent Account field on the Account form for the child account. Domain hierarchy is also achieved using the Parent Account field. In parent-child account relationships, parent domains can see data in child domains.

To provide access from the child account to the parent account, you need to set domain visibility. Navigate to the child account and set visibility in the Visibility Domains related list (sys_user_visibility) by connecting the user to the domain.

Extension points in Customer Service Management

Use extension points to call custom scripts in the Customer Service Management application.

To access the available extension points, type `sys_extension_point.list` in the application navigator and press Enter. Click the desired extension point to view the record details.

You can create multiple implementations for each extension point and provide an order number for each implementation. The implementation that has the lowest order number is the implementation that is executed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension point</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.CSMService</td>
<td>Defines the default value logic for case objects. Available with the Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice) plugin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ServiceNow Paris Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension point</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn_customerservice.CSMCaseSync                       | Use this extension point to customize the logic for parent-child case synchronization. This extension point can be used in one of two ways:  
  • Define the conditions for parent case records that can be considered for synchronization to child cases. The default functionality is based on the sn_customerservice.parent_child_case_sync system property. Customers can add additional conditions using this extension point.  
  • Customize the logic for parent-child case synchronization based on the state of the child case. By default, if the child case is in the Resolved, Closed, or Cancelled state, there is no sync from the parent case.  
  This extension point is used by the CSCaseSyncHelper script include.  
  Available with the Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice) plugin. |
| sn_majorissue_mgt.MajorCase                          | Available with the Major Issue Management (com.sn_majorissue_mgt) plugin.  |
| sn_action_status.NeedsAttentionAccessUtil            | Enables each application to choose the user roles that can enable and disable the Needs Attention field on a case form.  
  Available with the Customer Service Case Action Status plugin (com.snc.csm_action_status). |
| sn_cs_sm.CSMChangeIntegrations                       | Creates the logic for mapping the Change Request field on the case record.  
  Available with the Customer Service with Service Management (com.sn_cs_sm) plugin. |
| sn_cs_sm.CSMIncidentIntegrations                     | Creates the logic for mapping the Incident field on the case record.  
  Available with the Customer Service with Service Management (com.sn_cs_sm) plugin. |
| sn_cs_sm.CSMProblemIntegrations                      | Creates the logic for mapping the Problem field on the case record.  
  Available with the Customer Service with Service Management (com.sn_cs_sm) plugin. |
| sn_cs_sm_request.CSMRequestIntegrations              | Creates the logic for mapping the Request field on the case record.  
  Available with the Customer Service with Request Management (com.sn_cs_sm_request) plugin. |

Knowledge product entitlements

The Knowledge Product Entitlements application enables administrators to designate the knowledge bases and knowledge articles that customers can view from the Customer Service Portal.

Limit access on the Customer Service Portal to the following:
  • The knowledge bases and articles for the products that a customer's company has purchased.
• The knowledge bases and articles for which a customer's company has entitlements.

The Knowledge Product Entitlements plugin (com.snc.kb_product_entitlements) must be activated to use this application. Installing this plugin adds the Related Products field to the Knowledge Base form and to the Knowledge form. The knowledge information available on the customer portal is limited to the products selected in this field.

Additional controls are available by enabling properties that allow you to:
• Limit access to knowledge bases based on product entitlements.
• Enable access if no products are specified in the Related Products fields.

Add a related product to a knowledge base or knowledge article
Add a product to a knowledge base or knowledge article using the Related Products field on the corresponding form.

Role required: admin

Note: To access knowledge bases and articles associated with a product, a user must have read or contribute access and have the product included in the user's account as an asset. For more information about assets, see Configure assets.

1. Navigate to one of the following:
   • Knowledge > Administration > Knowledge Bases
   • Knowledge > Articles > All

2. Select the desired knowledge base or knowledge article.
3. Add one or more products in the Related Products field.
4. Click Update.

Set knowledge product entitlement properties
Set various properties to allow customers to access knowledge bases and knowledge articles on the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Knowledge Product Entitlements > Properties.
2. Set the following properties, as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable access control of Knowledge Bases based on product entitlements</td>
<td>If enabled, customers can access all of the knowledge bases related to the products for which they have entitlements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow access to Knowledge Bases with empty related_products</td>
<td>If enabled, customers can access all knowledge bases even if no products have been specified in the Related Products field on the Knowledge Base form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable access control of Knowledge Articles based on product entitlements</td>
<td>If enabled, customers can access all of the knowledge articles related to the products for which they have entitlements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allow access to Knowledge Articles with empty related_products</td>
<td>If enabled, customers can access all knowledge articles even if no products have been specified in the Related Products field on the Knowledge form.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Save.

Limit knowledge base access to internal users
Limit access to the information in a knowledge base to internal users.
Role required: admin

The articles in a knowledge base are available to both internal users, such as customer service agents, and to external users (customers and partners). If the articles in a knowledge base are intended for internal users only, the system administrator can restrict access by customizing the knowledge base form.

1. Navigate to Knowledge > Administration > Knowledge Bases.
2. Click the desired knowledge base.
3. Right-click the form header and select Configure > Related Lists.
4. Select Cannot Contribute from the Available column and move it to the Selected column.
5. Click Save.
6. On the selected knowledge base form, click the Cannot Contribute related list.
7. Click Edit.
8. Click All Customer Contacts in the left column and move it to the right column.
9. Click Save.

Quick start tests for Customer Service Management

Validate that the Customer Service Management application still works after you make any configuration change such as apply an upgrade or develop an application. Copy and customize these quick start tests to pass when using your instance-specific data.


CSM: Case Management test suite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Product Case</td>
<td>Create a case for a product.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Assign Case to an Agent</td>
<td>Create a case and assign it to a customer service agent.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Assign Asset on Case</td>
<td>Assign an asset to a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Assign Entitlement</td>
<td>Assign an entitlement to a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Escalate an Account</td>
<td>Escalate an account.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Escalate a Case</td>
<td>Escalate a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Outage from Case</td>
<td>Validate if newly created outage is linked to a case.</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Special Handling Notes</td>
<td>Create special handling notes for a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Close a Case</td>
<td>Close a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Time Recording</td>
<td>Record the time worked on a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Register New Case Type</td>
<td>Register a case type and verify the record is created.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Release version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Project Manager create Project for an Account</td>
<td>Project Manager creates project for an account.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Project Manager identify Project Contact</td>
<td>Project manager identifies customers to a project.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Project Manager create project task and assign to a customer</td>
<td>Project manager creates project task and assigns to a customer.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Case from Project</td>
<td>Create a case from project.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Case from Project Task</td>
<td>Create a case from project task.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Task from Case</td>
<td>Create task from case.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Agent Creating Request for Customer</td>
<td>As a customer service agent, create a request for a customer.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Agent Create Cases from a Project</td>
<td>As a customer service agent, create a case from a project.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Agent Create Cases from a Project task</td>
<td>As a customer service agent, create a case from a project task.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Agent Create Change Requests for a project</td>
<td>As a customer service agent, create a change request for a project.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create CHG from Case</td>
<td>Create a change record from a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Incident from Case</td>
<td>Create an incident record from a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Release version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Major Case and its Child Cases</td>
<td>Create a major case and the associated child cases for the customer accounts in the recipient list.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Major Issue Management.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Order Case</td>
<td>Create a case for an order.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Customer Service Management for Orders.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Order Case as Customer from CSM Portal</td>
<td>Create an order case as a customer from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Customer Service Portal. Also requires that the test be run as admin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Problem from Case</td>
<td>Create a problem record from a case.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Proactive Case by NOC Operator</td>
<td>Verify whether a proactive case is created.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Employee creating case OBO customer</td>
<td>As an employee with the proxy contact role (sn_customerservice_proxy_contact), create a case from the self-service portal on behalf of a customer.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Lookup Type Skill Determination Rule Test</td>
<td>Create a lookup type skill determination rule.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Skill Determination.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Release version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Manager creating request OBO customer from CSM portal</td>
<td>As a user with the case manager role, create a case on behalf of a customer from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Customer Service Request Integration.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Simple Type Skill Determination Rule Test</td>
<td>Create a simple type skill determination rule.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Skill Determination.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Advanced Type Skill Determination Rule Test</td>
<td>Create an advanced type skill determination rule.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Skill Determination.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Service Contracts covered under Sold Product</td>
<td>Create sold products and service contracts and associate service contracts to a sold product. Verify the association between the active contracts and the sold product.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Customer Service Install Base Management.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWA - Create New Service Channel</td>
<td>Create a new service channel in the Advanced Work Assignment application.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Advanced Work Assignment for CSM.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITAM - Create Service Model</td>
<td>Verify that you can create a service model, which is a type of product model.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITAM - Create Service Model copy</td>
<td>Verify that you can create a copy of a service model, which is a type of product model.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM-ITOM - Create Child Cases for Proactive Major Case</td>
<td>Create a child case for a proactive major case using recipient list.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Requires Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CSM: Case Types - Complaint

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a Complaint Case</td>
<td>Tests that a user can create a case that is of type complaint in the sn_complaint_case table.</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate a Complaint Case</td>
<td>Tests that a user can escalate a case that is of type complaint in the sn_complaint_case table.</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CSM: Case Types - Onboarding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create an Onboarding Case</td>
<td>Tests that a user can create a case that is of type onboarding in the sn_onboarding_case table.</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalate an Onboarding Case</td>
<td>Tests that a user can escalate a case that is of type onboarding in the sn_onboarding_case table.</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CSM: Operations Dashboard test suite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>awa_admin_operations_dashboard</td>
<td>Verify whether user with role awa_admin is able to view Advanced Work Assignment menu under Operations Dashboard and unassigned interactions and unassigned task work items modules.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awa_manager_operations_dashboard</td>
<td>Verify whether user with role awa_manager is able to view Advanced Work Assignment menu under Operations Dashboard and unassigned interactions and unassigned task work items modules.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CSM: Portal test suite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Product Case as Customer from CSM Portal</td>
<td>Create a product case as a customer from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Requires Customer Service Portal. Also requires that the test be run as admin.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Product Case as Partner from CSM Portal</td>
<td>Create a product case as a partner from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Customer Service Portal. Also requires that the test be run as admin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Search on Homepage</td>
<td>Search for information from the Customer Service Portal. The search includes cases, Knowledge articles, and Community threads.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Update Support Profile</td>
<td>Update a contact's profile from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Provide requested info on case</td>
<td>From the Customer Service Portal, the contact can provide information for a case that was requested by the agent.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Accept Proposed Solution On Case</td>
<td>Accept a proposed solution for a case from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Provide Feedback on Survey</td>
<td>Provide feedback on a survey after a case is closed from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - View All Desktop Notifications</td>
<td>View all Customer Service Management specific desktop notifications.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - View Publications on CSM Portal</td>
<td>View publications on Customer Service Management portal.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM - Create Contact on CSM Portal</td>
<td>Create contacts on Customer Service Management portal.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CSP: Portal test suite**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSP - Create Product Case as Consumer from CSP Portal</td>
<td>Create a product case as a consumer from the Consumer Service Portal.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Requires Consumer Service Portal. Also requires that the test be run as admin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSP - Search on Homepage</td>
<td>Search for information from the Consumer Service Portal. The search includes cases, Knowledge articles, and Community threads.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSP - Update Support Profile</td>
<td>Update a consumer's profile from the Consumer Service Portal.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Routing and assigning customer service cases

The case routing feature uses matching rules and assignment rules to identify customer service cases that meet certain conditions and then route those cases to customer service agents.

Create one or more matching rules that establish specific conditions that a case must meet before it can be routed to an agent. Then use an assignment rule to route those cases to agents based on product knowledge and availability. You can also invoke the MatchingRuleProcessor API to execute the matching rules and return a list of users (sys_ids).

Watch this five-minute video to learn about creating an assignment rule, the assignment workbench, and advanced work assignment.

Matching Rules

Matching rules are based on two defined sets of conditions, one that identifies specific case attributes and another that identifies the agent resources best suited to handle cases with these attributes. Matching rules are created using the Matching Rule form.

To identify case attributes, select a table that stores the task type (for example, the Case table) and then use a condition builder to create one or more conditions that a case must meet before being routed. For example, you can build conditions for a specific account and product or for a specific product and priority level.

To identify an agent resource, use one of the following resource matching methods:

- **Simple**: select the resource name from a list of users.
- **Advanced**: build conditions that filter the available agent resources. These conditions can be based on user role, agent group, specific skills, work load, or agent availability.
• **Scripted**: create a customized script to identify agent resources.

Another resource matching method, Selection Criteria, can be used to create a matching rule with selected matching criteria for use with the assignment workbench.

## Assignment Rules

Use assignment rules to automatically assign task to users and groups. Create an assignment rule for a matching rule by clicking the **Create assignment rule** related link on the Matching Rule form. When the matching rule conditions are met, a case can be routed to a user or a group using the assignment rule. The assignment rule is applied only if the task is not already assigned to another user or group.

**Note:** Matching rules and assignment rules are independent records with no synchronization. If you make a change in the **Applies to** component of the matching rule, it is not reflected in the assignment rule.

When you create an assignment rule, you select the following:

- The table for the task type and the conditions that must be met before the task is assigned.
- The user or the group to which the task is assigned.

Alternately, you can create a script to further customize the assignment rule.

**Invoke the MatchingRuleProcessor API**

After you create one or more matching rules, you can invoke the MatchingRuleProcessor API and run the rules.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

The matching engine can be invoked using the `processAndGetCandidates` method of the `matchingRuleProcessor` class. Pass in the task record and the number of resources. The result is an array of resource `sys_ids`.

The matching rules are processed based on the number stored in the **Execution Order** field for each rule.

The result is a list of users (sys_ids), which you can use for case routing and assignment.

**Reverse matching**

Reverse matching uses the same matching rules to match tasks to a resource rather than resources to a task.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

The resource matching engine can match resources and tasks in two ways:

- **Forward**: matches resources for a task
- **Reverse**: matches tasks for a resource

The same matching rule can be used for both forward and reverse matching. In the customer service application, you can use reverse matching to determine which call the next available agent should take. Reverse matching returns a list of case `sys_ids` instead of user `sys_ids`. When using reverse matching, you can also limit the cases returned to a specific set.

The following example shows how to use reverse matching.

```java
MatchingRuleProcessor.processAndGetCandidates(resource, taskLimit, "sn_customerservice_case", "reverse", false, [array of cases to consider])
```

Limit the number of task `sys_ids` returned for reverse matching rules

Reverse matching rules return a list of case `sys_ids`. Limit the number of cases returned by configuring the number in the `reverse.matchingrule.entity.limit` system property.
Role required: admin

1. In the navigation filter, type `sys_properties.list`.
2. Search for the `reverse.matchingrule.entity.limit` system property.
3. In the number field, change the number of cases returned. The default number is 30.

If the number of cases returned is more than the value listed in the system property, the reverse matching rule does not run for Scripted and Selection Criteria matching rules.

**Assignment workbench overview**

The assignment workbench enables customer service managers to assign tasks to agents efficiently and intelligently. The workbench uses configurable criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate the agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking. Managers can view these results and click one button to assign a task.

The assignment workbench displays all the relevant information for task assignment, including:

- A list of the agents in the task assignment group.
- The matching criteria used to evaluate the agents.
- An overall ranking for each agent in the assignment group.
- A filter with the current assignment group and the skills identified for the task, including any mandatory skills.
### Case - CS0000000 Urgent issue, need help ...

**Suggested Team Members**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Matching Skills</th>
<th>Availability Today</th>
<th>Assigned Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bae Kim</td>
<td>4 / 5</td>
<td>5 hours</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Brandon Beckman</td>
<td>4 / 5</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Baker Hughes</td>
<td>4 / 5</td>
<td>0 hours</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Brian Samuel</td>
<td>4 / 5</td>
<td>0 hours</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Filter**

- **Group**
  - Network Support

- **Skills**
  - Power cabling
  - Network Support

**Mandatory Skills Added**

- Performance Specialist
- Network Installer
- Router Setup
Agents are ranked from 1 to any number based on the criteria configured for the workbench. The more criteria that matches, the higher an agent’s rank. When the criteria for two agents is the same, the agents have the same rank. Point to an agent's rank to display the details.

Use the filter to change the assignment group and to add or remove skills. Changes to the assignment group or to the skills lists are reflected immediately in the workbench:

- Changing the assignment group displays a different list of agents.
- Adding or removing skills can change the agent ranking.

If you are using the mandatory skills feature, the agents displayed in the assignment workbench are filtered by the skills in the Mandatory Skills Added list and then ranked by the other matching criteria.

**Note:** Agents cannot add or remove mandatory skills or make a skill not mandatory.

### Configuring the assignment workbench

The assignment workbench configuration is stored in a matching rule that is based on the Selection criteria matching type. The default configuration uses the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule, which includes three of the four default matching criteria:

- Availability Today
- Matching Skills
- Assigned Cases

Based on these matching criteria, the workbench calculates and displays an overall rank for each agent in the group. You can modify or create matching criteria and the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule as needed or you can create your own configuration following these steps:

1. Create one or more matching criteria.
2. Create a matching rule with the Selection criteria matching type.
3. Open the matching rule and add the desired matching criteria.

If you are using mandatory skills, you must replace the Matching Skills criterion in this matching rule with the Matching Skills - Mandatory Skills Support criterion to match agents with mandatory skills required for a case.

### Using the assignment workbench

Access the assignment workbench by clicking the Find Agents icon (🔍) next to the Assigned to field on the task form.

**Note:** The state of the current record determines the availability of the Find Agents icon. The icon is available for records in the Open, Awaiting, and Cancelled states, and if the user has write access for the Assigned to field. The icon is not available for records in the New or Closed states or when the Assigned to field is read-only for the current user.

Sort the list of agents by any of the matching criteria by clicking the desired column header, which reorders the suggested agents based on the selected criteria.

Select a different assignment group from the Group list in the filter. The list of agents is updated based on the selection. If the selected group does not contain any agents, a message is displayed to select another group.

Add or remove skills from the Skills list in the filter. These selections are reflected in the Matching Skills column.
Skills that have been identified as mandatory for a task are displayed in the **Mandatory Skills Added** list. These selections are also reflected in the **Matching Skills** column. You cannot add or remove skills from this list.

Select an agent and click **Assign** to assign the task. The workbench closes and returns to the Case form. The **Assigned to** field is updated with the selected agent. Click **Save** on Case form to save this assignment.

**Plugins**

The Assignment Workbench plugin (com.snc.assignment_workbench) is activated as part of Customer Service Management.

The Case Assignment Workbench Demo plugin (com.snc.case_assignment_workbench_demo) provides demo data for the workbench.

**Tables**

Assignment Workbench adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matching Criteria</td>
<td>Stores the matching criteria that can be used to create a configuration for the assignment workbench.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[matching_dimension]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Criteria</td>
<td>Stores the matching criteria for an assignment workbench configuration matching rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[matching_dimension_for_assignment]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matching Rule</td>
<td>Stores matching rules, including the matching rules that configurations for the assignment workbench.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[matching_rule]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**User Roles**

Assignment Workbench adds the following roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignment workbench</td>
<td>Provides access to the assignment workbench for customer service agents and consumer service agents.</td>
<td>• skill_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[assignment_workbench]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties**

Assignment Workbench adds the following properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assignment_workbench.find.agents.title</td>
<td>Title for the macro button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type</strong>: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Default value</strong>: Find Agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Location</strong>: Routing and Assignment &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assignment_workbench.new.window</td>
<td>When enabled, opens the assignment workbench in a new window. [Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assignment_workbench_no_of_agents</td>
<td>Number of agents per page. (To get better performance, do not use more than 50 agents per page.) [Type: choice list] [Default value: 30] [Location: Routing and Assignment &gt; Properties]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Matching criteria for case assignment**

The assignment workbench uses configurable matching criteria, such as skills and availability, to evaluate the agents in a selected group and provide an overall ranking.

There are three types of matching criteria:

- **Simple Match**: creates one-to-one matching, such as matching the time zone of an agent with the time zone of a task location.

- **Aggregate**: uses a simple query and returns an aggregate result. For an aggregate type, select a table and create a filter, and then select an aggregate field such as the **Assigned to** field. This type of query returns a set of users.

- **Scripted**: uses a scripted query which returns a list of users.

Several matching criteria are provided with the assignment workbench:

- **Availability Today**: Availability is calculated based on the agent's work schedule, assigned work, and personal time off. The more availability an agent has, the higher the contribution to the agent's overall rank.

- **Matching Skills**: The number of agent skills that match the skills required for the case. The more skills that match, the higher the contribution to the agent's overall rank.

- **Matching Skills - Mandatory Skills Support**: Calculates the number of agent skills that match the mandatory skills. It does this by filtering out all agents who do not have the mandatory skills and ranks the remaining agents. The more skills that match, the higher the contribution to the agent's overall rank.

  **Note**: If using the mandatory skills feature, use the **Matching Skills - Mandatory Skills Support** criterion to match agents with the **mandatory skills** identified for a case.

- **Assigned Cases**: The number of cases already assigned to this agent. The more cases assigned, the lower the contribution to the agent's overall rank.

- **Last Assigned**: For the sake of balancing assigned work, prioritized the agent based on the last assigned work.

To create matching criteria, select the type and use the fields related to that type to build the query. After creating matching criteria, you can create a configuration for the assignment workbench by creating a matching rule of the type **Selection criteria** and selecting the desired matching criteria.

As part of selecting the matching criteria for the workbench configuration, you can specify the following settings for each individual criterion:

- ranking and display usage
- ranking method
- ranking weight
- threshold
• active/inactive

Ranking and display usage

In the Use for field, specify how you want that matching criterion to be used:
• Ranking and display: uses the criterion to determine agent ranking and displays it in a column on the workbench.
• Display only: displays the criterion in a column on the workbench but does not use it to determine agent ranking.
• Ranking only: uses the criterion to determine agent ranking but does not display it on the workbench.

Ranking method

There are two ranking methods:
• More is better: for example, more availability is better when determining the agent ranking.
• Less is better: for example, fewer assigned cases are better when determining agent ranking.

Weight

Each matching criterion has an assigned weight. By default, the matching criteria in the Recommendation for Case Assignment matching rule have an assigned weight of 10. You can assign a higher weight to the criteria that are more important.

Threshold

A threshold sets a minimum requirement for a criterion. For example, set the threshold of the Matching Skills criterion to 3 if you want to see only those agents who have at least three of the required skills for a task. For availability, set the threshold to the desired number of hours to display only those agents who have that minimum number of work hours available. You can set the threshold in the Select Criteria related list on the Matching Rule form. If necessary, personalize the list and add the Threshold column.

Active/Inactive

There can be several matching criteria associated with the matching rule that determines the assignment workbench configuration. Each individual criterion can be set to active or inactive. Changing this setting has an immediate impact on the agent ranking. You can make this change in the Select Criteria related list on the Matching Rule form. If necessary, personalize the list and add the Active column.

Calculating the agent ranking

The assignment workbench adds the values of the matching criteria and their respective weights and uses these values to determine the overall agent ranking.
1. Calculate a number for each criterion.
2. Multiply that number by the criterion weight.
3. Divide the result by the total of all criterion.
4. Repeat for each criterion and add the results.
The following example shows how the ranking is determined for an agent with these matching criteria values:

- **Matching Skills with Mandatory Skills Support**: 5/6
- **Availability Today**: 7 hours
- **Assigned Cases**: 2

Calculations:

- **Matching Skills**: \( \frac{2}{3} = 0.666 \) (with 3 being the maximum number of skills)
- **Availability Today**: \( \frac{7}{8} = 0.875 \) (with 8 being the maximum number of hours)
- **Assigned Cases**: \( \frac{2}{26} = 0.0769 \) (with 26 being the total number of tasks in the table)
- **Weight**: each matching criteria has an equal weight of 10

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Total Calculation} &= \left( \frac{0.666 \times 10}{10+10+10} \right) + \left( \frac{0.875 \times 10}{10+10+10} \right) + \left( \frac{0.0769 \times 10}{10+10+10} \right) \\
&= \left( \frac{6.66}{30} \right) + \left( \frac{8.75}{30} \right) + \left( \frac{0.769}{30} \right) \\
&= 0.222 + 0.291 + 0.0256 = 0.53 
\end{align*}
\]

This calculation is performed for each agent in the assignment group. Agents are ranked based on the value of this calculation, with the highest number earning the highest ranking.

**Matching rules for case assignment**

Use a matching rule to create a configuration for the assignment workbench.

The assignment workbench configuration is stored in a matching rule that is based on the Selection criteria matching type.

The default configuration uses the **Recommendation for Case Assignment** matching rule, which uses three of the four default matching criteria:

- **Availability Today**
- **Matching Skills**
- **Assigned Cases**

**Note:** If using the mandatory skills feature, use the **Matching Skills - Mandatory Skills Support** criterion to match agents with the mandatory skills identified for a case.

You can customize this matching rule to meet your specific need for calculating agent recommendations. This matching rule can also be used for auto assignment if you create an assignment rule.

**Special handling notes overview**

Use the Special Handling Notes application to create notes that bring important information about individual records to the user's attention.

Create special handling notes for specific records or for a set of records that meet one or more conditions. You can also configure the Special Handling Notes application to display any special handling notes from related records, such as the account or the product associated with a customer service case.

Users with the sn_shn.admin role can configure the desired entity tables to use special handling notes and then configure the corresponding forms to display either the list or pop-up window. Users with the sn_shn.admin role can create, view, update, and delete notes. Users with the sn_shn.editor role can view and update notes and users with the sn_shn.user role can view notes.
Once created, special handling notes can be displayed in different ways: in an embedded list or a related list on a record form or in a pop-up window that displays when you access a form.

In addition to a message, a special handling note also has a status, an assigned priority, and an expiration date. The status of a note can be one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Active | The note is active.  
Active notes appear on the Special Handling Notes list or pop-up window.  
Active notes remain on the list until they are set to Inactive or Expired.  
Active notes remain on the pop-up window until dismissed or until they are set to Inactive or Expired. |
| Inactive | The note is no longer active.  
Users with the sn_shn.admin or sn_shn.editor role can set a note to Inactive if the information in the note is no longer useful. When a note is set to Inactive, it is removed from the Special Handling Notes list or pop-up window.  
Inactive notes can be viewed by navigating to Special Handling Notes > Special Handling Notes. |
| Expired | The note has reached it's expiration date or it has been expired manually.  
If a note is expired, the form becomes read-only for all user roles other than the system administrator.  
A note is expired automatically by a scheduled job when it reaches it's expiration date. The scheduled job also sets any inactive notes to expired if the inactive notes have reached their expiration date. |

When creating a special handling note, you can make it effective right away or you can select a date when it becomes effective. You can also select an expiration date.

A note can be assigned one of the following priorities:

- 1 - Critical (red)
- 2 - High (orange)
- 3 - Moderate (light green)
- 4 - Low (light blue)

The associated priority color is displayed as a colored bar to the left of the note in the pop-up window and as a colored circle to the left of the priority field in the embedded list.

Special handling notes list

Special handling notes can be displayed on a form in an embedded or related list. Users with the sn_shn.admin role can configure a form to display the Special Handling Notes list. This list appears on a form when there are one or more active notes for a record. The Special Handling Notes list displays the following information for a note:

- Message
- Expiration date
- Priority
- Table

Special handling notes are displayed on the list unless you configure additional properties to display notes in a pop-up window.
Special handling notes pop-up window

Special handling notes can be displayed on a form in a pop-up window. Users with the sn_shn.admin role can configure a form to display the Special Handling Notes pop-up window. This window appears when you access a record that has one or more active notes. The pop-up window displays the following information for each note:

- Message
- Priority

To dismiss a note, click OK. Once you dismiss a note, it no longer appears in the pop-up window. To close the Special Handling Notes pop-up window, click X.

To display special handling notes in a pop-up window, navigate to Special Handling Notes > Properties and set the related properties.

Expiring special handling notes

The Deactivate Special Handling Notes scheduled job, which runs daily at midnight, checks the dates in the Effective on and Expires on fields for each note.

- If a special handling note has reached its Effective on date, the scheduled job sets the status of the note to Active.
- If a special handling note has reached its Expires on date, the scheduled job sets the status of the note to Expired.

Case and account escalation overview

Use the escalation feature to highlight specific cases or accounts and raise awareness of important customer issues. Escalating cases or accounts facilitates communication about an issue and enables users to track progress toward a resolution. An escalation provides increased attention to a customer issue and provides a way to track the progress made in resolving the issue. Escalation is an internal process that is not exposed to customers.

Users with the escalation requester role can escalate cases or accounts on behalf of customers or for internal purposes. The escalation process can include an optional approval step where approvers review the request and either approve or reject the escalation.

When an escalation is approved, an escalation record is created and is associated with the case or account. Agents and escalation managers can manage the case or account through the escalation process using the escalation record. Escalated cases and accounts are identified on lists and forms with color indicators that correspond to the escalation severity.

Users with the de-escalation requester role can de-escalate cases or accounts when the cause of the escalation is resolved.

While the escalation process is similar for cases and accounts, there are some important differences to note between case escalations and account escalations. A customer service agent typically manages a case escalation and works directly with the escalated case to resolve the issue. An escalation manager typically manages an account escalation, which can include multiple associated cases, and records details in the escalation record. See Case and account escalation differences for more information.

Case and account escalation differences

An overview of the differences between case escalations and account escalations.

- **Case escalations**: A customer service agent typically manages a case escalation and performs most of the problem resolution work, which is recorded in the case record. For case escalations, the escalation record is used primarily for status reporting purposes. The escalation SLA is also associated with the case record rather than the escalation record because that is where the agent provides regular updates.

- **Account escalations**: An account escalation manager typically manages an account escalation because it is associated with multiple underlying cases. An account manager works with multiple case owners to resolve the
customer escalation and uses the escalation record to consolidate the status of the associated cases and provide regular updates. Therefore, the SLA is associated with the escalation record.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Case Escalation</th>
<th>Account Escalation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relationships</td>
<td>Corresponds one-to-one to a case.</td>
<td>Corresponds one-to-one to an account. Users can link specific cases to the escalation record to indicate which cases are causing the escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Templates</td>
<td>Uses case escalation templates.</td>
<td>Uses account escalation templates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval workflow</td>
<td>Includes an option to automatically add the manager of the case assignment group to the approver list when using the default approval workflow.</td>
<td>Does not include an option to automatically add the manager of the case assignment group to the approver list because an account escalation can be associated with multiple cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation assignment</td>
<td>Does not include a separate assignment. A case escalation corresponds to an individual case and the customer service agent manages the escalation.</td>
<td>Includes a separate assignment. An account escalation can have multiple associated cases that are assigned to different agents so the escalation record includes an <strong>Assigned to</strong> field. An account escalation is typically assigned to an escalation manager because account escalations are typically more serious than case escalations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch list</td>
<td>Does not include an option to automatically add an account team to the escalation watch list.</td>
<td>Includes an option to automatically add an account team to the escalation watch list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation updates added to case</td>
<td>Updates to the escalation record are also added to the <strong>Work notes</strong> field on the corresponding case record.</td>
<td>Updates to the escalation record are not added to the account record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLAs</td>
<td>The case escalation SLAs provided with the escalation feature are attached to the case.</td>
<td>The account escalation SLAs provided with the escalation feature are attached to the account.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Case and account escalation process**

The case and account escalation process follows several steps from request to completion.

1. A user with the escalation requester role requests an escalation for a case or account. As part of the request, the user provides the following information:
   - The reason for the request
   - Justification for the escalation
   - The **escalation severity**
   - The **escalation template**
   - The watch list for the escalation

2. If approval is required, the approval workflow or approvers identified in the escalation template review the request and accept or reject the escalation.

3. Following approval, the agent manages the escalation as it progresses using the **escalation form**. For example, the agent can add users to the watch list and update the escalation trend.
Note: Updates to the escalation form send email notifications to the current user and to users on the watch list.

4. When the issue has been resolved, a user with the de-escalation requester role can de-escalate a case or an account.

**Case and account escalation components**
The roles, modules, and tables installed with the case and account escalation feature.

**Roles**
Roles included with the case and account escalation feature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Escalation requester</td>
<td>Can request an escalation for a case or account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sn_customerservice.escalation_requester)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De-escalation requester</td>
<td>Can de-escalate a case or account. This role contains the sn_customerservice.escalation_requester role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Escalation modules**
The case and account escalation feature adds the Escalations module to the Customer Service menu:

- **All**: lists all escalation records for cases and accounts.
- **Escalation Templates**: lists the case and account escalation templates.
- **Escalation Severity**: lists the types of escalation severity.

This feature also adds a list of escalated cases to the Customer Service menu: **Customer Service > Cases > Escalated**

**Tables**
Tables included with the case and account escalation feature:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Templates</td>
<td>Stores escalation template records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_escalation_template]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalations</td>
<td>Stores records created for escalated cases and accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_escalation]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Severities</td>
<td>Stores escalation severity definition records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_escalation_severity]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Case and account escalation form**
Customer service agents use the Escalation form to manage escalations for cases and accounts.
The Escalation form includes information about the escalation, such as the associated case or account, and the reason and justification for the escalation. It also includes information about the escalation as it progresses, including the trend and notes about the work being done to resolve the issue.

An escalation record can contain one or more associated cases. When updating escalation records, customer service agents can enter comments or work notes. For case escalations, updates are replicated to the case activity history as work notes so they are not visible to the customer.

The Escalation form has a Related Cases related list that includes the related cases for account escalations. The user can associate specific cases using this related list to indicate which cases are causing the escalation. The Escalation form also includes has Task SLAs and Approvers related lists.

### Escalation form fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The number automatically assigned to the escalation request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Record</td>
<td>The case or account for which escalation is requested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
<td>The current state of the escalation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Requested</strong>: an agent with the escalation requester role has requested an escalation for the case or account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Escalated</strong>: the escalation request has been approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Declined</strong>: the escalation request has been not been approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Closed</strong>: the reason for the escalation has been resolved and the escalation has been closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>De-escalation Requested</strong>: an agent with the de-escalation requester role has requested that an escalation request be removed from the case or account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request Source</td>
<td>The source of the case escalation request:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Customer requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Internally requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>The reason for requesting the case escalation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Inactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lack of Progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Customer Imposed Deadline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch List</td>
<td>The watch list for this particular escalation record. For account escalations, you can Add account team members to watch list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Users added to the watch list for a case, account, or escalation record receive email notification when the case or account has been escalated and when updates are made to the escalation record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment group</td>
<td>For account escalations, the assignment group for this account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>For account escalations, the customer service agent assigned to this account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request By</td>
<td>The user who requested the escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved By</td>
<td>If approved, the user who approved the escalation request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declined By</td>
<td>If declined, the user who declined the escalation request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De-escalated By</td>
<td>The user who de-escalated the case or account escalation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Type</td>
<td>The escalation type selected by the user who requested the escalation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Escalation Severity | The escalation severity associated with this escalation, which defines the severity level for the escalation and the color used to highlight the escalated record in the user interface.  
  - **High Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in red.  
  - **Medium Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in orange. |
| Escalation Trend     | The current state of the escalation:                                       |
|                     |   - **Improving**                                                           |
|                     |   - **Same**                                                                |
|                     |   - **Declining**                                                           |
| Escalation Justification | Additional information that explains why this escalation is needed.           |

**Administering case and account escalation**

The system administrator creates escalation templates and escalation severity definitions that control the escalation process.

**Escalation templates**

An escalation template determines how an escalation request is processed. The escalation feature provides two standard escalation templates, one for case escalation and one for account escalation. If needed, the system administrator can modify these templates or create new templates.

An escalation template defines the following information:

- The type of escalation (case or account)
- If approval is required
  - If no, the escalation request is automatically approved.
  - If yes, provide the approver list required by the default approval workflow or provide a different approval workflow.
- The escalation watch list. Users added to the watch list receive email notifications when an escalation record is updated.
**Escalation severity**

An escalation severity record defines the severity level for the escalation and the color that is used to highlight the escalated case or account record in the user interface. This assigned severity allows agents to easily identify escalated cases and accounts on lists and forms. The escalation feature provides two escalation severity definitions:

- **High Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in red.
- **Medium Severity**: escalated records are highlighted in orange.

The user interface determines which fields are highlighted for escalated cases and accounts:

- **CSM Agent Workspace**: Field indicators and field highlights appear on the **Short description** field for escalated cases and on the **Name** field for escalated accounts.

  **Note**: You can move indicators and highlights to any field that is not a hyperlinked field.

- **Platform interface**: Escalated case and account numbers are indicated with a colored dot on a list and a colored background on a form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Short description</th>
<th>Action status</th>
<th>Contact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS0009003</td>
<td>I have a pending change request</td>
<td><strong>Blocked internally</strong></td>
<td>Amy Chen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0002010</td>
<td>Router crashed during firmware upgr...</td>
<td></td>
<td>Amy Chen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0002006</td>
<td>Request for router upgrade on iXQ000</td>
<td></td>
<td>Andrew Chen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0002005</td>
<td>Router upgrade did not happen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Andrew Chen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0002002</td>
<td>Upgrade router to latest firmware</td>
<td></td>
<td>Andrew Chen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0001404</td>
<td>Email Server is down</td>
<td></td>
<td>George Warren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS0001403</td>
<td>server outage issue</td>
<td></td>
<td>George Warren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CSM Agent Workspace case list with escalated cases**

In addition to defining the field indicator and field highlight of an escalated case or account, the severity can be used when configuring SLAs. To configure additional escalation severity definitions, the system administrator must configure a new style with the desired color. For more information, see **Highlight list fields**.
Escalation SLAs

Escalation SLAs are typically used to govern the frequency of updates required for different types and severities of escalations. An escalation SLA is associated with an escalation severity in the SLA definition. When a user creates an escalation request, the selection in the Escalation Severity field determines the SLA for the escalation record.

The escalation feature provides the following case escalation SLAs. On case escalations, because the escalation corresponds one-to-one with a case, the default SLAs are associated with the case:

- Escalated case response - 4 hours: de-escalate the case within four hours.
- Escalated case response - 8 hours: de-escalate the case within eight hours.

The escalation feature provides the following account escalation SLAs. On account escalations, because the escalation corresponds to an account which typically does not support SLAs, the SLAs are associated with the escalation.

- Escalated account response - 4 hours: de-escalate the account within four hours.
- Escalated account response - 8 hours: de-escalate the account within eight hours.

The system administrator can configure case and account escalation SLAs that are based on escalation attributes such as the escalation type, severity, and trend.

You can find escalation SLAs in these locations:

- For account records, on the Escalation form in the Task SLAs related list.
- For case records, on the Case form in the Task SLAs related list.

Customer service case types overview

A customer service case type represents the processes and the data that are needed to resolve a specific type of customer issue. Use the case types feature to create and configure the different types of customer service cases that your organization needs.

Customers can use case types to support a wide variety of end-user needs, including:

- Diverse industries and products
- Complex processes, events, and systems
- Collaboration with multiple users

A good example of an industry that benefits from multiple case types is the banking industry. Within a bank, customer service agents can use case types for different customer needs such as loan processing, credit card processing, or managing complaints.

Customer service case types plugin

Users with the system administrator role can activate the Customer Service Case Types plugin (com.snc.csm_case_types).

Activating this plugin adds the Customer Service > Case Types module to the application navigator. The system administrator can use this module for creating and managing case types.

Additional plugins

There are additional plugins for specific types of cases. These plugins have the following dependencies:

- Customer Service Case Types
• Customer Service Case Action Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM Case Type for Customer Onboarding</td>
<td>Provides an onboarding case type to capture the details when onboarding customers for a product or service and a playbook that provides step-by-step guidance through the lifecycle of the onboarding process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(com.snc.csm_onboarding)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Case Type for Complaint Handling</td>
<td>Provides a complaint case type to capture the details for a customer complaint and a playbook that provides step-by-step guidance through the lifecycle of the complaint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(com.snc.csm_complaint)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Case Types Guided Setup**

Activating the Customer Service Case Types plugin adds the Case Types section to the Customer Service Management Guided Setup. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Case Types** and use the tasks in this section to create and configure a case type.

You can configure a number of different processes and components for a customer service case type, including client scripts and business rules; views, roles, and ACLs; and notifications and record producers.

To create and configure a new case type:

• Create a table for the new case type that extends the Case table (sn_customerservice_case).
• Configure UI actions, UI policies, and client scripts for the new case type.
• Configure views and view rules, roles and ACLs, business rules and more for the new case type.
• Set up processes for the case type, including record producers, state flows, and special handling notes.
• Create a case type definition record for the new case type and add it to the Case Type table (sn_case_type).
• Configure the **Get Case Types** flow and modify the conditions that determine visibility for a case type.

For more information, see **Configure customer service case types**.

**Manage case types**

You can manage the settings and configuration for a case type from the Case Type form.

After using the Customer Service Management Guided Setup to create and configure a case type, you can view and manage the configuration for the case type from the Case Type form. To access a Case Type form, navigate to **Customer Service > Case Types > Manage Case Types** and select a case type from the list.

**Case Type form related links**

The Case Type form includes the following related links.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related link</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Case Type Configuration</td>
<td>Displays the current configuration for this case type, including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Business rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Client scripts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dictionary entries and overrides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UI actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Access controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UI policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Data policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Styles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Flows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launch Guided Setup for Case Types</td>
<td>Goes to the Case Types setup tasks in Customer Service Management Guided Setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launch Guided Setup for AWA</td>
<td>Goes to the Advanced Work Assignment (AWA) setup tasks in Agent Workspace Guided Setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launch Guided Setup for Agent Workspace</td>
<td>Goes to the Agent Workspace for CSM setup tasks in Customer Service Management Guided Setup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Case Type form related lists**

The Case Type form related lists display items configured for the case type table. Use the related lists to create additional configurations.

- Record Producers
- State Flows
- Special Handling Notes
- SLAs
- Email Templates
- Quick Messages
- Reports

**Select an optional category for a case type**

The system administrator can assign an optional category to a case type. When creating a case, agents can filter the available case types by category. If an agent selects a category, the list of case types displayed are filtered by that category.

The Customer Service Case Types plugin includes several categories that the system administrator can select for a case type. These categories include:

- Onboarding
- Complaint
- Orders
- General
To select a category for a case type:

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Case Types > Manage Case Types and click a case type.
2. Select a category in the Category field.
3. Click Update.

Case types in CSM Agent Workspace and the platform interface

Customer service agents can use the case types feature in CSM Agent Workspace and the platform interface. To make a case type available for selection with the Create Case UI action in CSM Agent Workspace requires one additional configuration step.

To select a case type in CSM Agent Workspace, the system administrator must enable the Available in Workspace field on the Case Type form. When enabled, the case type is available for selection in CSM Agent Workspace when an agent creates a case.

Note: This field applies only to Agent Workspace. All case types are available for selection in the platform interface regardless of the setting in the Available in Workspace field.

Case types and major cases

The system administrator can enable the Propose Major Case UI action for different case types. If this UI action is available, an agent can propose a major case from the selected case type record. If the major case candidate is accepted, a major case is created and the case type record is added as a child case on the major case.

The major case is created on the base Case table. Updates to the major case are synchronized to the child case types. Multiple case type records can be added to the same major case.

Case action status overview

Use the case action status feature to indicate the status of cases in the Case list. With this feature, customer service agents can easily identify cases that need attention and quickly prioritize their work.

Visual indicators in the Action Status column on the Case list highlight case status:

- A blue indicator highlights cases that need attention, such as cases that have been updated by customers or internal users and are waiting for input or review. In CSM Agent Workspace, cases that need attention also use a blue field highlight.
- A red indicator highlights cases that are blocked, such as cases that have open related task records or are waiting for customer feedback. In CSM Agent Workspace, cases that are blocked also use a red field highlight. Blocked cases can have the following status:
  - Blocked by task
  - Blocked by customer
  - Blocked internally and by customer

In addition to the colored indicators, the Action Status column also displays a brief status message.

The case action status feature uses actionable case flows to automatically determine the action status for customer service cases. These flows create and resolve blocking tasks for different case-related actions and update the action status indicators. Certain agent actions trigger these case flows, which in turn create and resolve the blocking tasks.

Customer service agents and managers can also manually set the action status for cases by enabling the Needs Attention field on the Case form.
**Actionable case flows**

Actionable case flows contain predefined user actions that automatically create and resolve blocking tasks for customer service cases.

The Case Action Status plugin provides several actionable case flows that create and resolve blocking tasks for different case-related actions. These flows are enabled by default. If you do not want to create blocking tasks for a specific action, you need to disable the associated flow.

To view these flows, navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Actionable Case Flows**.

**Flow Designer actions**

Case flows use the following predefined Flow Designer actions:

- Add Blocking Task
- Inactivate Blocking Task
- Set Needs Attention Flag

**Flows for customer service cases**

The case action status feature provides the following flows for customer service cases.

- Create blocked by record if case needs customer information
- Create blocked by record if Case Task is associated with case
- Create blocked by record if Change Request is associated with case
- Create blocked by record if SC Request is associated with case
- Create blocked by record if Work Order is associated with case
- Create blocked by record if Incident is associated with case
- Create blocked by record if Problem is associated with case
- Resolve blocked by record if Case Task is closed
- Resolve blocked by record if Change Request is closed
- Resolve blocked by record if Incident is closed
- Resolve blocked by record if Problem is closed or Fix is communicated
- Resolve blocked by record if Problem is closed or Fix/Workaround is communicated
- Resolve blocked by record if SC Request is closed
- Resolve blocked by record if user information is provided for case
- Resolve blocked by record if Work Order is closed or cancelled
- Set Needs Attention if additional comments are added by others
- Set Needs Attention when case is commented by others
- Update case when blocked by record is created
- Update case when Needs attention field is toggled

**Flows for customer service orders**

The case action status feature provides the following flows for customer service orders.

- Create blocked by record if order case needs customer information
- Resolve blocked by record if user information is provided for order case
- Set Needs Attention if additional comments are added by others on order case
- Update order case when Needs attention field is toggled
Flows for problem records associated to a case

If a problem is associated to a case with the Need task resolution blocking reason, a case flow is provided that resolves the blocking task when a fix is communicated or the problem record is closed or cancelled.

If a problem is associated to a case with the Need PRB workaround blocking reason, a case flow is provided that resolves the blocking task when a workaround is provided or the problem record is closed or cancelled.

Blocking tasks

Certain agent actions trigger case flows which create and resolve blocking tasks for customer service cases. These tasks determine the case action status.

When an agent performs certain actions, such as asking a customer for more information or associating a problem with a case, the system:

• Adds a blocking task to the case. This task appears on the Case form in the Blocked by form section.
• Updates the Action Status field on the Case form and Case list.

Additionally, there are actions that resolve these blocking tasks, such as the customer responding to an agent’s question or an internal user resolving a problem task. When one of these actions occur, the system:

• Updates the status of the blocking task on the Case form.
• Updates the Action Status field on the Case form and Case list.
• Enables the Needs Attention field on the Case form.

Actions that create blocking tasks

The following actions create blocking task for customer service cases:

• The agent sets the state of the case to Needs More Information.
• The agent associates one of the following to the case:
  • Problem
  • Request
  • Change
  • Incident
  • Case task
  • Work order

Actions that resolve blocking tasks

The following actions resolve blocking tasks for customer service cases:

• A customer provides the requested information.
• A fix or a workaround is associated with a related problem record.
• A related problem, request, change, or incident record is resolved.
• A related case task or work order is closed or cancelled.

Needs attention field

When the Needs attention field on the Case form is enabled, the Action Status column on the Case list displays a blue indicator.
The **Needs attention** field is enabled automatically when:

- A blocking task for a case is resolved.
- A customer or someone other than the case owner comments on a case.
- A work note is added to a case that is a child of a major case.

Customer service agents and managers can manually enable the **Needs attention** field if information is required from customers or internal users. This field can be disabled only by the agent assigned to the case or by the customer service manager or admin.

**Case action status and major issue management**

When using the case action status feature with major issue management, the following actions enable the **Needs attention** field for a major case:

- A customer provides comments for a case that is a child of a major case.
- An agent adds a work note to a case that is a child of a major case.

**Blocked by related list**

Blocking tasks that are created for a case are added to the **Blocked by** related list. Each blocking task is assigned one of the following blocking reasons:

- Need information from the customer
- Need task resolution
- Need PRB workaround
- Other

**Note:** When a problem is associated with a case and a blocking task is created, the blocking reason is set to **Need task resolution**. If necessary, the agent can change this reason to **Need PRB workaround**.

When a blocking task is resolved:

- The **Unblocked By** field displays the user who performed the unblocking action.
- The **Unblocked On** field displays the date that the blocking task was resolved.

**Blocking Tasks table**

Records that have blocking tasks are stored in the Blocked By table [sn_action_status_blocked_by]. Records are periodically removed from this table. Six months after a blocked record is closed, the entries in the Blocked By table related to the blocked record are removed.

**Case action status analytics**

The Customer Service Manager dashboard displays the percentage of the case backlog that is waiting for an agent response, customer input, or a response for other users.

The dashboard includes the **Blocked open cases** widget which breaks down the remaining work to show cases that are with the following users:

- Agent
- Customer
- Other Internal Stakeholder
As blocking tasks for a case get created and resolved, this dashboard widget tracks the case time spent with each of these users. The breakdown is set for:

- Blocked internally
- Blocked by customer
- Blocked internally and by customer

**Case action status logging**

Logging for the case action status feature uses a metric definition to view information about blocking tasks associated with customer service cases.

Defined metrics can track how long a specific field holds a certain value. The **Case Actor Duration** metric definition logs the events related to case blocking tasks.

When a case blocking task is created or resolved, the system logs the information. This information can be used to report on the duration of the case with the customer, the agent, or other internal stakeholders.

As a case gets blocked and unblocked by a customer or an internal user, the metric definition tracks the duration of the case with each of these actors.

The metrics include:

- Case number
- Metric definition
- Value
  - Needs attention
  - Blocked by customer
  - Blocked internally and by customer
- Start and end times
- Duration

**Major issue management overview**

Major issue management enables customer communication for issues that impact a wider audience. Use this feature to proactively identify impacted customers, provide information to these customers, and manage the resolution process.

This feature enables you to efficiently manage the communication and resolution process for issues that impact multiple customers. With major issue management, you can identify impacted customers who have not yet reported an issue and proactively create cases for these customers.

Major issue management introduces the concept of a major case which contains the details about a particular issue. Child cases can easily be created for a major case, with one child case created for each customer affected by the issue. These child cases contain the customer-specific information.

Identify affected customers by creating a recipients list of accounts or consumers and attaching it to the major case. Create this list using the Targeted Communications application. Build a recipients list by identifying dynamic conditions, running a script, or importing customer information into a template. Once attached to a major case, use the recipients list to create a child case for each customer included in the list.

A major case is created in one of two ways:

- A customer service manager can create a major case.
- A customer service manager or major issue manager can promote a major case candidate.

Major case candidates are created either by promoting an existing customer service case (for customer reported issues) or by creating a candidate case directly (for non-customer reported issues). Candidate cases require approval before being promoted to major cases.

Major issue management also provides properties that enable automatic synchronization from a major case to the associated child cases. Use these properties to enable synchronization and to identify the synchronized fields.
Major Issue Management menu can be used in the Now Platform interface and in the Agent Workspace interface.

Identifying issues and creating major cases

Customer service agents, managers, and major issue managers can use the following process to identify potential issues, create major cases, and identify impacted customers.

1. Create a major case candidate or flag an existing customer service case as a major case candidate.
2. Review the major case candidate and either approve it as a major case or reject it.
   - If approved, the candidate case becomes a child case of the major case.
   - If rejected, the candidate case returns to a normal case.
3. Associate other cases reported for the same issue as child cases of the major case.
4. Identify other customers impacted by the issue by creating a recipients list and attaching it to the major case.
5. Create child cases for the customers included in the recipients list.
6. Manage the issue to resolution using the major case.
   - Update the major case as needed, which automatically updates the child cases.
   - Close the major case when the issue is resolved. Closing the major case automatically closes all the child cases.

Major, candidate, and child cases

Major issue management uses major case candidates to identify potential customer issues. Approved candidate cases become major cases, which you can use to manage issues to resolution. Child cases are created for customers impacted by an issue and are associated with a major case.

Major cases

A major case contains information about a specific issue that impacts customers. It is not associated with any accounts, contacts, or consumers. This customer-specific information resides in the associated child cases.

The recipients list associated with the major case identifies customers impacted by the issue. Select a list in the Affected Customers field in the Major Case Information form section of the Major Case form. After adding the list, you can automatically create child cases for all customers on the list. These cases are added to the Child Cases related list on the major case form.

With synchronization enabled, updates to a parent case are automatically synchronized to the associated child cases. When a major case is closed, the associated child cases in the following states are also closed: New, Open, Awaiting Customer Info.

To identify major cases in the list view, check the value in the Major case state field.

- Major cases have a state of Accepted.
- Major case candidates have a state of either Proposed or Rejected.
- Regular cases have a blank value.

In the form view, major cases and major case candidates display the Major Case Information form section.

Note: Related links on a major case form do not synchronize to associated child cases.
Major case candidates

A customer service agent uses a candidate case to flag an issue that may be a wider problem impacting multiple customers. An agent can create a major case candidate:

- By promoting an existing customer service case with a reported issue.
- By creating a major case candidate directly.

A major case candidate requires the approval of the customer service manager or major case manager before being promoted to a major case. When a major case candidate is approved, a major case is created.

- If the major case candidate was promoted from an existing case, a major case is created and the candidate case becomes a child case of that parent.
- If the major case candidate was created directly, that same case becomes the major case.

If a major case candidate is rejected, it reverts to a regular case.

Child cases

Child cases are associated with a major case. One child case is created for each account (B2B) or consumer (B2C) impacted by the major case issue. Child cases are created from the recipients list on the major case and can also be added manually by the major issue manager.

When child cases are created, the short description from the major case is copied to each of the child cases. Duplicate child cases are not created. If a child case already exists for an account or consumer, it is not created again.

As child cases are created, you can enter text in a pop-up window that is added to the Additional comments field on the child case form. These comments are added only to the newly created child cases. The major case and any existing associated child cases are not updated.

The primary contact for an account is the contact on the child case and is automatically added to the child case watchlist.

Synchronization between major cases and associated child cases

The system administrator can set system properties that enable or disable the synchronization between the major case and associated child cases and also define the fields to synchronize. Synchronization occurs from the major case to the child cases. If the state of a child case is Resolved, Closed, or Canceled, the synchronization does not take place.

A major case and the associated child cases maintain synchronization on the fields identified by the sn_customerservice.case_fields_to_sync property. This property specifies the list of fields to synchronize from the major case to the associated child cases. By default, these fields include:

- Priority
- State
- Comments
- Work notes
- Close notes
- Resolution code

If the State field is synchronized from the major case to the child cases, the Close notes and Resolution code fields must also be synchronized.

Note: Child cases can be manually added to a major case at any time. There is no retroactive synchronization for newly added child cases.
When synchronization is enabled, saving changes to a major case results in a pop-up window. Verify the update by clicking OK.

**Recipients lists**

Use recipients lists that contain account or consumer information to create the child cases for a major case.

Major issue managers and customer service managers can select the desired list in the **Affected Customers** field on the Major Case form. Clicking **Create Child Cases** then creates a child case for each account or consumer in the recipients list.

Managers can change the recipients list before child cases are created. After child cases are created, the **Affected Customers** field becomes read only.

### Creating recipients lists

Recipients lists are created using the **Targeted Communications** application. With this application, managers can select the type of list to create and the method used to create the list: by uploading files, selecting dynamic conditions, or using scripts.

The Targeted Communications application creates several types of recipients lists, including accounts, contacts, consumers, and internal users. The recipients list for a major case must be of type accounts or consumers. Recipients lists are limited to one specific type and cannot contain mixed types, for example accounts and consumers.

**Note:** The Major Issue Management plugin is dependent on the Targeted Communications plugin. If Targeted Communications is active, recipients lists can be created for internal users. If Targeted Communications and Customer Service Management are both active, recipients lists can also be created for accounts, contacts, and consumers.

### Manually editing a recipients list

Major issue managers and customer service managers can manually add or remove accounts or consumers from a recipients list by navigating to the Recipients List form, clicking **Edit** in the **Recipients** related list, and then using the arrows to add or remove records.

The **Recipients** related list includes the **Dynamically Added** column which displays either True or False, depending on how a record was added:

- True for records that are dynamically generated, either by using the condition builder or by running a script.
- False for records that are added manually, either by using the **Edit** button on the **Recipients** related list or by file upload.

The **Active Communication** column is set to True by default for both dynamically and manually added records. This field indicates whether or not the recipient requires active communication.

### Refreshing a recipients list

Refresh a recipients list by clicking **Refresh Recipient List** on the Recipients List form. For major issue management, the following guidelines apply to refreshing a recipients list:

- Refreshing a recipients list does not impact manually created records.
- If you remove a manually created record from a recipients list, it does not reappear when the list is refreshed unless it meets the dynamic conditions used to filter the list.
- If you remove a dynamically generated record from a recipients list, it may reappear when the list is refreshed if it meets the dynamic conditions used to filter the list.
• If the **Active Communication** field is set to false for a record, this setting does not change when a recipients list is refreshed.

• If created using the Upload File method, you do not need to refresh the recipients list.

**Major Case form view**

Major issue management provides the Major Case form view, which includes the Major Case Information form section and the Child Cases related list.

The Major Case form view does not display account-related information because a major case is not linked to a specific account, contact, or consumer. This information is stored in the child cases associated with a major case.

**Major Case Information form section**

Major cases and major case candidates include the Major Case Information form section which includes the following fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major case state</td>
<td>A major case can be in one of these states:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Proposed</strong>: the initial state when a candidate case is created or proposed by an agent or manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Accepted</strong>: the initial state when a major case is created by a manager or when a candidate case is promoted by a manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Rejected</strong>: the candidate case is rejected by a manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Cancelled</strong>: the case is cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business impact</td>
<td>The business impact of the issue identified in the major case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probable cause</td>
<td>The probable cause of the issue identified in the major case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected Customers</td>
<td>The recipients list selected for the major case. Child cases are created for the accounts or consumers included in the recipients list. This field is only visible when the major case state is Accepted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customer service agents can update the **Business impact** and **Probable cause** fields as well as add **work notes**. Major issue managers can update the **Business Impact** and **Probable Cause** fields and attach a recipients list. The **Affected Customers** field is only visible when the major case state is Accepted.

The **Work notes** field on the major case form is updated when a major case is proposed or a candidate case is created manually. The **Work notes** field on associated child cases is updated when a major case is accepted.

When a major issue manager rejects a candidate case, the **Major Case State** field is set to Rejected and the **Work notes** field is updated with the case state. The candidate case reverts to a regular case.

**Child Cases related list**

Major issue management adds the **Child Cases** related list to the Customer Service Case form. All child cases associated with a major case are added to this list. Child cases are created automatically from the recipients list and can also be added or removed manually.

**Propose a case as a major case candidate**

Users with the customer service agent role can propose an existing customer service case as a major case candidate.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

Cases in these states can be proposed as a major case candidate:

- New
- Open
- Awaiting Info

Cases that are Resolved, Closed, or Canceled cannot be proposed as a major case candidate.

When proposing a case as a major case candidate, agents can specify the reason or justification for the case in the Propose Major Case popup window. Information provided in the Work notes and Business Impact fields are added to the Case form.

Users with the major issue manager role receive a notification email when a case is proposed as a major case candidate. These users can click the link in the notification email to open the major case candidate in the platform interface.

**Note:** You can also propose a case as a major case on Agent Workspace.

1. Navigate to the desired customer service case.
2. Click Propose Major Case in the Additional Actions menu on the Case form.
3. In the Propose Major Case pop-up window, enter a reason for the proposal in the Work notes field. If desired, enter the business impact of the selected case in the Business Impact field. This information is added to the Case form in the Work notes field and the Business Impact field in the Major Case Information section.
4. Click Propose.
   An entry is added to the Work notes on the Case form that the case was proposed as a major case candidate. The information entered in the Propose Major Case pop-up window is also added to the Case form.

**Create a major case candidate**

Users with the customer service agent role can create a major case candidate.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

Users with the major issue manager role receive a notification email when a major case candidate is created. These users can click the link in the notification email to open the major case candidate in the platform interface.

**Note:** All major case candidates are automatically created as proactive cases as they are created internally and on behalf of the customer. To leverage the full capabilities of Proactive Customer Service Operations, install the Proactive Operations Management (com.snc.proactive_cs_ops) plugin.

You can also create a major case candidate from Agent Workspace.

1. Navigate to Major Issue Management > Create Major Case Candidate.
2. Enter a description in the Short description field.
3. In the Major Case Information form section, enter the relevant information in the Business impact and Probable cause fields.
4. Click Submit.

**Approve or reject a major case candidate**

Users with the major issue manager role can approve or reject a major case candidate.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

You can also approve or reject a major case candidate from Agent Workspace.

2. Select the desired candidate case.
3. Select one of the following from the Case form context menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Approve Major Case Candidate  | Approves the current major case candidate as a major case.  
Upon approval:  
• If the candidate case was proposed from an existing case, a major case is created and the candidate case becomes a child case of that major case.  
• If the candidate case was created directly, the candidate case becomes the major case. |
| Reject Major Case Candidate   | Rejects the current major case candidate as a major case.  
If rejected, provide a reason for rejecting the case in the Rejection Reason pop-up window. This information is added to the Work notes on the Case form. |

4. Click Update.

Create a major case
Users with the customer service manager role can create a major case.
Role required: sn_customerservice_manager
You can also create a major case from the Agent Workspace.
1. Navigate to Major Issue Management > Create Major Case.
2. Fill in the fields on the Case form.
3. In the Major Case Information form section, fill in the Business impact and Probable case fields.
4. Click Submit.

You can view all cases by navigating to Customer Service > Cases > Proactive.
Create child cases for a major case
Users with the customer service manager role can create a child case for each of the customers included in the major case recipients list.
Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager, sn_customerservice_manager
The Create Child Cases button on the Major Case form creates a child case for each account or consumer in the recipients list selected in the Affected Customers field. If a child case for an account or consumer already exists, the system does not create a duplicate child case.

Note: Use caution when selecting the recipients list for a major case. Selecting the wrong recipients list can have a serious impact by creating a large number of cases for incorrect accounts or consumers. Ensure that you have selected the correct recipients list before clicking Create Child Cases.
You can also create child cases for a major case from Agent Workspace.

Once child cases have been created, you cannot change the recipients list. Any additional recipients must be added manually. After manually adding recipients to the list, click Create Child Cases again to create child cases for these new recipients.
Creating child cases copies information from the major case to each of the child cases. The field values that are copied to the child cases are identified by the sn_customerservice.case_fields_to_sync system property.
1. Open the desired major case.
2. In the Major Issue Management form section, select a recipients list in the Affected Customers field.
3. Click Update.
4. Click **Create Child Cases**.

5. In the Create Child Cases pop-up window, enter information about the major case
   This information is added as additional comments to each of the newly created child cases. If child cases for this
   major case already exist, these child cases are not updated.

6. Click **Continue**.
   The child cases are created and added to the **Child Cases** related list.

**Add an existing case as a child to a major case**

Users with the customer service manager role can add an existing customer service case as a child to a major case.

Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager, sn_customerservice_manager

Identify and narrow a list of cases, then select the desired case or cases to add to the major case.

- Filter and narrow down the child case list.
- Select one or more cases and add as child to major case.
- Add work notes/activity log when a parent is added or removed

Messages on pop-up window:

You can also create child cases for a major case from Agent Workspace.

1. Open the desired major case.
2. In the **Child Cases** related list, click **Add** to display the Add Child Cases pop-up window.
   The Add Child Cases pop-up window displays a list of customer service cases that are not major cases.
3. Optional: Use the filters to narrow the list of cases displayed in the window.
4. Select the cases to add to the major case by enabling the check box for each case.
5. Click **Submit**.
   The system evaluates the selected cases and adds none, some, or all of the cases to the **Child Cases** related list.
   A message on the major case form informs the user of the results by displaying one of the following:
   - No selected cases were added as child cases.
   - (x) of (y) selected cases were added as child cases.
   - All (y) selected cases were added as child cases.

   A work note is added to the **Activities** field for each child case added to the major case.

*Components installed with Major Issue Management*

Several types of components are installed with the major issue management feature.

*Roles installed with Major Issue Management*

Major Issue Management provides these roles.
## Major Issue Manager

Users with this role can:
- Create major cases
- Approve or reject major case candidates
- Add or remove child cases from major cases
- Add or remove impacted accounts (B2B) or consumers (B2C)

The customer service manager role [sn_customerservice_manager] contains the major issue manager role.

## Properties installed with Major Issue Management

Major Issue Management provides these properties.

To access these properties, navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**.

### Note:
To open the System Property [sys_properties] table, enter `sys_properties.list` in the navigation filter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synchronize fields from parent to child case</td>
<td>Enable this property to synchronize fields from a major, or parent, case to the associated child cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| sn_customerservice.parent_child_case_sync                      | • Type: true|false  
|                                                              | • Default value: false                                                                     |
|                                                              | • Location: **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**                                |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comma-separated list of fields that synchronize from parent case to child cases</th>
<th>Specifies the list of fields to synchronize from the major, or parent, case to the associated child cases.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn_customerservice.case_fields_to_sync                                      | • Type: string  
|                                                              | • Default value: priority,state,comments,work_notes,assigned_to,close_notes,resolution_code |
|                                                              | • Location: **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**                                |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Processes SLA asynchronously during parent to child case creation and synchronization</th>
<th>Enables major issue management to process the SLA asynchronously during child case creation and parent-to-child case synchronization.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn_customerservice.parent_child_case_sla_async                                      | • Type: true|false  
|                                                              | • Default value: true                                                                       |
|                                                              | • Location: **Customer Service > Administration > Properties**                                |
Automatically close customer service cases

Customer service cases in the Resolved state can be closed automatically if customers do not take any action.

This feature uses the Auto Close Resolved Cases Flow Designer flow.

Note: This flow is not active by default.

The Auto Close Resolved Cases Flow Designer Flow identifies cases in the Resolved state that are waiting for a customer response and takes the following actions:

- Sends a reminder notification to the customer after 5 days with no response that the case is pending solution acceptance.
- Closes the case and sends a reminder notification to the customer after 10 days that the case has been auto closed.

The notifications are added to the Additional comments field on the Case form.

The system administrator can enable the Auto Close Resolved Cases flow and configure the timing of the reminder notifications. The default settings include two notifications that are sent at 5 days and 10 days after a case has been resolved. The system administrator can also create additional notifications to the flow.

The system administrator can also create a configuration that enables both the system and agents to exclude cases from auto closure.

Using the Auto Close field on the Case form

Customer service agents can use the Auto Close field on the Case form to exclude cases from auto closure. This field is hidden by default. To use this field, configure the Case form to display the Auto Close field.

Configuring business rules for auto closure

The system administrator can configure business rules to enable or disable the Auto Close field on the Case form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business Rule</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark for Auto Close</td>
<td>Use this business rule to configure when the system sets the Auto Close field to true. The default configuration is as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The case status is Resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The Needs attention field on the Case form is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The case is not escalated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The account is not escalated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Auto Close</td>
<td>Use this business rule to configure when the system automatically sets the Auto Close field to false. The default configuration is as follows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If the solution is rejected and the case status returns to Open.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notifications for resolved cases

Customers receive notifications about resolved cases that will be automatically closed if no action is taken.
When an agent proposes a solution for a customer service case, the customer has a time window in which to accept or reject the solution. If the customer does not take action within this window, the case is automatically closed.

The system administrator can configure the settings for the notifications that are sent to the customer. The default settings include two notifications that are sent at 5 days and 10 days after a case has been resolved.

- After 5 days, the customer receives a reminder message about the resolved case on the Customer Service Portal: **This case is pending solution acceptance. It will be auto closed if you do not take action.**
- If the customer does not take any action after 10 days, the system automatically closes the case and adds the following message to the case: **This case was auto closed.**

For more information, see *Automatically close customer service cases.*

### Integrating Customer Service Management with other applications

Extend the capabilities of Customer Service Management and connect with other departments to assist with case resolution by integrating with other applications.

#### Integrate with Service Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Request, Incident, Problem, and Change Management applications. With this integration, users can create request, incident, problem, and change records from customer service cases. External users can view these records from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Role required: admin

To configure the integration with the Request, Incident, Problem, and Change Management applications, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Integration with Service Management category, click Get Started.
   - The Integration with Service Management page opens with a list of tasks to activate plugins and assign roles.
4. To perform a task, click Configure.
   - This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

#### Service Management configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Activate Customer Service Management with Service Management | Activate the Customer Service with Service Management plugin to enable the integration the following applications:  
  - Incident Management  
  - Problem Management  
  - Change Management |
| Activate Customer Service Management with Service Management | Activate the Customer Service with Request Management plugin to use the integration with the Request Management application. |
| Assign roles | Assign the required roles to the customer service agents and managers who will be creating the request, incident, problem, and change records from customer service cases.  
  For more information, see Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles. |
### Assign access controls (ACLs)

Assign access controls (ACLs) to the external user roles to provide visibility to case-related request, problem, and change records from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

For more information, see [Provide external customers with access to problem, change, and request records.](#)

### Enable users to create requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

Assign roles to external customers which enable them to create requests.

For more information, see [Enable external customers to create requests.](#)

### Enable users to approve changes and requests from the Customer Service Portal

To enable external customers to approve changes and requests:

- Add external users to approval groups or assign roles for approval users.
- Add the necessary ACLs to the snc_external role for the following table:
  - Change Request (change_request)
  - Request (sc_request)
  - Request Item (sc_req_item)

For more information, see [Enable external customers to approve requests and changes.](#)

---

### Activate Customer Service Management with Service Management

Activate the Customer Service with Service Management plugin to use the integration with Service Management.

Instead of doing the configuration through this procedure, consider using guided setup. Navigate to [Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Get Started.](#) Then click [Get Started](#) in the Integration with Service Management category.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to [System Definition > Plugins.](#)
3. Click [Activate.](#)

---

### Activate Customer Service Management with Request Management

Activate the Customer Service with Request Management plugin to use the integration with Request Management.

Instead of doing the configuration through this procedure, consider using guided setup. Navigate to [Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Get Started.](#) Then click [Get Started](#) in the Integration with Service Management category.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Plugins**.
3. Click **Activate**.

**Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles**

To enable the Service Management integration features, assign the CSM/ITSM integration roles that are included with the Incident Management application.

Role required: admin

**Note:** If you are upgrading from the Madrid release, contact ServiceNow Technical Support for access to these roles.

The Service Management integration plugins do not add any roles to the customer service agent role (sn_customerservice_agent). To enable the Service Management integration features, you must assign the CSM/ITSM integration roles included with the Incident Management application.

These roles enable customer service agents to view and create incident, problem, change, and request records for customer service cases.

**CSM/ITSM integration roles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn_incident_read        | Customer service agents with this role can view information about an incident record associated with a customer service case. | • dependency_views  
                          |                                                                               | • workspace_agent  
                          |                                                                               | • view_changer  
                          |                                                                               | • sn_comm_management.comm_plan_viewer  
                          |                                                                               | • cmdb_read  
                          |                                                                               | • cmdb_query_builder_read |
| sn_incident_write       | Customer service agents with this role can:  
                          | • Create an incident record for a customer services case.  
                          | • Associate an existing incident record with a customer service case.  
                          | • Remove an incident record associated with a customer service case.  | • sn_incident_read |
| sn_problem_read         | Customer service agents with this role can view information about a problem record associated with a customer service case. | • dependency_views  
                          |                                                                               | • workspace_agent  
                          |                                                                               | • view_changer  
                          |                                                                               | • cmdb_read  
<pre><code>                      |                                                                               | • cmdb_query_builder_read |
</code></pre>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn_problem_write | Customer service agents with this role can:  
• Create a problem record for a customer services case.  
• Associate an existing problem record with a customer service case.  
• Remove a problem record associated with a customer service case. | sn_problem_read |
| sn_change_read   | Customer service agents with this role can view information about a change record associated with a customer service case. | dependency_views  
workspace_agent  
view_changer  
cmdb_read  
app_service_user  
cmdb_query_builder_read |
| sn_change_write  | Customer service agents with this role can:  
• Create a change record for a customer services case.  
• Associate an existing change record with a customer service case.  
• Remove a change record associated with a customer service case. | sn_change_read  
template_editor  
cmdb_query_builder |
| sn_request_read  | Customer service agents with this role can view information about request records associated with a customer service case in the Requests related list. | None |
| sn_request_write | Customer service agents with this role can:  
• Create request records for a customer services case. | sn_request_read  
task_editor  
dependency_views  
workspace_agent  
view_changer  
cmdb_read  
cmdb_query_builder_read |

- You can assign roles to agents using guided setup.
- You can also assign roles to agents using the Now Platform user administration feature.
  - Assign a role to a user
Provide external customers with access to problem, change, and request records

With access to problem, change, and request records, external customers can view these records associated with their customer service cases from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Role required: admin

Users with the snc_internal or snc_external role and with read access to the related problem, change, and request records can view these records from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals. After logging in, users can:

- Select a case and view the records related to that case in the Related Records list widget.
- Click a record in the Related Records list widget to open the record details in a pop-up window.

1. Provide access to problem, change, and request records by configuring ACLs for the snc_external role.

   This access is not provided out of box. You must add these ACLs to the snc_external user role based on case access. For more information, see Access control list rules.

   Note: Existing ACLs on the problem, change, and request records may impact the visibility for external users.

2. Configure the Case Related Records widget.

   By default, this widget is displayed for users with the snc_internal and snc_eternal roles. For more information, see Service Portal widgets.

3. Define the views for the problem, change, and request records and select the fields that are visible to external customers.

   For more information, see Create and delete views.

Enable external customers to create requests

Enable your external customers to create and track requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Role required: admin

Each submitted request generates a case, with the request record associated to that case. Customer service agents can also create requests on behalf of contacts and consumers.

Note: This feature requires activation of the Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request).

External user roles that can create requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals are listed in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer administrator</td>
<td>Users with this role can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.customer_admin]</td>
<td>• Browse the service catalog and catalog items and make a selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests for themselves, for other contacts from the same account, or for child accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View the request details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner</td>
<td>Users with this role can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.partner]</td>
<td>• Browse the service catalog and catalog items and make a selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests for themselves (if they also have the customer role).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests on behalf of the accounts with which they have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>established relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View cases and requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer case manager</td>
<td>Users with this role can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.customer_case_manager]</td>
<td>• Browse the service catalog and catalog items and make a selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests for themselves or for other contacts from the same account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View the request details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Users with this role can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.customer]</td>
<td>• Create a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View the request details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy contact</td>
<td>Users with this role can:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.proxy_contact]</td>
<td>• Browse the service catalog and catalog items and make a selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests on behalf of customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Add the account and contact information of the customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View the details of the case and the related request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Configure the Case form to display the **Initiated as request** field.
  
  When a request is created from the portal, the system creates a case for the request and sets this field to true.

  ![Note](image)

  **Note:** The **Initiated as request** field is read-only for all users.

---

**Enable external customers to approve requests and changes**

Enable your external customers to approve change and request records related to customer service cases from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: admin

Changes and requests related to a case typically require end user approval before the tasks can be completed. Use this feature to send approval requests and enable external customers with the snc_external role to approve those requests as part of the task approval workflow.

From the Customer Service Portal, external customers can:

- View and approve requests and change requests.
- View the details of the requested items in a request record.
• View the status of a request or change request in the Related Records widget.

1. Add external users to approval groups or assign roles for approval users in order to see approval records on the Customer Service Portal.
2. Add the necessary ACLs to the sne_external role for the following tables.
   • Change Request (change_request)
   • Request (sc_request)
   • Request Item (sc_req_item)

CSM integration with Service Management overview

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Incident, Problem, Change, and Request Management applications. With this integration, users can create request, incident, problem, and change records from customer service cases and external users can view these records from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Integration with the Service Management applications provides the following functionality for internal and external users.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>Functionality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agents</td>
<td>• Create incident, problem, change, and request records from open cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Associate existing incident, problem, change, and request records with cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Remove associated records from cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agents and managers</td>
<td>• View cases with Service Management-related indicators on the Customer Service dashboards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View updates to records associated with a case. These updates automatically update the case work notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the updates to records associated with a case to communicate with customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External users</td>
<td>• View problem, change, and request records associated with cases from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Approve changes and requests from the Customer Service Portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plugins

Customer Service Management integration with Service Management requires the following plugins:
• Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm)
• Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request)

For additional information, see Integrate with Service Management.
Roles

The Service Management integration plugins do not add any roles to the customer service agent (sn_customerservice_agent) role. To enable the Service Management integration features, you must assign the CSM/ITSM integration roles included with the Incident Management application to the agents who need this capability. For more information, see Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles.

Creating records for a case

The Service Management integration plugins add the following menu items to the Additional Actions menu on the Case form. Agents can use these menu items to create records for a case.

- Create Incident
- Create Problem
- Create Request
- Create Normal Change
- Create Standard Change

**Note:** Agents can create or associate one incident, problem, or change record with a case. After a record is created or associated with a case, the corresponding menu items are no longer available on the Additional Actions menu.

Viewing incident, problem, and change records related to a case

The Service Management integration plugins add the Related Records form section to the Case form. This section includes the following fields:

- Incident
- Problem
- Change Request
- Caused by Change

When an incident, problem, or change record is created from a case, or an existing record is associated with a case, the record number is added to the corresponding field in the Related Records form section.

Viewing requests related to a case

When a request is created from a case, or an existing request is associated with a case, the request record number is added to the Requests related list on the Case form.

**Note:** Agents can create multiple requests for a case.

Using case resolution codes

The Service Management integration plugins provide the following case resolution codes.

Agents can select these codes from the Resolution code field in the Resolution Information section on the Case form.

- Solved – Fixed by closing related PRB
Service Now    Paris    Customer Service Management

- Solved – Workaround provided based on open PRB
- Solved – Fixed by closing related Change Request
- Solved – Fixed by closing related Incident
- Solved – Related Request is Closed Complete

Service Management integration and Major Issue Management

The major issue management feature works with the CSM integration with Service Management as follows:

- A major issue manager with the itil role can create incident, problem, change, and request records from a major case.
- When a major case candidate with an associated record is accepted as a major case:
  - A new major case is created and the candidate becomes a child of the major case.
  - The related record information is copied from the child case to the major case.
  - For the child case, the options to create related records are removed from the Additional Actions menu.
  - For the child case, the fields in the Related Records form section are read-only.
  - Updates to the related records appear in the work notes of the major case. These updates are added to the child case when fields are synchronized from the major case to the child case.

- A major case and child cases can have different types of related records. This can happen when an existing case with a related incident, problem, change, or request record is added as a child of a major case. When updates are made to the record related to the child case, information about the update is added to the child case work notes.
- If a major case and child cases have the same related record, updates to that record are added to the major case work notes. These notes are copied from the major case to the child cases if:
  - The **sn_customerservice.case_fields_to_sync** property is enabled.
  - The field in the in the Related Records form section is added to the **sn_customerservice.case_fields_to_sync** property.
- If a major case and child cases have different related records of the same type, updates to the records are copied only to the respective cases.

CSM integration with Incident Management

Integration with the Incident Management application enables customer service agents to create incident records from cases or associate existing incident records to cases.

With this integration, customer service agents can:

- Create an incident from a case.
- Associate an existing open incident to a case.
- Remove an associated incident from a case.
- View the following in the case work notes:
  - Incident state changes.
  - Additional comments added to the incident record.

Note: A case can be associated with one incident. If a case is already associated with an incident, the **Create Incident** item does not appear on the Additional Actions menu.
Plugins

Integration with Incident Management requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm).

Roles

The following roles enable customer service agents to view and create incidents for customer service cases.

- sn_incident_read
- sn_incident_write

For more information, see Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles.

Creating an incident from a case

An agent can create an incident from a case by selecting the Create Incident item from the Additional Actions menu. When the incident is created:

- The state of the incident is New.
- The incident number is added to the Incident field in the Related Records form section on the Case form.
- An update with the incident record number is added to the Work notes field on the Case form.
- The domain of the incident is mapped to the domain of the case.
- The following information is copied from the case to the incident record:

  **Case to Incident field mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Incident fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Caller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration item (if available)</td>
<td>Configuration item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  **Note:** The agent can manually change the incident impact and urgency to different values on the incident record as needed.

  - If the case has an associated Problem, Change Request, or Caused by Change record, this information is also copied to the incident record.

Determining the incident priority, impact, and urgency

When creating an incident from a case:

- If the incident data lookup is active, the system copies the case priority to the incident priority and calculates the incident impact and urgency based on the Priority Data Lookup [dl_u_priority] table.
- If the Incident data lookup is inactive, the system uses these default settings for the incident fields:
• Priority: 5 - Planning
• Impact: 3 - Low
• Urgency: 3 - Low

Synchronizing data between the incident and the case

Work notes are synchronized from the incident to the case when:
• The incident state changes. If the incident state changes to On Hold, the hold reason is copied to the case work notes.
• The incident is resolved or closed. The incident resolution notes and resolution code are copied to the case work notes.
• Additional comments are added to the incident.

Note: When an incident is created or an existing incident is associated with a case, notification from the incident is suppressed if the caller is an external user (contact or consumer).

Using an extension point to map the Incident field

Customers can create the logic for mapping the Incident field by using the sn_cs_sm.CSMIncidentIntegrations extension point.

CSM integration with Problem Management

Integration with the Problem Management application enables customer service agents to create problem records from cases or associate existing problem records to cases.

With this integration, customer service agents can:
• Create a problem from a case.
• Associate an existing open problem to a case.
• Remove an associated problem from a case.
• View the following in the case work notes:
  • Problem state changes.
  • Additional comments added to the problem record.

Note: A case can be associated with one problem. If a case is already associated with a problem, the Create Problem item does not appear on the Additional Actions menu.

Plugins

Integration with Problem Management requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm).

Roles

The following roles enable customer service agents to view and create problems for customer service cases.
• sn_problem_read
• sn_problem_write

For more information, see Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles.

Creating a problem from a case

An agent can create a problem from a case by selecting the Create Problem item from the Additional Actions menu. When the problem is created:

• The state of the problem is New.
• The problem is associated with the case and the problem number is added to the Problem field in the Related Records form section on the Case form.
• An update with the problem record number is added to the Work notes field on the Case form.
• The domain of the problem is mapped to the domain of the case.
• The following information is copied from the case to the problem record:

Case to Problem field mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Problem fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration item (if available)</td>
<td>Configuration item (if blank on case, agent can manually update on problem record)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case sys_id (if the com.snc.best_practice.problem.madrid plugin is activated)</td>
<td>First reported by</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The agent can manually change the problem impact and urgency to different values on the problem record as needed.

• If the Problem Management Best Practice – Madrid plugin is activated, the case sys_id is added to the First reported by field on the problem record.

Synchronizing data between the problem and the case

With the Problem Management Best Practice – Madrid plugin activated, customer service agents can view the following information in the case work notes:

• When the state of a related problem is updated, the text of the work note includes a link to the problem.
• When Communicate Workaround is clicked from the related problem, the workaround text is copied to the case work notes.
• When Communicate Fix is clicked from the related problem, the fix text is copied to the case work notes.
• When the problem is resolved or closed with a specific resolution code:
  • State is Closed and Resolution Code is Cancelled, the Cancelled Reason text is copied to the case work notes.
• State is Closed and Resolution Code is Risk Accepted, the Cause notes, Risk accepted reason, and Fix notes are copied to the case work notes.
• State is Resolved and Resolution Code is Fix Applied, the Cause notes and Fix notes are copied to the case work notes.
• State is Closed and Resolution Code is Fix Applied, the Cause notes and Fix notes are copied to the case work notes.

With the Problem Management Best Practice - Madrid - Knowledge Integration plugin activated, the customer service agent can view information in the case work notes when a Known Error Article is created for or associated to a related problem. The work note includes a link to the article.

**Using an extension point to map the Problem field**

Customers can create the logic for mapping the **Problem** field by using the `sn_cs_sm.CaseProblemIntegrations` extension point.

**CSM integration with Change Management**

Integration with the Change Management application enables customer service agents to create change records from cases or associate existing change records to cases.

With this integration, customer service agents can:

• Create a change from a case.
• Associate an existing open change to a case.
• Remove an associated change from a case.
• View the following in the case work notes:
  • State changes for the change record.
  • Additional comments added to the change record.

**Note:** A case can be associated with one change. If a case is already associated with a change, the **Create Normal Change** and **Create Standard Change** options do not appear on the Additional Actions menu.

**Plugins**

Integration with Change Management requires the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm).

**Roles**

The following roles enable customer service agents to view and create changes for customer service cases.

• `sn_change_read`
• `sn_change_write`

For more information, see [Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles](#).

**Creating a normal change from a case**

An agent can create two types of change records from a case: normal change and standard change.
To create a normal change, select **Create Normal Change** from the Additional Actions menu. When the change is created:

- The state of the change state is New.
- The change is associated with the case and the change number appears in the **Change Request** field in the Related Records form section on the Case form.
- An update with the change record number is added to the **Work notes** field on the Case form.
- The **Requested by** field on the change record is updated with the case agent.
- The domain of the change is mapped to the domain of the case.
- The following information is copied from the case to the change record:

  **Case to Change field mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Change fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Caller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration item (if available)</td>
<td>Configuration item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Default values are added to the following fields on the change record:
  - **Type**: Normal
  - **State**: New
  - **Category**: Other
  - **Risk**: Moderate

**Creating a standard change from a case**

An agent can create two types of change records from a case: normal change and standard change.

To create a standard change, select **Create Standard Change** from the Additional Actions menu. The change record is created using the Standard Change template, which is defined in the Standard Change catalog. The data mapping is created from the template; no data is copied from the case to the change record.

**Synchronizing data between the change and the case**

Work notes are synchronized from the change to the case when:
- The change state or change type is updated.
• Additional comments are added to the change record.
• When the change associated with a case is put on hold, the work notes are updated with the hold reason.
• When a hold on the change associated with a case is removed, the work notes on the case are updated.
• When the change is resolved or closed.

Change form related lists

Integration with the Change Management application adds the following related lists to the Change form:
• Cases Fixed by Change
• Cases Caused by Change

Standard change record producer behavior

When a record producer for a standard change or normal change is created and exposed to customer service agents from the Customer or Consumer Service Portals:
• The record producer only appears in the portal after clicking the Create Request UI action.
• The record producer does not appear as part of Standard Change catalog items.
• If the agent chooses to create a Standard Change from the normal record producer, the Standard Change is created but the change record is not linked with the case.

Using an extension point to map the Change Request field

Customers can create the logic for mapping the Change Request field by using the sn_cs_sm.CaseChangeIntegrations extension point.

CSM integration with Request Management

Integration with the Request Management application enables customer service agents to create request records from cases or associate existing request records to cases. It also enables customers to create requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

With this integration, customer service agents can:
• Create one or more requests on behalf of a customer from an existing customer service case.
• Associate an existing request to a case.
• Remove an associated request from a case.
• View a list of requests associated with a case in the Requests related list.
• View the following in the case work notes:
  • Request state changes.
  • Additional comments added to the request record.

Note: When creating a request from a case, if the agent chooses a catalog item that is using cart v1 (the use_sc_layout field is not checked), the case is not set as the parent of the request.

Plugins

Integration with Request Management requires the Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request).
Roles

The following roles enable customer service agents to view and create requests for customer service cases.

- sn_request_read
- sn_request_write

For more information, see Assign CSM/ITSM integration roles.

Creating a request from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

Customers can create and submit requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals. The request process is integrated with Service Catalog.

**Note:** Partners, partner administrators, and proxy contacts can submit requests on behalf of other accounts or contacts with the addition of the following variable set to the desired catalog items: csm_request_variable_set. This variable set adds the Account and Contact fields. For more information, see Service catalog variable sets.

When the customer selects a catalog item and submits a request:

- A new case is created, which becomes the parent of the request. One request is associated with a case and a request contains one item.
- The case is used as the reference for the customer, who can see the request status and updates from the case on the Customer Service Portal.
- All cases associated with a request appear on the request record in the Cases related list.
- The following information is copied from the request to the case:

  **Request to case field mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Request fields</th>
<th>Case fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requested for</td>
<td>Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating a request using the Customer Service Management application

Customer service agents can browse the catalog and make a selection to create a request on behalf of a customer.

- From Agent Workspace, agents can create requests from case and interaction records.
- From the platform interface, agents can create requests from case records by selecting the Create Request item from the Additional Actions menu.

When the request is created:

- The state of the request is New.
- The case becomes the parent of the request. The case number is added to the Parent field on the Request form.
- The request is associated with the case and is added to the Requests related list on the Case form.
- An update with the request record number is added to the Work notes field on the Case form.
- The domain of the request is mapped to the domain of the case.
• The following information is copied from the case to the request record:

Case to request field mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Request fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Contact</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Synchronizing data between the request and the case

Work notes are synchronized from the request to the case when:
• The request state changes.
• The request is closed.
• Additional comments are added to the request.

Note: When a request is closed, the case does not automatically move to solution proposed.

Communicating with the requester

The task fulfiller can communicate with the requester if additional information is needed. Use the Additional comments field on the request to communicate with the requester through the case. Information added to the Additional comments field on the request is synchronized to the case work notes.

If the case is the parent of the request, notifications to the requester are suppressed when additional comments are added to the request by the fulfiller.

Extension points

Customers can create the logic for mapping the Request field by using the sn_cs_sm_request.CSMRequestIntegrations extension point.

Service catalog integration with the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

Users with the customer administrator role (sn_customerservice.customer_admin) can associate a portal with a service catalog.

The following catalog pages and widgets are provided as part of the Customer Service with Request Management integration.

For more information, see Associate a portal with a catalog.

CSM Catalog page

This is the display page for catalog items on the Customer and Consumer Service Portals. This page serves as the landing page for any service catalog item exposed on a CSM portal. All request items exposed on the CSM portals are either service catalog items or service catalog record producers. Navigate to Service Portal > Pages to view this page.

• Page ID: csm_sc_cat_item
• Update name: sp_page_7ea80b123bb31300bfe04d72f3efc4b7
• Available to roles: snc_internal, snc_external

CSM Catalog Item widget

This widget handles the redirection logic on submission of the catalog item and embeds the default catalog item widget. This widget listens to event $sp.sc_cat_item.submitted. On submission of a catalog item, it handles the portal redirection logic based on the page_id and the catalog portal URL. When there is no parent set in the Requests (sc_request) table, the URL is redirected to the default service portal ticket page. If a record producer has a redirect URL, this widget uses the redirect URL from the record producer instead of redirecting to the ticket page.

• Widget ID: csm-sc-cat-item
• Update name: sp_widget_ec837c713bbb1300bfe04d72f3efc4d1
• Available to roles: snc_internal, snc_external

Page route map

It is important to set up a page route map for any new Service Portals to handle the redirection to the Case ticket page. The redirection is based on the logic described in the CSM Catalog Item widget.

• CSM Catalog item page route map: for the Customer Service Portal, this page route map routes the URL redirect from the sc_cat_item page to the csm_sc_cat_item page.
• CSP Catalog item page route map: for the Consumer Service Portal, this page route map routes the URL redirect from the sc_cat_item page to the csm_sc_cat_item page.

Portal settings for catalog items

Once the catalog items are defined, visibility of the Submit/Add to Cart button can be controlled by navigating to Service Catalog > Catalog Definitions > Maintain Items, selecting the desired item, and enabling or disabling the fields in the Portal Settings form section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Request method</td>
<td>Select Order, Request, or Submit as the type of catalog item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide ‘Add to Cart’</td>
<td>Enable if the Add to Cart button should be disabled for the catalog item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The Add to Cart button is not currently supported on the Customer Service Portal or the Consumer Service Portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Quantity</td>
<td>Enable if the Quantity of the catalog item should be hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Delivery Time</td>
<td>Enable if the Delivery Time of the catalog item should be hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide ‘Add to Wish List’</td>
<td>Enable if the Add to Wish List button for the catalog item should be hidden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enabling external customers to view problem, change, and request records

External customers can view the problem, change, and request records associated with their customer service cases from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

You can provide read-only access to external users so that they can view the problem, change, and request records that are related to their cases. After logging in to the Customer or Consumer Service Portal, users can select a case and view the related records in the Related Records list widget. They can also click a record in this list to open the record details in a pop-up window.

**Note:** The Related Records list shows data only if the logged in user has access to view the related records.

Customers, customer partners, and internal users with the proxy contact role (sn_customerservice.proxy_contact) can also create requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals. For more information about this feature, see *Create cases as a proxy contact.*

Required roles

Users with the snc_internal or snc_external role and with read access to the related records can see the problem, change, and request records related to a case.

Configuration

To enable external users to see the records related to a case, the system administrator needs to perform the following configuration tasks:

- Configure ACLs for the snc_external role.
- Configure the Case Related Records widget.
- Define the views for the problem, change, and request records.

For more information, see

Viewing problem, change, and request records

Customers can also view Known Error articles for a problem related to a case. These articles are displayed:

- If there is a KE article present for the problem record. If there are multiple articles associated with the problem, the customer has access to the primary article. If there are no articles, the customer does not see the link.
- If the customer has access to the KE article.

Configuration

To configure this feature, the system administrator can:

- Assign the required roles to the customer service agents and managers who will be creating the request, problem, and change records from customer service cases.
• Provide access to problem, change, and request records by configuring ACLs for the snc_external role. This access is not provided out of box. The admin must add these ACLs to the snc_external user role based on case access.

**Note:** Existing ACLs on the problem, change, and request records may impact the visibility for external users.

• Configure the Case Related Records widget. By default, this widget is displayed for users with the snc_internal and snc_eternal roles.

• Define the views for the problem, change, and request records and select the fields that are visible to external customers. For more information, see [Create and delete views](#).

Related records list widget
When viewing a case on the Customer or Consumer Service Portal, external users can see other records that are associated with the case in the Related Records list widget.

These records can include problems, changes, and requests. Users can click a record in the Related Records widget to view additional details in a pop-up window.

**Request records**

For request records, users can:

• Expand or collapse a request and view a list of the items associated with the request.

• Click an item in this list to see additional information, including the state of the requested item.

**Note:** If a case does not have any related records, the Related Records widget does not appear on the case view page.

From the Customer and Consumer Service Portals, users can view lists of cases and requests by doing one of the following:

• Clicking **My Lists** in the portal menu header.

• Clicking **Requests > All Requests** in the portal menu header.

The list view page includes a **My Lists** filter with the following options:

• **All**: displays all case and request records.

• **Action Needed**: displays cases in the **Resolved** state that are waiting for a customer response.

• **My Issues**: displays the cases that were not initiated as a request.

• **My Requests**: displays the cases that were created as a request.

**Enabling users to approve changes and requests from the Customer Service Portal**

Enable your contacts to approve change and request records related to customer service cases from the Customer Service Portal.

Changes and requests related to a case typically require end user approval before the tasks can be completed. The tasks can be initiated by customers and by external users. For example:

• A customer creates a change in order to apply a patch. This change requires approval from the contact before the patch can be applied.

• A contact requests a catalog item from the Customer Service Portal. This request requires approval by another employee within the contact's organization before the request can be fulfilled.

Use this feature to send approval requests to contacts and enable external customers with the snc_external role to approve those requests as part of the task approval workflow.
From the Customer Service Portal, external customers can:

- View and approve requests and change requests.
- View the details of the requested items in a request record.
- View the status of a request or change request in the Related Records widget.

**Plugins**

This feature requires the following plugins:

- Customer Service (com.sn_customerservice)
- Customer Service with Service Management (com.sn_cs_sm)
- Customer Service with Request Management (com.sn_cs_sm_request)

**Configuration**

To configure this feature, the system administrator must complete the following tasks:

- Add external users to approval groups or assign roles for approval users in order to see approval records on the Customer Service Portal.
- Add the necessary ACLs to the snc_external role for these tables:
  - Change Request (change_request)
  - Request (sc_request)
  - Request Item (sc_req_item)

Users with the snc_external role have access to the Approval table (sysapproval_approver).

**Extension points**

This feature includes an extension point that can be used to configure approval entities:

*global.CSMApprovalsManagement*. Use this extension point to extend the approval functionality to any other entity, such as problem.

**Integration with Service Management applications**

Provides an integration between Customer Service Management and the Incident, Problem, Change, and Request Management applications.

Customer service agents with the itil role can create incident, problem, change, and request records from open cases in Agent Workspace.

**Create a request**

Agents can create one or more requests from a case. To create a request from a case in Agent Workspace:

1. Select **Create Request** from the Additional Actions menu to open a New Catalog Item tab.
2. Select the desired item from the catalog and click **Order now**.
3. Click **Checkout** on the Order Confirmation pop-up window.
The request number and some request information is displayed, with the option to view additional details or close the window. Clicking **View details** opens the request record.

Information about the request is added as follows:

- An update with the request number is added to the case work notes.
- The request record is added to the **Requests** related list.
- Updates to the **Additional comments** on the request record are copied to the case work notes.

### Create an incident

Agents can create one incident from a case or associate one existing incident to a case. To create an incident from a case in Agent Workspace, select **Create Incident** from the Additional Actions menu to open an Incident record in a new tab.

The following information is copied from the case to the incident record:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Incident fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Caller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration item (if available)</td>
<td>Configuration item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Information about the incident is added as follows:

- An update with the incident number is added to the case work notes.
- The incident is added to the **Incident** field in the **Related Records** form section on the case form.
- Updates to the work notes on the incident are copied to the case work notes.

### Create a change

Agents can create one change from a case or associate one existing change to a case. To create a change from a case in Agent Workspace, select **Create Normal Change** from the Additional Actions menu to open a Change record in a new tab.

The following information is copied from the case to the change record:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Change fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Caller</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Information about the incident is added as follows:

- An update with the change number is added to the case work notes.
- The change is added to the Change Request field in the Related Records form section on the case form.
- Updates to the work notes on the change are copied to the case work notes.
- If a change is put on hold, the hold reason is also copied to the case work notes.

Create a problem

Agents can create one problem from a case or associate one existing problem to a case. To create a problem from a case in Agent Workspace, select Create Problem from the Additional Actions menu to open a Problem record in a new tab.

The following information is copied from the case to the problem record:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case fields</th>
<th>Incident fields</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>Problem statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration item (if available)</td>
<td>Configuration item (if blank on case, agent can manually update on problem record)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case sys_id (if the com.snc.best_practice.problem.madrid plugin is activated)</td>
<td>First reported by</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Information about the problem is added as follows:

- An update with the problem number is added to the case work notes.
- The problem is added to the Problem field in the Related Records form section on the case form.
- Updates to the work notes on the problem are copied to the case work notes.

Integrate with Service Portfolio Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Service Portfolio Management (SPM) application. This integration gives customer service managers, customer service agents, and service owners visibility into sold products and their associated service offerings.
For more details on the integration with Service Portfolio Management, see Customer Service Management integration with Service Portfolio Management.

To configure the integration with Service Portfolio Management, use the Customer Service guided setup. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup.
2. On the Getting Started page of the guided setup, click Get Started.
3. In the Integration with Service Portfolio Management (SPM) category, view the list of tasks to configure the feature.

### Service Portfolio Management configuration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Customer Service Management with Service Portfolio Management</td>
<td>Activate the Customer Service with Service Portfolio Management (SPM) plugin to use the integration with Service Portfolio Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure form views</td>
<td>Configure the form layout and related lists for the Sold Product, Case, Account, and Service Offering forms to provide users with the correct visibility into which service offerings are associated to which sold products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign roles</td>
<td>Assign the required roles to customer service managers based on the roles and responsibilities in your organization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To perform a task, click Configure.
   This button opens the page in your instance where the configuration is completed.

### Activate Customer Service Management with Service Portfolio Management

Activate the Customer Service with Service Portfolio Management (SPM) plugin to use the integration with Service Portfolio Management.

Instead of doing the configuration through this procedure, consider using guided setup. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Get Started.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
2. Search for the plugin sn_csm_spm.
3. Click Activate.

### Configure form views for Service Portfolio Management integration

Configure the form layout and related lists for the Sold Product, Case, Account, and Service Offering forms to provide users with the correct visibility into which service offerings are associated to which sold products.

Instead of doing the configuration through this procedure, consider using guided setup. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Get Started.

Role required: admin

2. Add the following fields to forms and related lists, as required.
Configure form views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service Offering</td>
<td>Add the Subscribed by Customers related list to provide service owners visibility into which customers have subscribed to which service offerings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Product Model forms         | Add the Service Offerings (Service Offering > Model ID) related list on the Product Model/Service Model forms to enable customer service managers to associate service offerings to product models. To enable the Edit button on the Service Offering related list:  
1. Configure the list control and deselect the Omit Edit check box.  
2. Add the sn_customerservice_manager role. If you do not see the Edit button enabled, see Assign roles for Service Portfolio Management integration for more details. | Note: To configure catalog items for product models, add the Catalog Items related list. For more information, see Configure product model and catalog item relationships. |
| Sold Products on the Account form | Add the Service Offering column to the Sold Products related list to enable customer service agents or managers to view service offerings associated to the sold product for an account or consumer. |
| Case                        | Add the Service Offering field for the Sold Product to the Case form. This enables customer service agents dealing with customer issues to see the service offering associated to sold product for a case. |
| Sold Product                | Add the Service Offering field to the Sold Product form to enable customer service managers to associate a service offering to a sold product for an account or consumer. |

Assign roles for Service Portfolio Management integration

Assign the required roles to customer service managers based on the roles and responsibilities in your organization. Instead of doing the configuration through this procedure, consider using guided setup. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Get Started.

Role required: admin

1. Assign the service_editor role to customer service managers if they need to update any service offerings they own.
2. Assign the portfolio_admin role to customer service managers if they need to associate service offerings to a product model.

Customer Service Management integration with Service Portfolio Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Service Portfolio Management (SPM) application. This integration gives customer service managers, customer service agents, and service owners visibility into sold products and their associated service offerings.

Using the integration between Customer Service Management and Service Portfolio Management has the following benefits:

- Increase customer service agent productivity: Empower customer service agents to quickly view the service offerings and associated definitions for sold products.
• Increase service owner productivity: Empower service owners to quickly identify customers subscribed to services.

The Customer Service Management integration with Service Portfolio Management can be used in the following ways.

1. Customer service managers can associate service offerings to product models. For more details, see [Associate service offerings to product models](#).
2. Customer service managers can associate service offerings to sold products. For more details, see [Associate service offerings with sold products](#).
3. Service owners can view service offerings and which customers have subscribed to them.
4. Customer service agents can view which service offerings are associated to the sold products affected by an issue. They can also see the service commitments and availability. For more details, see [View sold product information in Agent Workspace](#).

### Activation information

Activate the following plugin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service with Service Portfolio Management (SPM) [sn_csm_spm]</td>
<td>Enables integration with the Service Portfolio Management (SPM) application. This integration gives customer service managers, customer service agents, and service owners visibility into sold products and their service offerings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Roles

Ensure that users can perform all the necessary actions by assigning roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>service_editor</td>
<td>Assign this role to customer service managers if they need to update any service offerings they own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portfolio_admin</td>
<td>Assign this role to customer service managers if they need to associate service offerings to a product model.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Integrate with Continual Improvement Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Continual Improvement Management application. This integration enables you to request improvement opportunities and to implement phases and tasks to meet performance goals, track progress, and measure success.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to [System Definition > Plugins](#).
2. Search for the Continual Improvement Management (com.sn_cim) plugin.
3. Click [Activate](#).
Integrating with Continual Improvement Management

Use the Continual Improvement Management (CIM) application with Customer Service Management (CSM) to request improvement opportunities and to implement phases and tasks to meet performance goals, track progress, and measure success.

You can use CIM for improvements to Performance Analytics (PA) indicators and to service operations. For example, create a new improvement initiative to:

- Reduce the open case backlog.
- Improve the average case response time.

See Continual Improvement Management for more information about how CIM can help you with setting goals, organizing effort, and completing tasks.

Use CIM with Customer Service Management

To use CIM with Customer Service Management, you must request the Continual Improvement Management (com.sn_cim) plugin. For more information, see Request Continual Improvement Management.

Integrate with Field Service Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Field Service Management application. This integration enables you to view work order and work order task information from a case.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
3. Click Activate.

Integrating with Field Service Management


Users can view account and contact information on work orders and work order tasks in the Field Service Management application. Customers and consumers can view case-related work orders from the Customer Service and Consumer Service Portals.

When an agent creates a work order from a customer service case, the work order and task forms include case-related information such as the account and contact.

When a customer or a consumer views a case from either the Customer or Consumer Service Portals, they can view the details of any work orders and tasks related to the case.

Product use rights included with this application

If you have purchased a subscription for the Field Service Management (FSM) application, Customer Service Management users can create and view all FSM work orders and appointments. External CSM users can create and view FSM work orders and appointments of their own or related accounts.
Changes to the Field Service Management application

In the Field Service Management application, this integration adds the following fields to the Work Order form. These fields are visible in the Case view. To display these fields, right-click the Work Order form header and select View > Case.

- Account
- Consumer
- Contact
- Asset
- Partner
- Partner Contact

Updating the Account field on the Work order form also updates the Company field. Updating the Contact field on the Work Order form updates the Caller field.

Changes to the Customer Service Management application

In the Customer Service Management application, this integration adds the Work Orders link to the Customer Service Portal and Consumer Service Portal headers. Click this link to view a list of work orders, including the work order number, priority, state, and short description. The work orders displayed in this list on the Customer Service Portal depend on the customer role: customer, customer admin, partner, or partner admin.

Click a work order in this list to display the work order details.

Known Limitations

There is no synchronization between the Work Order form and the associated Case form. If information changes on the Case form, it does not get updated on the Work Order form.

Integrate with ITOM Event Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the ITOM Event Management application. This integration enables you to create cases proactively from alerts either manually or through automation and track the accounts and the corresponding install base items affected by the alert.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
3. Click Activate.

Integrating with IT Operations Management


This integration enables you to create cases proactively from alerts either manually or through automation and track the accounts and the corresponding install base items affected by the alert. It also enables you to view the service health status of their install base items.

For more information, see Integration with Event Management.
Integrate with Customer Project Management

You can configure a number of different processes and components for the Customer Management feature.

Use the Customer Service Management Guided Setup to configure Customer Project Management. Navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Guided Setup > Customer Project Management**. The table below provides a description of the configuration steps included in this guided setup section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate Project Portfolio Suite with Financials.</td>
<td>Activate the Project Portfolio Suite with Financials plugin (com.snc.financial_planning_pmo).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure form views.</td>
<td>Configure the Case form and add the following fields to the Case view, Workspace view, and Customer Self Service view:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                                                | • Project  
• Project Task  
• Issue  
• Project Change Request |
| Configure related lists.                        | Configure the Account form and add the Projects related list to the Case view and Workspace view.                                        |
|                                                | Configure the Contact form and add the Projects related list to the Case view and Workspace view.                                       |
|                                                | Configure the Customer Project Task form and add the following related lists to the Default view: Work Order > Initiated From.    |
|                                                | **Note:** This step can only be completed if the following plugins are active:                                                          |
|                                                | • Customer Service with Field Service Management (com.snc.csm_fsm_integration)  
• Field Service with Project Management (com.snc.wm_ppm)                                                                             |
| Configure notifications.                        | Configure the **Send Email to Contact when Customer Project Task is assigned** Flow Designer flow to send an email to the assigned contact when a customer project task is assigned. |
|                                                | This notification includes the following details and can be configured as necessary:                                                    |
|                                                | • Project number and name  
• Task number and short description  
• Task planned start and end dates and duration |

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Configure Flow Designer flows.                | Use Flow Designer flows provided with Customer Project Management to:  
  - Configure the fields that are copied over, when a user creates a project issue or project change request from a case.  
  - Update the work notes for a case record when the state of an associated project issue or project change request is updated.  
  - Close a case record when an associated project issue or project change request is closed.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Create Project Issue from Case                | **Create Project Issue from Case:** When a project issue is created from a case, this flow copies the **Priority** and **Short description** fields from the case to the project issue record. This flow is active by default.                                                                                                                                   |
| Create Project Change Request from Case       | **Create Project Change Request from Case:** When a project change request is created from a case, this flow copies the **Priority** and **Short description** fields from the case to the project change request record. This flow is active by default.                                                                                     |
| Update and Close Case Record on Issue Closure | **Update and Close Case Record on Issue Closure:** This flow enables you to automatically:  
  - Update the case work notes when the state of an associated issue is updated.  
  - Close a case if the state of the associated issue is set to Closed.  
  Activate this flow as needed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Update and Close Case Record on Project Change Closure | **Update and Close Case Record on Project Change Closure:** This flow enables you to automatically:  
  - Update the case work notes when the state of an associated project change request is updated.  
  - Close a case if the state of the associated project change request is set to Closed.  
  Activate this flow as needed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Assign Access Controls (ACLs)                 | Assign ACLs to the Customer Service Management user roles to provide access to the Project Portfolio Management tables, including the Project Change Request, Status Report, and Issues tables.                                                                                                                                                   |

**Configure integration with Project Portfolio Management with Financials**

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Project Portfolio Suite with Financials application. This integration, Customer Project Management, enables customers to manage complex projects with multiple tasks and provide end users with visibility into these projects.

Customers can use this integration to create projects and project tasks for their customer accounts. Customers can also provide end users with visibility into their projects and tasks from the Customer Service Portal and enable them to request additional actions.

For more information about this feature, see *Customer Project Management*.

**Product use rights included with this application**

When subscribed to the IT Business Management (ITBM) Subscription Product, Customer Service Management users can create and edit projects. External CSM users can view projects and edit project tasks of their own or related accounts.
Plugin

Users with the system administrator role can activate the Customer Project Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ppm).

**Note:** This plugin requires the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) and the Project Portfolio Suite with Financials plugin (com.snc.financial_planning_pmo).

The Customer Project Management plugin adds the **Customer Service > Projects** module to the application navigator. Users with the customer project manager role can access this module.

Customer Project Management

Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Project Portfolio Suite with Financials application. This integration, Customer Project Management, enables customers to manage complex projects with multiple tasks and provide end users with visibility into these projects.

Customers can use this integration to create projects and project tasks for their customer accounts. Customers can also provide end users with visibility into their projects and tasks from the Customer Service Portal and enable them to take additional actions.

Customer Project Management Guided Setup


**Customer Project Management personas, roles, and tasks**

An overview of the tasks that can be performed by the different Customer Project Management roles.
## Personas and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Persona</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Required roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Customer project manager | A user who creates and manages projects for customer accounts.  
• Creates new projects.  
• Sets up project tasks and resource plans.  
• Identifies customer contacts who have access to projects and project tasks.  
• Assigns and manages tasks and dependencies. | • it_project_manager  
• sn_customerservice.projectmanager |
| Project stakeholder    | A user who is responsible for activities that require viewing customer project details and project tasks. | • sn_customerservice.projectstakeholder  
• At least one CSM role |
| Customer service agent | A user who can create cases from projects and project tasks and resolve cases within the set SLA.  
• Works on cases created from projects and project tasks.  
• Communicates with the customer on case status. | • sn_customerservice_agent  
• sn_customerservice.projectstakeholder |
| Customer              | An external user who is responsible for overseeing the project delivery.  
• Reviews project status and progress on the Customer Service Portal.  
• Completes assigned tasks.  
• Creates cases for project issues. | Any of the following CSM external roles:  
• sn_customerservice.customer  
• sn_customerservice.customer_admin  
• sn_customerservice.partner  
• sn_customerservice.partner_admin |

### Customer project manager tasks

A customer project manager requires the following roles:

- it_project_manager
- sn_customerservice.projectmanager

With these roles, a customer project manager can perform the tasks described in the following table.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Create a project for a customer account                             | 1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > Create New.  
2. Enter a name for the project in the Project Name field.  
3. Select an account in the Account field.  
4. Fill in additional project information.  
5. Click Save.                                                                                                                                 |
| Create a project for a customer account from a project template     | 1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > Create New.  
2. Click a template at the bottom of the form to apply the template to the project. If the templates do not appear at the bottom of the form, click the More options icon at the top of the form and select Toggle Template Bar.  
3. Enter a name for the project in the Project Name field.  
4. Select an account in the Account field.  
5. Fill in additional project information.  
6. Click Save.                                                                                                                                 |
| Create a project task for a customer project                        | 1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > All.  
2. Select a project.  
3. In the Project Tasks related list, click New.  
4. Add a short description for the task.  
5. Fill in additional project task information.  
6. Click Save.                                                                                                                                 |
| Identify the project tasks on a project template that are visible  | 1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > Templates.  
2. Select a template.  
3. In the Project Template Tasks related list, select a task.  
4. In the Data section of the Project Template Task form, add the Visible to customer field and set it to true.  
5. Click Update.  
6. Repeat for other project tasks as needed.                          |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Identify project tasks that are visible to external users** | 1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Projects > All**.
2. Select a project.
3. In the **Project Tasks** related list, select a task.
4. Enable the **Visible to customers** field.
5. Click **Save**. |
| **Identify the account contacts who have access to a project** | To give customers visibility into projects from the Customer Service Portal, you must add one or more contacts to the project.
- Contacts must belong to the account linked with the project.
- Partner contacts must have access to the account linked with the project.
- Contacts who have a relationship with the account can also be added to the project.
1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Projects > All**.
2. Select a project.
3. In the **Project Contacts** related list, click **New**.
4. Select a contact in the **Contact** field and click **Submit**. |
| **Assign project tasks to internal users, customer contacts, or customer partner contacts** | See **Assign a project task**. |
| **See the cases that have been created for a project or project task** | View cases in the **Cases** related list on the Customer Project form and Customer Project Task form. Click a case to view the case details.

**Note:** The customer project manager has read-only access to the Case form. |
| **Add a comment or an attachment to a case that has been created for a project or project task** | 1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Projects > All**.
2. Select a project.
3. In the **Cases** related list, select a case.
4. Add a comment in **Additional comments** field.
5. Click the attachment icon, select a file, and attach it to the case.
6. Click **Update**. |
| **Create project change requests and project issues for cases that have been created for a project or project task** | See the following tasks:
- **Create a project issue for a case**
- **Create a project change request for a case** |
### Task Details

**Save a customer project as a template**

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Projects > All**.
2. Select a project.
3. Click the **Save as New Template** related link.
4. In the Create Template popup window, enter a template name and description.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Update the template as needed and click **Update**.

---

### Customer Service Agent Tasks

To view customer projects and create cases for customer projects and tasks, an agent must have the following roles:

- **sn_customerservice_agent**
- **sn_customerservice.projectstakeholder**

With these roles, an agent can perform the tasks described in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View customer projects</td>
<td>Customer service agents can view a list of customer projects by navigating to <strong>Customer Service &gt; Projects &gt; All</strong>. Click a project in this list to view project details on the Customer Project form, including project tasks, project contacts, and sub projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Agents have read-only access to project details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| View the projects and project tasks created for an account | Customer service agents can see projects that are linked to customer accounts. From a customer account record, agents can see the projects for that account in the **Projects** related list.  

Click a project in this list to view project details on the Customer Project form, including project tasks, project contacts, and sub projects. |
<p>|                                           | <strong>Note:</strong> Agents have read-only access to project details.  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| See the projects and project tasks associated with a contact | Customer service agents can see the projects and project tasks that are associated with a contact. Navigate to **Customer Service > Customer > Contacts** and select a contact.  
  - Click the **Projects** related list to see projects.  
  - Click the **Project Tasks** related list to see tasks.                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                | **Note:** If necessary, configure the Contact form to add these related lists.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Create a case for a project                    | Customer service agents and agent managers can create cases for customer projects.  
  When creating a case, the agent selects a project in the **Project** field on the Case form.  
  - If an account has been selected in the **Account** field, the agent can select from the projects that are associated with that account.  
  - If the **Account** field is empty, the agent can select from all projects that have been created for an account. Upon selection, the **Account** field is populated with the associated account.  
  When created from a project, these fields are automatically set on the Case form.  
  Cases created for a project appear in the **Cases** related list on the Customer Project form.                                                                                                         |
| Create a case for a project task               | Customer service agents and agent managers can create cases for customer project tasks.  
  When creating a case, the agent selects a task in the **Project Task** field on the Case form.  
  - If a project has been selected in the **Project** field, the agent can select from the project tasks that have been created for that project.  
  - If the **Project** field is empty, the agent can select from the project tasks for all projects that have been created for an account. Upon selection, the **Project** and **Account** fields are populated with the associated project and account.  
  When created from a project task, these fields are automatically set on the Case form.  
  Cases created for a project task appear in the **Cases** related list on the Customer Project form and the Customer Project Task form. |
Customer tasks

From the Customer Service Portal, external users can view projects, complete assigned tasks, and create cases for project issues with any of the following CSM external roles:

- sn_customerservice.customer
- sn_customerservice.customer_admin
- sn_customerservice.partner
- sn_customerservice.partner_admin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View projects and project details</td>
<td>Customers can view the projects created for their accounts if they have been associated with the project as a project contact. Customers have read-only access to project details on the Customer Project form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customers can also view records in the following related lists if the system administrator has configured the corresponding ACLs for each of the tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Customer Project Tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Project Change Requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Status Reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sub Projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Work Orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Project Contacts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The Work Orders related list is displayed if the following plugins are active: Field Service with Project Management (com.snc.wm_ppm) and Customer Service with Field Service Management (com.snc.csm_fsm_integration).

To view projects:

1. Click **Support** in the Customer Service Portal header.
2. Click **Projects** and select a project from the Customer Projects list.
3. View the details in the Customer Project form.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View and update project tasks</td>
<td>Customers can view project tasks for the projects that have been created for their accounts if:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• They have been associated with the project as a project contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The project tasks have been marked as Visible to customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Customers can view and update project tasks that have been assigned to them by the customer project manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To view and update project tasks:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Click My Lists in the Customer Service Portal header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Click My Project Tasks and select a task from the Customer Project Tasks list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. View the details in the Customer Project Task form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Update the Actual start date and Actual end date fields as needed and click Save.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Add a comment in the Activity field and click Post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Customers can also view tasks directly from Support &gt; Projects &gt; Project Tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete project tasks</td>
<td>When a customer completes the work for a project task, they can mark the task as complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Click My Lists in the Customer Service Portal header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Click My Project Tasks and select a task from the Customer Project Tasks list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click Mark Complete in the Actions widget.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Create cases for projects and project tasks | Customers can create cases for projects and project tasks if they have been associated with a project as a project contact. Customers can create cases in two ways:  
• From a project or project task form.  
• From the Case menu in the Customer Service Portal header. |
| To create a case from a project or project task: | 1. Navigate to a Customer Project form or a Customer Project Task form.  
2. Click **Create Case** in the Actions widget.  
3. Fill in the fields on the Create Project Case record producer. The **Project** and **Project Task** fields are auto populated.  
4. Click **Submit**. |
| To create a case from the Case menu.       | 1. Click **Case** in the Customer Service Portal header and select **Create Project Case**.  
2. Fill in the fields on the Create Project Case record producer.  
3. Click **Submit**. |
| The Create Project Case record producer includes **Project** and **Project Task** fields. These fields are displayed if a customer has access to any of the project tasks. Project and project task selection is limited to the projects for the customer's account. | |
| View a list of cases created for the projects and project tasks for an account | Customer administrators, partner administrators, and customer case managers can see all of the cases that have been created for the projects and project tasks for an account.  
1. Click **My Lists** in the Customer Service Portal header.  
2. Click **All Cases** in the My Lists widget. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| View the project change request and project issue records created for a case | Customer contacts can view the project change request and project issue records that have been created for a case if:  
  - They have been added to a project as a project contact.  
  - The system administrator has configured the corresponding ACLs for each of the tables.  
  1. Click **My Lists** in the Customer Service Portal header.  
  2. Click **All Cases** in the My Lists widget.  
  3. Select a case from the Cases list.  
  4. View the records in the Related Records widget. |
Create an investment board on the CSM Investment Portal
Create an investment board on the CSM Investment Portal and add the desired customer service project-specific information.

Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)

2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Create New pop-up window.
   For more information about these fields, see Create an investment board.
4. Click Create.
   Once the investment board is created, it opens up in the CSM Investment Portal page.

Components installed with Customer Project Management
Several types of components are installed with the Customer Project Management feature.

Tables installed with Customer Project Management
Tables are added with activation of Customer Service Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Project</td>
<td>Stores customer projects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[customer_project]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Project Task</td>
<td>Stores customer project tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[customer_project_task]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Contact</td>
<td>Stores project contacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[project_contact]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following columns are added to the Case table:

- Customer Project
- Customer Project Task
- Issue
- Project Change Request

Assign a project task
The customer project manager can assign a customer project task to an internal user, a customer or partner contact, or a contact that has a relationships to the account.

Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)

Assigning a task to an external user enables the Visible to customer field on the Project Task form. Customers can view assigned tasks in the Project Tasks list on the Customer Service Portal. The system sends an email notification to the customer when a customer project task is assigned.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > All.
2. Click a project in the Customer Projects list.
3. Click the Project Tasks related list on the Customer Project form.
4. Click a task to open the Customer Project Task form.
5. Select a contact or partner contact in the Assigned to field.
6. Click Update.
The system sends an email notification to the assigned user.

Create a project issue for a case
The customer project manager can create project issues for cases that have been created for customer projects and project tasks.

Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)

The project manager can create one issue for a case.
1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > All.
2. Click a project in the Customer Projects list.
3. In the Cases related list, click a case.
4. Click Create Issue on the Case form.

The system creates a new issue for the project and copies the Short description and Priority from the case.
5. Fill in the details for the issue and click Save.

The system does the following after you save the issue:
• Adds the case number to the activity stream on the Issue form.
• Adds the issue number to the activity stream on the Case form.
• Adds the issue to the Issues related list on the Customer Project form.
• Adds the issue to the Issue field in the Related Records section of the Case form.

Create a project change request for a case
The customer project manager can create project change requests for cases that have been created for customer projects and project tasks.

Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)

The project manager can create one project change request for a case.
1. Navigate to Customer Service > Projects > All.
2. Click a project in the Customer Projects list.
3. In the Cases related list, click a case.
4. Click Create Project Change Request on the Case form.

The system creates a new change request for the project, copies the case short description to the Title field, and the case priority to the Priority field.
5. Fill in the details for the change request and click Save.

The system does the following after you save the change request:
• Adds the case number to the activity stream on the Project Change Request form.
• Adds the project change request number to the activity stream on the Case form.
• Adds the project change request to the Project Change Requests related list on the Customer Project form.
• Adds the project change request to the Project Change Request field in the Related Records section of the Case form.

Create a customer project from an idea
Create a customer project from an idea on the Idea Portal.

Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)

The Idea Portal provides a central location to collect, curate, and promote ideas into demand, project, epic, or story.
With the Customer Service Management integration with Project Portfolio Management, you can also create a customer project from an idea. For more information, see Idea Portal.
1. Navigate to Ideas > Idea Portal.
2. Click the title of an idea that you want to create a task for.
3. Open the idea in form view by clicking the More Options icon and selecting Open in platform.
4. In the Idea pop-up window, click Create Task.
5. In the Convert Idea to Task pop-up window, select Customer Project in the Select task type field and click OK. The system creates the project and displays the project number in an information message at the top of the Idea pop-up window. On the Customer Project form, the idea record is added to the Ideas related list.

Create a customer project from a demand
Create a customer project from a demand record.
Role required: customer project manager (it_project_manager + sn_customerservice.projectmanager)
1. Create a demand record by navigating to Demand > Demands > Create New.
2. Fill in the fields on the Demand form and click Save.
   For more information about the fields on this form, see Create a demand.
3. Open the demand record and click the Create Project related link.
4. In the Create Project pop-up window, select Customer Project in the Project class field.
5. Click OK.
   The system creates the project and displays the project number in an information message at the top of the Demand form. On the Customer Project form, the demand record is added to the Demands related list.

Integrate with Financial Management
Customer Service Management provides an integration with the Financial Management application as well as dashboards and reports.
Role required: admin
1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
3. Click Activate.

Integrating with Financial Management
Customer Service Management and Field Service Management provide an integration with the Financial Management application as well as dashboards and reports.
The Financial Management application enables you to allocate, track, and report on expenses in your organization. When the Financial Management application allocates an expense, it breaks down the expense into detailed amounts of money called allocations. These allocations can be associated with specific segments and accounts for a specific cost model. The integration with Financial Management provides cost allocations for Customer Service Management and Field Service Management.
Use these cost allocations on the Financial Management workbench, which provides financial administrators with a graphical interface to allocate expenses. Access the workbench through the Cost Transparency > Workbench module.

Plugins
Two different plugins, one for Customer Service Management and one for Field Service Management, enable the integration with Financial Management. These plugins also add dashboards based on cost allocations.

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

The Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Customer Service plugin includes demo data for FY16: Q1 through FY17: Q2. The demo data includes records with the CSFM prefix, which indicates that the records are for the Customer Service Management integration with Financial Management. Activating the plugin adds these records to the Case (sn_customerservice_case) table.

Note: The Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Field Service Management plugin does not include demo data.

Cost models

A cost model is a set of rules, methods, and metrics that determines the allocation of expenses. Select cost models on the Data Definitions tab of the Financial Management workbench.

For Customer Service Management, the integration with Financial Management provides these cost models:

- **CSM Allocation Model for Cust Account**: allocates expenses for individual B2B customer accounts.
- **CSM Allocation Model for Channels**: allocates expenses for communication channels.

For Field Service Management, the integration with Financial Management provides this cost model:

- **FSM Allocation Model for Company**: allocates expenses for companies.

Segment hierarchy

All accounts in the chart of accounts belong to segments which are structured in a hierarchy. This hierarchy enables the roll-up of expenses from lower-level accounts and segments to higher-level accounts and segments.

- **CSM Allocation Model for Cust Account** uses this segment hierarchy: Assignment Group > Product > Customer Account.
- **CSM Allocation Model for Channels** uses this segment hierarchy: Assignment Group > Product > Channels.
- **FSM Allocation Model for Company** uses this segment hierarchy: Assignment Group > Product > Company.

Account buckets

Use account buckets to categorize cleansed expenses before assigning them to accounts and segments. Account buckets can be organized in parent-child relationships so that several child buckets can refer to a single parent bucket.

The Customer Support and Field Service Support account buckets include:

- Facilities
- IT Chargeback
- Payroll and Labor Expenses
- Professional Fees & Services
- Supplies
- Training
- Other expenses
Allocation metrics

Allocation metrics are rules that you can create and use to split an allocation based on dimensions such as:

• Number of Customer Service cases: allocate expenses to a product based on the number of cases closed in a fiscal period.
• Total Customer Service case resolution time: allocate expenses to a product based on the total hours worked on cases closed in a fiscal period.
• Number of Field Service work order tasks: allocates expenses to a product based on the number of work order tasks completed in a fiscal period.
• Total work order completion time: allocates expenses to a product based on the total hours worked on tasks completed in a fiscal period.

For Customer Service Management, the integration with Financial Management provides these allocation metrics:

• CSM Allocate to Assignment Groups by Headcount
• CSM Allocate to Product by # Cases
• CSM Allocate to Product by Case Time Worked Duration
• CSM Rollup from AssgGrp to Product by # Cases
• CSM Rollup from AssgGrp to Product by Case Time Worked Duration
• CSM Rollup from Product to Account by # Cases
• CSM Rollup from Product to Account by Case Time Worked Duration

For Field Service Management, the integration with Financial Management provides these allocation metrics:

• FSM Allocate to Assignment Groups by Headcount
• FSM Allocate to Product by # Work Orders
• FSM Rollup from Product to Company by # Work Orders

User roles

These roles can access the Financial Management workbench (Cost Transparency > Workbench):

• cost_transparency_analyst
• cost_transparency_admin
• financial_mgmt_user
• financial_mgmt_admin

Dashboards and reports

The Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Customer Service and Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Field Service Management plugins provide the following dashboards:

• CSM Financials Dashboard
• FSM Financials Dashboard

Navigate to Performance Analytics > Dashboards and select the desired dashboard from the Dashboard menu.

Integrate with Adobe Experience Manager

Deliver a pre-integrated web experience for external customers by using ServiceNow components in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM).
This task provides the general steps to integrate Customer Service Management and Knowledge Management capabilities with AEM. For more information, see Integrating with Adobe Experience Manager.

1. **Install the ServiceNow Components for AEM package** on your AEM instance.
   
   You can download the package by using the direct download URL or accessing the package at https://experience.adobe.com/downloads. For more information, see Experience Cloud Software Distribution in the Adobe Help Center.

2. **Configure authentication settings for ServiceNow services and components in AEM.**

3. **Configure integration settings for ServiceNow services and components in AEM.**

**Integrating with Adobe Experience Manager**

Extend Customer Service Management and Knowledge Management capabilities through ServiceNow components in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) to deliver a pre-integrated web experience for external customers.

When working with a website built on AEM, you can embed Customer Service Management and Knowledge Management capabilities related to customer service cases and knowledge articles respectively within the website. The integration with AEM provides the following advantages:

- Use ServiceNow knowledge and case components on your branded websites built on AEM.
- Ensure a unified and consistent experience for end users to access information when and where they need it.

**Supported AEM versions**

Beginning with AEM 6.5, you can add knowledge and case components to pages of your websites built on AEM and use pages available within the ServiceNow site in AEM as a reference to design your website content. For more information, see ServiceNow pages in Adobe Experience Manager, Display ServiceNow knowledge articles on an Adobe Experience Manager page, and Display ServiceNow cases on an Adobe Experience Manager page.

**ServiceNow Components for AEM package**

Install the ServiceNow Components for AEM package on your AEM instance. You can download the package by using the direct download URL or accessing the package at https://experience.adobe.com/downloads. For more information, see Experience Cloud Software Distribution in the Adobe Help Center.

After you install the package, configure authentication and integration settings for ServiceNow services and components in AEM. For more information, see Connect Adobe Experience Manager to ServiceNow using an OIDC provider and Adobe Experience Manager integration setup.

**Connect Adobe Experience Manager to ServiceNow using an OIDC provider**

Enable logging in to both the Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) instance of your website and the ServiceNow instance using a third-party OpenID Connect (OIDC) provider that supports both OIDC and single sign-on (SSO) protocols.

Select Okta or Microsoft Azure as the third-party OIDC provider that supports both OIDC and single sign-on (SSO) protocols.

**Note:** Your AEM instance must use the selected third-party OIDC provider as the SSO provider.

This task provides the general steps to set up the authentication.

1. **Register ServiceNow with a third-party OIDC provider.**
2. **Add the OIDC provider to your ServiceNow instance.**
3. **Configure the OIDC provider details in your AEM instance.**
Register ServiceNow with a third-party OIDC provider

Register ServiceNow as a web application with a third-party OIDC provider to validate the identity of a user using a JSON Web Token (JWT).

ServiceNow identifies an end user by sending the JWT token containing the end user information to the OIDC provider. The process to register ServiceNow with the OIDC provider varies depending on the provider.

Note:
This topic uses Okta as an example, but you can substitute the details of your own OIDC provider.

Role required: Okta account (Third-party OIDC provider account)

1. Log in to your Okta account.
2. Select the Applications menu.
3. On the Applications page, click Add Application.
5. Fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application label</td>
<td>Unique application name for your ServiceNow instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authorization Code</td>
<td>Selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh Token</td>
<td>Selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login redirect URIs</td>
<td>Callback URL of your AEM instance. The URL structure is: https://&lt;AEM-instance&gt;:&lt;AEM_port&gt;/bin/now/auth/callback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login initiated</td>
<td>App Only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click Done.

In the Client Credentials section, record the Client ID and Client secret values for when you set up Okta as an OAuth provider in your ServiceNow and AEM instances.

Add an OIDC provider to the ServiceNow instance

Add a third-party OIDC provider service to your ServiceNow instance to verify the identity of end users.

You must have configured the third-party OIDC provider service as an OAuth provider and recorded your Client ID and Client secret values. For more information, see Register ServiceNow with a third-party OIDC provider.

Role required: oauth_admin

1. Navigate to System OAuth > Application Registry.
2. Set up OAuth for your ServiceNow instance.
   - Click New, select Configure an OIDC provider to verify ID tokens, and then fill in the Application Registries form.
   - Select an existing template for your OIDC provider (Okta or Microsoft Azure), and then either accept the default values in the Application Registries form or modify them.

Note: OIDC provider templates are available after loading demo data with the OAuth 2.0 plugin. For more information, see Configure an OAuth OIDC provider on the Now Platform.
### Application Registries form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Unique name for the OAuth provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client ID</td>
<td>Client ID you recorded earlier for your ServiceNow instance registered in the third-party OIDC server. The ServiceNow instance uses the client ID when requesting an access token.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Secret</td>
<td>Client secret you recorded earlier for your ServiceNow instance registered in the third-party OIDC server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAuth OIDC Provider Configuration</td>
<td>OIDC provider with which you registered your ServiceNow instance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Select the record of your OIDC provider configuration or create another configuration, if not available, to ensure that the **OIDC Metadata URL** field value is correct and the **User Claim** and **User Field** fields are mapped correctly.

3. Save your changes.
   - For an existing template, click **Update**.
   - For a new template, click **Submit**.

### Configure OIDC provider details in Adobe Experience Manager

Configure the third-party OIDC provider details in your Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) instance to access the ServiceNow components as an authenticated user.

You must have configured the third-party OIDC provider service as an OAuth provider and recorded your **Client ID** and **Client secret** values (see Register ServiceNow with a third-party OIDC provider).

Role required: AEM administrator

Configure the OIDC provider details in AEM to enable the AEM users to access the ServiceNow instance as authenticated users. If you don't configure the OIDC provider details in AEM, an AEM user is considered as a public user when accessing the ServiceNow instance.

1. Access the web console in AEM with a URL in the following format: `https://<AEM_hostname>:<AEM_port>/system/console/configMgr`.
2. Search for **ServiceNow OAuth Configuration**.
3. In the **Name** column, click the **ServiceNow OAuth Configuration** link.
4. Provide values for the configuration settings.

### ServiceNow OAuth Configuration settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServiceNow Client ID</td>
<td>Client ID you recorded when setting up the OAuth for your ServiceNow instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceNow Client Secret</td>
<td>Client secret you recorded when setting up the OAuth for your ServiceNow portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field | Description
--- | ---
OAuth Provider Auth URL | Authorization server end point used for obtaining the authorization code. In the following URL structure, substitute the domain name of the authorization server of your third-party OIDC provider. Example: `https://<auth_server_domain>/oauth2/authorize`  
OAuth Provider Access Token URL | Authentication server endpoint used for exchanging the authorization code for an access token. In the following URL structure, substitute the domain name of the authorization server of your third-party OIDC provider. Example: `https://<auth_server_domain>/oauth2/token`  
Authorization request scope | List of scopes for limiting the authorization access. **Note:** The default value `openid email profile offline_access` works for most OIDC providers (for example, Okta).  
User property to store refresh token | Name of the user property to store the authentication refresh token. **Note:** Once filled, this token is used to obtain access tokens for that user in all future requests.

5. Click **Save**.

### Adobe Experience Manager integration setup

You have to set up your ServiceNow services and components to integrate with your Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) instance.

### Settings to enable use of ServiceNow services in AEM

You can define the following types of configuration settings for ServiceNow services in AEM:

- Authentication settings with a third-party OIDC provider (see [Configure OIDC provider details in Adobe Experience Manager](#)).
- Specific settings for ServiceNow services (see [Define OSGi configuration settings for ServiceNow services](#)).
- Log file settings for ServiceNow services (see [Configure log file settings for ServiceNow services in Adobe Experience Manager](#)).
Settings for using ServiceNow components in AEM

To use the Knowledge API endpoint on your AEM instance, you have to define the cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) rule on your ServiceNow instance. For more information, see Define a cross-origin resource sharing rule to access ServiceNow API endpoints from AEM.

Define OSGi configuration settings for ServiceNow services
Define OSGi configuration settings for ServiceNow services used by ServiceNow components in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM).

Role required: AEM administrator

1. Access the web console in AEM using a URL in the following format: https://<AEM_hostname>:<AEM_port>/system/console/configMgr.
2. Search for ServiceNow Configuration.
3. In the Name column, click the ServiceNow Configuration link.
4. Provide values for the configuration settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ServiceNow Configuration settings</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Instance URL</td>
<td>Complete URL of your ServiceNow instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Bases</td>
<td>System identifier (sys_id) of a knowledge base that contains associated knowledge articles. For multiple entries, separate the knowledge bases with commas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: A blank value indicates articles from all knowledge bases in your ServiceNow instance are accessible to a user with appropriate permissions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Articles in All Languages</td>
<td>Option to show knowledge articles in all languages for ServiceNow components.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Save.

Configure log file settings for ServiceNow services in Adobe Experience Manager
Configure log file settings for ServiceNow services in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) to generate debug logs to help identify issues in the authentication process.

Role required: AEM administrator

1. Access the web console in AEM using a URL in the following format: https://<AEM_hostname>:<AEM_port>/system/console/configMgr.
2. Navigate to OSGi > Configuration.
4. Verify the default field values, or fill in your own values for a custom configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Logger configuration settings</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
<td><strong>Value</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log Level</td>
<td>Debug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Log File</td>
<td>Path of the ServiceNow log file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message Pattern</td>
<td>Message-format pattern for formatting log messages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Define a cross-origin resource sharing rule to access ServiceNow API endpoints from AEM

Define a cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) rule on your ServiceNow instance to access endpoints of the Knowledge Management REST API, Case API, or CSM Attachment API from your Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) instance.

Ensure that you have configured the API for which you are defining the CORS rule.

- Activate the Knowledge API plugin (sn_km_api) to use the Knowledge Management REST API endpoints for knowledge articles. For more information, see Knowledge Management REST API.
- Activate the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) to use the Case API endpoints for customer service cases. For more information, see Case API.
- Configure the glide.rest.attachment_csm_api.allowed_tables system property and include the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table to use the CSM Attachment API end points for case attachments. For more information, see CSM Attachment API.

Role required: web_service_admin

1. Navigate to System Web Services > CORS Rules.
2. Click New.
3. On the CORS Rule form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORS Rule form</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name for identifying your CORS rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REST API</td>
<td>REST API this CORS rule applies to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>AEM instance that this CORS rule applies to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max age</td>
<td>Number of seconds to cache the client session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. In the HTTP Methods related list, select HTTP methods to send a request to a web service provider.
   - For knowledge articles, select GET.
   - For customer service cases, select GET, PUT, POST.
   - For case attachments, select GET, POST, DELETE.

5. For Case API, in the Exposed headers field of the HTTP Headers related list, enter X-Total-Count.

6. Click Submit.
Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM

You can define the look and feel of the ServiceNow components in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) by specifying colors for them.

As an AEM administrator, you can either modify the color variables preconfigured for all components or use the `initializeCSS` function for customizing the colors of a particular component using a custom CSS class. You specify the custom CSS class for a component in the Custom CSS Class property. For more information, see Display ServiceNow knowledge articles on an Adobe Experience Manager page and Display ServiceNow cases on an Adobe Experience Manager page.

**Note:** By default, the ServiceNow components are configured using the Bootstrap v4.4.1 CSS styles. If your AEM page uses a different Bootstrap version, the ServiceNow components style is overridden by the page style.

Modify the color theme for all ServiceNow components in AEM

Set the color theme for the ServiceNow components in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) all at once by configuring the color variables.

Role required: AEM administrator

**Note:** By default, the ServiceNow components are configured using the Bootstrap v4.4.1 CSS styles. If your AEM page uses a different Bootstrap version, the ServiceNow components style is overridden by the page style.

1. **Open CRXDE Lite in your browser.**
   For example, in your browser, enter the URL in the format `http://<AEM_hostname>:<AEM_port>/crx/de`. The default URL for CRXDE Lite is `http://localhost:4502/crx/de`.

2. Navigate to `apps > servicenow-components > clientlibs > clientlib-common`.
3. Open the `variables.less` file.
4. Configure the color variables available for the HTML elements in the ServiceNow components.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color setting</th>
<th>Variable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text content</td>
<td>@text-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperlinks</td>
<td>@link-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badges</td>
<td>@badge-text-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badges background</td>
<td>@badge-background-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary color for visual emphasis</td>
<td>@primary-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color complementary to the primary color, for visual emphasis</td>
<td>@secondary-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component titles</td>
<td>@title-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary button text</td>
<td>@primary-btn-text-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary button background</td>
<td>@primary-btn-bkg-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary button text</td>
<td>@secondary-btn-text-color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary button background</td>
<td>@secondary-btn-bkg-color</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You specify a color for a variable in one of the following ways:
• Color name
  For example, red
• HEX value
  For example, #FF0000
• RGB value
  For example, rgb(255,0,0)
• var function
  Use the var function to specify a custom property for a color. For example, var(--gray-dark).

5. From the CRXDE Lite menu, click Save All to save the changes on the AEM server.

Modify the color theme for a ServiceNow component in AEM

Override the color theme for a ServiceNow component in Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) by using the initialize function.

Role required: AEM administrator

The color variables you specify in the variables.less file are applied to all ServiceNow components in AEM.

You can override the default colors for a particular component by setting the color variables for the component in the initializeCSS function.

Note: By default, the ServiceNow components are configured using the Bootstrap v4.4.1 CSS styles. If your AEM page uses a different Bootstrap version, the ServiceNow components style is overridden by the page style.

1. Open CRXDE Lite in your browser.

   For example, in your browser, enter the URL in the format http://<AEM_hostname>[:<AEM_port>]/crx/de. The default URL for CRXDE Lite is http://localhost:4502/crx/de.

2. Navigate to apps > servicenow-components > clientlibs > clientlib-common.

3. Open the variables.less file.

4. Specify the initializeCSS function for a component in the format
   <component_type>;<class_name>;<color_variable_1>;<color_variable_2>;<color_variable_n>

   • component_type: The type of the component on which you want to apply the custom color theme, for example, articlelist, articleview, casecards, and so on.
   • class_name: The Custom CSS class you enter in the Custom CSS class property of your component.
   • color_variable_1, color_variable_2, color_variable_n: The color variables you specify for the HTML elements in a component. For more information, see the Color variable settings table.

Use the following sample code as a reference for color styling at the component level.

```css
initialize(@componentType:articlelist;@className:now-article-list;@text-color:red; @link-color:orange;@badge-text-color:blue;@badge-background-color:yellow;@title-color:magenta;@secondary-color:indigo);.initialize(@componentType:articleview; @className:now-article-view;@text-color:red; @link-color:orange;@badge-text-color:blue;@badge-background-color:yellow;@secondary-color:indigo);.initialize(@componentType:casecards; @className:now-case-cards; @text-color:red; @link-color:orange;@badge-text-color:blue;@badge-background-color:yellow;@title-color:magenta;@secondary-color:indigo);.initialize(@componentType:caselist; @className:now-case-list; @text-color:red; @link-color:orange;@title-color:magenta;@primary-color:green;@secondary-btn-text-color:white;@secondary-btn-bkg-color:black);```
5. From the CRXDE Lite menu, click **Save All** to save the changes on the AEM server.

**ServiceNow pages in Adobe Experience Manager**

Use pages provided on the ServiceNow site in the Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) as a reference to organize your AEM-based websites and provide a consistent user experience.

An AEM page houses containers, which in turn contain components. By manipulating the layout of the page and the components within it, you can construct a consistent user experience.

By default, ServiceNow sites and pages aren’t accessible to public users, which are anonymous AEM users who are not logged in. For information about how to publish them and make them available to anonymous AEM users, see the Adobe documentation topic *Publishing pages.*

**ServiceNow page in AEM for knowledge articles**

The following table shows default pages available in the ServiceNow site in AEM and the knowledge components available on these pages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ServiceNow pages in AEM for knowledge articles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Page</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ServiceNow Article Search                     | Reference page to view knowledge article search results. | • Search Box  
• Search Results |
| ServiceNow Article View                       | Reference page to view a knowledge article.             | Article View                                      |
| ServiceNow Article List                       | Reference page to browse and search for knowledge articles. | • Search Box  
• Article List (one each for featured articles and the most viewed articles lists) |
ServiceNow page in AEM for customer service cases

The following table shows default pages available in the ServiceNow site in AEM and the case components available on these pages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Case components on the page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServiceNow Create Case</td>
<td>Reference page to create a customer service case.</td>
<td>New Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceNow Case View</td>
<td>Reference page to view a customer service case.</td>
<td>Case View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceNow Case List</td>
<td>Reference page to browse and search for customer service cases.</td>
<td>Case List</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ServiceNow home page in AEM

The following table shows default home page available in the ServiceNow site in AEM and the knowledge and case components available on this page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>ServiceNow components on the page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ServiceNow Home       | Reference page to browse and search for knowledge articles and create a case. | • Article List  
                        | • Search Box 
                        | • Case Cards                   |

Display ServiceNow knowledge articles on an Adobe Experience Manager page

Use knowledge components available within Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) to access knowledge bases from the ServiceNow instance and display associated knowledge articles on an AEM-based website.

- Activate the Knowledge API plugin (sn_km_api) to use the Knowledge Management REST API endpoints for knowledge articles. For more information, see Knowledge Management REST API.
- Define the cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) rule to access the Knowledge API from your AEM instance. For more information, see Define a cross-origin resource sharing rule to access ServiceNow API endpoints from AEM.

Role required: AEM author

1. Log in to your AEM instance.
2. Open your AEM page in Edit mode.
3. Open the components browser.
4. From the All list, select ServiceNow.
5. Drag a component to the required position on the page.
**Note:** If components are not available, update your template configuration to include the knowledge components. In addition, you must modify the properties of the site template and add each knowledge article component to the list of allowed components.

6. **Open the** component dialog for editing. **Note:** By default, the knowledge components in the Edit mode of a page in AEM aren’t accessible by public users, which are anonymous AEM users who are not logged in. To change the default behavior, you must enable the **Public** property for each knowledge component.

7. **Set the Search Results component properties to display knowledge search results that include a list of knowledge articles from the knowledge bases in the ServiceNow instance.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Option to make the content of the component visible to public users. When selected, the knowledge articles available to unauthenticated users included in the component are available to all users, including public users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Bases</td>
<td>System identifier (sys_id) of a knowledge base that contains associated knowledge articles. Click <strong>Add field</strong> and enter the sys_id of a knowledge base. You can add multiple entries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you don’t add a value, knowledge bases from the OSGi configuration settings are used for ServiceNow components.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Enables the display of knowledge article search results in different languages. Select one of the following options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Select from ServiceNow OSGi Configuration:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the OSGi configuration for ServiceNow components. This value is selected by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Restrict to portal language:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the AEM site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>All languages:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in all languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search parameter</td>
<td>Parameter key for the search query. Example: <strong>kb_query</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary fields</td>
<td>Metadata of a knowledge article that appear with the article. Metadata include information such as the author, the date the article was last updated, and the date the article was last viewed. For multiple entries, separate the fields by commas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <strong>author,sys_view_count,sys_updated_on,rating</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. Set the Search Box component properties to display a search box for users to enter search text and find knowledge articles in the ServiceNow instance matching the search text.

**Note:** Triggering a search from the Search Box component leads to the Search Results component.

### Search Box component properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Option to make the content of the component visible to public users. When selected, the knowledge articles available to unauthenticated users included in the component are available to all users, including public users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placeholder</td>
<td>Hint text displayed in the search box to provide information about what users can search for or conditions for the search text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Bases</td>
<td>System identifier (sys_id) of a knowledge base that contains associated knowledge articles. Click <strong>Add field</strong> and enter the sys_id of a knowledge base. You can add multiple entries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If you don't add a value, knowledge bases from the OSGi configuration settings are used for ServiceNow components.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Enables the display of knowledge articles in different languages in the search box. Select one of the following options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Select from ServiceNow OSGi Configuration:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the OSGi configuration for ServiceNow components. This value is selected by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Restrict to portal language:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the AEM site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>All languages:</strong> Knowledge articles are displayed in all languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the search page to redirect to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: /content/NOWApp/now_article_search.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search parameter</td>
<td>Parameter key for the search query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: kb_query</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typeahead</td>
<td>Option to enable typeahead search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typeahead search results count</td>
<td>Maximum number of articles to include in the typeahead search results list. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the article page to redirect to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: /content/NOWApp/now_article_view.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS class</td>
<td>Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see <a href="#">Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Set the Article View component properties to display knowledge articles and their attachments, if available, from a ServiceNow instance.

### Article View component properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Option to make the content of the component visible to public users. When selected, the knowledge articles available to unauthenticated users included in the component are available to all users, including public users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article parameter</td>
<td>Name of the URL query parameter for the article number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: kb_article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary fields</td>
<td>Metadata of a knowledge article that appear with the article. Metadata include information such as the author, the date the article was last updated, and the date the article was last viewed. For multiple entries, separate the fields by commas. Example: author,sys_view_count,sys_updated_on,rating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language parameter</td>
<td>Name of the URL query parameter containing the requested language for a knowledge article. Example: kb_lang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS class</td>
<td>Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Set the Article List component properties to display a list of knowledge articles depending on the list criteria.

**Article List component properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Option to make the content of the component visible to public users. When selected, the knowledge articles available to unauthenticated users included in the component are available to all users, including public users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Title corresponding to the articles list that appears as the component header. Example: Most viewed articles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Bases</td>
<td>System identifier (sys_id) of a knowledge base that contains associated knowledge articles. Click Add field and enter the sys_id of a knowledge base. You can add multiple entries. Note: If you don't add a value, knowledge bases from the OSGi configuration settings are used for ServiceNow components.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Enables the display of a knowledge article in different languages when viewing the article. Select one of the following options: • Select from ServiceNow OSGi Configuration: Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the OSGi configuration for ServiceNow components. This value is selected by default. • Restrict to portal language: Knowledge articles are displayed in the language configured in the AEM site. • All languages: Knowledge articles are displayed in all languages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property | Description
--- | ---
Secondary fields | Metadata of a knowledge article that appear with the article. Metadata include information such as the author, the date the article was last updated, and the date the article was last viewed. For multiple entries, separate the fields by commas.
| Example: `author,sys_view_count,sys_updated_on,rating`
Criteria | List of criteria for the knowledge articles list. Select one of the following options:
- **Featured**: List of featured knowledge articles based on the keywords configured in the `glide.knowman.default_keyword` property. For information about featured articles, see Add a knowledge article to featured content and Knowledge properties.
- **Most Viewed**: List of knowledge articles with the most views.
Article count | Maximum number of articles to include in the articles list. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1.
Article page URL | Relative URL of the article page to redirect to.
| Example: `/content/NOWApp/now_article_view.html`
Hide component when empty | Option to hide the component when there are no knowledge articles to display.
Custom CSS class | Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM.

**Display ServiceNow cases on an Adobe Experience Manager page**

Use case components available within Adobe Experience Manager (AEM) to access customer service cases from the ServiceNow instance and display them on an AEM-based website.

Define the cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) rule to access the Case API and CSM Attachment API from your AEM instance. For more information, see Define a cross-origin resource sharing rule to access ServiceNow API endpoints from AEM.

Role required: AEM author

The Case REST API enables you to create, retrieve, and update customer service case records. For more information, see Case API.

The CSM Attachment API enables you to upload, download, and remove attachments associated with customer service cases and to retrieve attachment metadata. For more information, see CSM Attachment API.

1. Log in to your AEM instance.
2. Open your AEM page in Edit mode.
3. Open the components browser.
4. From the All list, select ServiceNow.
5. Drag a component to the required position on the page.

**Note:** If components are not available, update your template configuration to include the case components. In addition, you must modify the properties of the site template and add each case component to the list of allowed components.

6. Open the **component dialog for editing**.

**Note:** The case components in the Edit mode of a page in AEM are accessible to all users, including public users. Public users are anonymous AEM users who are not logged in.

7. Set the **Case Cards component properties** to display all open customer service cases from your ServiceNow instance as column cards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Title of this component that appears on the AEM page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label parameters</td>
<td>Comma-separated label parameters for Case [sn_customerservice_case] table columns. Each parameter is specified in the format <code>label:column</code>. Where <code>label</code> is displayed on the component and <code>column</code> is the name of a column from the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table. Example: <code>Number:number,Priority:priority,Product:product</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case list page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the case list page to redirect to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>/content/servicenow/en/now_case_list.html</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case view page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the case view page to redirect to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: <code>/content/servicenow/en/now_case_view.html</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide component for no cases</td>
<td>Option to hide the component when there are no cases to display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS class</td>
<td>Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Set the **New Case component properties** for users to create a customer service case in your ServiceNow instance from your AEM page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Title of this component that appears on the AEM page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description label</td>
<td>Label for the field to enter a brief description of the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description label</td>
<td>Label for the field to enter a description of the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product label</td>
<td>Semicolon-separated parameters to define the label and the placeholder text for the product list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset label</td>
<td>Semicolon-separated parameters to define the label and the placeholder text for the asset list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of list items</td>
<td>Maximum number of items to include in the product and asset lists. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show assets</td>
<td>Option to display the asset list on the component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case list page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the case list page to redirect to. Example: /content/servicenow/en/now_case_list.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case view page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the case view page to redirect to. Example: /content/servicenow/en/now_case_view.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> You need to enter a value for this property to navigate to the case view page from the Case created window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment file size limit in MB</td>
<td>Maximum size limit for an attachment file that can be added to a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS class</td>
<td>Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Set the Case View component properties to display customer service cases and any comments and attachments, if available, from a ServiceNow instance.

**Case View component properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case parameter</td>
<td>Name of the URL query parameter for the case number. Example: case_no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label parameters</td>
<td>Comma-separated label parameters for Case [sn_customerservice_case] table columns. Each parameter is specified in the format label:column. Where label is displayed on the component and column is the name of a column from the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table. Example: Number:number,Priority:pri...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities count</td>
<td>Maximum number of activities such as comments and attachments to be displayed on the Activity tab. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment file size limit in MB</td>
<td>Maximum size limit for an attachment file that can be added to a case. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article page URL</td>
<td>Relative URL of the article page to redirect to. Example: /content/servicenow/en/now_article_view.html Note: If an article link is included in a case, you need to enter a value for this property to navigate to the knowledge article view page from the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom CSS class</td>
<td>Custom CSS class for applying custom styles to this component. For more information, see Customizing the colors of ServiceNow components in AEM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Set the Case List component properties to display a list of customer service cases.

Case List component properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Title of this component that appears on the AEM page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label parameters</td>
<td>Comma-separated label parameters for Case [sn_customerservice_case] table columns. Each parameter is specified in the format label:column. Where label is displayed on the component and column is the name of a column from the Case [sn_customerservice_case] table. Example: Number:number,Priority:priority,Product:product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case count</td>
<td>Maximum number of cases to display on the component. Use the increment or decrement icons to increase or decrease the values. You can also manually enter a value. The value must be greater than 1. The maximum value you can enter for this field is 50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show create case</td>
<td>Option to display the button to create a case on the component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create case button label</td>
<td>Label for the button to create a case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Integrate with Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)

Customer Service Management provides an integration with Computer Telephony Integration (CTI). This integration enables the Customer Service application to support inbound and outbound telephone calls.

Role required: admin

Customer service agents can do the following with CTI:

- Make an outgoing call to a phone number.
- Receive an incoming call from a phone number or from another user within the system.
- Transfer a call to another user within the system.
- Place a call on mute.
- Set their availability status.

CTI does not require any specific user role except the OpenFrame user (sn_openframe_user) role. Roles are based on the application using CTI.

Navigate to Application > Module.

OpenFrame overview

OpenFrame provides a communication frame that customer service agents use to place and receive customer calls. Use OpenFrame to integrate telephony systems into the Now Platform®. Use the OpenFrame API to communicate between the Now Platform and the domain opened in the OpenFrame window.

OpenFrame includes these components:

- TopFrame, a ServiceNow application.
- OpenFrame API, which gets sourced from the partner application. This API communicates with TopFrame and controls the OpenFrame visual features.

The location of the API is https://[servicenow instance]/scripts/openframe/1.0.5/openFrameAPI.min.js. This minified version includes other needed libraries and should be used for integration.

For API reference, you can use the un-minified version: https://[servicenow instance]/scripts/openframe/1.0.5/openFrameAPI.js. This version cannot be used directly for integration purposes.

Note:

- To stay current with reference to the OpenFrame library, use the following resource URI: https://[servicenow instance]/scripts/openframe/latest/openFrameAPI.min.js.
Using the OpenFrame window

OpenFrame provides support for embedded and contextual phone conversations, including:

- Context identification: incoming calls maximize the OpenFrame window and display details about the caller, including the account, contact or consumer name, and phone number.
- Links to forms: use the openFrameAPI (openServiceNowForm) to create links to forms. When an incoming call is received, an agent can click the account, contact, consumer, or case number in the OpenFrame window to open the corresponding record.
  - In Agent Workspace, records open in either a primary tab or a sub-tab depending on the tab configuration.
  - In the platform interface, records open in TopFrame (i.e., the current page).
- Click-to-call capability: click phone number fields to make a call.
  - In Agent Workspace, agents can click phone number fields on forms and in the Customer 360 ribbon component to make a call.
  - In the platform interface, agents can click the phone icon next to the Contact or Consumer fields.
    - If a contact or consumer has one phone number, the call is placed to that number.
    - If a contact or consumer has more than one phone number, a dialog box displays the available numbers. Click a number to place the call.

- OpenFrame window actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open the window</td>
<td>In Agent Workspace, click the phone icon:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In the navigation bar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Next to the Contact or Consumer fields on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In the platform interface, click the phone icon:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• In the banner frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Next to the Contact or Consumer fields on the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>With the admin role, you can configure the phone icon. For more information,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>see CTI integration with the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide the window</td>
<td>Click the X in the OpenFrame window header.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The OpenFrame window remains on top of other forms or pages until hidden.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expand or collapse the window</td>
<td>Click the + / – buttons in the OpenFrame window header (if Enable collapsed view is set to True in the OpenFrame configuration).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>When collapsed, agents can still access call control actions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move the window</td>
<td>Click and drag the OpenFrame window header.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using OpenFrame in Agent Workspace

In Agent Workspace, you can integrate OpenFrame with the Interaction Management System (IMS) and interaction records. This allows agents to manage the phone interaction life cycle. For more information, see *Integration with Interaction Management System (IMS)*.

### Creating an OpenFrame configuration

With the admin role, you can create or modify an OpenFrame configuration. This configuration stores information about the OpenFrame window settings, including:

- The window height and width.
- The icon, title, and subtitle displayed in the window header.
- Users and groups that have access to the window.

### OpenFrame user roles

The OpenFrame window is available to agents with the sn.open.frame_user role and who belong to one of the user groups specified in the OpenFrame configuration.

### Computer Telephony Integration Workflows

Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) enables customer service agents to place and receive phone calls in ServiceNow applications.

The following sample workflows show how CTI can be integrated with Interaction Management System (IMS) and OpenFrame (OF) to support outgoing and incoming telephone calls.

### CTI integration for outgoing call

The following workflow describes the logical sequence of actions when an outgoing call is triggered using the OpenFrame window.
CTI Integration - Outgoing Call
Success Path

* (State - New)
New Interaction

Outgoing call
Call Accepted
Call Connection Established
Updated Interaction state
Return: Success

Hangup
Updated Interaction state
Return: Success
Create Phone Log
Update Interaction (fchannel_metadata; phoneLogSysid)
Return: Success

* (State - WIP)

* (State - Close Complete)

Reject/Busy Path

User Rejects Call
Call Rejected

Outgoing Call
Call Rejected

Create Interaction*
Interaction Sysid
Outgoing Call
CTI screen pop-up
Create Phone Log
Update Interaction (fchannel_metadata; phoneLogSysid)
Return: Success

* (State - New)
New Interaction
CTI integration for incoming call

The following workflow describes the logical sequence of actions when an incoming call is received using the OpenFrame window.
CTI and IMS for Incoming Call
(IVR Workflow)

1. **Incoming Call**
   - User inputs digits
   - IVR options

2. **Create Interaction**
   - User digits input
   - Route to agent

3. **OpenFrameShow**
   - CTI screen Pop up
   - Call Accepted

4. **Update Interaction State** (Delete, Close, Work in Progress)

5. **State Change**
   - return: success

6. **Update Interaction State** (Work in Progress, Closed, Complete)

7. **State Change**
   - return: success

8. **Hangup**
   - *State - New*
   - New Interaction

   - *State - WIP*

   - *State - Close Complete*
CTI integration for transferring call

The following workflow describes the logical sequence of actions when an incoming call is transferred to an agent.
CTI call interactions operations

CTI integration with IMS and OF uses the OpenframeInteractionUtility script. You can use the createOrUpdateInteractionForOpenframe method from the utility script to create an interaction. For more information about creating interaction using APIs, see Interaction Management API.
CTI demo implementation

Use the CTI demo implementation to test the phone communication channel between customer service agents and external customers in a non-production instance.

The CTI Softphone plugin enables softphone functions and call center capabilities. This plugin provides integration between the ServiceNow platform and the Twilio Voice service using the Notify application. This plugin can be activated any time after activating Notify.

The CTI Softphone plugin includes one OpenFrame configuration, called CTI. This configuration specifies the necessary OpenFrame window settings as well as the URL to be launched within OpenFrame.

**Note:** The included CTI configuration does not have the Default field enabled. You must enable this field to use the CTI configuration as the default.

CTI demo installation and configuration

Before the phone communication channel between customer service agents and external customers can be used, the Notify, CTI Softphone, Customer Service Management, and Openframe plugins must be activated and configured, and a Twilio Voice account must be set up.

Role required: admin

1. **Activate the Notify plugin** (com.snc.notify).
2. Set up a Twilio Voice account.
   You can create an account at https://www.twilio.com.
3. **Configure Notify to use the Twilio Voice service.**
4. **Activate the CTI Softphone plugin** (com.snc.cti).
   If you want to load the demo data for CTI Softphone, you must also activate the Customer Service CTI Demo Data plugin (com.snc.customerservice_cti_demo). This demo data includes sample workflows.
5. **Activate the Customer Service plugin** (com.sn_customerservice).
6. Activate the Openframe plugin (com.sn_openframe).
   Activating the Customer Service Management plugin automatically activates the Openframe plugin.
7. Create an OpenFrame configuration or use the default CTI configuration by enabling the Default field.

Answer an incoming call

Use the OpenFrame window to answer an incoming call.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_open_frame, or admin

The OpenFrame window displays the incoming call, including the phone number and the customer contact or consumer information.

1. Click Accept.
2. When the call is finished, click End.

Make an outgoing call

Use the OpenFrame window to make an outgoing call.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_open_frame, or admin

1. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click the phone icon in the banner frame.</td>
<td>Enter the phone number in the Number field and click Call.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Option Description

**Click the phone icon next to the Contact or Consumer fields on the Case form.**

Customer contacts and consumers can have multiple phone numbers.

- If only one phone field is populated, a call is placed to that number.
- If more than one phone field is populated, a dialog box displays the available numbers. Click the desired number to place the call and close the dialog box.

2. When finished with the call, click **End**.

#### Transfer a call

After accepting an incoming call, a customer service agent can transfer a call to another agent.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_open_frame, or admin

1. Answer an incoming call.
2. Click **Transfer**.
3. Select an agent from the drop-down list.
4. Click **Call**.

#### Set agent call status

Customer service agents can set their current call status.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_open_frame, or admin

1. Click the phone icon in the banner frame.
2. Select your availability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Available</td>
<td>The agent is available to take a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not Available</td>
<td>The agent is not available to take a call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busy</td>
<td>The agent is currently on a call with a customer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Wrap Up  | The agent is updating case information after completing a call.  
After completing a call and the subsequent wrap up, an agent must manually change the status from **Wrap Up** to **Available**.|

The **Presence** field in the **OpenFrame > OpenFrame Agent Presence** record is updated with the availability status set for the agent.

---

**Computer Telephony demo integration with the Case form**

Activating the CTI Softphone plugin enables call-related features on the Case form.

The customer service or consumer service agent can use the phone icon next to the **Contact** and **Consumer** fields on the Case form to make a phone call. The phone icon appears next to these fields if the entity record has at least one phone field (ph_number) and at least one of those phone fields contains a phone number.

The phone icon is a reference contribution that can be added to any reference field by modifying the dictionary and adding the following attribute: `ref_contributions=show_phone_customer_service`.

**Note:** If you are using a third-party provided CTI application, then you can integrate with the `show_phone` UI macro to make calls. For more information on UI macros, refer to **UI macros installed with OpenFrame**.
Click the phone icon to place a call to a consumer or a contact.

- If only one phone field is populated, a call is placed to that number.
- If more than one phone field is populated, a dialog box displays the available numbers. Click the desired number to place the call and close the dialog box.

![Select Phone Number dialog box]

Incoming and outgoing calls are logged in the Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log] table. Call details are recorded in the Activity field on the Case form and in the Phone related list.

CTI demo integration with case routing
An incoming call from a customer contact or a consumer can be routed to an available customer service agent.

Similar to the other communication channels, incoming calls from customer contacts and consumers can be routed to a specific agent by using matching rules. If an agent is not available, the call can be placed in a queue. After the agent is free, the matching call in the queue with the longest wait time is rerouted to the agent.

Case routing is enabled as an activity in a workflow. In the Call Center demo workflow (available with the Customer Service CTI Demo Data plugin), a call is forwarded to an agent after the caller either creates a new case or enters a valid number for an existing case.

If no agents are available, the call goes into a queue and remains there until an agent becomes available. If a call is in the queue for longer than 10 minutes, it is forwarded to voice mail and the caller is asked to leave a message.

Computer Telephone demo integration with tasks
The CTI Softphone component can be integrated with other task entities on the Now Platform.

A workflow can be implemented to operate on the Incident table.

**Note:** The Call Center for Incident Management workflow, a demo workflow, is available with the Customer Service CTI Demo Data plugin.

Incoming or outgoing calls are logged in the Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log] table. The call logs also appear in the activity history of the task.

**Associate a phone number with a workflow**
You can associate a Notify phone number with a workflow.

You must create a Twilio Voice account and configure Notify with Twilio Voice before you can associate a phone number with a number group and workflow.

A number group allows you to group Notify phone numbers and then share workflows across grouped numbers. For each number group, you can specify a workflow for incoming and outgoing calls.

The CTI Softphone demo data includes these sample workflows:
- Call Center, for use with the Customer Service Management application
- Call Center for Incident Management

The Call Center workflow uses several Notify workflow activities that determine workflow functionality. Each activity performs a different task, such as playing a message greeting or creating a list of user input options. Activities can succeed or fail, which can result in actions performed by other activities.

You can use the default Call Center workflow or modify this workflow as needed.
Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Notify > Numbers.
2. From the Notify Phone Numbers list, click the phone number that you want to edit.
3. Select a Notify Group that uses the incoming call workflow that you want to handle this phone number. The CTIDemo group uses the Call Center workflow for incoming calls.
4. Click Update.

Integrate with Microsoft Outlook

Customer Service Management provides an integration with Microsoft Outlook. This integration enables you to manage workflows such as creating and updating contacts and cases from within Microsoft Outlook.

Role required: admin

**Note:** You must be an Office 365 administrator to deploy the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook. This add-in is supported only for use with Microsoft Outlook 2016+ for MacOS and for Windows.

The following plugins are required to enable you to interact with the ServiceNow platform and customers from within Microsoft Outlook:

- ServiceNow Add-In for Microsoft Outlook (com.sn_outlook_addin)
- CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts)

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
2. Search for the ServiceNow Add-In for Microsoft Outlook plugin (com.sn_outlook_addin).
3. Click Activate.
4. Search for the CSM Extension for Proxy Contacts plugin (com.snc.csm_proxy_contacts).
5. Click Activate.

Configure the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook

Configure user roles and download the office add-in manifest file in order to use the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook.

Role required: admin or both sn_customerservice.proxy_contact and sn_customerservice.contact_manager roles.

1. Go to your ServiceNow instance.
2. Navigate to ServiceNow Add-Ins for Office > Office Add-In-Manifests.
3. Click ServiceNow for CSM.
4. Click Download Manifest to download the Microsoft Office add-in manifest file.
5. Provide the downloaded manifest.xml file to the account manager to enable the installation of the add-in.

Recommended add-in configuration

You can configure a single add-in icon when a user has, for example, ITSM and CSM installed. You can combine tasks such as creating incidents, creating Visual Task Boards, and creating contacts or cases into one add-in icon instead of having many different add-in icons.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager and sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

If you have both ITSM and CSM installed, the Microsoft Outlook Add-in View in ServiceNow icon was configured only for CSM. If you can configure...
an add-in for both CSM and ITSM that displays a ServiceNow for CSM/ITSM icon.

1. Go to your ServiceNow instance.
3. Download the ServiceNow for CSM/ITSM manifest file.
4. Install the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook add-in.

   Follow the procedure in Install the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook.

   Note: Once you have installed the ServiceNow add-in, the ServiceNow for CSM/ITSM icon appears in the header. Click the icon to view both the ITSM and CSM tasks.

Install the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook

Installing the ServiceNow Add-in for Microsoft Outlook enables you to interact with the ServiceNow platform from within Microsoft Outlook.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager

1. Navigate to Microsoft Outlook > Get Add-ins.
2. Select My add-ins.
3. Go to the Custom add-ins tile and select Add from file from the Add a custom add-in drop-down list.
4. Select the manifest.xml file that your admin provided.
5. Click Install.
6. Click View in ServiceNow in Microsoft Outlook and log in with the credentials your admin provided.
7. Click Allow.

You can now connect to your account on your ServiceNow instance and interact with its records from within Microsoft Outlook.

Configure a case or contact form

Creating cases or contacts in CSM Outlook uses record producers. You can customize these forms by adding new fields.

Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Service Catalog > Catalog Definitions > Record Producers.
2. Search and select **Create Case for CSM Outlook** or **Create Contact for CSM Outlook**.

3. Click **Variables** tab below.
   
   A list of fields available in the case or contact form are displayed.

4. Click **New** to create a new field.

5. Click **Submit**.

Integrate Customer Service Management with Safe Workplace applications

Customer Service Management provides an integration with ServiceNow® Safe Workplace applications. This integration helps safely reopen locations and support the health and safety of contacts and consumers after emergencies and pandemics.

**Overview**

Integrate with Safe Workplace applications, specifically with the Employee Health Screening application, to enable contacts or consumers to safely enter locations and comply with health and safety policies.

As a consumer or contact, verify that you understand and comply with the requirements and policies by filling out the Health Verification form on the Consumer or Customer Service Portal.

As a customer or consumer service agent, screen contacts or consumers entering a location to ensure compliance with entry requirements, such as a temperature check and PPE.

For more information on the Employee Health Screening application, see **Employee Health Screening**.

**Key features**

- Access for consumers and contacts to the Health Verification form on the Consumer or Customer Service Portals.
- Ability for customer or consumer service agents to screen consumers and contacts on visiting a location.

**Set up Customer Service Management with Safe Workplace applications**

Enable the integration with Safe Workplace applications to help contacts or consumers safely enter locations and comply with health and safety policies.

Ensure that the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) is installed.

If you are supporting business-to-consumer (B2C) customers, ensure that the Consumer Service Portal plugin (com.glide.service-portal.consumer-portal) is installed.

Role required: admin

This task provides the steps to integrate Customer Service Management with Safe Workplace applications.

1. **Install Employee Health Screening**.

2. Give external users access to the Health Verification form.
   
   For more information, see **Allow external users access to "Health Verification" catalog item (KB0856301)**

3. Assign the sn_imt_monitoring.monitoring_user role to a customer or consumer service agent.

4. Optional: **Configure the health screening form**.

5. Optional: Create relationships to show health screening information on Agent Workspace.

6. Optional: **Customize the Consumer or Customer Service Portal** to display a link to the Health Verification form from the portal header menu.

**Configure the health screening form**

Provide additional information to health screeners by configuring fields to add to the health screening form.
Role required: admin

1. Navigate to Service Catalog > Catalog Definition > Record Producers.
   a) In the Record Producers list, search for Screen a person in the Name column.
   b) In the Variables related list, click New.
   c) Create a variable.
   d) Click Submit.

   **Note:**
   For more information about the different types of variables and how to configure them, see Creating variables.

   e) In the Catalog Client Scripts related list, open Show additional CSM fields.
   f) Add the variable to the client script as a consumer or contact field.

   **Note:** For more information about client scripts, see Client scripts.

2. Navigate to Activity Subscriptions > Script Includes.
   a) Add the variables to the HealthScreeningUtil script include.

   **Note:** For more information on script includes, see Script includes.

Using Customer Service Management with Safe Workplace applications

Screen consumers and contacts for compliance to health and safety policies to determine whether they are able to enter a location.

There are two steps you can take to ensure that consumers and contacts enter a location safely after emergencies and pandemics.

1. As a consumer or contact, fill out a Health Verification form on the Consumer or Customer Service Portal.

   **Note:** Typically, you receive an email or a mobile notification with a link to the health verification form. Alternatively, you can search for the health verification form on the Consumer or Customer Service Portal.

2. As a health screener or customer or consumer service agent, perform a health screen.

Roles required

The users with the roles listed in the following table can use Customer Service Management with Safe Workplace applications.
### Using Customer Service Management

Agents and managers can use Customer Service Management application to create cases for customers, route cases to agents with the required skills and availability, manage customer information and case activity, and connect with other applications and departments to assist with case resolution.

### Manage customer service cases

Customers service agents and managers can create and route cases; manage customer information and interactions; monitor case activity, including case status and SLAs; and work to resolve customer issues.

### Manager tasks

Customer service managers oversee agents and agent groups, assign cases, maintain special handling notes, and manage customer account teams.

**Assign a case from the workbench**

Users with the customer service manager role can assign a case to an agent from the assignment workbench.

Role required: `sn_customerservice_manager`

1. Open a customer service case.
2. Click the Find Agents icon (🔍) next to the **Assigned to** field to open the assignment workbench.
If the case has an Assignment group, the agents from that group are listed on the workbench. If the case does not have an assigned group, no agents are displayed.

**Note:** The state of the current record determines the availability of the Find Agents icon. The icon is available for records in the Open, Awaiting, and Cancelled states, and if the user has write access for the Assigned to field. The icon is not available for records in the New or Closed states or when the Assigned to field is read-only for the current user.

3. Optional: Select an assignment group from the Group list. The list of agents updates based on the selected group.
4. Optional: Add or remove skills from the Skills list. The selected skills appear in a list below this field. The Matching Skills column updates to reflect the selected skills.

**Note:** Mandatory skills cannot be changed.

5. Optional: Sort the agents by clicking the column header for the desired matching criteria.
6. Select an agent by enabling the check box by the agent's name and then click **Assign**. The assignment workbench closes and the name of the selected agent appears in the Assigned to field on the Case form.
7. Click **Update** to save the agent assignment.

Create a special handling note
Create a special handling note for a record.

Role required: sn_shn.admin or sn_customerservice_manager

If users have the sn_customerservice_manager role, they can create a special handling note for a record.

1. Perform one of the following actions.
   - Navigate to the desired form and click the Create Special Handling Note related link.
   - Navigate to Special Handling Notes > Special Handling Notes and click New.

2. Fill in the fields, as necessary.

**Special Handling Notes form fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the note which is displayed in the Special Handling Notes list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>The detailed content of the note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display as pop-up alert</td>
<td>Displays this note in the Special Handling Notes pop-up window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The type of special handling note:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Standard:</strong> Create a note for a specific record, which you select in the Related record field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Conditional:</strong> Create a note for multiple records which meet certain conditions. Select a <strong>Table name</strong> and then create <strong>Conditions</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Priority                 | The priority of the note:  
• 1-Critical  
• 2-High  
• 3-Moderate  
• 4-Low                                                                                                                                 |
| Status                   | The status of the special handling note:  
• 1-Active: The note is active and appears in the Notes list or pop-up window.  
• 2-Inactive: The note is inactive and does not appear in the Notes list or pop-up window.  
  Inactive notes are removed from the Notes list but can be seen by navigating to Special Handling Notes > Special Handling Notes.  
• 3-Expired: The note has reached its expiration date.                                                                                                                                 |
| Effective immediately    | Check box to make the special notes effective immediately. The status is set to 1 -Active.  
Deselect this check box to display the Effective on field.                                                                                                                                 |
| Effective on             | The date on which the special notes become effective.  
Enter a date for the special notes to become effective and click Update. The status is set to 2 - Inactive until the date is reached.                                                                 |
| Expires on               | The date on which the note expires. Select a date from the calendar and click Save.  
The Deactivate Special Handling notes scheduled job runs daily at midnight and checks all active alerts.  
If the notes have reached their expiration date, it sets the status to Expired.  
The Deactivate Special Handling notes scheduled job also checks the Effective on field. If the status is active or inactive and the expiry date has been reached, it sets the status to Expired. If the status is inactive and the effective on date has been reached, it sets the status to Active. |
| Related record           | The record for which this note is created. This field appears when you select Standard in the Type field.  
If you access this form from the Create Special Handling Notes related link, the record number is automatically filled in.  
To select a record, select a Table name and a Document from the pop-up window. The tables available for selection have been configured to use special handling notes. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table name</td>
<td>The table that stores the entity for which the note is being created. This field appears when you select <strong>Conditional</strong> in the <strong>Type</strong> field. The default is the first table which has been configured to use special handling notes. After you select a table, a link is displayed with the number of matching records. This link is updated after you select one or more conditions. Click the link to display these records in a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions</td>
<td>This field appears when you select <strong>Conditional</strong> in the <strong>Type</strong> field. Use the buttons in this field to build one or more conditions on the selected table. A condition is made up of a selected field, an operator, and a value. Add conditions using the <strong>AND</strong> and <strong>OR</strong> buttons. Delete conditions by clicking the <strong>Delete</strong> button to the right of a condition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click **Submit**.

**Delete a special handling note**
Delete a special handling note for a record.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or sn_shn.admin

Users with the sn_customerservice_manager role can delete a special handling note for a record if they can delete a record for the underlying table.

1. Navigate to **Special Handling Notes > Special Handling Notes**.
   You can also delete a note from the Special Handling Notes list on a form.
2. In the Special Handling Notes list, click the note to be deleted.
3. Click **Delete**.

**Delete a special handling note from a form**
Delete a special handling note for a record from the Special Handling Notes list on the form.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or sn_shn.admin

Users with the sn_customerservice_manager role can delete a special handling note for a record if they can delete a record for the underlying table.

1. Navigate to an entity form.
2. In the Special Handling Notes list, click the red X to the left of the desired note.
   Initially, the note remains in the Special Handling Notes list and the text of the note is crossed out. The note is removed from the list after the form is saved.
3. Click **Update**.

**Create a social media profile**
Users with the customer service manager role can create a social media profile for an account, contact, or consumer.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to the **Social Profiles** related list on the desired entity form: Account, Contact, or Consumer.
2. Click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Social Profile form, as appropriate.
Field | Definition
---|---
Channel | The social media channel for this profile. For example, Twitter or Facebook.
Social ID | The user's name or handle for the selected social media channel.
Contact | If created from the Contact form, this field displays the name of the contact.
Consumer | If created from the Consumer form, this field displays the name of the consumer.
Account | If created from the Account form, this field displays the name of the account.
Profile URL | The link to the user's social media account.

4. Click Submit.

Create a social media log entry
Users with the customer service manager role can create a social media log entry for a case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

Only a manager or administrator can create an entry on the Social Logs related list, if necessary. The entries on this list are typically populated by the social integration tool.

1. Navigate to the desired Case form.
2. From the Social Logs related list, click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Social Log form, as appropriate.

Field | Definition
---|---
Social Profile | The social profile for the customer contact or consumer.
Agent | The agent participating in the conversation.
Social URL | The URL for the social conversation. Clicking this URL opens the conversation in a new tab.
Document | The related case number.
Message | The details of the conversation.

4. Click Submit.

View team members assigned to an account
View the team members for a specific account.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Customer > Accounts or Partners.
2. Select an account.
3. Select the Account Team Members related list.
   This list displays the employees who have been assigned to the team as well as their responsibilities.

Add an agent to the chat support assignment group
Agents must be added to the chat support assignment group before they can receive chat requests. This assignment group is used by the Customer Service Management chat communication channel to route chat requests.
Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to User Administration > Groups.
2. Select Customer Service Support.
3. In the Group Members related list, click Edit.
4. Select the agents that you want to receive chat requests, and move them to the Customer Service Support group members list.
5. Click Save.

Approve a service contract
Approve a service contract for a customer account.
Role required: sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to Self-Service > My Approvals.
2. Select a contract for review from the Approvals list that has a state of Requested.
3. Review the contract details in the summary at the bottom of the approval form.
4. Add review comments to the Comments field.
5. Click one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approve</td>
<td>The review state changes to Approved on the Approvals list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject</td>
<td>The review state changes to Rejected on the Approvals list. If you reject a contract, you must enter a rejection reason in the Comments field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Agent tasks
Customer service agents create cases, interact with customers, and work to resolve questions and issues. Agents have a number of tools that they can use to resolve and close cases.

Manage email tasks
In the Agent Workspace, you can compose, reply, and preview emails directly from cases within a ServiceNow instance. This capability helps you save time and effort instead of having to address and send a separate email message.

You can perform the following tasks from an agent workspace:

• Compose emails directly from activity stream
• Send email responses directly from activity stream
• Preview emails directly from a related list
• Compose emails from cases on Agent Workspace

Create a customer service case
Customer service agents and agent managers can create a case from the Customer Service Management application.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

   You can also click New from the Customer Service Cases list or click the Create New Case related link on several of the entity forms.
2. Fill in as many fields on the Create Case form as you can.

Create Case form (Customer Service Management application)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically assigned case number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>The method by which the customer initiated contact and the case was opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Web (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Social</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Local Time</td>
<td>The local time of the contact assigned to the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is automatically filled according to the time zone set on the Contact form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If no time zone is set on the Contact form, it is filled according to the <strong>Contact Timezone</strong> set on the case itself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If no time zone is set on the Contact form or in the case, the field is left blank and is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a case is closed or canceled, the <strong>Contact Local Time</strong> field is hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact time zone</td>
<td>The contact time zone if the customer is working in a different time zone for the case. It overrides the Contact form time zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If no contact local time or contact time zone is set, the instance time zone is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Once the case is created, the field is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Configure the form layout to add this field to the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The name of the company associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you select a contact in the <strong>Contact</strong> field, this field is auto-filled if the account information is available in the contact record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>The name of the customer contact for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The product model of the asset. A model is a specific version or configuration of an asset (for example, Apple Mac Book Pro).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you select an asset in the <strong>Asset</strong> field, this field is auto-filled if the associated product information is available in the asset record. A product may be associated with multiple assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>The asset tag number or the serial number of the asset associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner Contact</td>
<td>The name of the partner contact for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you select a partner in the <strong>Partner</strong> field, the list of available partner contacts is based on this selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow the sun</td>
<td>A check box to indicate that a case should be handed-off for global follow-up. If a customer enters additional comments on a <strong>Priority 1 - Critical</strong> or a <strong>Priority 2 - High</strong> case, or if the case is escalated, the flag is automatically selected. You can also manually select the check box. The activity stream on the case form is updated with any changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>A brief description of the customer question, issue, or problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opened</td>
<td>The date and time that the case was opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The assigned priority: • 1 - Critical • 2 - High • 3 - Moderate • 4 - Low (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment group</td>
<td>The assigned customer service agent group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>The assigned agent. This field displays all users with the sn_customerservice_manager and sn_customerservice_agent roles. If a group is selected in the <strong>Assignment group</strong> field, the assigned agent must belong to this group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned on</td>
<td>The data and time when the case is assigned. This field is updated when a user is added or changed in the <strong>Assigned to</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract</td>
<td>The contract number associated with this case. If you selected an asset in the <strong>Asset</strong> field, the <strong>Contract</strong> field displays those contracts that include a line item for that asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entitlement</td>
<td>The service entitlement associated with this case. The available entitlements are filtered by the settings in the <strong>Account</strong>, <strong>Contract</strong>, <strong>Product</strong>, <strong>Asset</strong>, and <strong>Channel</strong> fields. If only one entitlement is available for this case, it is automatically added to the <strong>Entitlement</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner</td>
<td>The name of the partner for this case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Click Submit.**

If available, the following information is associated with a newly created case:
- The name of the contact and the contact's company
- The product and contract details
- The SLA and entitlements

Create a customer service case of a specific type
When creating cases, customer service agents can select a specific case type.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

The types of cases that agents can create depends on case type plugin activation and configuration.

1. Create a case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM Agent Workspace</td>
<td>From the Interaction form, click Create Case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform interface</td>
<td>Navigate to Customer Service &gt; Cases &gt; Create New.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Select the case type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSM Agent Workspace</td>
<td>1. Select a Case Type in the Select Case Type popup window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. If desired, select an optional Category to narrow the available choices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click Create Case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform interface</td>
<td>Select the type of case to create from the list of available types in the interceptor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Fill in the fields on the Case form.
4. Click Save.

Assign a customer service case
Assign a case to yourself or to another customer service agent.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

The Assign to me button is only visible if the current user has the customer service agent role and is not already assigned to the case.

1. Open the desired case.
2. Assign the case to an agent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assign the case to yourself.</td>
<td>Click Assign to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign the case to another agent.</td>
<td>Select an agent in the Assigned to field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The agent's name appears in the Assigned to field. If the agent also belongs to an agent group, the group name appears in the Assignment group field.

Respond to a customer chat request
Select a chat request from the chat queue and respond to a customer's question or comment.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

1. Navigate to Connect > Connect Support.
   The Connect workspace opens in a new tab.
2. Click the support tab of the Connect sidebar, indicated by a headset icon (🎧).
   The support tab displays Queues to which you belong. It also displays your open support conversations under Cases. When a user starts a support conversation or an agent transfers a conversation to a queue, any agent who belongs to the associated queue can accept the conversation. An agent can also request to transfer a conversation directly to you.

![Support tab of Connect sidebar](https://via.placeholder.com/150)

3. Accept a conversation in one of the following ways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accept a conversation from a queue</td>
<td>Under Queues, click Accept by the queue. The conversation opens in the conversation pane and an entry appears in the Cases section of the sidebar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Accept a transfer request

Under **Cases**, click **Accept** by a transfer request.

The conversation opens in the conversation pane. The agent who transferred the conversation can stay in the conversation.

4. **Respond to the user and help resolve the issue.**
   
   By default, your messages are added to the conversation record as comments and are visible to the user.

   If necessary, you can open a new customer service case or incident from the conversation to track the issue. You can also transfer the conversation to a different agent or queue, escalate the conversation to a higher priority queue.

   **Respond to a consumer chat request**

   Select a chat request from the chat queue and respond to a customer's question or comment.

   Role required: sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_manager

1. **Navigate to Collaborate > Connect Support.**
   
   The Connect workspace opens in a new tab.

2. **Click the support tab of the Connect sidebar, indicated by a headset icon.**
   
   The support tab displays **Queues** to which you belong. It also displays your open support conversations under **Cases.** When a consumer starts a support conversation or an agent transfers a conversation to a queue, any agent who belongs to the associated queue has the option to accept the conversation. An agent can also request to transfer a conversation directly to you.

3. **Accept a conversation in one of the following ways.**
   
   - Accept a conversation from a queue
   - Accept a transfer request

4. **Respond to the consumer and help resolve the issue.**
   
   By default, your messages are added to the conversation record as comments and are visible to the user.

   If necessary, you can open a new customer service case or incident from the conversation to track the issue. You can also transfer the conversation to a different agent or queue, escalate the conversation to a higher priority queue.

   If necessary, you can open a new customer service case or incident from the conversation to track the issue. You can also transfer the conversation to a different agent or queue, or escalate the conversation to a higher priority queue. For more information, see **Connect Support.**

   **Create a customer service case from a chat**

   If a customer chat results in the need to open a case, create the case directly from the conversation.

   Role required: sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_manager
When you create a customer service case from a support conversation, the system copies the conversation history to the case activity stream as comments and work notes. Future messages are tracked in the case as well.

1. Navigate to Connect > Connect Support.
   The Connect workspace opens in a new tab.

2. Click the support tab of the Connect sidebar, indicated by a headset icon.

3. Under Cases, open a customer service conversation.

4. At the bottom of the conversation, click the menu icon to open the Connect actions menu.

5. In the Connect actions menu, select Create Case.
   In the conversation tools area to the right of the conversation, a new case form opens in a record tab. The system automatically sets certain fields based on conversation details.

6. Complete the form as necessary and click Submit.
   Any comments or work notes in the record conversation appear as comments on the incident form. Work notes do not appear in the chat for the ESS user. The chat agent can select whether a message is a Comment or Work Note in the conversation.
   a) In the record conversation, by the text entry field, click the message type icon.
   b) Select Comment or Work Note.
   c) Enter a message.

By default, record conversation messages are added as comments.

Note: If you add an attachment to a record conversation, it is attached to the underlying record as well.

The system automatically shares the record in the conversation, copies the conversation to the record activity stream, and references the record on the Chat Queue Entry [chat_queue_entry] table. Any new journal fields added to the record do not appear in the chat. The system also changes the document ID for the conversation to reference the incident number instead of the entry in the Chat Queue Entry table.

Create a consumer case from an anonymous chat
If an anonymous chat results in the need to create a consumer case, create the case directly from the conversation.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

When you create a case from a support conversation, the system copies the conversation history to the case activity stream as comments and work notes. Future messages are tracked in the case as well.

1. Respond to an anonymous chat request.
2. Chat with the user to determine the issue.
3. At the bottom of the conversation, click the menu icon to open the Connect actions menu.
4. In the Connect actions menu, select Create Case for Guest.
   In the conversation tools area to the right of the conversation, a new case form opens in a record tab. The system automatically sets certain fields based on conversation details. For a case created from a guest user chat, the Short description field displays the initial chat request from the user.
5. Complete the form as necessary and click Submit.
   The system automatically shares the record in the conversation, copies the conversation to the record activity stream, and references the record on the Chat Queue Entry [chat_queue_entry] table.

Create a consumer record from an anonymous chat
If an anonymous chat results in the need to create a consumer record, create the record directly from the conversation.

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

1. Respond to an anonymous chat request.
2. Chat with the user to determine the issue.
3. At the bottom of the conversation, click the menu icon to open the Connect actions menu.
4. In the Connect actions menu, select Create Consumer and Case for Guest.
   In the conversation tools area to the right of the conversation, a new consumer form opens in a record tab. The system automatically sets certain fields based on conversation details. For a consumer record created from a guest user chat, the **First name**, **Last name**, and **Email** fields display information from the initial chat request.

   Selecting this option creates a consumer record using the information provided on the record producer and then associates the case with the newly created consumer. The Case form is also populated with the information provided on the record producer.
5. Complete the form as necessary and click Submit.

*Create a work order for a customer service case*
Create a work order as part of the case resolution process.

sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

After a work order is created, it appears in the **Work Orders** related list on the case form. The case number is also referenced on the work order.

1. Open the desired case.
2. From the **Work Orders** related list, click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the **Work Order form**.
4. Click Update.

*Create a consumer case from a chat*
If a consumer chat results in the need to open a case, create the case directly from the conversation.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

When you create a case from a support conversation, the system copies the conversation history to the case activity stream as comments and work notes. Future messages are tracked in the case as well.

1. Navigate to **Collaborate > Connect Support**.

   The Connect workspace opens in a new tab.
2. Click the support tab of the Connect sidebar, indicated by a headset icon.

   The support tab displays **Queues** to which you belong. It also displays your open support conversations under **Cases**. When a consumer starts a support conversation or an agent transfers a conversation to a queue, any agent who belongs to the associated queue has the option to accept the conversation. An agent can also request to transfer a conversation directly to you.
3. Under **Cases**, open a consumer conversation.
4. At the bottom of the conversation, click the menu icon to open the Connect actions menu.
5. In the Connect actions menu, select Create Case.

   In the conversation tools area to the right of the conversation, a new case form opens in a record tab. The system automatically sets certain fields based on conversation details. (For a case created from a consumer chat, the **Consumer** field is filled in and the **Short description** field displays the initial chat request from the consumer.)
6. Complete the form as necessary and click Submit.

   The system automatically shares the record in the conversation, copies the conversation to the record activity stream, and references the record on the Chat Queue Entry [chat_queue_entry] table.

*Create a consumer record*
Consumer service agents and managers can create a consumer record from the Customer Service Management application.
Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager or admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Customer > Consumers
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Consumer form as necessary.
4. Fill in the fields on the Primary Address tab.
   A consumer can have multiple addresses but only one primary address. The primary address is stored in the Primary Address tab on the Consumer form and in the Addresses related list.
5. If desired, set any of the fields on the Preferences tab.
6. Click Submit.
   The record is added to the Consumers table (csm_consumer). The primary address is added to the Addresses related list and the Primary field is set to true.

Create additional consumer addresses
Consumers can have multiple addresses, including one primary address.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin

The primary address is stored in the Primary Address tab on the Consumer form and in the Addresses related list. When you fill in the fields in the Primary Address tab and click Submit, this information is added to the Addresses related list as the primary address, with the Primary field set to true. Any changes made to the Primary Address fields are also updated in the related list. A consumer can have only one primary address.

Other addresses, such as billing or shipping addresses, can be created and stored in the Addresses related list. For these other addresses, the Primary field is set to false.

2. Click the number of the desired consumer.
3. In the Addresses related list, click New.
4. Fill in the fields on the Location form.
5. To denote this address as the primary address for the consumer, enable the Primary check box.
   A consumer can have multiple addresses but only one primary address.
6. Click Submit.

Compose emails directly from cases
As an agent, you can compose emails directly from cases within a ServiceNow instance. This capability helps you view and send emails to two different customers simultaneously which saves time and effort.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

You can compose large emails easily in a full screen view which opens up in a new tab.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Cases > My Cases.
2. Select and open the case for which you want to compose an email.
   The case opens up in a new top-level tab.
3. Click the More UI Actions icon and select Compose Email.
   The New Email screen opens in full view in a new sub-tab below the Case tab. The To field is pre-filled with the customer's email id and the Subject field contains the original case number and issue. For more information, see Compose an email.
4. Compose your email and click Send.

Note: You can also click Save to save the email and send it later. These drafts are available in the Draft Emails related list.
Send email responses directly from activity stream
Respond to cases using options within a customer email thread. You may not require using another email client which saves time and effort.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

You can read and respond to large emails easily in a full screen which opens up in a new tab. Responding to a customer’s email from within a case using the reply, reply all, or forward options, includes the content from previous conversation thread. These options are available by default. An admin can disable these options. For more information, see Disable email responses from the case activity stream.

Note:
1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Cases > My Cases.
2. Select and open the case from the activity stream for which you want to send or forward a response.
   The case opens up in a new tab.
3. Click Reply in the Activity Stream to write a response to the customer or click the 
   icon and select Reply All to reply to all the customer email ids mentioned in the original email or select 
   Forward to forward the email to any other email ids not mentioned earlier.
   Based on the selection, the Reply Email, Reply All Emails, and Forward Email screens opens in full screen in a new tab.

   Note: You can click the 
   icon to add attachments from the file system or delete attachments already associated with the existing case.

4. Compose your email and click Send.

Preview emails directly from a related list
Preview emails directly from within cases. This capability helps you select related emails from a list and read big emails in full view which helps improve the reading experience.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Cases > My Cases.
2. Select and open the case for which you want to preview emails.
   The case opens up in a new tab.
3. Click Emails tab.
   A list of related emails is displayed.
4. Select an email to preview from the list.
   The email opens in a new tab and displays the email entity details as in the following screen.
5. Click **Message** tab to view the email details such as From, To, Cc, Bcc, Subject, message body, and so on.
6. Click **Reply** to reply to the message you are viewing.

**Compose emails from cases on Agent Workspace**
As an agent you can compose emails directly from cases within a ServiceNow instance without having to use an external email client. This capability helps you view and send emails to two different customers simultaneously which saves time and effort instead of having to address and send a separate email message.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

You can compose large emails easily in a full screen view which opens up in a new tab.

1. Navigate to **Agent Workspace > Cases > My Cases**.
2. Select and open the case for which you want to compose an email.
   The case opens up in a new tab.
3. Click on the contact's email address.
   The New Email screen opens in full screen in a new tab. The **To** field is pre-filled with the customer's email id and the **Subject** field contains the original case number and issue. For more information, see [Compose an email](#).
4. Compose your email and click **Send**.

   **Note:** You can also click **Save** to save the email and send it later. These drafts are available in the **Draft Emails** related list.

**Respond to cases using predefined email quick messages**
Predefined quick email messages help agents draft replies to a case quickly without having to enter most of the required information to save time and be more productive.

Business managers and admins: You can set up quick messages to predefine the content for replying to cases. For example, you can predefine personal greetings, disclaimers, providing more information, and signatures. You can also incorporate icons, business logos, pictures, HTML layout, and rich text format.

   **Note:** You can configure quick messages so that only a certain user or a group can view them.

Agents: You can select predefined quick messages to quickly draft an email with relevant details auto-filled. The following example shows a sample agent email to a customer.
Sample customer email created with quick message

Create a request on behalf of a customer or consumer

Customer service agents can create requests on behalf of customers from Agent Workspace or from the platform interface.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent

Customer service agents can browse the catalog and make a selection to create a request on behalf of a customer.

- From Agent Workspace, agents can create requests from case and interaction records.
• From the platform interface, agents can create requests from case records.

1. Open a customer service case.
2. To create a request, do one of the following:
   • Agent Workspace: Click the More UI Actions icon (•••) and select Create Request.
   • Platform interface: Click the form context menu icon and select Create Request.

3. Select an item or a service from the catalog to display the item page.
4. Optional: Select the quantity.
5. To complete the request, do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent Workspace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complete these steps:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Click Order Now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Add or change the information in these fields on the Order Confirmation pop-up window: Request for, Delivery information, Special instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Click Checkout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform interface</td>
<td>Click Order Now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system creates the request and displays the request number. An information message provides a link to the case associated with the request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. From the Case form, click the Requests related list to see the requests associated with the case.

*Initiate a conference call from a case*

As part of resolving a customer service case, you can initiate a conference call between involved users.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, admin

Customer service agents can initiate a conference call from a case and add participants, including on-call members of shift groups.

**Note:**

Notify must be set up before you can use Notify on task. Ensure there are Notify phone numbers (E.164 or short code) in number groups with phone call workflows. Also ensure the property glide.notify.task.phone_number is set to one of these Notify phone numbers.

1. Open the desired case.
2. Click the Start Conference Call related link.
3. Select one or more Recipients to participate in the conference call.

You can add individual participants, groups, or individual phone numbers.

*Resolve cases with knowledge and community content*

Enable agents to resolve a case more quickly by searching for information from the knowledge base and community and, if helpful, associating it to the case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent
The Case form displays contextual search results based on text entered in the **Short Description** field. These search results provide targeted knowledge articles, pinned articles, and community content to customer service agents.

Customer service agents can search for information that is related to a case when opening a case or in a case that is already open. If the search results in any related content, the agent can preview the content. If the information is relevant, the agent can mark it as helpful. Knowledge articles can be also attached to the case.

By default, search results include knowledge articles, pinned articles, and solved community questions and blogs. Depending on the configuration, search results can also include other types of information, such as open and resolved cases and problems. With the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml), you can also view similar cases and similar knowledge articles.

Customer service case managers can use the Demand Insights for Cases dashboard to identify which cases have no or insufficient knowledge coverage. For more information, see *Demand Insights for Cases dashboard*.

1. Navigate to **Customer Service > Cases**.
2. Perform one of the following actions.
   - Open a new case and start typing in the **Short description** field.
   - Open an existing case and click **Related Search Results**.

   Any matching search results are displayed in the **Related Search Results** section. The content displayed depends on the permissions assigned to the agent in Knowledge and Communities.

3. Click one of the results to open the content in a pop-up window.
4. Perform any of the following optional steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attach a knowledge article to the case</strong></td>
<td>1. Click <strong>Attach</strong> next to the knowledge article you want to attach to the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. If you opened the knowledge article, click <strong>Attach to Case</strong> in the pop-up window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The knowledge article is displayed in <strong>Activities</strong> as a work note and is visible only to customer service agents. A link to the article is also entered in the <strong>Additional comments</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. To make the article visible to customers, click <strong>Post</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Note:** You cannot attach Communities content to the Case form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mark the content as helpful for resolving the associated case</strong></td>
<td>Click <strong>This helped</strong> in the pop-up window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scroll to previous or next result</strong></td>
<td>Use the arrow keys to scroll up to the previous or down to the next result.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Perform one of the following actions.
   - If you opened a case, click **Submit**.
   - If you updated an existing case, click **Update**.

*Search for knowledge articles*

Search for knowledge articles in Agent Assist, including similar knowledge articles.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin

Agent Assist displays contextual search results based on text entered in the **Short description** field on the Case form. These search results include knowledge articles and other types of information, such as open or resolved cases and community content. You can narrow the list of results by selecting a specific type of information to view.
Note: With the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml), you can also view Similar Knowledge Articles.

1. Open a customer service case.
2. In the Agent Assist panel, click the search resource icon ( ) and select a search source.
   - Knowledge Articles
   - Similar Knowledge Articles
3. Select a knowledge article.
4. Click Attach.
   Depending on your configuration, you can add a link or embed an article directly into the Additional comments (customer visible) portion of the activity stream.

Open a knowledge article in a sub-tab
Search for a knowledge article in Agent Assist and then open the article in a sub-tab.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin
1. Open a customer service case.
2. In the Agent Assist panel, select an article from the default search or search for something specific using the search bar.
3. Click the article link to open the article in a new sub-tab of the parent case.

Create a knowledge article from a customer service case
Reuse information from a customer service case by creating knowledge articles from cases.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin
Your administrator must enable creation of articles from customer service cases.
1. From the Case form, click the More UI Actions icon ( ).
2. Click Create Knowledge Article.
   This creates a new knowledge article in a sub-tab. By default, the new article is created from the KCS Article template. The following information is copied from the case to the knowledge article:
   - Short description
   - Source
   - Cause
   - Close notes
3. In the Knowledge base field, enter the name of the knowledge base in which you want this article to display.
4. Optional: Edit the knowledge article.
5. Click Save.

Manage skills for a customer service case
Add or remove optional and mandatory skills for a customer service case.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin
Agents can also change a skill between mandatory and optional.
1. Open the desired case.
2. Click the Task Skills related list.
3. To create a new skill:
4. To switch a skill between optional and mandatory:
   a) Click the desired skill.
   b) Enable or disable the Mandatory check box.
   c) Click Save.

Report a knowledge gap
If you cannot find relevant articles that could help resolve a case, you can report a knowledge gap.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin
You can search for and attach knowledge articles related to a case in a Case form. If you cannot find the relevant articles, you can create a knowledge article that could help resolve the case. If you do not have permissions to create an article, report a knowledge gap.
Customer service case managers can use the Demand Insights for Cases dashboard to identify which cases have no or insufficient knowledge coverage. For more information, see Demand Insights for Cases dashboard.

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Cases.
2. Open a case.
   You can search for existing knowledge articles or create a knowledge article to help resolve a case.
4. Provide details about the knowledge gap in the Description field.
5. Click Submit.
   A knowledge feedback task is created and is added to the Knowledge Gaps related list.

Work on a feedback task
Update a special handling note
Update a special handling note for a record.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, sn_shn.editor, or sn_shn.admin
Users with the sn_customerservice_manager role can update a special handling note for a record if they can update a record for the underlying table.

1. Navigate to Special Handling Notes > Special Handling Notes.
   You can also update a note from the Special Handling Notes list on a form.
2. In the Special Handling Notes list, click the note to be updated.
3. Make any necessary changes to the fields on the Special Handling Notes form.
4. Click Update.

Close a customer service case
Close a case at any time, except when it is in the Resolved state.
Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice_manager, or admin
After an agent proposes a solution for a case, the state changes to Resolved and the customer can either choose to accept or reject the solution. If accepted, the case is closed. If rejected, the state reverts to Open.
An agent or agent manager can close a case at any time, except when it is in the **Resolved** state, when only a customer can accept or reject the proposed solution. When an agent or agent manager closes a case, details must be included in the **Resolution notes** field.

1. Open the desired case.
2. Click the **Resolution Information** tab.
3. From the **Resolution Code** drop-down list, select the code that indicates the resolution state of the case.
4. Enter any information related to the closure in the **Resolution notes** field.
5. Click **Close Case**.

Customer service satisfaction surveys

Customers can complete a satisfaction survey when they accept a case solution or close a case from the Customer Service Portal.

When a customer accepts a proposed solution for a case by clicking **Accept Solution** on the case record or closes a case by clicking **Close Case**, they can access a satisfaction survey in the Customer Service Portal. Customers have the option of completing or skipping the survey.

If a customer is using the email communication channel, the system sends an email with a link to a customer satisfaction survey when an agent closes a case. The customer can click on this link to complete the survey.

**Note:** One survey can be generated per case. If a survey has already been generated for a case, a second survey cannot be generated even if a case is reopened and closed again.

The Customer Service application includes a default survey that you can customize as needed. To customize the default survey, navigate to **Survey > View Surveys** and select **Customer Service Satisfaction Survey** from the list of assessment metric types. To edit the default survey, open the survey and click the **Survey Designer** button.

You can also design your own survey using the survey designer tool. After designing a survey, be sure to select a condition for triggering the survey.

The Customer Service dashboard includes a Customer Satisfaction report that displays the survey results. You can also access the Customer Satisfaction report by navigating to **Reports > View/Run > Customer Satisfaction**.

**List and form views by agent role**

Users with either the customer agent role or the consumer agent role can see attributes specific to the end user on these Customer Service Management lists.

### List view

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List</th>
<th>Columns displayed for customer agent</th>
<th>Columns displayed for consumer agent</th>
<th>Columns displayed for agent with both roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>• Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Phone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Primary Contact</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Zip / Postal code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List</td>
<td>Columns displayed for customer agent</td>
<td>Columns displayed for consumer agent</td>
<td>Columns displayed for agent with both roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Number</td>
<td>• Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Name</td>
<td>• Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Mobile phone</td>
<td>• Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• City</td>
<td>• Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Zip / Postal code</td>
<td>• Channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>• Number</td>
<td>• Number</td>
<td>• Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Short description</td>
<td>• Short description</td>
<td>• Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contact</td>
<td>• Consumer</td>
<td>• Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Account</td>
<td>• Channel</td>
<td>• Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Channel</td>
<td>• State</td>
<td>• Channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• State</td>
<td>• Priority</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Priority</td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
<td>• Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
<td>• Updated</td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entitlement</td>
<td>• Name</td>
<td>• Name</td>
<td>• Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contract</td>
<td>• Contract</td>
<td>• Contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Product</td>
<td>• Product</td>
<td>• Product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Account</td>
<td>• Consumer</td>
<td>• Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Business Hours</td>
<td>• Channel</td>
<td>• Channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Remaining Units</td>
<td>• State</td>
<td>• State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Start Date</td>
<td>• Priority</td>
<td>• Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• End Date</td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
<td>• Assigned to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Updated</td>
<td>• Updated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>• Display name</td>
<td>• Display name</td>
<td>• Display name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Account</td>
<td>• Consumer</td>
<td>• Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Primary Contact</td>
<td>• Serial number</td>
<td>• Primary Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Serial number</td>
<td>• Model category</td>
<td>• Consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Model category</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Serial number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Model category</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Form view**

A user with either the customer agent role or the consumer agent role can see fields specific to the end user on these forms. If an agent has both roles, all of the fields are shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Fields displayed for customer agent</th>
<th>Displayed for consumer agent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contact</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Auto-Responder for case deflections

Deflect cases by automatically sending relevant content through the Auto-Responder feature after a customer contact or consumer creates a case.

Whenever a case is created, the Auto-Responder feature sends an email notification containing a list of relevant knowledge articles. The email notifications are sent to the case submitter and watchlist users associated with the case.

By default, the feature sends the email notification for customer service cases logged using emails by users with the snc_external role. Your administrator can also configure the feature for customer service cases logged using other communication channels such as web, phone, chat, social, community, alert, and virtual agent.

The knowledge articles in an Auto-Responder email notification are included based on contextual search results of the short description of the case. By default, the articles that a case submitter viewed in the last 30 days aren’t included. Your administrator can configure the duration of last viewed content by using a scripted extension point. For more information, see Include advanced contextual search results in Auto-Responder notifications.

As a case submitter or watchlist user, you can determine whether you receive any Auto-Responder notifications by setting notification preferences. For more information, see Set Auto-Responder notification preferences.

Activation information

Activate the Predictive Intelligence for Customer Service Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ml) and enable the Enable auto-responder recommendations property (sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.enable). For more information, see Configure Auto-Responder notifications.

Close a case from a knowledge article recommended in an Auto-Responder notification

View knowledge articles included in the email notification sent by the Auto-Responder feature for a customer service case and close the case from within a helpful knowledge article.

Log in to your portal containing the case.

Role required: snc_external role or watchlist users associated with the customer service case

By default, the Auto-Responder feature sends knowledge articles as helpful content to solve a customer service case submitted using an email.

1. Open the knowledge article link from the email notification sent by Auto-Responder.
2. Read the knowledge article to see whether it resolves a case.
3. If the knowledge article provides a solution, in the Related Case section of the article, click Close Case.
4. In the message window that appears, click Close Case.

An information message about the case being closed appears. If any case was closed by using a knowledge article link accessed from an Auto-Responder email notification, a View Case button appears in that article. Click the button to view the details of the case that was closed.
Set Auto-Responder notification preferences

Set notification preferences for receiving Auto-Responder recommendations on customer service cases you submitted or for which you are on the watchlist.

Ensure that an administrator has configured the Auto-Responder feature. For more information, see Configure Auto-Responder notifications.

Role required: snc_external role or watchlist users associated with the customer service case

1. Navigate to your portal page.
2. Click your username or photo in the portal header, and then click Profile.
3. On the User Profile page, scroll down to the Actions section, and click Notification Preferences.
4. On the Notification Preference window, select or clear the Case auto-responder recommendations check box to turn the Auto-Responder notifications on or off for you.

Use Proactive Customer Service Operations

Monitor your customers' products and services to identify issues proactively, inform the affected customers, and fix issues quickly.

Role required: There are various different roles required for Proactive Customer Service Operations based on the tasks you perform.

Certain tasks only apply if you have activated the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin and this is noted at the top of each task.

Roles required

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>evt_mgmt_admin, evt_mgmt_operator</td>
<td>Create alerts and proactive cases from alerts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> These roles only apply if you have activated the Proactive Customer Services with Event Management plugin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_agent</td>
<td>Propose proactive cases as major case candidates, work on, and close proactive cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>Review and accept a proactive case as a major case and create child cases. Associate outages to cases or create an outage for a case. Track Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) to understand how proactive the team was in identifying and communicating issues that impact customers. For more information, see Proactive Customer Service - Advanced dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager</td>
<td>Create proactive cases. Review and accept proactive cases as major cases and create child cases. Associate outages to cases or create an outage for a case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create a proactive case from an alert

Create a case for customer install base affected by an alert to anticipate customer issues and address them proactively.
This task only applies if the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin is activated.

Role required: evt_mgmt_admin, evt_mgmt_operator

A proactive case is a case created on behalf of customers, whose install base is directly affected by an alert. You can open a proactive case manually or through automation. Customer service agents then work on cases. From the Alert form, you can also track the install base items affected by the alert.

If the Create Proactive Case rule is enabled, a case is automatically created when an incident is created from an alert and the system has determined that there are external customer install base items affected. For more information, see Activate an alert rule to automatically create a proactive case from an alert.

ITOM Event Management calculates the services (CIs) impacted by an alert and populates the em_impacted_ci_table with the impacted services (CIs) and alert CI on the given alert.

The Affected Install Base related list on the Alert form displays the install base items that are linked to the impacted services (CIs).

The Refresh Affected Install Base Items button on the Alert form recalculates the impacted services (CIs) and updates the em_impacted_ci_table and affected install base items with the latest changes. For more details, see Alert Impact Calculation.

Note: You can also manually create a case from an alert using the Event Management application in the Now Platform interface.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Agent Workspace Home > Lists > All Alerts.
2. Click an alert that you want to create a case for.
3. To trace the install base items affected by the alert, click Refresh Affected Install Base Items. These items are listed in the Affected Install Base Items related list on the Alert form. The Affected Install Base Items list is not updated automatically, so refresh the install base items each time you open an alert.
4. Click Create Case.
   
   Note: If you don’t see the Create Case option, click ...

5. Fill out the Short Description and other fields, as required.
6. Click Submit.
   
   A proactive case is created and the case number is added to the Case field on the Alert form.
   
   Case priority is set based on the severity of the alert. Customer service agents can then take action accordingly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alert severity</th>
<th>Case priority</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Manage a proactive case created from an alert

Work on a proactive case and resolve the proactive case as you would other customer service cases.

This task only applies if the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin is activated.

Role required:

- sn_customerservice_agent
• evt_mgmt_admin and evt_mgmt_operator have read-only access to a case created from an alert and can add work notes, as required.

Review proactive cases created from alerts using Agent Workspace. Identify customers, their corresponding install base items affected by the issue causing the alert as well as the service health for each affected install base item. Depending on the number of customers affected, you can propose a proactive case as a major case.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Agent Workspace Home > Lists > Cases. Alternatively, accept a proactive case from your Agent Workspace inbox.
2. Click the case you want to work on.
3. You can perform the following actions from the Case form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case form</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Action</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Refresh Install Base Health.</td>
<td>Update the health status of the affected install base items to see the real-time service status of the account’s install base items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Affected Install Base Items.</td>
<td>View accounts and their corresponding install base items affected by the alert. If you don't see this option, click more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Add or Remove.</td>
<td>Add or remove an affected install base item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Details.</td>
<td>View the sold product associated to the case as well as the alert that the case was created from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Propose Major Case.</td>
<td>Propose a major case when multiple customers are affected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Resolve and close proactive cases in the same way as other customer service management cases.

**Note:** If an alert is closed, a case is not automatically closed.

**Review and accept a proactive case as a major case**

Review and accept proactive cases as major cases using the major issue management process.

Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager, sn_customerservice_manager

**Note:** You can also review and accept a proactive case as a major case in Agent Workspace.

2. Optional: Click Major Case Information > Affected Customers to view the automatically generated list of customers affected by the issue.
3. Optional: Click Create Child Cases to create a child case for each affected customer.
4. Accept or reject the proactive case as a major case.
5. Follow the major issue management process to resolve the proactive case.

**Note:** If the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin is activated, your system administrator may have configured workflows to automate the creation of major cases depending on the number of accounts affected by an issue. If your system administrator has configured workflows, major cases are created in either Accepted, Proposed, or Created state depending on the settings. If Accepted, child cases are automatically created.

---

**Track the service health of install base items in Agent Workspace**

Track the operational status of install base items belonging to an account, to better correlate customer issues and provide faster responses.

This task only applies if the Proactive Customer Service Operations with Event Management plugin is activated.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_manager

The service health status provides you with visibility into the service health of a customer's install base items. The service health status is based on the severity of the impacted services being monitored at the Network Operations Center. Refresh the service health status on the Account and Case forms to access the real-time health status of install base items.

As a customer service agent, you can view the service health status of install base items in a case or a customer account.

1. Navigate to **Agent Workspace > Lists**.
2. Click an account or a case.
3. To refresh the health status of install base items on both the Account and Case form, click **Refresh Install Base Health**.
4. To view the health status of an install base item on the Account form, click the **Install Base Items** related list.
5. To view the health status of an affected install base item on the Case form, click the **Affected Install Base Items** related list.

---

**Associate an outage to a major case**

Associate an outage with a major case to keep customers informed about any issues affecting their install base items.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

If there are any existing outages for services (CIs) on install base items related to the case, a message is displayed at the top of the screen. Review the outages and add them to the case to expose the information to customers and keep them up to date on any issues that might affect their install base items.

1. Navigate to **Major Issue Management > All**.
2. Click the major case you want to add outages to.
3. On the **Outages** related list, click **Edit**.
   A filter displays the outages. Only those outages related to at least one of the services (CIs) for the install base items in the case is displayed. In this case, a CI is typically a service being used by the customer.
4. Add the outages you want to associate to the case.
5. Click **Save**.
   - The outage is associated to the case and the work notes are updated accordingly.
   - Customer service agents can view the outages for a case in the Outages related list.
Create an outage from a major case

Create an outage from a major case to keep customers informed about any issues affecting their install base items.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

If no outages exist, you can also create outages directly from a major case to inform affected customers.

1. Navigate to **Major Issue Management**.
2. Create a major case or click an existing major case with no outages associated to it.
3. Click **Create Outage**.

   **Note:** You can only create an outage from a case if there are no outages already associated to it and there is at least one affected install base item associated to the case. You cannot create an outage on a child case.

The Case view of the Outage form opens.

4. Fill out the fields on the form, as required.
5. Click **Submit**.

   All services (CIs) associated to the install base items in the case are associated to the outage as **Affected CIs**.

Track outages for install base items in Agent Workspace

View outages associated to a case to keep customers informed about any issues affecting their install base.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

Outages can be tracked using both proactive cases and customer-reported cases.

1. Navigate to **Agent Workspace > Lists**.
2. Click a proactive case.
3. Click the Outages related list to view all outage information related to the case.

   **Note:** If the Outages related list isn't displayed, click **more**.

Use Outsourced Customer Service

Outsourced Service Providers (OSPs) are organizations that an enterprise engages to provide customer service to external customers. The OSPs manage cases for customers associated to their organization.

Roles required: There are various roles required based on the tasks you perform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager (external OSP manager)</td>
<td>Onboards or offboards agents from service providers they belong to along with managing case assignments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent (external OSP agent)</td>
<td>Can fulfill the cases belonging to the service provider organization they belong to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_csm_ocs.manager (internal OSP manager)</td>
<td>Manages and monitors all the activities performed by OSPs. The manager can also access the OSP dashboards and act as an internal point of contact for the organization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Outsourced Service Provider manager tasks

As an OSP external manager you can perform various tasks such as onboarding OSP agents, viewing unassigned cases, and assigning cases to groups or agents managed by you.

Onboard Outsourced Service Provider agent

An OSP external manager can onboard OSP agents to manage and fulfill cases.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager

1. Navigate to Outsources Customer Service > Onboard Agent.
2. Fill in the fields on the Onboard Outsourced Service Provider agent or manager form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The first name of the agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The last name of the OSP agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>A unique ID for the OSP agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The OSP agent's email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Phone</td>
<td>The OSP agent's mobile phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Phone</td>
<td>The OSP agent's business phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignment Group</td>
<td>Select the group to which you belong.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Submit.

**Note:**
Once onboarding is complete, a password reset email is sent to the agent's email address.

Assign a case to an agent

As an Outsourced Customer Service external manager you can assign a case to an agent under your group.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager

1. Navigate to Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > Unassigned.
2. Open a case.
3. Enter the name of the agent in the Assigned to field and select the agent from the list displayed. You can also click the Lookup using list icon ( ) and select the agent.

**Note:** The Assignment group field is pre-populated with the group name. The list of agents belonging to that group is displayed when you lookup.

4. Click Update.

Outsourced Service Provider agent tasks

OSP agents can perform various tasks such as managing cases, scheduling appointments and so on.

View cases

As an OSP manager or agent, you must be able to view all application modules with the list of cases for customers, consumers, and products served by your organization.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager or sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

1. Navigate to Outsourced Customer Service > Cases.
   You must be able to see My Cases, All, Open, and Unassigned cases. Users who are not authorised or who do not belong to this OSP will not see any case.
2. Click **All**, open a case and assign the case to yourself.
   The **Assigned to** field is pre-filled with your name.

   **Assign a case**
   Assign cases to yourself, work on them, and fulfill cases.
   Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

   1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > All**.
   2. Click and open a case from the available list.
   3. Click **Assign to me**.
      The case is assigned to you.

   **Note:** The **Assign to me** button is not available if a case is already assigned.

   **Escalate a case**
   An OSP agent can escalate a case when unable to resolve or fulfill a case for various reasons such as
   Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

   1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases**.
   2. Open a case.
   3. Click **Escalate Case** related link.
   4. Fill in the fields on the Escalation form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Request Source</td>
<td>If Customer or Internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason</td>
<td>Reason for escalation such as inactivity, lack of progress, or customer imposed deadline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Severity</td>
<td>Severity of escalation such high, medium, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Template</td>
<td>An escalation template determines how an escalation request is processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch list</td>
<td>Add users to the escalation template watch list. These users receive notifications for all escalations that use this escalation template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalation Justification</td>
<td>Additional information that explains why this escalation is needed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   5. Click **Submit**.

   **Transfer a case**
   The OSP agent or manager, if unable to resolve a case, transfers the case manually to an enterprise's internal agent.
   Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager or sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

   You can transfer a case by selecting the reason for transfer, adding transfer notes, and transfer the case manually. The case is transferred based on the default assignment group setup while defining an OSP. Else, the case is transferred based on AWA or assignment rules, that have been previously setup.

   1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases**.
   2. Open a case that you want to transfer.
   3. Click **Transfer Case**.
4. Select the reason for transferring the case from the Reason drop-down list.
5. Enter additional information regarding the case in the Notes field.
6. Click Save.

The case is transferred successfully to the enterprise's internal manager. When you go back to All cases and view the case, you can view the transfer information under Outsourced Case Transfer Request related list.

View customer or consumer data
As an OSP agent, you must view the customer or consumer data to fulfill cases.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager or sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent
1. Navigate to Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > All.
2. Open a case and click the preview icon next to the Account or Contact field.
3. Click Open Record.

The following related lists are visible for you to work on and fulfill the cases:
- Contacts
- Addresses
- Cases
- Assets
- Contracts
- Entitlements
- Account Relationships
- Sold Products and
- Install Base

View account contracts
As an OSP agent, you can view contracts owned by accounts or consumers in order to create or fulfill a case.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager/sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent
1. Open the case form.
2. Click the Preview icon next to the Account or Consumer field.
3. Click Contracts related list.
4. View the list of assets belonging to an account or consumer and fulfill a case.

View list of entitlements
As an OSP manager or agent, you must view entitlements for an account or consumer to create or fulfil cases.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager or sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent
1. Navigate to Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > All.
2. Open a case and click the preview icon next to the Account field.
The customer account page is displayed.
3. Click Entitlements related list.
4. Open an entitlement and view the asset details to fulfill a case.

View case related emails and respond
As an OSP agent, you can view the list of emails related to a case that is assigned to you. You can respond to a case by creating a new email and sending it to the stakeholders.

Role required: sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent
1. Navigate to Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases.
2. Open a case you want to respond to.
3. Click Emails related list.
The list of emails sent earlier if any, are displayed.

4. Click **New Email** to create a new email.
   The recipient fields are pre-filled. You can add additional recipients if required.
5. Enter the body text in the Compose Email window.
6. Click the attachment icon (_ATTACHMENT_ICON) if you want to add an attachment to the email.
7. Click **Send**.

*Leverage contextual search*

Users with OSP agent role can search for related information to fulfil a case. The search results returned are the list of entities that the agent is entitled to as per the data governance.

Role required: `sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent`

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > All**.
2. Open a case. See related search results as per the case description.

*Report knowledge gap from a case*

An OSP agent can report a knowledge gap for a case.

Role required: `sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent`.

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases**.
2. Open a case.
3. Is knowledge available for the case in the **Knowledge Gaps** related list.
5. Enter the description.
6. Click **Submit**.
   A knowledge gap is created and you can view it under the **Knowledge Gaps** related list.

*Propose a major case*

As an OSP agent, you can propose a major case from the existing customer service case assigned to you.

Role required: `sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent`

Cases in these states can be proposed as a major case candidate:
- New
- Open
- Awaiting Info

Cases that are Resolved, Closed, or Canceled cannot be proposed as a major case candidate.

When proposing a case as a major case candidate, agents can specify the reason or justification for the case in the Propose Major Case popup window. Information provided in the **Work notes** and **Business Impact** fields are added to the Case form.

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases**.
2. Open a case.
3. Right click on the case form.
4. Click **Propose Major Case**.
5. In the Propose Major Case pop-up window, enter a reason for the proposal in the **Work notes** field. If desired, enter the business impact of the selected case in the **Business Impact** field.
   This information is added in the Case form in the **Work notes** field and the **Business Impact** field in the Major Case Information section.
6. Click **Propose**.
An entry is added to the **Work notes** on the Case form that the case was proposed as a major case candidate. The information entered in the Propose Major Case pop-up window is also added to the Case form.

*Create a case task*

An OSP agent creates a case task after a case has been assigned. As an agent, you can work on the case adding work notes and additional comments.

**Role required:** sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases** and open a case.

    **Note:** The timeline of the case is displayed at the top of the case form.

2. Click **Tasks** related list.
3. Click **New** to create a new task.
4. The **Edit** button allows you to add existing case tasks to a case from the **Collection** list.
5. Fill in the fields on the new record form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Subject for the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description for the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes list</td>
<td>Work notes for the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email address</td>
<td>Email id of the customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional comments</td>
<td>Comments related to the case, if any.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Click **Submit**.

    **Note:** You can also close the case task.

*Create work order*

An OSP agent can create a work order so that it can be assigned to a Field Service agent.

**Role required:** sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent and you must have installed Customer Service Management with Field Service Management plugin.

1. Go to **My Cases** and open a case.
2. From the **Work Orders** related list, click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Work Order form.
4. Click **Submit**.
5. View work order status to update the customer of the status.

    **Note:** You cannot create a new work order until the previous one is closed or deleted.

*Create an appointment*

As an agent, you can make an appointment with the requester of a case.

**Role required:** sn_csm_ocs.ext_manager or sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > My Cases**.
2. Open a case.
3. Click **Appointments** related list.
4. Fill in the fields on the Appointment form, as appropriate.
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>The customer's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter email address</td>
<td>Email id of the customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start time</td>
<td>Select the start time and date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End time</td>
<td>Select the end time and date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reminder (minutes)</td>
<td>Select reminder for the appointment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>Enter the subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Enter location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Enter message for the appointment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Submit** and the appointment appears under **Appointments** related list in **Ready** state.

6. Edit the appointment and click **Send activity** to send the appointment to the specified email address.

**Note:** You can also cancel the appointment using the **Cancel appointment** related link.

---

**Close a case**

Users with OSP agent role can propose a solution to a case and close the assigned cases.

Role required: **sn_csm_ocs.ext_agent**

1. Navigate to **Outsourced Customer Service > Cases > My Cases**.
2. Open a case.
3. Click the **Closure information** tab on the case form.
4. Select the **Resolution code** from the drop-down list.
5. Enter the cause for resolution and notes if any in the **Cause** and **Resolution notes** fields.
6. Select the **Add resolution notes to comments** check box, if desired.
7. Click **Close Case**.
   The case state changes to **Closed** state.

---

**Use Walk-up Experience**

Use the Walk-up Experience feature to check-in at a walk-up location, book appointments from the customer service portal, and monitor queues.

Users with roles including **sn_walkup.walkup_login**, **sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician**, **sn_csm_walkup.walkup_manager** and walk-up users can use the Walk-up Experience feature.

---

**Check-in at a walk-up location**

As a store representative, you can enable customers to check-in on arrival at your service location. The user is added to the queue after filling in some details and reason for visit. The user joins the queue of other requesters.

Role required: **sn_walkup.walkup_login**
A screen is displayed as follows on the store device to run the Check-in application at a location.

The **Check-in** widget, allows the requester to add details in the following screen. Both guest users and registered users can check-in. If the system already has a contact/consumer with the same details, it associates the interaction with the particular contact in the system.
Welcome! Please check in below to add yourself to the queue.

Enter your full name

Enter your email

Reason for visit

Check in
Once the requester checks-in, they can view the queue status on a heads-up display as follows.

The Queue widget allows viewing the list of requesters at the walk-up location. For more information, see Monitor Walk-up Experience queues.

The Survey widget allows you to request the requester for feedback about the experience at the location. For more information, see CSM Walk-up Experience customer satisfaction surveys.

Schedule appointments or join a queue from the Customer Service Management portal

Customers need to invest time in coming to a physical location for service. Ability to book appointments at a specific time helps plan visits to the service location. A slot is pre-assigned based on the appointment booking.

Role required: sn_walkup.walkup_login

1. Login to the customer portal.
2. Navigate to Support > Walk-up Check In from the portal header.
   The application searches for your nearest service center.
3. Click Change location and select the location you prefer from the drop-down list if you want to change the default location.
   The default location is set to the nearest service center based on your location information, once you allow the browser to access your location. You can pick the location manually if do now want to allow browser to detect your location.
4. Go to the Schedule an appointment tab to book an appointment.
5. Select a reason for your visit from the drop-down list.
   Related content that may help with your issue is listed at the bottom of the screen.
6. Select a reason for your visit from the drop-down list.
7. Click the Calendar icon
   
   and select the date and time of appointment.
8. Click Schedule Appointment.
You will receive the following notifications by email when you perform the following actions:

• Appointment confirmation, reminder, and cancellation.
• Survey email.

Note: You can come back to the portal to reschedule or cancel the appointment if the appointment date has not passed.

Schedule a walk-up appointment as a guest user

Schedule walk-up appointments as a guest user from either the Customer Service Portal or Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: none

1. Go to the Customer Service Portal or Consumer Service Portal home page by adding the suffix /csm or /csp to your instance URL.
2. Click Walk-up Check-in.
3. Click Allow to use your current location or select the location you prefer from the Select the location drop-down list.
   The Welcome to Walk-up Check-in screen is displayed.

Note: A user with login credentials can also log in through the guest Walk-up Check-in link to book an appointment.

4. Select the I'm not a robot check box and verify that you are not a robot.
5. Fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enter your name</td>
<td>Your first name and last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter your email address</td>
<td>Your email address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter your phone number (optional)</td>
<td>Your phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is the reason for your visit?</td>
<td>The reason for your visit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When do you want to visit?</td>
<td>The date you want to visit. Click the calendar icon, select the desired date and time for the appointment, and click Select.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The default location name, description, hours of operation, and Get Directions link are displayed on the right.

Note: If you have chosen to select a location, the View on map link appears instead.

6. Optional: Change the location manually.
   a) Click Change Location.
   b) Select a location from the drop-down list.

7. Click Schedule appointment.
   You will receive a verification email.
8. Click Verify or click on the link to confirm your appointment from the email you receive. The appointment is confirmed and the details are displayed on the confirmation screen. If you want to verify your appointment once this screen is no longer displayed, you can click the link in the appointment confirmation email to display it again.

Modify or cancel a walk-up appointment as a guest user

Modify or cancel walk-up appointments that you have scheduled.

Role required: none

1. Open the appointment confirmation email that you received.
2. Click the link in the email to modify or cancel your appointment. A One-time Passcode Verification tab opens in the browser and an email containing a one-time passcode (OTP) and a link to verify your appointment is sent.
3. Enter the OTP in the verification tab and click Continue or click Verify your Appointment in the email. The OTP option is useful when you are handling multiple devices to check emails and book appointments. For example, you can view the email with the OTP on your mobile and enter the OTP while booking an appointment on your desktop.

Note: The link expires after a certain time.

The Your Appointment details screen opens.

4. Either cancel the appointment or modify it.
   • To cancel the appointment, click Cancel appointment. You will receive an email to confirm that your appointment is cancelled.
   • To modify the appointment, modify the details and click Update.

Monitor Walk-up Experience queues

Once you check in at a location, you are notified of the wait time and your position in the queue. You can view the issues being serviced and the queue.

Role required: Customers

1. Log in to the customer service portal.
2. Select your location.
3. Click the Queue widget.
4. You can view the following information:
   • queue of everyone waiting for service
   • names of people who are ahead of you
   • status of people currently served and waiting in the queue
   • respective agents who are serving the customers

CSM Walk-up Experience dashboard

As a service manager you can see key metric reports for walk-up interactions which helps in monitoring the performance of agents and service locations.
Access the dashboard by navigating to **CSM Walk-up Experience > Dashboard**. To view detailed information, hover over any report graphic. You can save graphs as PNG or JPEG files and attach them to emails or include in reporting presentations. All graphs can be refreshed for the latest data. The following screen is an example of how the dashboard appears. For more information about interacting with reports, see *Create and use dashboards*.

**Walk-up Experience for CSM dashboard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## End user and goal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Walk-up Experience administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard</th>
<th>Required role</th>
<th>sn_csm_walkup.walkup_admin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Walk-up Experience manager: Can track the number of walk-ups, walk-up interactions with cases, average service and wait time and so on. | sn_csm_walkup.walkup_manager |

## Reports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Completed Walk-ups for the Quarter</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of records created during the fiscal business quarter. Volume shown as a single score.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Survey CSAT for this Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>Speedometer showing the average customer satisfaction sentiment (1 to 3) during the exit survey for the current calendar year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall CSAT within Last Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>Speedometer showing the average customer satisfaction sentiment (1 to 5) captured by the email survey within the last year (364 days from current date).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-ups by Location within Last Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of walk-up interactions, by location within the last year (364 days from current date). Volume shown as a spline distributed by month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Interactions with Cases by Location within Last Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of walk-up cases, by location within the last year (364 days from current date). Volume shown as a spline distributed by month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-up Reasons by Location within Last Year</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reasons for visiting the walk-up queue, by location within the last year (364 days from current date). Data shown as a bar chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-ups by Day of the Week</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of walk-up interactions per day during the course of a week, by location. Data shown as a bar chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-ups by Hour</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total number of walk-up interactions, by hour and by location. Data shown as a bar chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Service Time by Location</td>
<td></td>
<td>Average time it takes to close an interaction, by location. Time average shown as a spline by month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Wait Time by Location</td>
<td></td>
<td>Average time a walk-up guest waits for service, by location. Data shown as a bar chart.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Walk-up Experience queue and interaction management**

Walk-up Experience managers and technicians can efficiently manage all aspects of a walk-up location queue and interaction demand. Technicians can view assigned walk-up locations and interactions for walk-up fulfillment.

Walk-up Experience provides technicians with inclusive fulfiller resources to organize and manage a walk-up queue.

As a Technician you can access Agent Workspace to manage a walk-up interaction. Using Agent Workspace you can:

- Access a personal inbox to view work assigned from multiple service channels, including the Walk-up Service Channel.
- Get assignments automatically pushed to your inbox from the walk-up interaction queue.
- Work on concurrent or multiple interactions at the same time.
- Promote interactions to cases.
- Work with any requester in the queue at any time by pulling from anywhere in the queue list, as well as from the top of the list.
- Create cases for interactions
- Manually pick an interaction specific to a requestor
- Use Agent Assist to expedite fulfillment.

With Agent Workspace, as a technician you can typically fulfill interactions on a first-come-first-served basis as interactions are pushed to individual walk-up inbox. Interactions are distributed to the walk-up agent inbox based on assignment rule configurations in the Advanced Work Assignment feature.

Technicians can directly open cases in Agent Workspace when an issue is not resolved at the walk-up location.
Walk-up Experience also includes a Technician module in the application navigator where agents supporting a walk-up queue can perform the following actions:

- Access the personal walk-up inbox linking directly to Agent Workspace.
- View assigned walk-up interactions.
- Reassign and modify walk-up interactions when necessary.
- View all scheduled and upcoming appointments.
- View walk-up queue locations.
- Transfer walk-up interactions to other technicians or queue locations when necessary.

The following applications are included in the platform Technician module of the CSM Walk-up Experience navigation bar as well as viewed in the Agent Workspace under Walk-up:

### CSM Walk-up Experience technician applications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI view and application</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform:</strong> My Walk-up Inbox</td>
<td>View walk-up interactions assigned to you in your personal inbox on Agent Workspace. Advanced Work Assignment pushes interactions to your inbox according to assignment rule configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> Inbox</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform:</strong> My Walk-up Locations</td>
<td>View walk-up queue locations that you are assigned to support by physical address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> Walk-up Locations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform and Agent Workspace:</strong> My Assigned Walk-ups</td>
<td>View walk-up interactions you are assigned to resolve or fulfill. These interactions have a Work in Progress state. You can also see your assigned interactions in your personal inbox on Agent Workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform and Agent Workspace:</strong> Open - Unassigned</td>
<td>View all open and unassigned walk-up interactions for your queue locations. These interactions have either a New, Queued, or Work in Progress state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform and Agent Workspace:</strong> Closed Walk-ups</td>
<td>View all closed walk-up interactions. Closed interactions have either a Closed Complete or Closed Abandoned state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platform:</strong> Scheduled Appointments</td>
<td>View all upcoming appointments scheduled for your walk-up queue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agent Workspace:</strong> Appointments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View assigned Walk-up Experience location**

Walk-up Experience technicians can view a list of the walk-up queues they are assigned to support. Location queues reveal all the information a technician needs to know to operate the queue efficiently.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician

There are two ways technicians can view the walk-up location queues they are assigned to support. Technicians primarily access Agent Workspace for all CSM Walk-up Experience-related information, including locations. However, technicians can also access CSM Walk-up Experience in the application navigator, or left navigation bar, to view assigned queue locations.

1. **To view walk-up locations using Agent Workspace,** navigate to Workspace Experience > Agent Workspace Home.
   
   The Agent Workspace homepage opens, greeting you with your name.

2. **Click List** in the left navigation bar.

3. **Under Walk-up, click Walk-up Locations.**
   
   Walk-up locations you are assigned to support are listed.
4. click a queue name to view details about the location, such as, interactions, appointments, reasons for visits, and more.

5. Alternatively, to view walk-up locations via the application navigator, navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Technician > My Walk-up Locations.

6. Click a queue name to see details about the location, such as, interactions, appointments, reasons for visits, and more.

If interactions are leftover from a previous day or are still queued at the end of the day with no associated guests at the queue, you can click Abandon All to cancel these interactions.

View Walk-up Experience inbox
View a personal inbox of automatically assigned Walk-up Experience interactions using the Agent Workspace feature interface.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician

There are two ways technicians can view the walk-up inbox. Technicians primarily access Agent Workspace for all Walk-up Experience related information, including the inbox. However technicians can also access CSM Walk-up Experience in the application navigator, or left navigation bar, to link to and view the inbox in Agent Workspace.

1. To view the walk-up inbox using Agent Workspace, navigate to Workspace Experience > Agent Workspace Home.
   The Agent Workspace homepage opens, greeting you with your name.

2. Click Inbox in the left navigation bar of the interface.
   Automatically pushed interaction assignments appear in the inbox based on agent schedules and assignment rule configurations in the Advanced Work Assignment feature. Technicians can set an inbox status of Available, Away, and Offline.

3. Alternatively, to view the walk-up inbox via the application navigator, navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Technician > My Walk-up Inbox.
   You are linked directly to your personal inbox in Agent Workspace. Automatically pushed interaction assignments appear in the inbox based on agent schedules and assignment rule configurations in the Advanced Work Assignment feature.

Manage automatically assigned Walk-up Experience interactions
Technicians supporting CSM Walk-up Experience locations can view and manage interactions automatically pushed to the Agent Workspace inbox.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician

Walk-up Experience interactions can be automatically pushed to a personal inbox in Agent Workspace based on agent schedules and assignment rule configurations in the Advanced Work Assignment feature. Technicians fulfill interactions on a first-come-first-served basis as they appear in the inbox.

To manually assign and manage interactions using the CSM Walk-up Experience Technician modules found in the application navigator, refer to Manage Walk-up Experience interactions manually.

Technicians set a status in the Agent Workspace inbox to indicate readiness to accept interactions. Status choices are Available, Away, and Offline.

Even though interactions are automatically pushed to the walk-up inbox, agents can work with anyone in the walk-up queue at any time.

View walk-up queue interactions assigned to you automatically in your walk-up inbox or in your My Assigned Walk-ups list. You can also view all Open - Unassigned interactions for the queue you support.

With Agent Workspace you can view lists of all your related walk-up interactions and appointments, your cases, customer accounts and contacts, incidents, requests, and more using one convenient interface. The Walk-up Experience related interaction list includes the following items:
Walk-up Experience related interaction list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Assigned Walk-ups</td>
<td>Interactions you assign to yourself when you accept an active interaction or that are assigned to you. Agents assign interactions to themselves when they accept a queued interaction. Managers can assign interactions to specific agents. These interactions are in a Work in Progress state. Once assigned, an agent can transfer the interaction to another agent or queue to complete the work, if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open — Unassigned</td>
<td>All open but unassigned interactions associated with your specific walk-up queue location. When a guest checks into a walk-up queue, an interaction is created. The interaction is Queued until an agent accepts it or is assigned the interaction. At that point, the state changes to Work in Progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed Walk-ups</td>
<td>All Closed Complete and Closed Abandoned interactions assigned to a specific walk-up location queue. Agents can abandon an interaction when a guest leaves the queue before receiving support.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To begin supporting a walk-up queue guest, navigate to > Workspace Experience > Agent Workspace Home. The Agent Workspace homepage opens, greeting you with your name.
2. Click Inbox and ensure your status is set to Available. View interactions in your inbox automatically pushed to you.
3. Select the interaction at the top of the list and begin resolving the issue or fulfilling the request.

   When you create an associated case, a New Case tab opens next to the Details tab of the original interaction. Fill out the new case form. Click Save to save the new case.
   
   a) If an interaction requires an unusual amount of time to resolve or fulfill, you can place the interaction on hold. The requester does not lose position in the queue and you can help another requester simultaneously. Placing an interaction on hold does not affect your capacity for new interactions. To put an interaction on hold, click Put on Hold.
   
   b) You can associate the interaction with another record by selecting Associate Record from the more UI actions icon in the interaction header.
   
   c) If you cannot resolve an issue, click the Create Case button in the interaction header.

   When you create an associated case, a New Case tab opens next to the Details tab of the original interaction. Fill out the new case form. Click the Save button to save the new case.

4. When you finish resolving the interaction, click Close in the interaction header.

   Closing an interaction affects your capacity because a new interaction will be pushed to your inbox.

Manage Walk-up Experience interactions manually

Technicians supporting walk-up locations can manually manage queue requests with several CSM Walk-up Experience interaction-related modules.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician
Manage interactions manually using the CSM Walk-up Experience Technician modules found in the application navigator. To manage automatically assigned interactions from the Agent Workspace inbox, refer to *Manage automatically assigned Walk-up Experience interactions*.

Walk-up queues support guests in the order that they check into the queue — first come, first served. Technicians supporting the queue can decide who will work the first interaction. As new guests enter the queue and submit interactions, technicians share the workload, assigning queued interactions to themselves.

View walk-up queue interactions using several Walk-up Experience modules:

### Walk-up Experience interaction modules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Assigned Walk-ups</td>
<td>Interactions you assign to yourself when you accept an active interaction or that are assigned to you. Agents assign interactions to themselves when they accept a queued interaction. Managers can assign interactions to specific agents. These interactions are in a Work in Progress state. Once assigned, an agent can transfer the interaction to another agent or queue to complete the work, if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open — Unassigned</td>
<td>All open but unassigned interactions associated with your specific walk-up queue location. When a guest checks into a walk-up queue, an interaction is created. The interaction is Queued until an agent accepts it or is assigned the interaction. At that point, the state changes to Work in Progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed Walk-ups</td>
<td>All Closed Complete and Closed Abandoned interactions assigned to a specific walk-up location queue. Agents can abandon an interaction when a guest leaves the queue before receiving support.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. To begin supporting a walk-up queue guest, navigate to > CSM Walk-up Experience > > Technician > Opened - Unassigned. The Interactions list opens.
2. Find the guest name under the Opened for column of the Interactions list.
3. Click the interaction Number associated with the guest. The Walk-up Interaction form opens with details about the issue or request.
4. Enter your name in the Assigned to field on the form, change the State to Work in Progress, and click Update.
   a) To close an interaction if the guest has left the queue, click Abandon in the form header or choose Closed Abandoned from the State form field and click Update
   b) Alternatively, you can associate the interaction with another record by clicking the Associate Record button in the interaction header.
5. To resolve the interaction, navigate to Walk-up Experience > Technician > My Assigned Walk-ups.
6. Click the interaction number from the list to open the Walk-up Interaction form.
7. Resolve the issue or fulfill the request.
   a) Change the interaction status to On Hold if the requester is not present for an appointment or if the interaction entails a lengthy process, for example, an OS upgrade.
   b) If you cannot resolve the issue or fulfill the request, click the Create Case related link to create a case.
When you create a case, the associated related lists on the form populate. Related lists include the following details:

- Cases for Interaction: Cases associated with the interaction
- Cases by Same Caller: Cases created for a walk-up guest

8. When you finish resolving the interaction, change the interaction State to Closed Complete and click Update to update the interaction. Alternatively, you can click Close to complete the interaction.

**View and manage Walk-up Experience appointments in Agent Workspace**

Viewing upcoming scheduled CSM Walk-up Experience appointments provides technicians with an estimate of future queue demand and workload. Managers can view future appointments and adjust staffing at walk-up queue locations to best support demand.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician

Technicians and managers primarily use Agent Workspace for all Walk-up Experience related information, including viewing and managing scheduled appointments.

**Note:** You can also view and manage scheduled appointments from the CSM Walk-up Experience in the application navigator, or left navigation bar.

Appointments are automatically routed to your Agent Workspace inbox based on availability. You can also view a list of scheduled appointments and choose which one to accept.

Upcoming appointments also display with a small calendar icon next to the user name on the onsite walk-up location queue wall monitor. The user with an appointment appears on the monitor a short time before the appointment is scheduled to begin.

**Note:** Upcoming appointments are also displayed on online check-in screen with the same calendar icon next to the user name.

1. Navigate to **Workspace Experience > Agent Workspace Home**.
   The Agent Workspace homepage opens, greeting you with your name.

2. Click **List** in the left navigation bar.

3. Under **Walk-up**, click **Appointments**.
   Walk-up appointments assigned to your queue are listed.

4. Click an appointment number to view details, such as the requester name, the interaction number and description, and the appointment time.

   a) To open the associated interaction to view details, click the open record icon next to the interaction number.

   b) Click **Accept appointment** to begin working on the interaction.
      If necessary, you can assign the appointment to another agent and add work notes.
      If a significant amount of time has passed and the requester does not show up for the appointment, you can delete the appointment by clicking the more UI actions icon in the interaction header and choosing **Delete**.

   c) Click **Save** to save any changes you make to the appointment interaction.
View and manage Walk-up Experienceointments from application navigator

Viewing upcoming scheduled Walk-up Experience appointments provides technicians with an estimate of future queue demand and workload. Managers can view future appointments and adjust staffing at walk-up queue locations to best support demand.

Role required: sn_csm_walkup.walkup_technician

Technicians and managers can view and manage scheduled walk-up appointments from Walk-up Experience in the application navigator, or left navigation bar.

Note: Primary access is through Agent Workspace for all Walk-up Experience related information, including scheduled appointments.

Upcoming appointments also display with a small calendar icon next to the user name on the onsite walk-up location queue wall monitor. The user with an appointment appears on the monitor a short time before the appointment is scheduled to begin.

1. Navigate to CSM Walk-up Experience > Technician > Scheduled Appointments.
   All walk-up appointments scheduled for the upcoming 14 days display.

2. Click an appointment number to view details, such as the requester name, the interaction number and description, and the appointment time.

   a) If desired, to preview the associated interaction details, click the preview record icon next to the appointment number.

   b) To begin working on the interaction, click Accept appointment on the Walk-up Appointment form.

      If necessary, you can assign the appointment to an agent and add work notes.

      If a significant amount of time has passed and the requester does not show up for the appointment, you can delete the appointment by clicking delete.

   c) Click Update to save any changes you make to the interaction form.

Use the Customer Service Portal

Search for information about a question or an issue, or request assistance from a customer service agent.

Your Customer Service Management Service Portal activity usually begins on the homepage. Organizations usually customize their homepages, and logged-in users often see different information than users who are not logged in.

Note: If any active outages exist for your install base, they are displayed on the homepage.

From the Customer Service Portal homepage, you can access and use the following features:

Customer Service Portal homepage for logged-in users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge</td>
<td>Clicking Knowledge on the header or the main page takes you to the Knowledge homepage. You can search the knowledge base or view a list of top-rated or most viewed knowledge base articles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests</td>
<td>Displays all your requests. You can also request items and services from the catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Lists</td>
<td>Lists all your cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI component</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Provides access to all cases and quick links to create a product or order case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support</td>
<td>Navigate to appointments, contacts, work orders, install base, and other quick links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Displays notifications sent for resolved cases, cases awaiting information, publications, and approvals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tours</td>
<td>View a tour for additional guidance on how the Customer Service Management application works. Your administrator determines whether tours appear on pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live Chat</td>
<td>Click Live Chat to chat with a virtual agent or a customer service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile menu</td>
<td>Click your profile photo to either view your profile or log out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Enables you to search. Either enter a keyword to use the type-ahead search or enter one or more words to view all search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ask the Community</td>
<td>Provides access to the Community homepage where you can ask questions and get answers fast, connect with people who share similar expertise, and join forums and participate in discussions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get help</td>
<td>Click Get help to make a request or report a problem by opening a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request something</td>
<td>Request items and services from the catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most viewed articles</td>
<td>View a list of the most viewed articles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Featured articles</td>
<td>View featured Community content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most useful articles</td>
<td>View the most useful knowledge articles based on the usage count of the articles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The following components are available if you have installed communities:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent solved discussion</td>
<td>View a list of recently solved discussions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent community blog</td>
<td>View a list of recently published community blogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community featured content</td>
<td>View a list of featured community content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You can view the metadata for each entry in the widgets, such as the number of views, number of days from the time the article or feature was published, and rating for the article.

**Manage contacts from the customer portal**

Users with the customer administrator role can create and update customer contacts; assign roles to contacts; and create, enable, or disable contact logins from the customer portal.

Administrators can also reset a password for a contact from the customer portal based on the Content Management System (CMS). The Customer Service Portal does not support the password reset feature. The system administrator can change and reset passwords using the ServiceNow Password Reset and Password Change applications.

**Note:** The Related Links section at the bottom of the Contacts page includes several Service Portal links that are not currently supported by the Customer Service Portal.
**Create a customer contact**

Create a customer contact from the customer portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner_admin, or admin

1. Click **Support > Contacts** in the portal header.
2. From the Contacts list, click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Contact form, as appropriate.

**Contact form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>Customer's first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last name</td>
<td>Customer's last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Customer's job title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>The language for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>The time zone for this customer's location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The user's account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>Customer's email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business phone</td>
<td>Customer's business phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile phone</td>
<td>Customer's mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Enable or disable notifications for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>A unique identifier for this user. The user ID should follow the format firstname.lastname.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This field is displayed after you click **Submit** and create the contact.

4. Click **Submit**.

After you create a new contact, you can create a login for the contact and enable or disable notifications.

**Create a login for a new contact**

After creating a new contact, you can create a login for that contact.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner_admin, or admin

1. Click **Manage Users** in the portal header.
2. Select the new contact from the Contacts list.
3. Click the **Create Login** related link.

   The system creates a login for this contact and fills in the User ID field on the Contact form with the user's first and last name in this format: **firstname.lastname**

   **In the event that you create a new contact with the same first and last name as an existing contact, the User ID field is left blank and the Create Login related link does not appear on the contact form.**

   To create a login for this contact, enter a unique login in the User ID field on the Contact form and click **Update**.

**Update contact information for a user**

Update the contact information for a user from the customer portal.
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner_admin, or admin

1. Click Support > Contacts in the portal header.
2. Select a user from the Contacts list.
3. Make the desired changes to the fields on the Contact form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>Customer's first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last name</td>
<td>Customer's last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Customer's job title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>The language for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>The time zone for this customer's location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The user's account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>Customer's email address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business phone</td>
<td>Customer's business phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile phone</td>
<td>Customer's mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Enable or disable notifications for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>A unique identifier for this user. The user ID should follow the format firstname.lastname.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Update.

Enable or disable the login for a contact
Enable or disable the login for a contact.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner_admin, or admin

1. Click Manage Users in the portal header.
2. Select a contact from the Contacts list.
3. Click one of the following related links:
   - Disable login
   - Enable login

If the login for this contact is currently enabled, the Disable login related link is displayed. If currently disabled, the Enable login related link is displayed.

The system enables or disables the login for this contact and returns you to the Contact list. A disabled contact cannot access the customer portal.

Assign a user role to a contact
Assign one or more user roles to a contact from the customer portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner_admin, or admin

Use the Edit Role pop-up window to manage the roles for a contact. Contacts must have at least one assigned user role. If there are no roles in the Selected column on the pop-up window, you cannot update the record.

Note: The roles available in the Edit Role pop-up window are configured using the sn_customerservice.contact_role_assignment property.
1. Click **Contacts** in the Customer Service Portal header.
2. Select a user from the Contacts list.
3. Click the **Edit Roles** related link.
4. In the Edit Role pop-up window, select a role in the **Available** column and move it to the **Selected** column.
5. Click **Update** on the Edit Role pop-up window.

**Note:** If there are no roles in the **Selected** column, the system displays an error message and the column resets to display the originally assigned roles.

6. Click **Save** on the Contact form.

**Reset a password for a contact**

Reset a password for a contact from the customer portal.

Role required: admin

When you reset a password for a contact, the system sends an email to the contact that includes a new temporary password. The customer is asked to change this temporary password at the next login.

**Note:** Administrators can reset a password for a contact from the customer portal based on the Content Management System (CMS). The Customer Service Portal does not support the password reset feature.

1. Click **Manage Users** in the portal header.
2. Select a contact from the Contacts list.
3. Click the **Reset a password** related link.

   This brings up the Password Reset Assistance dialog box.

4. Ensure that the correct user name is displayed in the **Select User** field.
5. Select a process in the **Select process** field.
6. Click **Verify Identity**.

**Manage customer registration requests**

Users with the customer administrator role can approve or reject registration requests that customers submit from the Customer Service Portal.

**Approve a registration request with a valid registration code**

Approve a registration request from a user that was submitted from the Customer Service Portal with a valid registration code.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin

1. Navigate to the customer portal.
2. Click **Approvals**.

   The Approvals list displays registration requests with these states: **Requested** and **No Longer Required**.

3. Click a request in the Approvals list with a state of **Requested**.
4. If desired, add any **Comments** to this request.
5. Click **Approve**.

   A user account is created and an email is sent to the contact’s email address with a user ID and temporary password. The user is also assigned these roles: sn_esm_user and snc_external.

**Approve a registration request with an invalid registration code**

Approve a registration request from a user that was submitted from the Customer Service Portal with an invalid registration code.
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin

1. Navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Pending Contact Registrations.
2. Select a registration request with a state of Pending.
3. Select an Account for the requester.
4. Click Update.
   The registration request is sent to the customer administrator of the assigned account.

Reject a registration request
Reject a registration request from a user that was submitted from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin

1. Navigate to the customer portal.
2. Click My Approvals.
3. Click a request in the Approvals list with a state of Requested.
4. Click Reject.
   An email regarding the rejection is sent to the requestor’s email address.

Assign a contact to an asset from the customer portal
Users with the customer administrator role can assign a contact to an asset from the customer portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin

1. Log in to the customer portal.
2. Click Support > Assets from the portal header menu.
3. Click the desired asset.
4. Click New in the Asset Contacts related list.
   This displays a new Asset Contact form. The Asset field displays the selected asset and is read-only.
5. Select a Contact.
   The contacts available for selection are the contacts from the asset’s account.
6. Click Submit.
   The contact is added to the Asset Contacts related list.

Search for information using the customer portal
Use the search feature on the customer portal to find information about a question or an issue.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

The portal has a search feature that you can use to search for information across several repositories. Enter a search term in the Search field and then click Search to display a list of related articles.

1. Enter a search term into the Search field.
2. Click Search.
   A list of articles related to the search term is displayed.
3. Click a link to view an article.

Search the knowledge base
Use the customer portal to search the knowledge base or view a list of popular knowledge base articles.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin
The customer service portal includes a link to the knowledge base that you can use to search for information, read and rate articles, and submit feedback. Under this link, the portal displays a list of popular knowledge base articles. If the information that you need is not included in this list, you can search the knowledge base for the desired information.

1. Navigate to the customer service portal.

2. Click **Knowledge**.

   The knowledge page displays a separate category for each of the products purchased by this customer. It also displays lists of articles by:
   - Featured content
   - Most useful
   - Most viewed

3. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click a product to display more specific information</td>
<td>Displays a list of categories on the left and articles on the right. Click a category to drill down even further.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click a link from one of the lists</td>
<td>Displays the article.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type a topic in the Search field and press the Enter key</td>
<td>Displays a list of related articles. Click a link to display the desired article.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Search the customer service community**

Use the customer service portal to search the community site or view a list of recent discussion topics.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. Navigate to the customer service portal.

2. Click **Ask the Community**.

   This brings up the Ask a Question page.

3. Enter a question in the **Title** field.

4. Select a knowledge base in the **Knowledge Base** field.

5. If desired, select a category in the **Category** field.

6. If desired, add one or more tags to your question in the **Tags** field.

7. Click **Post Question**.

   The question appears on the search results page under the **Questions** category.

**Deflect cases with knowledge and community content**

Enable customers to search for information from the knowledge base and community and find solutions to their issues.

Role required: sn_customerservice_customer or sn_customerservice_consumer

The Service Portal Case form displays contextual search results based on text entered in the Subject field. These search results provide targeted solutions to customers. Customers can search for information that is related to a case when opening a case. If the search results in any related content, the customer can preview the content.

**Note:** By default, search results include knowledge articles, solved community questions and blogs, and pinned articles.

1. Navigate to the Customer Service Management Service Portal and then **Support > New Cases**.

2. Click **Product Case** or **Order Case**.

3. Start typing in the **Subject** field.
If there are any search results that match, they are displayed in the Related Search Results widget.

Note: If embedded search has been enabled, the results are displayed inline in the Case form in a Knowledge results section and are read-only.

4. Perform one of the following actions.
   - Click one of the content links in the Related Search Results widget to enter the content directly.
   - Click one of the content links in the embedded Knowledge results section to open the content inline as read-only.

5. Optional: Click This helped to mark the content as helpful for resolving the associated case.
6. Click Submit.

View asset information from the Customer Service Portal

View a list of assets for the current user's account.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. Click Support > Assets in the portal header.
   This displays a list of assets that belong to the current user's account, including the name and serial number of the asset and the product model category and account to which it belongs.
2. Click one of the following to view more information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display name</td>
<td>Displays the asset information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>Displays the account information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model category</td>
<td>Displays the product model information for this asset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click the Back button to return to the list of assets.

View or update customer contact information

View or update your contact information from the customer portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. Click your user name in the portal header to display your contact information.
2. Make any desired changes to the fields on the Contact form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contact form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ServiceNow Paris Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Business phone</td>
<td>Customer's business phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile phone</td>
<td>Customer's mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Enable or disable notifications for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>A unique identifier for this user. The user ID should follow the format firstname.lastname.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Update.

**Customer notification preferences**

Customers can set preferences for email notifications.

Email notification preferences are set to control email notifications that are sent to the customer when an agent performs one of the following case activities:

- Opens a case for a customer
- Comments on a customer's case
- Provides a resolution for a customer's case
- Closes a customer's case

**Set email notification preferences**

Customers can set preferences for email notifications that are sent when customer service agents perform different actions on cases.

Ensure that you have received at least one email for the case to set the email notification preferences.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. Navigate to the customer service portal.
2. Click your user name or photo in the portal header to display your user profile information.
3. Click the Notification Preferences related link to display the Notification Preferences form.

**Note:** The Notification Preferences link is available only after receiving the first email for the case.

4. Enable or disable the following email notifications for your primary email address. The notifications are available based on the actions performed by customer service agents on the case.

- Case closed for customer
- Case commented for customer
- Case opened for customer
- Case resolved for customer

**Change your password directly from the Customer Service Portal**

Change your password directly from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: admin

**Note:** Users with the required roles can change their passwords from the Customer Service Portal. The system administrator can change and reset passwords using the ServiceNow® Password Reset and Password Change applications.

1. Click your user name in the portal header to display the user profile information.
2. Click **Change Password**.
3. Fill in the fields on the Change Password form.

**Change Password form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Old Password</td>
<td>The current password. This field is automatically filled in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Password</td>
<td>The new password, which must meet the following requirements:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Be a minimum of eight characters long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Include at least one uppercase and one lowercase letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Include at least one number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retype Password</td>
<td>The new password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Change Password**.

**Contact self-registration**

The self-registration feature enables new customer contacts to submit registration requests from the customer portal.

Once the request is submitted, it goes through an approval process and is either accepted or rejected. If accepted, a user account is created and the contact receives an email with a user ID and a temporary password. When logging in to the portal for the first time, the contact is asked to change the temporary password. If rejected, the contact receives an email with this information.

A customer contact can submit a registration request with or without a registration code:

- If a request is submitted with a valid registration code, the contact’s account information is automatically detected and added to the contact record. The request is then sent to the customer administrator of that account for approval. If an account has multiple customer administrators, they all receive the registration request but only one is required to approve it. After a request has been approved, the state of the request changes to **No Longer Required** for the other customer administrators.
- If a request is submitted without a registration code or if the code is incorrect, the request is sent to the system administrator, who fills in the account information. Once this information is filled in, the request is sent to the customer administrator of that account for approval.

The system administrator creates a unique registration code for each account and stores it in the **Registration Code** field on the Account form. Once this code is created, customer administrators can distribute the code to customers as needed.

**Submit a self-registration request**
Submit a registration request from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: none

1. Navigate to the customer portal login page.
2. Request a login by clicking **Register** from the portal header.
3. Fill in your **First Name**, **Last Name**, and **Business Email**.
4. If you have a registration code, enter it in the **Registration Code** field.
5. Enable the check box to agree to the privacy policy and to the community terms and conditions.
   Click the links to access more information about these policies.
6. Enable the Security Code check box, complete the CAPTCHA validation, and click **Verify**.
The Customer Service application uses the Google re-CAPTCHA service.

7. Click Submit.
   You are returned to the portal login page.
   If you entered a valid registration code, you see this message: “Your request has been submitted and is pending review. You will receive an email when your request is processed.”
   If you did not enter a registration code or if the code was incorrect, you see this message: “Incorrect Registration Code.” Your request is submitted and is sent to the system administrator to complete the account information.

Request a password reset
If you forget your password, you can request a new password from the customer portal login screen.
Role required: none
1. Navigate to the customer portal login page.
2. Click the reset your password here link.
3. Enter your User name and Email address.
4. Click Reset Password.
   The user name and email address are validated. If they match, the system generates a temporary password and sends it to the user's email address.
5. Log in to the customer portal using the temporary password.
   You are required to create a new password before continuing.
6. Enter the new password in the Password field.
7. Enter the new password again in the Validate Password field.
8. Click Submit.

Log in to the Customer Service Portal for the first time
After a registration request is approved, the customer contact receives an email with a user ID and temporary password. When logging in for the first time, the contact is asked to change the password.
Role required: none
1. Navigate to the Customer Service Portal login page.
2. Enter your user ID in the User name.
3. Enter your temporary password in the Password field.
4. Click Login.
   You are prompted to change your password.
5. Enter your temporary password in the Current Password field.
6. Enter your new password in the New Password field.
7. Re-enter your new password in the Confirm New Password field.
8. Click Submit.

View product information from the Customer Service Portal
View a list of products to track the products or services sold to your account and manage your services using service catalogs.
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin
You can view a list of products or services that have been sold to your account. You can also view any cases created on the product and all active contracts and entitlements for the product.
An entitlement is active if:
- Its end date is not in the past or it has no end date.
• The contract it is linked to is also active.

A contract is active if:
• Its state is set to active
• It is linked to a product with an active entitlement.

**Note:** You can modify the **Active Entitlements** widget to define your own filters for active entitlements.

If product catalog items have been set up in your instance, you can use the **Service Catalogs** widget to view context-sensitive service catalogs based on the services you are subscribed to. Extend your services using service catalogs and request additional items on the services you have subscribed to.

1. Navigate to the Customer Service homepage.
2. Click **Support > Products** in the header menu.
   The system displays a list of products or services sold to your account.
3. Click a product to view the details and any cases created on the product in the last 30 days.
4. View all active contracts and entitlements for the sold product.
5. Optional: You can also create a case directly from the product details.
6. Optional: View all catalog items associated to sold products and request additional services, as required.

---

**Create a product case from the Customer Service homepage**

Create a case about a question or issue on a product from the Customer Service homepage.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. Navigate to the Customer Service homepage.
2. Right-click in the form header and choose **Case > Create Product Case**.

**Note:** Depending on your role, you might not see the **Account** and **Contact** fields.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The account for which the case is being created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>The name of the customer contact for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>The asset tag number or the serial number of the asset associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The product model of the asset. A model is a specific version or configuration of an asset (for example, Apple Mac Book Pro). If you select an asset in the <strong>Asset</strong> field, this field is auto-populated if the associated product information is available in the asset record. A product may be associated with multiple assets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The available assigned priorities are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 - Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 - High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3 - Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 4 - Low (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>A brief description of the customer question, issue, or problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A detailed description of the customer question, issue, or problem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Click Submit.**

   The case is created, assigned a case number, and added to the creator's case list. To view this list, click **My Cases** at the top of the customer portal.

### Chat with an agent from the Customer Service Portal

Chat with a virtual agent or a customer service agent from the Customer Service Portal to resolve issues quickly.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.partner_admin

1. **Click the chat icon** (in the Customer Service Portal to start a conversation.

   A virtual agent or a customer service agent responds.

2. Optional: To talk to a person instead of a virtual agent, click **Contact Support**.

3. When you are finished with the chat, click **End Conversation**.

If the agent creates a new case or links the discussion to an existing case, you can view these cases from the customer portal by clicking on **My Cases** and displaying the case list.

### Get help using virtual agent conversations

Predefined Customer Service Virtual Agent chatbot conversations help your customers complete common self-service tasks, such as getting help with a product or checking the status of a case. Use predefined NLU with your virtual agent chatbot topics to enable the chatbot to assess the intent of the user input and provide the best response based on the context of the conversation.

If you are an anonymous user not logged into the application, you can get help by entering keywords for an issue and choose to get transferred to a live agent.

**Role required:** sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.consumer
A user with a proxy_contact role can also check the case status for a customer.

The information exchanged during the conversation flow (user inputs and bot responses) enables the chatbot to fulfill a user request or assist a user in completing a task. If the user has a question or an issue with an existing product or order, the virtual agent searches the keyword and displays relevant knowledge articles that can help resolve the issue. If there are no relevant articles, it creates a case.

ServiceNow NLU enables discovery of the chatbot topics based on either the keywords entered in the chat or the user-intent and matches an entity with the user input. It also makes the entity available to the topic if there is a match.

1. Navigate to the Customer Service Management portal.
2. Click Chat.
   You can click Show Me Everything to display all available topics or enter keywords to narrow down the results to relevant topics.
3. If you are a logged-in user, enter keywords to get help on a case, an issue, or an order.
   • If NLU is enabled, it will guide you through the right topic based on the utterance.
   • If NLU is not enabled, it will display topics based on the match for the entered keywords. You can make a selection from all available topics displayed.

   **Note:** Contact your system administrator to determine whether the topics are NLU-enabled.

4. Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Follow these steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check the status of a case</td>
<td>1. Initiate checking the case status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you are using the virtual agent conversation without enabling NLU, click <strong>Check Case Status</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you are using NLU in your virtual agent conversation, enter an utterance to check the status of a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If you provide a case number, you will be presented with the details of the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Select a case from the case list that you would like to get help for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. When the case information displays, you can do one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Add a comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Attach a picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check another case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contact an agent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Get help with a product

Enter a keyword for your issue. The chatbot returns a list of related knowledge articles to help resolve your issue. If there are no matching articles associated with the description, a case is automatically created with the following information:

- Case identification number
- Short description
- State
- Priority

Take any of the following additional actions:

- Update the product and asset
- Add a comment
- Attach a picture
- Contact an agent

Get help with an order

1. Initiate checking the status of your order.
   - If you are using the virtual agent conversation without enabling NLU, click Get Help with Order.
   - If you are using NLU in your virtual agent conversation, enter an utterance to get help on an order.

   **Note:** If you provide an order number, you will be presented with the details of the order.

2. Select an order from the list of your orders that you would like to get help for.

3. Take any of the following additional actions:
   - Add a comment
   - Attach a picture
   - Contact an agent

Get help

If you are an anonymous user not logged into the application, enter keywords for your issue. The chatbot returns a list of related knowledge articles that have been made public. If there are no matching articles that would help resolve the issue, you can choose to be transferred to a live agent.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Follow these steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Submit Request** | 1. Initiate submitting your request for one of the catalog items.  
* If you are using the virtual agent conversation without enabling NLU, click **Show Me Everything** and then click **Submit a request**.  
* If you are using NLU in your virtual agent conversation, enter an utterance for example open a request, that will identify that there is a NLU and intent associated.  
2. Select the catalog item. The Search Catalog Item topic block searches for the catalog item and displays a link based on your search. For more information about search catalog item, see *ITSM Virtual Agent*  
| | **Note:** Wherever the topic is opened, the records will display on the same portal.  
| | 3. Click on the link displayed and exit the virtual agent if you do not have any further request. |
| **Create Case** | Creates a case from Virtual Agent. You need the following fields to create a case:  
* short_description (mandatory)  
* description  
* account_sys_id  
* contact_sys_id  
* consumer_sys_id  
The values of these can be empty. If the account, contact, and consumer fields are empty, the logged in user details are populated. The topic block returns the variable case_sys_id from the topic block. |
| **Update Case** | Updates a case from Virtual agent. You need the following 2 fields to update a case:  
* case_sys_id (mandatory) - must be a valid case ID. If the ID is valid the following 4 options are displayed:  
  * Add product information is displayed only if enable_product_update is set to true.  
  * Add a comment  
  * Attach an image  
  * Cancel  
  * enable_product_update - If set to true, the Add product information option is displayed. It updates the asset and model information.  
The topic block returns the variable case_sys_id |

5. To exit a chat conversation, click *I'm done*.  

**View or modify a case from the Customer Service Portal**  
View or modify the information in a selected customer service case.  
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.partner_admin  
Depending on the role of the current user, the Case list displays:  
* Cases created by the current user (sn_customerservice.customer)  
* Cases related to the current user's account (sn_customerservice.customer_admin)
• Cases related to the current user's account as well as partner accounts (sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.partner_admin)

1. Click **Case > All Cases** in the portal header. Cases are ordered in the list with the most recently updated at the top.
2. Click the desired case number to open the Case form.
3. Make any necessary changes to the Short description or Additional comments fields. All other fields on the form are read-only.
4. Click Update.

**View a publication on the Customer Service Portal**

View the details of a publication on the Customer Service Portal and download any attachments.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer

The **Publications** link on the customer service portal displays a list of current publications. You can filter the publications on this list by category and you can further filter the list to show all publications or only those that are unread. You can sort the list by publish date or expiration date. You can also search for a specific term.

After a publication reaches its **Expiry Date**, it is automatically removed from the Publications list.

1. Navigate to the customer service portal.
2. Click **Support > Publications** in the portal header. This displays a list of current publications. The information displayed for each publication includes the title, publish date, expiration date, and a brief description.
3. If desired, filter or sort the Publications list.
   • Select a category in the upper-left corner or select **All Categories**.
   • Select either **All Publications** or **Unread Publications** in the upper-right corner.
   • Select either **Publish Date** or **Expiry Date** in the Sort by field.
4. If desired, search the Publications list by entering the search term in the Search Publications field.
5. Click a publication name to open.
6. If the publication has attachments, click **Attachments** in the upper-right corner.
7. Select the attachments to download from the pop-up window.
8. Close the pop-up window.
9. Click the return arrow at the top of the publication to return to the Publications list.

**Complete a customer service satisfaction survey**

After accepting a proposed solution for a case, complete a customer service satisfaction survey.

When a customer accepts a proposed solution for a case by clicking **Accept Solution** on the case form, a satisfaction survey is displayed in the portal. The customer has the option of completing or skipping the survey. Either choice returns the customer to the list of cases on the self-service portal.

To complete the survey:

1. Answer each of the survey questions.
2. Click **Submit**.

**Request an item or service from the Customer Service Portal**

Browse the catalog and create a request from the Customer or Consumer Service Portals.
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner,
sn_customerservice.customer_case_manager, sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.consumer,
sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

Customers and consumers can make requests from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals. Customer
administrators, partners, and case managers can also make requests. For more information about these roles, see
<ADD REFERENCE>.

Note: Creating a request from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals requires activation of the
Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request). It also requires that the system
administrator provide external customers with access to request records.

1. Do one of the following to create a request:
   - Click the Request Something link on the portal landing page.
   - Click Requests > Request Something in the portal menu header.

2. Browse the service catalog and select the desired item or service. You can also use the Category filters to filter
   the available items.
3. Fill in any necessary information related to the request.
4. Click Submit.
   The system processes the request, creates the request and any other related records, and displays the details in the
   Related Records widget on the case view page.

View records related to a case from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals

View records related to a case, such as requests, changes, or problems, from the Customer or Consumer Service
Portals.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner,
sn_customerservice.customer_case_manager, sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.consumer

If a case has one or more related records, a Related Records widget is displayed on the case view page that lists those
records.

1. Navigate to the Customer or Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click My Lists in the portal header and then select a case.
   You can use the My Lists filter to narrow the list of records before selecting a case.
3. In the Related Records widget, click a record to view its details.
4. Optional: For request records, expand the Stage field to display more details about the request process.
5. Click the X in the upper corner to close the details window.

Close a case from the Customer Service Portal

Customers and consumers can close cases from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.consumer

This feature is available for the Customer Service Portal (B2B) for product and order cases and for the Consumer
Service Portal (B2C).

The Close Case button is not available for cases in the Resolved or Closed states.

1. Click Cases in the portal header to open the Case list.
2. Open the desired case.
3. In the Actions section, click Close Case.
4. In the confirmation pop-up window, click Close Case.
   When a case is closed from the portal:
• The case status in the Case details section is updated to **Closed**.
• The case additional comments and resolution notes are updated with **Closed by customer**.
• The case resolution code is set to **Solved by customer**.
• A message at the top of the portal confirms that the case has been closed.
• The system displays a customer satisfaction survey.

5. Complete the customer satisfaction survey.
   You can also choose to skip the survey. Either choice returns you to the case list on the portal.

**View install base information from the Customer Service Portal**

View a list of install base to track the instances provisioned for your account and which products or services run on them.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

You can view all cases and the service status from the last 30 days as well as all active, past, and planned outages. You can also view any active entitlements for the install base. An entitlement is active when its end date is not in the past or it has no end date. If it is linked to a contract, the contract must also be active.

**Note:** You can modify the **Active Entitlements** widget to define your own filters for active entitlements.

1. Navigate to the Customer Service Portal.
2. Click **Support > Install Base** in the header menu.
   The system displays a list of install base items that belongs to your account.
3. Click an install base to view the details, including cases created on the install base in the last 30 days, active entitlements, as well as service status and outage history.
4. Optional: You can also create a case directly from the install base details.

**Create a case for install base from the Customer Service homepage**

Create a case about a question or issue on your install base from the Customer Service homepage.

Role required: sn_customerservice.customer, sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, or sn_customerservice.partner_admin

Install base enables you to track which instances have been provisioned for your account and the products and services that run on them.

1. Navigate to the Customer Service homepage.
2. Click **Create Case for Install Base**.
3. Fill out the fields on the form, as required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The sold product you have a question on or issue with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Base</td>
<td>The install base item you have a question on or issue with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>The assigned priority:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 — Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 — High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3 — Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 4 — Low (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>A brief description of the question, issue, or problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A more detailed description of the customer question, issue, or problem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

The case is created, assigned a case number, and added to the user's case list. Click My Cases at the top of the customer portal to view the Cases list.

**Approve a request, change request, or registration request**

Users with the snc_external role can view and approve requests and change requests from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: snc_external

A request or change request may require approval from another employee within the same organization.

1. In the Customer Service Portal header, click Notification > View all notifications.
2. Click a record in the Approvals section of the Notifications page.
   The system displays a read-only view of the record approval form. For requests that include one or more items, these items appear in a collapsible list at the bottom of the Request form.
3. Optional: Click a requested item at the bottom of the Request form to view the details in a pop-up window.
4. Click Approve.
   The system makes the following updates:
   • The record status is set to Approved.
   • The record status is displayed after the record number in the Related Records widget on the Case form.
   • The record status is added to the Case form.
     • If the record is approved by the customer administrator or if the customer self-approves the request, the change in status is added to the Additional comments field.
     • For other approvers, the change in status is added to the Work notes field.
   • The approval record is updated in the Approval table.

**View the status of a request, change request, or registration request**

Users with the snc_external role can view the status of requests and change requests from the Customer Service Portal.

Role required: snc_external

1. In the Customer Service Portal header, click My Lists.
2. In the My Lists filter, click My Cases.
3. Click a case in the Cases list.
4. View the record status after the record number in the Related Records widget.
Use the Consumer Service Portal

The Consumer Service Portal is a web interface that your company can use to provide information and support to consumers.

The Consumer Service Portal is based on the ServiceNow Service Portal application. Consumers can use the portal to search for information, get their questions answered by other registered members, or request assistance from a customer service agent.

From the Consumer Service Portal, consumers can:

- Search for information, browse knowledge articles, and engage with the community.
- Start a chat session with a customer service agent
- Register, create a login, and create a user profile.

After registering and logging in to the Consumer Service Portal, consumers can:

- Edit user profile information and change passwords.
- Register new products and view a list of currently registered products.
- Contact a customer service agent about a question or issue.
- Create cases and view a list of current cases.
- Accept or reject proposed case solutions.

Your consumer service portal activity usually begins on the consumer service portal homepage. If you are a logged in user, you see different information than non-logged in users. Your organization can customize the homepage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge</td>
<td><strong>Knowledge</strong> on the header and the main page takes you to the kb_home page. The knowledge home page allows you to search the knowledge base or view a list of top-rated or most viewed knowledge base articles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests</td>
<td>Displays all your requests and you can also request from the catalog for items and services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My lists</td>
<td>Lists all your cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get help menu</td>
<td>Click <strong>Get Help</strong> to open a product or order case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support menu</td>
<td>Navigate to cases, orders, my products, and other quick links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tours</td>
<td>View a tour for additional guidance on how the Customer Service Management application works. Tours appear when your administrator creates them on certain pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chat</td>
<td>Click <strong>Chat</strong> to chat with a virtual agent or a customer service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile menu</td>
<td>Click your profile photo to either view your profile or logout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Enter a search term and click <strong>Search</strong> to view the search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ask the Community</td>
<td>Click <strong>Ask the Community</strong> to access the Community homepage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get help</td>
<td>Click <strong>Get help</strong> to make a request or report a problem by opening a case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
Customizing the Consumer Service Portal

To customize this portal, navigate to Service Portal > Portals and click Consumer Service Portal. See Service Portal for more information about creating a custom interface.

Pre-chat from the Consumer Service Portal

As a user on the consumer service portal, you can initiate a conversation with support by answering the Pre-chat survey. The survey questions vary based on the session type such as logged-in or anonymous.

Ensure that you are on the consumer service portal page.

1. Click the Open chat window icon on the portal page.
2. Answer the questions that help set the context for an agent to resolve your issue. You are routed to an agent queue.

Portal usage calculation

Portal usage enables you to track how your customers and employees are using the portal. The Customer Portal Usage dashboard provides information about portal visits resulting in session counts.

To view the Customer Portal Usage dashboard, navigate to Customer Service > Administration > Portal Usage.

Note: You can ignore the bot session usage that is captured as part of this dashboard.

A user session is a period of activity on the Customer or Consumer Service Portal by one of the following users:

- External: an external user, typically a customer or consumer, who is logged in.
- Anonymous: a user who is not logged in.

A user session times out after a specific period of inactivity.

User access to the self-service portals is tracked as follows: per session, per day, and per portal. If the same user logs in from multiple browsers or devices, each login is counted as a separate visit. Each first call of a portal page starts a session and, at midnight (server time), the system restarts another session. This means that a user cannot have a session longer than 24 hours.

The default session timeout is 30 minutes. This setting can be adjusted using a system property. For more information about modifying the session timeout setting, see Manage user sessions.

Note: Metadata for each entry in the widgets such as the number of views, number of days from the time the article or feature was published, and rating for the article is displayed.
Site visit calculation examples

A user logs in, logs out, and then logs in again:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>User activity</th>
<th>Billable count incremented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>User visits the portal as an anonymous or guest user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>User logs in</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>User logs out</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>User logs in immediately after logging out</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A user logs in and continues the session past midnight:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>User activity</th>
<th>Billable count incremented</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>User visits the portal as an anonymous or guest user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>User logs in</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>User session continues past midnight</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>User logs out</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Register for the Consumer Service Portal

Register for the Consumer Service Portal to gain access and create a consumer profile.

Role required: none

1. Navigate to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click Register in the portal header.
3. Fill in the fields on the registration form.
   Your email address must be unique. If you enter an address that is already in the system, you receive an error message. Try again with a different email address.
4. Enable the Security Code check box, complete the CAPTCHA validation, and click Verify.
5. Select the check box to agree to the privacy policy and to the community terms and conditions.
6. Click Sign Up.
   A verification email is sent to the email address you provided.
7. Click the link in the email to verify your email address.
   Your registration is complete. You can now log in to the Consumer Service Portal.

Log in to the Consumer Service Portal

Use the name and password that you created during the registration process to log in to the Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Navigate to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click Login in the portal header.
3. Fill in the fields on the Login popup window.
4. Click Login.
   You are logged in to the Customer Service Portal and your name appears in the portal header.
Change your password from the Consumer Service Portal

Change your password from the consumer portal.
Role required: sn_customerservice.customer

1. Click your user name in the portal header to display the user profile information.
2. Click Change Password.
3. Fill in the fields on the Change Password form, as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current Password</td>
<td>The current password. This field is automatically filled in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Password</td>
<td>The new password. This password must:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Be a minimum of eight characters in length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Include at least one uppercase and one lowercase letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Include at least one number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm Password</td>
<td>Retype the new password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Change.

View or edit a consumer profile

Registered users with the consumer role can view their consumer profiles, edit the information as needed, and change passwords.
Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click your user name in the portal header and then click Profile.
3. To add a picture to your profile, click Upload Picture and select the desired image.
4. To update the personal information in your profile, including name, contact information, and address:
   a) Click the desired field.
   b) Enter the new information in the popup window.
   c) Click Save.
5. To change your password, click Change Password.
   The Change Password link appears on the consumer profile when the Self Service Password Reset plugin (com.snc.password_reset) is activated.
6. Fill in the fields on the Change Password popup window and click Update.

Register a product from the Consumer Service Portal

Users with the consumer role can register their products from the Consumer Service Portal.
Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click Support in the portal header and then click Register Product.
3. Type a search term in the search field and press Enter to display a list of products.
4. Click the **Select** button on the card for the desired product.
5. Enter the **Serial Number** and the **Purchase Date** for the selected product.
6. Click **Register**.

After the product is successfully registered, it appears in the My Products list, which includes the products registered to the current user.

**View a list of products from the Consumer Service Portal**

Users with the consumer role can view a list of their registered products from the Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click **Support > My Products** in the portal header.
   This displays a list of products registered to the current user.
3. If desired, click a product to display more information about the product.

**Create a case from the Consumer Service Portal**

Users with the consumer role can create cases from the Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click **Get Help** in the portal header.
3. Choose between **Get Product Help** and **Get Order Help**.
4. Enter or search for a customer.
5. Enter a product or an order depending on what you selected above.
6. Enter a brief description in the **Subject** field.

**Note:** When you start entering the subject, the application searches for the relevant content in the knowledge bases configured for portal and is displayed in the **Related Content** list.

7. If desired, add a more detailed **Description** and any attachments.
8. Click **Submit**.

The new case is created and added to the Cases list. To view the case, click the link in the case creation message or click **Cases** in the portal header and then click the case number.

**View a case from the Consumer Service Portal**

Users with the consumer role can view a list of cases from the Consumer Service Portal and select individual cases to see more detail.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

Selecting a case opens a form with the following sections:

- A conversation that displays the interaction between the consumer and the customer service agent.
- The action that needs to be taken on the consumer's part, such as accepting or rejecting a solution.
- The case details, including the case number and current status.
- Any attached files.

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click **Support > Cases** in the portal header to view a list of cases related to the current user.
3. Click the case number to view more information about the case.
4. If desired, type a message to the agent and click **Send**.
Your message becomes part of the case conversation. All responses from the agent are also included in the conversation.

Accept or reject a case solution from the Consumer Service Portal

Users with the consumer role can accept or reject the proposed solution for a case from the Consumer Service Portal.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

When an agent proposes a solution to a consumer’s case, buttons for accepting or rejecting the solution appear in the section of the form that shows the consumer actions.

1. Log in to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click Support > Cases in the portal header to view a list of cases related to the current user.
3. Click a case number to view more information about the case.
4. Click one of the following buttons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accept Solution</td>
<td>Accepts the solution proposed by the agent and changes the case state to Closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject Solution</td>
<td>Rejects the solution proposed by the agent and changes the case state to Open.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chat with an agent from the Consumer Service Portal

Chat with a virtual agent or a customer service agent from the Consumer Service Portal to resolve issues quickly.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

1. Click the chat icon ( ) in the Consumer Service Portal to start a conversation.
   A form opens that requests the type of issue and a brief description of the issue.
2. Fill in the information and click Submit.
   A virtual agent or a customer service agent responds.
3. Optional: To talk to a person instead of a virtual agent, click and then Contact Support.
4. When you are finished with the chat, click End Conversation.

If the agent creates a new case or links the discussion to an existing case, you can view these cases from the Consumer Service Portal by clicking Cases and displaying the case list.

Chat anonymously with an agent from the Consumer Service Portal

Users that are not logged in can chat anonymously with an agent from the Consumer Service Portal to resolve issues more quickly.

Role required: none

1. Click the chat icon ( ) in the Consumer Service Portal to start a conversation.
   A form opens that requests some basic user information.
2. Fill in the information and click Submit.
A virtual agent or a customer service agent responds.

3. Optional: To talk to a person instead of a virtual agent, click

   and then Contact Support.

4. When you are finished with the chat, click End Conversation.

View a publication on the Consumer Service Portal

View the details of a publication on the Consumer Service Portal and download any attachments.

Role required: sn_customerservice.consumer

The Support > Publications link on the Consumer Service Portal displays a list of current publications. You can filter the publications on this list by category and you can further filter the list to show all publications or only those that are unread. You can sort the list by publish date or expiration date. You can also search for a specific term.

After a publication reaches its Expiry Date, it is automatically removed from the Publications list.

1. Navigate to the Consumer Service Portal.
2. Click Publications in the portal header.
   This displays a list of current publications. The information displayed for each publication includes the title, publish date, expiration date, and a brief description.
3. If desired, filter or sort the Publications list.
   • Select a category in the upper-left corner or select All Categories.
   • Select either All Publications or Unread Publications in the upper-right corner.
   • Select either Publish Date or Expiry Date in the Sort by field.
4. If desired, search the Publications list by entering the search term in the Search Publications field.
5. Click a publication name to open.
6. If the publication has attachments, click Attachments in the upper-right corner.
7. Select the attachments to download from the pop-up window.
8. Close the pop-up window.
9. Click the return arrow at the top of the publication to return to the Publications list.

Using CSM Agent Workspace

Use CSM Agent Workspace to interact with customers, create and work on cases, and resolve issues.

Agent workflows in action

These example workflows illustrate how agents can use CSM Agent Workspace to assist customers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Create a Case</th>
<th>Resolve a Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This example workflow shows how a chat agent interacts with a customer.</td>
<td>This example workflow shows how a case agent resolves a case with content from the knowledge base.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Common tasks that agents perform

In addition to the examples above, these are additional tasks that agents can perform in CSM Agent Workspace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look up and verify a contact or consumer</td>
<td>Look up contact or consumer information, review and confirm the details, and then populate the information on the interaction record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View install base information in Agent Workspace</td>
<td>View a customer’s install base to quickly identify the support they require as well as opportunities for adoption and upsell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a request, incident, problem, or change</td>
<td>With the itil role, you can create incident, problem, change, and request records from open cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond to a community thread from a case</td>
<td>For cases that are created from a community discussion, you can view and respond to the discussion in a new browser tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use response templates to add information to cases and case tasks</td>
<td>Copy content from response templates and add it to cases and case tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage skills for a customer service case</td>
<td>Add or remove optional and mandatory skills for a customer service case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For additional customer service agent tasks, see [Manage customer service cases](#).
Knowledge-related tasks

These tasks relate to the knowledge base and how agents can use it to resolve cases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search for knowledge articles, including similar knowledge articles</td>
<td>Use Agent Assist to search for knowledge articles that are similar to the current case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open a knowledge article in a sub tab</td>
<td>After searching for a knowledge article in Agent Assist, open the article in a sub-tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a knowledge article from a case</td>
<td>If you generate useful information as part of resolving a case, store that information by creating a knowledge article.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report a knowledge gap</td>
<td>If you cannot find relevant knowledge articles that could help resolve a case, report a knowledge gap and create a knowledge feedback task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond to a community thread from a case</td>
<td>For cases created from community discussions, you can respond to a discussion in a new browser tab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Create a case from a chat

As a chat agent, your primary role is to accept customer chat requests, evaluate customer issues, and create cases as needed. This example shows the steps involved in creating a case from a chat.

This example shows the typical steps involved in creating a case from a chat.

1. Set your status so that you're ready to accept chats.
From your inbox, click **Status** and select **Available**. Make sure you're available for both cases and chats. Now you're online and ready to get to work.

2. When a chat comes in, accept it from your inbox and respond to the user.
Your organization probably has policies about what you can ask a user. In this example, the user is having issues with a desk phone. You should ask the user basic questions to verify the phone is plugged in and when the phone worked before.

3. On the interaction record, add information about the customer and the issue.
When you engage in a chat with a user, the system automatically creates an interaction record. Use this record to save the details that you or another agent might need later.

**Tip:** Details in the interaction are carried over to the case record, so add as much useful information as possible. This can help other agents who might be assigned to the case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interaction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Work description:**
Jawat's phone is not working.
He's confirmed that the phone is plugged in and it was working an hour ago.

4. Look up the user and verify their contact information.
The Lookup and Verify feature lets you look up the user's profile and verify their personal information, such as their phone number, email address, and location. You can flag the user as **Verified**, so other agents know that the user's information is legitimate.

Add important user information to the interaction record so that agents can reach the user for follow-up.

5. After you finish the chat and have all the information you need in the interaction record, decide if you need to create a case.
Click Create Case on the interaction record to open a new case with the details from the interaction. Fill in any additional details that another agent might need to resolve the case.
6. If necessary, assign the case to another agent.

The case is automatically assigned to you but you can reassign it to another agent or leave it unassigned and let the routing feature make the assignment.

See *Resolve a case using knowledge* for an example of how to work on a case and close it by attaching content from the Knowledge Base.

**Example: Resolve a case using Knowledge**

Resolve a customer service case by searching for related knowledge and attaching a knowledge article.

This example shows the typical steps involved in resolving a case using knowledge that you find with Agent Assist.

1. Open a case from a landing page or list or from your Inbox.
From the List view, click Lists or My Lists and click a case record.

From your Inbox, click Status and select Available. Make sure you're available on both cases and chats.

Now you're online and ready to get to work.

2. Deal with the special handling notes related to the customer or account.

Special handling notes to bring important information to your attention. This information can be about the case, the customer, or other related records.

3. Review the customer, timeline, and SLA information for the case in the ribbon.
Your organization most likely has policies in place regarding how quickly you should manage your cases, so you should be aware of how long the case has been open. The ribbon provides you with this information in easy-to-read tiles.

4. Review the case details in the activity stream.

The activity stream shows you all of the activity that has taken place on a case since it was created. Use the activity stream to understand how a case record has changed over time. This is especially useful when multiple agents have worked on a case.

5. Use Agent Assist to search for related knowledge.
When your administrator sets up Agent Assist, they can enable the ability to search multiple sources of information. If you already have a knowledge base with articles that provide solutions to common problems, you can search for the relevant article and attach it.

6. Select and preview the article that resolves the issue.
7. Click **Attach** and then **Attach Article** to attach the article to the case.

The system also adds the action to the activity stream. From the Customer Service Portal, the customer can see the knowledge article attached to the case and can click the link to open the article in a new tab.

Now that you have seen how a case can be resolved by attaching a knowledge article, check out what else you can do in your workspace:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Report a knowledge gap</em></td>
<td>If you cannot find relevant knowledge articles that could help resolve a case, report a knowledge gap and create a knowledge feedback task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Create a knowledge article from a case</em></td>
<td>If you generate useful information as part of resolving a case, store that information by creating a knowledge article.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respond to a community thread from a case</td>
<td>For cases created from community discussions, you can respond to a discussion in a new browser tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open a knowledge article in a sub tab</td>
<td>After searching for a knowledge article in Agent Assist, open the article in a sub-tab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using Chat Zoom Connector**

Initiate a Zoom meeting directly from a chat by using the Chat Zoom Connector application.

As an agent you can initiate a Zoom meeting from a chat to understand and resolve customer issues faster through live interactions. For more information, see *Initiate Zoom meetings from chats*.

By default, for each interaction record for a Zoom meeting, a Notify conference call number is also generated. As an agent, you or the agent manager can access the recording URL of the Zoom meeting from the activity stream of the interaction record. For more information, see *Interaction records in Agent Workspace*.

As an agent manager, you can access the details of Zoom meetings initiated from a customer chat using the Zoom interaction record. The meeting recordings are available in the interaction record created for Zoom. For more information, see *View details for Zoom meetings initiated from chats*.

**Note:** The conference call details of a Zoom meeting are stored in the Notify Conference Calls [notify_conference_call] table.

As a user in the notify_admin or notify_view role, you can access the details of a Zoom meeting by navigating to Notify > Recordings, and selecting the corresponding conference call number. For more information, see *Notify conference calls*.

**Chat Zoom Connector user roles**

The users with the roles listed in the following table can use the Chat Zoom Connector application.

**Roles required for Chat Zoom Connector**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roles</th>
<th>Tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent_workspace_user</td>
<td>Initiate a Zoom meeting from a chat to understand customer issues and resolve issues faster through live interactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>View details for Zoom meetings initiated from a customer chat using the Zoom interaction record. The meeting recordings are available in the interaction record created for Zoom meetings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notify_admin, notify_view</td>
<td>View details for Zoom meetings initiated from a customer chat by using Notify.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Activation information**

Configure the Chat Zoom Connector application for initiating Zoom meetings from customer chats. For more information, see *Configure Chat Zoom Connector*. 
Initiate Zoom meetings from chats

Resolve issues faster by initiating a Zoom meeting directly from a customer chat using the Chat Zoom Connector application.

Ensure that an administrator has installed and set up the Chat Zoom Connector application. For more information, see Configure Chat Zoom Connector.

Role required: agent_workspace_user

You can use a Zoom meeting to host a screen-sharing or video conference. You can also record the meeting and save the recordings.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace.
2. Accept and respond to a chat from your agent inbox.
3. Optional: Ask questions and find out more about the issue.
4. To start a Zoom session with a customer, click the quick actions icon (균), and then select /zoom.

   Tip: You can also enter /zoom in the text field of the chat.

5. Click the send icon (균).

   A message announcing that the Zoom meeting has started and one containing the meeting URL are posted in the chat window for both agent and customer. If the session was initiated through the Private Chat tab, the session’s URL isn't shared with the customer.

6. Click the URL to host the Zoom meeting and request the customer to click the URL too.

   As a host of the meeting, you can admit participants by sharing the meeting URL with them. The number of participants you can admit depends on your Zoom account settings.

   The meeting topic is set to the number of the associated chat interaction record. The meeting description is set to the short description of the associated chat interaction record. If the short description of the associated chat interaction record is empty, the meeting description is shown as a dash (-).

7. Optional: Record the meeting.

   For more information, see the Zoom Help Center.

An interaction record of type Zoom is generated for the meeting that captures the Notify conference call details for this Zoom session. A Notify administrator or agent manager can access the conference call details associated with the Zoom meeting from the interaction record.

Note: The conference call number is a value automatically generated in the Channel Metadata Record field on the Interaction form. For more information, see View details for Zoom meetings initiated from chats.

The recording URL of the Zoom meeting is added to the activity stream of the interaction record. For more information, see Interaction records in Agent Workspace.

View details for Zoom meetings initiated from chats

View details for a Zoom meeting initiated from a chat by accessing the associated interaction record.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager

This task provides steps for a user with the sn_customerservice_manager role to access Zoom meeting details from an interaction record. For information about how users with other Notify roles view Zoom meeting details, see Using Chat Zoom Connector.

1. Navigate to Interaction > All.
2. In the Interactions list, click the link to an interaction record of type Zoom from the Number column.
The recording URL of the Zoom meeting, if available, is added as a work note and displayed in the activity stream of the Interaction form.

On the Interaction form, you can view the details for a Zoom meeting.

Note: Your administrator might have configured the interaction record to show different application-specific field values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interaction form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opened for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Metadata Record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Metadata Table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View Microsoft Outlook customer contact details in your ServiceNow instance**

Once you have integrated CSM with Microsoft Outlook, you can view customer details in an Outlook add-in panel to make communication easier.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager, sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

1. In Microsoft Outlook, open an email message you received from the contact.
2. Click View in ServiceNow.
   The Outlook add-in panel displays the contact details.

   **Note:** If the contact details are not available, the No contact was found message is displayed.

   You can also click the Pop-out icon
   
   ( ![Pop-out icon](image)
   )

   to view a contact from the CSM portal page.

**Create a contact in Microsoft Outlook**

As an account manager, you can create a new contact when you receive an email from a customer whose details are not in the Microsoft Outlook contacts list.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager and sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

1. Open an email message you received from the contact.
2. On the Microsoft Outlook Home tab, click View in ServiceNow.
   The contact details are not available and the Outlook add-in panel displays the No contact was found message.
3. Click the more actions icon
   
   ( ![More actions icon](image)
   )

   and select Create Contact.
4. Fill in the contact details in the case form and click Submit.
You can also click the Pop-out icon

( )

to create a contact from the CSM portal page.

View or modify existing cases in Microsoft Outlook

As an account manager, view the five most recent cases related to a Microsoft Outlook contact to understand contact-related issues, modify any case information, and communicate better with the contact.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager and sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

1. Open an email message you received from the contact.
2. On the Microsoft Outlook Home tab, click View in ServiceNow.
3. Click Cases in the Outlook add-in panel.

   The add-in panel lists the five most recent cases connected to the contact that are not closed. You can load more cases.

   Use case: A contact John Jason who is from a Boxeo account creates a case CS00002. This case is visible in the add-in panel as the internal contact field = John Jason in the case form.

   A case CS000001 created on the portal by Julie Lewis, a contact from Boxeo is not visible in the Outlook add-in panel as the case form does not have the internal contact field = John Jason in the case form. This case will be visible if the internal contact field is set to John Jason.

4. Click a case to open the case details.

   You can edit the case details if they need modification.

5. Optional: If you have supporting information such as a message that you want to attach to a case, click the attachment icon

( )

and select the file.

6. Click Send.

   The newly added message is available in the activity stream.

   Note:

   Optionally, you can also use the

   icon to view cases from the CSM portal page.

Create a new case in Microsoft Outlook

If a customer whose contact details are available sends an email stating an issue, you can check for existing case details. If there is no existing case, you can create a new case.

Role required: sn_customerservice.contact_manager and sn_customerservice.proxy_contact

1. Open an email message you received from a customer.
2. On the Microsoft Outlook Home tab, click View in ServiceNow.

   If a message No case was found appears in the Outlook add-in panel, then no cases exist.
3. Click the more icon

and select Create Case.

4. Fill in the case details in the case form and click Submit.

 Optionally, you can also use the

 icon to create a case from the CSM portal page.

**Report a knowledge gap**

If you cannot find relevant knowledge articles that could help resolve a case, you can report a knowledge gap.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin

You can search for and attach knowledge articles to a case. If you cannot find any relevant articles, you can either create a knowledge article (if you have permission) or report a knowledge gap.

1. From the Case form, click the More UI Actions icon (***).
2. Click Report Knowledge Gap.
   This creates a new knowledge feedback task in a sub-tab. The short description from the case is copied to the Description field on the task.
3. Optional: Edit the task description.
4. Click Save.
   The knowledge feedback task is saved and added to the Knowledge Gaps related list.

**Respond to a community thread from a case**

For cases that are created from a community discussion, customer service agents can view and respond to the discussion in a new browser tab.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin

Cases that have been created from a community discussion have the Channel field set to Community.

1. Open a case that was created from a community discussion.
2. Click the More UI Actions icon (*** ) and select Show Community Thread.
   This UI action is only available if the Channel is Community.
3. View the community discussion in a new browser window and respond as necessary.

**Use response templates to add information to cases and case tasks**

Customer service agents can copy content from response templates and add it to cases and case tasks.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent with the sn_templated_snip.template_snippet_reader role

The contextual sidebar in CSM Agent Workspace gives you access to information that can help you resolve customer service cases. It includes a column of icons that you can click to access different types of information. Clicking the response templates icon shows reusable messages that you can copy and paste into cases and case tasks.

1. In CSM Agent Workspace, open a customer service case or case task.
2. In the contextual sidebar, click the response templates icon to display a list of templates.
3. In the Response Templates side panel, search for a template.
4. Select a template and then click Copy to clipboard.
5. Paste the template text into the Work notes field or the Additional comments field.

Components installed with Agent Workspace for CSM

Several types of components are installed with the Agent Workspace for CSM application.

Roles

The agent workspace user role (agent_workspace_user) is added to the Service Management agent (sn_esm_agent) role. The role is required to access Agent Workspace for CSM.

Form views

Customer service agents see forms in the CSM Workspace form view (workspace_csm), if they exist for certain record types. Otherwise, agents see forms in the Workspace form view.

Tables

In Agent Workspace for CSM, a number of Customer Service Management tables are provided with the Workspace and CSM Workspace view layouts.

Tables in Workspace view

Agent Workspace for CSM provides the Workspace view for the following tables:

- Case (sn_customerservice_case)
- Consumer (csm_consumer)
- Account (customer_account)
- Contact (customer_contact)
- Account Relationship (account_relationship)
- Asset (alm_asset)
- Contract (ast_contract)
- Product Model (cmdb_model)
- Entitlement (service_entitlement)
- Task (sn_customerservice_task)
- Appointments (sn_customerservice_appointment)
- Contact Relationship (sn_customerservice_contact_relationship)
- Escalation (sn_customerservice_escalation)
- Order (csm_order)
- Order Case (csm_order_case)
- Special Handling Notes (sn_shn_notes)
- Order Line Item (csm_order_line_item)
- Asset Contact (sn_customerservice_m2m_asset_contact)
- Account Team Member (sn_customerservice_team_member)
- Social Profiles table (sn_app_cs_social_social_profile)
• Social Logs table (sn_app_cs_social_social_log)
• Knowledge Applied to Tasks table (m2m_kb_task)

Tables in CSM Workspace view

Agent Workspace for CSM provides the CSM Workspace view (workspace_csm) for the following tables:
• Interaction (interaction)
• Location (cmn_location)

The CSM Workspace view for these tables is similar to the respective default platform interface view.

Lists

The list categories and filtered lists that have been configured for customer service agents in Agent Workspace for CSM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List Category</th>
<th>Filtered Lists</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>My Cases</td>
<td>Cases assigned to the customer service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My Open</td>
<td>Open cases assigned to the customer service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unassigned for my groups</td>
<td>Cases that belong to any of the customer service agent's groups but have not been assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All</td>
<td>All customer service cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major Issue Management</td>
<td>Major Cases</td>
<td>Major cases that have been accepted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>Accounts</td>
<td>A list of customer accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partners</td>
<td>A list of partner accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contacts</td>
<td>A list of customer contacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consumers</td>
<td>A list of consumers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interactions</td>
<td>My Interactions</td>
<td>Interactions that are assigned to the customer service agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(agent's name appears in the Assigned to field on the interaction record).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge</td>
<td>My Knowledge Articles</td>
<td>Knowledge articles authored by the customer service agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(agent's name appears in the Author field).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This list appears in the list panel when the Knowledge Management Advanced Installer plugin (com.snc.knowledge_advanced.installer) is activated.

Catalog Tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filtered Lists</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to my groups</td>
<td>Catalog tasks assigned to the current agent's groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Additional filtered lists appear in the list panel when a customer service agent also has the itil role.
Look up and verify a contact or consumer

An agent can look up contact or consumer information from an interaction record, review and confirm the information, and then populate the information on the interaction record.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, workspace_admin, admin

Agents can search for information such as name, phone number, email address, case number, or order number.

1. From the interaction record, click Verify Contact or Verify Consumer.
   This action brings up the corresponding Verify Contact or Verify Consumer pop-up window.

2. In the Look up field, enter information such as the first few letters of a first or last name or the first few digits of a phone or case number.
   This field uses a type-ahead search feature that displays results in a list and narrows the results as more characters are entered. Multiple display fields in the search results help to differentiate contacts. When searching for a record number, the contact or consumer associated with the record is returned in the search results.

   Note: Delete characters from the Look up field to clear the search results.

3. Select the desired result from the list.
   This action displays information about the selected contact or consumer in a verification card.

4. Select one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Click Verified.</td>
<td>If the information is correct, click Verified. Selecting this option populates the following fields on the interaction record:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For a contact, the Account and Contact fields are populated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For a consumer, the Consumer field is populated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selecting this option also enables the Verified check box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat the search.</td>
<td>If the contact or consumer information is not correct, repeat steps 2 and 3 of this procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click Cancel.</td>
<td>Clicking Cancel closes the pop-up window. The information on the interaction record remains unchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Optional: If necessary, click Lookup Contact or Lookup Consumer again and repeat the search by entering different search information in the Look up field.

6. Click Save.
   The system saves the interaction record and refreshes the related lists.

View install base information in Agent Workspace

View a customer’s install base in Agent Workspace to quickly identify the support they require as well as opportunities for adoption and upsell.

Ensure that the Customer Service Install Base Management plugin (com.snc.install_base) is activated.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

View information about the products and services a customer has purchased, how they are delivered, and additional components available with the product models.

1. Click the account you want to view the install base for.

2. Click the Install Base related list.
3. Click through the **Sold Products** tree view to view details about the sold product and the list of install base items that belong to it.

4. On the form header, click the Hierarchy icon to see the full product model that the sold product is part of.
The product model hierarchy opens in a separate window. Unpurchased product components have a shopping cart icon next to them.

**View sold product information in Agent Workspace**

Enable customer service agents or managers to view the sold products and the service offerings associated to the sold product for an account or consumer.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

Customer service agents can view which service offerings are associated to the sold products affected by an issue. They can also see the service commitments and availability.

1. Navigate to **Agent Workspace > Lists**.
2. Click a case.
3. Click **Sold Products** to view the sold product associated to the case and the service offering associated to it.
4. Click the service offering to view the service commitments associated to it.

**Use Customer Central**

Get a quick overview of key customer information and recent customer activity to help you find out more about the customer contacting support.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

If customer central is activated on your instance, you can click the Customer Information and Customer Activity views from within the Interaction record. Use customer central to get a quick insight into key customer information and recent activity from the customer, who is contacting support. You can filter by date or facet to access the information you require.

1. Navigate to **Agent Workspace**.
2. Accept a chat from your inbox and respond to the customer.
3. Ask questions and find out more about the issue.
4. Add information about the customer and issue to the interaction record.
5. On the Interaction record, click Customer Information to view key information on the customer.
6. On the interaction record, click Customer Activity to view recent activity from the customer.
7. Create a case or close the interaction.

Use guided decisions to resolve cases

Work your way through a guided decision to help you troubleshoot a case and get recommendations on next possible steps in solving the case.

Role required: sn_customerservice_agent

Depending on the context of the case you are working on, guided decisions appear in playbooks on Agent Workspace.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Lists.
2. Click the case you are working on.
3. Click Playbook.
4. Work your way through the guided decision, answering the questions, and providing inputs where required. The guided decision evaluates your answers and provides you with the next question or gives you guidance as to what to do next.
5. Accept or skip the guidance.

Depending on the guidance accepted, the system updates the following:
• A knowledge article is attached to the case.
• Resolution notes are added to the case.
• A work order task is created.

In the case details, the Activity list is updated with the action taken.

View trending case topics

Analyze the backlog of cases and identify clusters of cases that point to similar underlying issues.

Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

View a list of clusters and cluster concepts.
• Cluster concepts list the top ten most recurring words that appeared in the short description of the cases.
• Cluster size indicates the number of cases in the cluster.
• Cluster quality gives a percentage value of how similar the cases are.

Navigate to Agent Workspace > Lists > Trending Case Topics > Last 1 week.

Click a Cluster Id to view the Cluster Summary form details, Related Cases and Related Major Cases.

You can also create a major case for trending case topics.

Add trending case topics to existing major cases

Work through cases more efficiently and resolve similar cases at once by identifying any existing major cases that the backlog of cases can be linked to.

Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Lists > Trending Case Topics > Last 1 week.
2. Click a Cluster Id.
3. On the Related Major Cases related list, check if there are any existing related major cases.
4. On the Related Cases related list, select the cases you want to add as child cases in the existing major case.
5. Click Edit.
6. In the Parent field, copy the number of the major case to add the child cases to.
7. Click Update.

Create major cases for trending case topics

Work through cases more efficiently and resolve similar cases at once by creating major cases to add the backlog of cases to.

Role required: sn_majorissue_mgt.major_issue_manager

If you didn't find an existing major case to add the trending case topics to and you think the cluster qualifies as a major case, you can create a major case, as applicable.

1. Navigate to Agent Workspace > Lists > Trending Case Topics > Last 1 week.
2. Click a Cluster Id.
3. On the Related Major Cases related list, check if there are any existing related major cases.
4. If there are no related major cases, click Create Major Case.
   A major case is created.

To access the major case, click the link in the confirmation message that a major case has been created.

Analytics and reporting for Customer Service Management

Customer Service Performance Analytics Analytics and Reporting Solutions contain preconfigured dashboards with actionable data visualizations to improve your business processes and quantify the value of self-service.

Customer Service Analytics and Reporting Solutions

Customer Service Performance Analytics Analytics and Reporting Solutions contain preconfigured dashboards with actionable data visualizations to improve your business processes.

Use the Performance Analytics widgets on the dashboard to visualize data over time, analyze your business processes, and identify areas of improvement. With Analytics and Reporting Solutions, you can get value from Performance Analytics for your application with minimal setup. You can always create your own objects as well.

Important: Set up and test Analytics and Reporting Solutions on a non-production instance before enabling them in production. You can set up Performance Analytics on a non-production instance without a subscription.

Note: Analytics and Reporting Solutions provide all the configuration records required to analyze default applications. Customize these records for use in your production environment. For more information, see Configure Analytics and Reporting Solutions.

Two Performance Analytics solutions are available for Customer Service:

- Customer Service (com.snc.pa.customer_service)
- Customer Service Management - Advanced (com.snc.pa.customer_service_advanced)
Note: Customer Service Performance Analytics solutions are an optional feature available for the Customer Service Management application. To use them, your license must also include Performance Analytics. Once licensed, enable the Performance Analytics Premium for Customer Service and the Customer Service Performance Analytics solutions on the instances where you wish to leverage the enhanced functionality. For more information about licensing Performance Analytics, see *Activating your Performance Analytics subscription*.

### Customer Service solution

The Customer Service solution adds the following features.

Note: Performance Analytics - Spotlight (com.snc.pa.spotlight) is automatically activated with this solution.

Spotlight groups:

- Case Spotlight

Dashboards:

- Customer Service Agent
- Customer Service Manager
- Customer Service Executive

### Customer Service Management - Advanced solution

The Customer Service Management - Advanced solution adds the following features.

Note: Performance Analytics - Spotlight (com.snc.pa.spotlight) is automatically activated with this solution.

Spotlight groups:

- Case Spotlight

Dashboards:

- Customer Service Agent - Advanced
- Customer Service Manager - Advanced
- Customer Service Executive - Advanced

These dashboards have all the information shown on the dashboards for the basic Customer Service solution, but also contain additional indicators for the following features. Activate all the plugins below in order to view the additional indicators.

- Major Issue Management
- Customer Service Case Action Status
- Customer Service with Request Management
- Customer Service with Service Management
- Agent Chat
- Advanced Work Assignment for CSM
- Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Advanced Work Assignment
Note: For more information about the Major Issue Management indicators, see *Major issue management analytics*.

The Customer Service Management - Advanced solution also adds additional Service Management indicators to the Analytics Hub. For more information, see *Customer Service Management integration with Service Management analytics*.

Enable Performance Analytics for Customer Service Management

To enable Performance Analytics for Customer Service Management, a user with the admin role can navigate to **Performance Analytics > Guided Setup.** Click **Get Started** and then scroll to the section for Customer Service. The guided setup takes you through the entire setup and configuration process.

Customer Service Agent dashboard

The Customer Service Agent dashboard provides quick access to your cases based on criteria that help you prioritize your work. The dashboard also displays summary data on metrics for your organization.

To view the Customer Service Agent dashboard, navigate to **Performance Analytics > Dashboards.** Click the **All** tab and select **Customer Service Management** from the Group menu. Click the **Customer Service Agent** or **Customer Service Agent - Advanced** tile.


End users and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent: View and prioritize your assigned cases. View case trends for all agents.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service manager: View and prioritize your assigned cases. View case trends for all agents.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content creator: Can view the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_viewer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
My Work tab

Reports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Open Cases</td>
<td>Cases assigned to me that are not resolved, closed, or canceled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Cases With Problems</td>
<td>Cases assigned to me that are part of a parent case that is assigned to a system admin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My New Cases</td>
<td>Cases that I have not yet responded to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Group's P1 Cases</td>
<td>P1 cases that are assigned to a member of my group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Group's Open Cases</td>
<td>Cases assigned to a member of my group that are not resolved, closed, or canceled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My KBs Created</td>
<td>List of all KB articles that I created.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Organizational Trends tab
Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Average customer satisfaction based on survey results. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage. For more information about CSAT, see Customer service satisfaction surveys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Call Resolution</td>
<td>Percentage of cases that were resolved during first contact with the customer. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceeding Chat Target</td>
<td>Percentage of all Chat work items that have exceeded the target wait time. For more information about the Chat service channel, see Advanced Work Assignment service channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exceeding Case Target</td>
<td>Percentage of all Case work items that have exceeded the target wait time. For more information about the Case service channel, see Advanced Work Assignment service channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backlog Growth</td>
<td>Number of backlogged cases for all agents over time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customer Service Manager dashboard

The Customer Service Manager dashboard displays charts and summary data on metrics like backlog, resolution rates, SLA, customer satisfaction, and per-agent KPIs.

To view the Customer Service Manager dashboard, navigate to Performance Analytics > Dashboards. Click the All tab and select Customer Service Management from the Group menu. Click the Customer Service Manager or Customer Service Manager - Advanced tile.

End users and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service manager: View case metrics like backlog, resolution rates, SLA, customer satisfaction, and per-agent KPIs to understand the current performance of customer service at your organization.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content creator: Can view the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_viewer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dashboard breakdowns

The Customer Service Manager dashboard uses the Case Assignment Group breakdown. Select one or more groups to view data for only those groups. By default, data from all groups is shown on the dashboard.
# Overview indicators

## Customer Service Manager - Advanced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Average customer satisfaction based on survey results. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage. For more information about CSAT, see <a href="#">Customer service satisfaction surveys</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Call Resolution</td>
<td>Percentage of cases that were resolved during first contact with the customer. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean Time to Resolve</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers Impacted by Major Case</td>
<td>Number of customers impacted by major cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Cases Auto Created from Major Case</td>
<td>Percentage of child cases that are automatically created from a major case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Backlog - Blocked</td>
<td>Number of cases that are blocked and are not resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Backlog - Unblocked</td>
<td>Number of cases that are not blocked and are not resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backlog Growth</td>
<td>Number of backlogged cases for all agents over time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Customer Service Manager

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Average customer satisfaction based on survey results. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage. For more information about CSAT, see <a href="#">Customer service satisfaction surveys</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Call Resolution</td>
<td>Percentage of cases that were resolved during first contact with the customer. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Cases with Breached SLAs</td>
<td>Percentage of cases that have remained open past the time required by the Service Level Agreement (SLA).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unassigned Open Cases</td>
<td>Number of open cases that are not assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved. The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backlog Growth</td>
<td>Number of backlogged cases for all agents over time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Case Backlog</td>
<td>Chart of cumulative open cases and case age over time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Backlog</td>
<td>Number of cases that are not resolved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Analysis tab

Trend chart of case backlog over time. Click and move your cursor to view data for any date. Indicators display data for the selected date.
## Analysis indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Backlog - Unblocked</td>
<td>% Not Updated in 5 Days</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that agents have not updated within the last 5 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Marked as Major</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that are major.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Breached SLAs</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that have remained open past the time required by the SLA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Priority P1</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that are critical priority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Escalated</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that have been escalated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Problem</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases connected to a problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Agent Reassignment</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases where the Assigned to field has changed at least once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% of Major Candidates</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases that have been proposed as major case candidates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Re-opened At Least Once</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases where the State was previously Resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Request</td>
<td>Percentage of open cases connected to a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved or Closed</td>
<td>% with Problem</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases connected to a problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Caused by Change</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases caused by a change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Closed in Same Day</td>
<td>Number of cases that were closed on the same day they were created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Re-opened At Least Once</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases that were reverted to the open State at least once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Resolved Major Cases</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases that are major cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% Re-assigned</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases that are reassigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Breached SLAs</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases that remained open past the time required by the SLA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% with Change</td>
<td>Percentage of closed cases connected to a problem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Analysis breakdowns

Select a breakdown to view cases grouped by that breakdown.

Cases in the Open Backlog - Unblocked state can be grouped by the following breakdowns.

- Case Assignment Group
- Case Assigned To
- Account
- Product
- State
- Priority
- Category
- Channel

Cases in the Open Backlog - Blocked state can be grouped by the following breakdowns.

- Blocked Action Status
- Case Assignment Group

Cases in the Resolved or Closed state can be grouped by the following breakdowns.

- Case Assignment Group
- Case Assigned To
- Account
- Product
- Age
- Priority
- Category
- Contact

---

#### Case Spotlight tab
Case Spotlight breakdowns

Select values for the breakdowns to filter the data shown on the dashboard.

- Assignment Group
- Case State
- Case Priority
- Opened
## Case Spotlight reports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cases Above Spotlight Threshold</td>
<td>Number of cases that exceed the Case Spotlight threshold. Every case where <strong>State</strong> is New, Open, or Awaiting info is scored based on priority and last updated date. The score is compared against the threshold value to put cases with high priority in the spotlight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spotlight Cases P1 - Critical</td>
<td>Number of cases that exceed the Case Spotlight threshold and are Priority 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spotlight Cases - Unassigned</td>
<td>Number of cases that exceed the Case Spotlight threshold and are not assigned to an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Spotlight</td>
<td>List of cases that exceed the Case Spotlight threshold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You can edit the Case Spotlight spotlight group threshold and criteria to put different types of cases in the spotlight based on your organization's needs.
## Agent analysis indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved for each agent. Ranked from fastest to slowest. <strong>Note:</strong> On the Customer Service Manager - Advanced dashboard, this indicator is called Mean Time to Resolve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Call Resolution</td>
<td>Percentage of cases for each agent that were resolved during first contact with the customer. Ranked from highest to lowest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Average customer satisfaction for each agent based on survey results. Ranked from highest to lowest. For more information about CSAT, see Customer service satisfaction surveys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Efficiency Trend (Mean Time to Resolve)</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved for each agent shown over time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed Cases by Agent and Account.</td>
<td>Number of cases closed by each agent for each account.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Work Assignment Analytics tab**


**Work Assignment Analytics reports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Average Chat Wait Time - Last Hour</td>
<td>Average amount of time that customers have spent waiting for an agent response in the past hour for chat work items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average Case Wait Time - Last Hour</td>
<td>Average amount of time that customers have spent waiting for an agent response in the past hour for case work items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Assignment Analytics indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exceeding Target Work Items</td>
<td>Percentage of all work items that have exceeded the target wait time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned Work Items</td>
<td>Percentage of all work items that are assigned to agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abandoned Work Items</td>
<td>Percentage of all work items that agents have abandoned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Text Analytics tab
Note: The Text Analytics tab is visible only if the Performance Analytics Premium for Customer Service plugin [com.snc.pa.premium.cs] is installed.

Text Analytics displays a word cloud of most frequently used words and phrases in the short descriptions of open cases, providing insight into emerging issues reported by users.

- Drill down on a word to view other words associated with cases that contain that keyword.
- Search the word cloud for specific terms.

**Trend line:** Shows the frequency of top keywords over time. Click and move your cursor to view data for any date. **Related Records:** List of cases containing the keywords you selected from the word cloud.

### Customer Service Executive dashboard

The Customer Service Executive dashboard provides a view of the operation and trends of the Customer Service function for your organization.

To view the Customer Service Executive dashboard, navigate to **Performance Analytics > Dashboards**. Click the **All** tab and select **Customer Service Management** from the Group menu. Click the **Customer Service Executive** or **Customer Service Executive - Advanced** tile.


### End users and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service executive: View an overview of customer service cases at your organization to see areas that are doing well and areas that need attention.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content creator: Can view the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_viewer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Overview tab
## Overview indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Average customer satisfaction based on survey results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information about CSAT, see Customer service satisfaction surveys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Average time for a case to be marked as closed or resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> On the Customer Service Executive - Advanced dashboard, this indicator is called Mean Time to Resolve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Backlog</td>
<td>Number of cases that are not resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The percent change in the current period appears under the total percentage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Satisfaction Stats</td>
<td>Summary statistics for customer satisfaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed Case Stats</td>
<td>Summary statistics for closed cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Case Stats</td>
<td>Summary statistics for open cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected Customers and Deployments</td>
<td>Number of affected customers and deployments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This indicator is only viewable on the Customer Service Executive - Advanced dashboard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
At Risk Accounts tab

At Risk Accounts indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Accounts with the lowest customer satisfaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Accounts with the worst average case resolution time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Case Backlog</td>
<td>Accounts with the highest number of unresolved cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: On the Customer Service Executive - Advanced dashboard, this indicator is called Mean Time to Resolve.
## Product Overview indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSAT</td>
<td>Products with the lowest customer satisfaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avg. Time to Resolution</td>
<td>Products with the worst average case resolution time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: On the Customer Service Executive - Advanced dashboard, this indicator is called Mean Time to Resolve.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Case Backlog</td>
<td>Products with the highest number of unresolved cases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cost Information tab

**Note:** The Cost Information tab is visible only if the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Financial Management for Customer Service plugin [com.snc.pa.fm.csm] is installed.

## Cost Information indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Cost</td>
<td>Total cost for all cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Per Case - By Channel</td>
<td>Cost per case grouped by channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Per Case - By Product</td>
<td>Cost per case grouped by product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost Per Case - By Account</td>
<td>Cost per case grouped by account.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
Text Analytics tab

**Note:** The Text Analytics tab is visible only if the Performance Analytics Premium for Customer Service plugin [com.snc.pa.premium.cs] is installed.

Text Analytics displays a word cloud of most frequently used words and phrases in the short descriptions of open cases, providing insight into emerging issues reported by users.

- Drill down on a word to view other words associated with cases that contain that keyword.
• Search the word cloud for specific terms.

**Trend line:** Shows the frequency of top keywords over time. Click and move your cursor to view data for any date. **Related Records:** List of cases containing the keywords you selected from the word cloud.

### Proactive Customer Service - Advanced dashboard

The Proactive Customer Service - Advanced dashboard helps customer service managers track key performance indicators (KPIs) to understand how proactive they were in identifying and communicating issues that impact customers. The dashboard also enables customer service managers to assess the business impact of outages over time.

**Note:**
- Upgrade customers can view the Proactive Customer Service Operations dashboard but should use the new Proactive Customer Service - Advanced dashboard.
- New customers on the Orlando and later releases can only view the Proactive Customer Service - Advanced dashboard.

**Overview tab**
Proactive Operations - Event Management tab

Note: The Proactive Operations - Event Management tab is only visible if the Proactive Customer Service Operations plugin (com.snc.proactive_cs_itom) is activated.

Outages tab
Overview  Proactive Operations - Event Management  Outages

Active Case Outages

Dec 12
0 (0.0%) Dec 11:1

1

Average Outage Duration

Dec 12
△ 14k Dec 11:0 Mins

14k Mins

Outages & Affected Customers

Outages Types

Sep '19  Oct '19  Nov '19  Dec '19

# of Outages  # of Affected Customers

Unplanned Outages  Planned Outages

Top Impacted Customers

ACCT0010001

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
End user and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user</th>
<th>Required role</th>
<th>Benefits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Manager</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>Can view the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content administrator</td>
<td>pa_admin</td>
<td>Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content creator</td>
<td>pa_viewer</td>
<td>Can view the dashboard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indicators

The Proactive Service - Advanced dashboard provides the following key performance indicators:

Proactive Cases
Number of active cases with critical and acknowledged alerts.

Proactive Cases Promoted to a Major Case
Percentage of proactive cases promoted to a major case.

Affected Customers and Install Base Items
Number of customers affected per month.

Alerts that led to Proactive Case
Percentage of critical or acknowledge alerts that triggered case creation.

Active Case Outages
Number of active case outages per day.

Average Outage Duration
Average outage duration per day.

Outages and Affected Customers
Number of outages and affected customers per month.

Outages Types
Number of outages for each outage type per month.

Top Impacted Customers
Customers most impacted by outages.

Breakdowns

The following breakdowns apply to the indicators on the dashboard:

- # of Affected Customers
- # of Affected Install Base Items
- # of Outages
- Planned Outages
- Unplanned Outages
• Degradations

**Customer Service Management integration with Service Management analytics**

The Customer Service Management - Advanced Performance Analytics solution provides indicators for incident, problem, change, and request records associated with customer service cases.

The Customer Service Management - Advanced Performance Analytics solution adds additional indicators. Some of these indicators are automatically displayed on the Customer Service Manager dashboard in the Analysis tab. All the indicators can be viewed in the Analytics Hub or can be manually added to a dashboard.

**Note:** To view the indicators, you must activate the Customer Service with Service Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm) and the Customer Service with Request Management plugin (com.sn_cs_sm_request).

Incident indicators:
• Number of Open Cases with Incident
• Number of Closed Cases with Incident

Problem indicators:
• Number of Open Cases with Problem
• Number of Closed Cases with Problem

Change indicators:
• Number of Open Cases with Change
• Number of Closed Cases with Change

Request indicators:
• Number of Open Cases with Request
• Number of Closed Cases with Request

Caused By Change indicators:
• Number of Open Cases Caused By Change
• Number of Closed Cases Caused By Change

To view the indicators in the Analytics Hub, navigate to *Performance Analytics > Analytics Hub* and search for any of the above indicators.

To add an indicator to a dashboard, a user with the role pa_admin can navigate to the desired dashboard and then click the *Add Widgets* icon at the top right of the dashboard. Select *Performance Analytics* from the drop down menu, then click *Insights* in the list below. Search for the indicator using the search bar. Click the indicator, and then click *Add*.

**Service Manager homepage**

Use the Service Manager homepage to track and analyze customer service case data.

To view the Service Manager homepage, navigate to *Customer Service > Overview*.

The Service Manager homepage displays four case-related reports, which are created using the Reports application. You can drill down into these reports for more information about the related cases.
End users and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent manager: Track status of cases and customer satisfaction.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service agent: Track status of cases and customer satisfaction.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer service administrator: Can edit the dashboard.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_admin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cases by SLA stage</td>
<td>Pie Chart</td>
<td>Displays the number of cases by SLA stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Cases By Priority</td>
<td>Donut</td>
<td>Displays the number of open cases by priority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Click a priority to show the case list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Click a case from the list to view details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Satisfaction</td>
<td>Gauge</td>
<td>Displays the results of the customer satisfaction survey that a customer is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asked to take after a case is closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Cases By Product</td>
<td>Semi-Donut</td>
<td>Displays the number of open cases for each product.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Major issue management analytics

Provides indicators on the Customer Service dashboards for major cases and child cases.

Action indicators are available on the Customer Service dashboards when the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service Management - Advanced plugin (com.snc.pa.customer_service_advanced) is activated.

Note: Activate the Major Issue Management plugin (com.sn_majorissue_mgt) to view the related indicators. Without this plugin, the indicators may not display correctly.

Indicators:

- Number of Open Major Cases (by day, week, month)
- Percentage of Resolved Major Cases (by day, week, month)
• Number of Cases which are Child of Major Case
• Percentage of Major Case Candidates (by day, week, month)
• Percentage of Child Cases which are Auto Created from Major Case
• Number of customers impacted by major issue

Analytics and Reporting Solutions for Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service

Analytics and Reporting Solutions contain prepackaged Performance Analytics and Reporting content for use with other Now Platform products. This Analytics and Reporting Solution quantifies the value of self-service using the Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service.

The following roles and tasks are associated with this Solution:

• Now Platform administrator (admin): Install and activate this Analytics and Reporting Solution and make any necessary changes to system properties.
• Performance Analytics administrator (pa_admin): Review the indicators, breakdowns, widgets, and dashboards. Set up and start data collection. Share the dashboards with appropriate stakeholders.
• Customer service manager (sn_customerservice_manager): Use the Self-Service Analytics dashboard to view case metrics to understand the current performance of self-service at your organization.

Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service

Measure and track the effectiveness of self-service content through user activities on a self-service portal to enrich the content and address any self-service gaps.

To edit this dashboard, you must set the application scope to Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service using the application picker.

Note:
• On the Knowledge tab, you can report knowledge gaps for unsuccessful searches. For more information, see Report knowledge gaps based on unsuccessful searches.
• The Communities tab is available when the Communities plugin (com.sn_communities) is activated.
• The Virtual Agent tab is available when the Glide Virtual Agent plugin (com.glide.cs.chatbot) is activated.

End user and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user and goal</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer service manager: Can view case metrics like backlog, resolution rates, SLA, customer satisfaction, and KPIs to understand the current performance of self-service at an organization.</td>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content administrator: Can edit the dashboard and manage users, groups, and roles for the dashboard.</td>
<td>pa_admin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Use case

Example 1: A user faces an issue with a purchased product. To resolve the issue, the user logs in to the portal, and searches for and views content. However, the user does not find any content helpful and creates a case.

Example 2: A user faces an issue with a purchased product. To resolve the issue, the user logs in to the portal, searches for and views content, marks the content as helpful, and continues to do other activities without creating a case.

In both examples, the self-service content was available. However, in example 1, the user did not find the content helpful and therefore it did not help deflect the case creation. The Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service dashboard enables you to capture not deflected, deflected, or potentially deflected instances with details such as what the user was searching for using the searched terms, the content viewed, and the task created.

Indicators

Indicators define a performance measurement taken at regular intervals of a business service, an activity, or organizational behavior. These performance measurements result in a series of indicator scores over time.

When an administrator activates the Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service plugin (com.snc.pa.self_service_analytics_csm), the Self-Service Analytics PA (com.snc.pa.self_service_analytics) is also activated. Both plugins include indicators for the Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service.

The Self-Service Analytics for Customer Service plugin includes the following indicators:

**Catalog: Deflections**

A monthly count of catalog requests after which the primary activity (case creation) is either found (no deflection) or not found (confirmed or potential deflection) within an activity window.

**Communities: Deflections**

A monthly count of community content types after which the primary activity (case creation) is either found (no deflection) or not found (confirmed or potential deflection) within an activity window.

**Knowledge: Deflections**

A monthly count of knowledge articles after which the primary activity (case creation) is either found (no deflection) or not found (confirmed or potential deflection) within an activity window.

**Number of cases resolved**

A monthly count of resolutions addressed by customer service agents.

**Note:** The Resolutions by Channel widget on the Overview tab of the Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service displays this indicator as Assisted.

Number of Deflections
A monthly count of deflections for all self-service channels (Knowledge, Communities, Catalog, Virtual Agent).

**Self-Service: Confirmed Deflections**

A monthly count of deflections after which the primary activity (case creation) was not found depending on the activity type (helpful knowledge articles, helpful community content, catalog requests) within an activity window. An increase in value indicates better performance.

**Self-Service: Cost Saved**

A monthly calculation of the cost saving for a deflection. The score is calculated according to the formula 

\[
\text{Cost Saved} = \left( \left[ \text{Self-Service: Confirmed Deflections} \right] + \left[ \text{Self-Service: Potential Deflections} \right] \right) \times 20.
\]

**Note:** By default, the cost saved by each deflection is set to $20. However, you can modify the formula and set a different cost. To edit the formula, navigate to **Performance Analytics > Formula Indicators**, search for and click the **Self-Service: Cost Saved** indicator, and edit the numeric value in the **Formula** field. For more information, see **Create a formula indicator**.

**Self-Service: Potential Deflections**

A monthly count of deflections after which the primary activity (case creation) was not found depending on the activity type (knowledge articles views, community content views, Virtual Agent conversations) within an activity window. An increase in value indicates better performance.

**VA: Deflections**

A monthly count of Virtual Agent conversations after which the primary activity (case creation) is not found (potential deflection) within an activity window.

The Self-Service Analytics PA plugin includes the following indicators:

**Catalog: Percentage of requests**

A monthly calculation of the percentage of catalog usage compared with the use of other self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula 

\[
\text{Catalog: Percentage of requests} = \left( \left[ \text{Number of Catalog requests} \right] / \left[ \left( \text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month} \right) + \left[ \text{Communities: Views this month} \right] + \left[ \text{Number of Catalog requests} \right] + \left[ \text{VA: Conversations this month} \right] \right) \right) \times 100.
\]

**Catalog: Success Rate**

A monthly calculation of the percentage indicating the success of the catalog as a self-service channel. The score is calculated according to the formula 

\[
\text{Catalog: Success Rate} = \left( \left[ \text{Number of Catalog requests} \right] / \left[ \text{Catalog: Views this month} \right] \right) \times 100.
\]

**Catalog: Views this month**

A monthly count of catalog item views. An increase in value indicates better performance.

**Communities: Helpful Feedback**

A monthly count of helpful Community content types.

**Communities: Percentage of community viewed**

A monthly calculation of the percentage of Community content types usage compared with the usage of other self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula 

\[
\text{Communities: Percentage of community viewed} = \left( \left[ \text{Communities: Views this month} \right] / \left[ \left( \text{Communities: Views this month} \right) + \left[ \text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month} \right] + \left[ \text{Number of Catalog requests} \right] + \left[ \text{VA: Conversations this month} \right] \right) \right) \times 100.
\]

**Communities: Views this month**

A monthly count of Community content type views. An increase in value indicates better performance.
Knowledge: Articles viewed this month
A monthly count of knowledge articles views. An increase in value indicates better performance.

Knowledge: Helpful Feedback
A monthly count of knowledge articles marked as helpful or rated either 4 or 5.

Knowledge: Percentage of articles viewed
A monthly calculation of the percentage of knowledge articles usage compared with the usage of other self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month}}{\text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month} + \text{Communities: Views this month} + \text{Number of Catalog requests} + \text{VA: Conversations this month}}\right) \times 100.
\]

Number of Catalog requests
A monthly count of catalog requests.

Percentage of helpful Community Content
A monthly calculation of the percentage indicating the success of Communities as a self-service channel. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{Communities: Helpful Feedback}}{\text{Communities: Views this month}}\right) \times 100.
\]

Percentage of helpful Knowledge Articles
A monthly calculation of the percentage indicating the success of Knowledge as a self-service channel. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{Knowledge: Helpful Feedback}}{\text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month}}\right) \times 100.
\]

Self-Service: Engagements
A monthly calculation of the total of views from all self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month} + \text{Communities: Views this month} + \text{Catalog: Views this month} + \text{VA: Conversations this month}.
\]

Self-Service: Success Rate
A monthly calculation of the percentage indicating the success of self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{Self-Service: Successful Engagements}}{\text{Self-Service: Engagements}}\right) \times 100.
\]

Self-Service: Successful Engagements
A monthly count of helpful content from all self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\text{Knowledge: Helpful Feedback} + \text{Communities: Helpful Feedback} + \text{Number of Catalog requests} + \text{VA: Successful Conversations}.
\]

VA: Conversations this month
A monthly count of Virtual Agent conversations. An increase in value indicates better performance.

VA: Percentage of Conversations
A monthly calculation of the percentage of Virtual Agent conversation usage compared with the usage of other self-service channels. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{VA: Conversations this month}}{\text{Knowledge: Articles viewed this month} + \text{Communities: Views this month} + \text{Catalog: Views this month} + \text{VA: Conversations this month}}\right) \times 100.
\]

VA: Success Rate
A monthly calculation of the percentage indicating the success of Virtual Agent as a self-service channel. The score is calculated according to the formula

\[
\left(\frac{\text{VA: Successful Conversations}}{\text{VA: Conversations this month}}\right) \times 100.
\]
**VA: Successful Conversations**

A monthly count of Virtual Agent conversations that were not directed to live agents. An increase in value indicates better performance.

**Breakdowns**

Breakdowns enable you to group or filter indicator scores by a qualitative attribute.

This dashboard includes the following breakdowns:

- **Channel**
  
  Enables you to view indicator scores by a self-service channel such as Knowledge, Communities, Catalog, or Virtual Agents.

- **Communities Content Type**
  
  Enables you to view indicator scores by a Community content type such as answer, blog, comment, document, event, question, or video.

- **Knowledge Base**
  
  Enables you to view indicator scores by knowledge base.

- **Knowledge Category**
  
  Enables you to view indicator scores by knowledge article category.

- **Type of Deflection**
  
  Enables you to view indicator scores by deflection type: no deflection, confirmed deflection, and potential deflection.

**Reports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unsuccessful Searches</td>
<td>Bar</td>
<td>A monthly collection of searches for knowledge articles with no results or results with no clicks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Report knowledge gaps based on unsuccessful searches**

Report a knowledge gap from the Unsuccessful Searches report in the Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager

The Unsuccessful Searches report in the Self-Service Analytics dashboard for customer service reports a collection of searches for knowledge articles with no results or results with no clicks. You can report a knowledge gap for such unsuccessful searches.

1. Navigate to **Self-Service > Dashboards**.
2. Click **Self-Service Analytics**.
3. On the Knowledge tab, on the Unsuccessful Searches report, click a bar.
4. Click **Report Knowledge Gap**.
5. In the **Description** field, describe the knowledge gap.
   
   By default, the **Description** field shows frequently appearing words in the associated collection. You can also enter custom instructions for addressing the knowledge gap. When entering instructions, you can provide a summary of your analysis so that knowledge authors have the necessary information to create an article from the feedback task.

6. Click **Submit**.

If a collection is reported as a knowledge gap, a feedback task of type Unsuccessful search is created in the Knowledge Management application. If the assignment rules are set, the feedback task is assigned to an ownership group or an author.

**Customer Service Management reference**

Reference topics provide additional information about Customer Service Management cases, including lists and forms.

**Customer service cases list**

The Cases list displays a list of customer service cases for the current user.

Users with the sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_manager roles can view the Cases list in the Customer Service Management application. The default view of the Cases list includes the following columns:

- **Number**
- **Short description**
- **Contact**
- **Account**
- **Channel**
- **State**
- **Priority**
- **Assigned to**
- **Updated**
- **Case Report** (add a column to access this table if needed)

External customers can view a list of cases from the customer portal. For external users with the sn_customerservice.customer or sn_customerservice.customer_admin roles, the Cases list displays a subset of case information, including:

- **Number**
- **Short description**
- **Product**
- **Priority**
- **State**
- **Updated**

For external users with the sn_customerservice.partner or sn_customerservice.partner_admin roles, the **Account** column is also displayed.

**Cases displayed in the Case list by user role**

The cases included in the Case list are determined by user role.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Role</th>
<th>Cases Included in Case List</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_admin</td>
<td>All cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>All cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice_agent</td>
<td>All cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External roles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.customer_admin</td>
<td>• Cases created for the customer administrator's account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created by contacts who have a contact relationship with the customer administrator's account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.customer</td>
<td>• Cases created by the customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created by an agent for the customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.partner_admin</td>
<td>• Cases created by the partner:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For their own account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For a customer account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created for the partner administrator's account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.partner</td>
<td>• Cases created by the partner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created by an agent for the partner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created for the same account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cases created from a partner account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Customer service case form**

The Case form displays detailed information about a customer issue or problem.

A customer service agent creates a case to identify a customer’s question or issue and to track the activities related to resolving the issue. An agent also uses a case to track communication to and from the customer, including the communication channels being used.

Case activities include any action that is taken to resolve an issue. This can include phone calls or emails, knowledge base research, conversations with subject matter experts, and dispatch requests to field service agents, as well as other activities.

From the Case form, an agent can associate and store the related information, such as the customer’s name, phone number, and company; account information; product and asset information; service contract and entitlement details, and any associated service level agreements (SLAs).

There are several key features to a case.

**Note:** A contact relationship enables a contact with the customer role or customer admin role to manage the account for which the contact relationship has been established.
• Communication between an agent and the customer or an agent and other employees within the organization. Details of all internal and external communication are recorded on the Case form.
• Any additional tasks that result from a case, such as a work order. Tasks are tracked from a related list on the Case form. These tasks may be internal to the organization or they may involve the customer.
• Information from the case that can be included in the knowledge base and used to help resolve other cases.

There are two different Case form views: a detailed view that is available to agents and agent managers in the Customer Service Management application and a simplified view that is available to external customers from the Customer and Consumer Service Portals.

Agent view

The agent view of the Case form includes the following components:
• A timeline that provides a visual display of case activities.
• Referenced entities for the case including account and contact information, product and asset information, service contract and service entitlement details, and any pertinent SLAs. Except for SLAs, this information exists in the system and can be associated with the case by the agent or agent manager.
• All communication about the case, both external and internal. This information is stored in the Additional comments field (external communication), the Work notes field (internal communication), the Resolution notes field. The Resolution notes field stores details about the case resolution, and the Activity field, which stores all communication in a chronological list.

Agents and managers can view a Case form by navigating to Customer Support > Cases and selecting one of the following menu options:
• My Cases
• All
• Open
• Unassigned

From the Case list, click a case number to display the Case form.

### Customer Service Case form (agent view)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically assigned case number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>The method by which the customer initiated contact and the case was opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Web (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Social</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Local Time</td>
<td>The local time of the contact assigned to the case. It is automatically filled according to the time zone set on the Contact form. If no time zone is set on the Contact form, it is filled according to the Contact Timezone set on the case itself. If no time zone is set on the Contact form or in the case, the field is left blank and is read-only. If a case is closed or canceled, the Contact Local Time field is hidden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>Configure the form layout to add this field to the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact time zone</td>
<td>The contact time zone if the customer is working in a different time zone for the case. It overrides the Contact form time zone. If no contact local time or contact time zone is set, the instance time zone is displayed. Once the case is created, the field is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>Configure the form layout to add this field to the Case form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The name of the contact's company. This field is filled in automatically if the information is available in the contact record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>The name of the customer contact for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>The product model of the asset. A model is a specific version or configuration of an asset (for example, Apple Mac Book Pro). If you select an asset in the Asset field and the asset has an associated product, the Product field is automatically updated. A product can be associated with multiple assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>The asset tag number or the serial number of the asset involved in this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner Contact</td>
<td>The name of the partner contact for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Follow the sun     | A check box to indicate that a case should be handed-off for global follow-up. If a customer enters additional comments on a Priority 1 - Critical or a Priority 2 - High case, or if the case is escalated, the flag is automatically selected. You can also manually select the check box. The activity stream on the case form is updated with any changes.  

| Note: Enable the Follow the sun check box on the Customer Service case form by setting the value of the property `sn_customerservice.FTS_flag_enabled` to true. Configure the form layout to add this field to the Case form. |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Short description  | A brief description of the issue or problem.                               |
| Opened             | The date and time that the case was opened.                                |
| Priority           | The assigned priority:                                                     |
|                    |   • 1 — Critical                                                           |
|                    |   • 2 — High                                                               |
|                    |   • 3 — Moderate                                                           |
|                    |   • 4 — Low (default)                                                      |
| State              | Customer service case states:                                             |
|                    |   • New                                                                    |
|                    |   • Open                                                                  |
|                    |   • Awaiting Info                                                         |
|                    |   • Resolved                                                              |
|                    |   • Closed                                                                |
|                    |   • Canceled                                                              |

| Note: Configure the form layout to add this field to the Case form |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Assignment group   | The assigned customer service agent group.                                 |
| Assigned to        | The assigned agent. If a group is selected in the Assignment group field, the assigned agent must belong to this group. |
| Assigned on        | The data and time when the case is assigned.                              

This field is updated when a user is added or changed in the Assigned to field. |
<p>| Contract           | The contract number associated with this case.                            |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entitlement</td>
<td>The entitlement associated with this case. The entitlements available for selection in the reference list channel matches the case creation channel. The available entitlements are filtered by the settings in the <strong>Account, Contract, Product, Asset</strong> fields. If only one entitlement is available for this case, it is automatically added to the <strong>Entitlement</strong> field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partner</td>
<td>The name of the partner company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch list</td>
<td>Users who receive notifications about this case when additional comments are added or if the state of a case is changed to <strong>Resolved</strong> or <strong>Closed</strong>. Click the add me icon to add yourself to the watch list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes list</td>
<td>Internal users who receive a notification about this case when work notes are added. You can only add internal users to the work notes list. Click the add me icon to add yourself to the work notes list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional comments</td>
<td>Customer-viewable comments. Each comment is inserted into the <strong>Activity</strong> field when the user clicks the <strong>Post</strong> button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes</td>
<td>Information about how to resolve the case, or steps taken to resolve it, if applicable. Internal users who have been added to the Work notes list receive the Case work notes added notification containing the work notes when added. You can configure the notification, as required. The notes are viewable by the admin, agent, and agent manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Records all activity associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved by</td>
<td>The agent to whom the case is assigned when the case is resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed by</td>
<td>The name of the user who closed the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution Code</td>
<td>Choice list indicating the resolution states for the case. This field is mandatory when an agent proposes a solution for a case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Details about the cause of the resolution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution notes</td>
<td>Details about how the case was closed. This field is mandatory if a customer service agent or agent manager closes a case. If a customer closes a case, it is not mandatory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add resolution notes to comments</td>
<td>A check box to determine if the resolution notes are added to customer-viewable comments when the case is resolved. If selected, the resolution notes are added to the <strong>Additional comments</strong> (customer-visible) field. By default, the check box is cleared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved</td>
<td>The date and time that the case was resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>The date and time that the case was closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Customer view

Customers can view a Case form by clicking **My Cases** on the customer portal and then clicking a case number from their Case list.

The customer view of the Case form includes the following components:

- A process flow formatter that indicates the current state of the case.
- The related entity information, including account and contact information, product and asset information, and service contract information.
- An **Activity** field that stores all communication for the case in a chronological list.

### Customer service case timeline

The timeline provides a visual display of case activities. The timeline appears at the top of the Case form when viewed by an agent or manager in the Customer Service Management application.

The timeline uses blue circles to represent case state changes and markers to represent case activities. The information included in the timeline is also shown on the Case form in the **Activity** history.

![Customer Service Case Timeline](image)

### Header

The timeline header displays the time that the case began. It also displays the time that the case was either last updated or closed.
**State changes and case activities**

Each state change for a case is represented by a blue circle on the timeline. Pointing to these circles provides more information about the state change in a tooltip. For example, pointing to the first blue circle that represents the **New** state displays the name of the user who created the case and the approximate time that the case was created.

Activity lines above and below the timeline represent other case activities, including comments, information requests, close notes, email, and phone calls. Activities performed by an agent are shown above the timeline and activities performed by a customer are shown below. Pointing to these activities on the timeline displays additional information.

Overlapping states and conversations are represented by thicker borders and thicker lines. Pointing to overlapped states and conversations results in grouped tooltips.

If a case is ongoing, the end of the timeline shows the last updated activity or state change. If a case is closed, the end of the timeline shows a blue circle that represents the **Closed** state.

**Time metric**

The metric to the right of the timeline tracks the amount of time that a case is open. The date and time that the case was opened is used as the start of the time calculation. When a case is ongoing, the current time is used as the end time calculation. When a case is closed, the close time is used as the end time calculation.

The metric breaks down the time by the number of minutes and hours that a case is with the agent or with the customer. A case is considered to be with the agent when it is in the **New**, **Open**, or **Closed** state.

When a case is in the **Awaiting Info** or **Resolved** state, it is considered to be with the customer.

**Use the Customer Service case timeline with other applications**

You can use the Customer Service case timeline with other ServiceNow applications by creating a configuration for each application and adding the **ResolutionShaper** field to the desired form.

**Role required:** admin

1. Ensure that the Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) has been activated.
2. Navigate to the Resolution Shaper Configs page
   (<instance>sys_resolutionshaper_config_list.do) and click **New**.
3. Select a table in the **Task Table** field.
4. Add the desired states in the **Requestor States** field using a comma-separated list. For example, **New,Active,Resolved,Closed**.
5. Make any necessary changes to the remaining fields and click **Submit**.
6. Navigate to the desired form.
7. Right-click the form header and select **Configure > Form Layout**.
8. Using the slushbucket, select **ResolutionShaper** and move it to where you want the timeline to appear.
9. Click **Save**.

**Customer service case process flow formatter**

The process flow formatter indicates the current state of a customer service case.

The process flow formatter is available in the platform interface when you select the Customer Self Service view. It appears at the top of the Case form and highlights the current state of the case. It also checks off the states through which the case has passed.

The process flow formatter displays the following states:

- **New**
- **Open**
Customer service case form related lists

The Case form includes related lists that store case information and that agents can use to perform case-related tasks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related List</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SLAs</td>
<td>The service level agreements that are associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasks</td>
<td>Tasks that have been created for this case by the customer service agent or agent manager. When you create a task or change the state of a task, the information is recorded in the case Activity field. When you create a case task, the system generates a task number with a prefix. Following upgrade to the New York release: • New case tasks use the CSTASK prefix. • Existing tasks, regardless of state, use the TASK prefix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>The case phone log. A list of incoming or outgoing phone calls associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointments</td>
<td>Appointments that the customer service agent makes with the customer or others as part of resolving this case. When you create an appointment, an appointment creation message is recorded in the case Activity field. The user selected in the To field on the appointment form receives an email with the appointment details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emails</td>
<td>The case email log. A list of the emails that are sent or received as part of resolving this case. The customer service agent or agent manager can send email from within the case, such as updates and inquiries to customers or other employees. A change in the state of the case triggers an automatic email to be sent to the customer. Customer contacts can create and update cases by email as well as receive updates from customer service agents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Cases</td>
<td>A list of cases created for the same account or contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problems</td>
<td>A list of problems related to this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related List</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Orders</td>
<td>A list of work orders created for this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Logs</td>
<td>A list of the communication with customers or consumers that takes place through social media channels. The Social Log form includes the Social Profile of the user that created the communication and the Social URL for the conversation. Click the URL to open the conversation in a new tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attached Knowledge</td>
<td>Knowledge articles attached as a proposed solution to the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Gaps</td>
<td>Feedback tasks that are created when a knowledge gap is reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalations</td>
<td>A list of escalation records that are related to this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Cases</td>
<td>A list of child cases associated with this case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests</td>
<td>A list of requests associated with this case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blocked by</td>
<td>A list of blocking tasks that have been created for this case.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Customer service case states**

A customer service case can be in one of several states.

**Customer service case states**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| New     | The initial state for a new case, which is created through any one of the channels: customer portal, email, chat, telephone, or from the Customer Service application.  
Actions the agent can take:  
• Assign to me: The case is assigned to the agent and the state changes to Open.  
• Accept: If assigned by the customer service manager, the agent accepts the case and the state changes to Open.  
• Update: updates the case.  
• Close Case: Closes the case.  
• Delete: Deletes the case.  
Actions the customer can take:  
• Update: updates the case.  
• Close Case: Closes the case |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>The case is assigned to an agent and the agent clicks <strong>Accept</strong> or an agent opens a case and clicks <strong>Assign to me</strong>. Both of these actions change the state from <strong>New</strong> to <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actions the agent can take:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Update</strong>: Updates the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Request Info</strong>: The agent requests additional information from the customer. The state changes to <strong>Awaiting Info</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Propose Solution</strong>: The agent proposes a solution for the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: The Resolution Code and Resolution notes must be entered in the Resolution Information tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The state changes to <strong>Resolved</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Close Case</strong>: Closes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Delete</strong>: Deletes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awaiting Info</td>
<td>An agent clicks <strong>Request Info</strong>, changing the state from <strong>Open</strong> to <strong>Awaiting Info</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actions the agent can take:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Open Case</strong>: Changes the state back to <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Update</strong>: Updates the case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Close Case</strong>: Closes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Delete</strong>: Deletes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actions the customer can take:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Update</strong>: Once the customer updates the case, the state changes to <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Close Case</strong>: Closes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolved</td>
<td>An agent provides a resolution code and enters resolution notes in the Resolution Information tab and clicks Propose Solution, changing the state from Awaiting Info to Resolved. The Resolution code and Resolution notes fields are mandatory when an agent proposes a solution for the case. Actions the agent can take: • Update: Updates the case • Close Case: Closes the case. Actions the customer can take: • Accept Solution: The customer accepts the solution proposed by the agent. The state changes to Closed and a survey is displayed. • Reject Solution: The customer rejects the solution proposed by the agent and the state changes to Open. • Delete: Deletes the case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>After proposing a solution, an agent waits for the customer to respond. • If the customer clicks Accept Solution, the state changes from Resolved to Closed. • If the customer clicks Reject Solution, the state changes from Resolved to Open. An agent, agent manager, or a customer can close a case at any time, except when it is in the Resolved state. When it is in the Resolved state, only a customer can accept or reject the proposed solution. When an agent or agent manager closes a case, details must be included in the Resolution notes. This is not required when a customer closes a case. A case cannot be updated once it is closed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Customer Service Account form**

The Customer Service Management application uses the Account form to store customer account information.

**Customer Service Account form fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically generated account number for this customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Contact</td>
<td>The name of a user who is the main contact for this company.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Field Definition

### Parent Account
The parent account for this account. Use this field to create an Account hierarchy.

### Registration Code
A unique code for this account. The customer administrator can provide this code to customers for use when requesting a login on the customer portal. The registration code provides a method for validating the customer and the company before the login request is granted.

Enter an alphanumeric code in this field or click the Generate Code icon to generate a unique code.

### Customer
Denotes this account as a customer account.

**Note:** If you are creating a customer account, this field is enabled by default.

### Partner
Denotes this account as a partner account.
A partner can report and manage cases on behalf of customers. A partner can also be a customer.

**Note:** If you are creating a partner account, this field is enabled by default.

### Website
The web address for the company.

### Phone
The phone number for the company.

### Street
The street address of the company.

### City
The city in which the company is located.

### State/Province
The state or province in which the company is located.

### Zip/Postal code
The zip code or postal code for the company.

### Country
The country in which the company is located.

### Notes
Any additional information about the company.

## Customer Service Contact Relationship form

The Customer Service Management application uses the Contact Relationship form to store information about the account, contact, and assigned responsibility in a contact relationship.

### Contact Relationship form fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>The account to which the contact is assigned. This field is automatically filled in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Asset form

The Asset Management application uses the Asset form to store asset information.

#### Asset record fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display name</td>
<td>Name of the asset as it appears in record lists. Automatically set when asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is created, based on Asset Tag and Model fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model category</td>
<td>Model grouping of the asset. Based on the model category selected, the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can be linked to a configuration item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Specific product model of the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Item</td>
<td>CI automatically created when this asset is created. The name that appears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in this field is based on Serial number and Model. Point to the reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>icon to see the configuration item details inherited from the asset record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>Number of items this asset represents. An asset always has a quantity of one</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                  | unless one or more of these points are true. 
|                  |  
|                  | • It is a consumable. Quantity is unrestricted because consumables are tracked |
|                  | in groups. 
|                  | • It is pre-allocated. Quantity is unrestricted when Model category and Model |
|                  | are defined and Substate is set to Pre-allocated.                           |

### Contact

The customer contact selected to fulfill the role or responsibility.

The Contacts list includes contacts from any related partner or account as well as contacts from the account hierarchy.

### Responsibility

The role or responsibility selected for this customer contact.

*Note:* As part of creating a responsibility definition, the admin can specify if the responsibility is unique. If so, the responsibility can only be assigned to one contact per account. For more information, see *Create account teams.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>Person using or primarily responsible for this item. This field is visible when the asset state is In Use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managed by</td>
<td>Person who maintains the asset. This can be different from the person in the Owned by field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owned by</td>
<td>Person who has financial ownership of the asset. This can be different from the person in the Managed by field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
<td>Parent asset of the asset. For example, a monitor or peripheral can have a workstation as their parent asset. When a parent link is defined, the fields related to assignment and state of the child assets is set to read-only and are populated based on the parent assignment and state fields. For more information, see Creating Bundled Models.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>Asset group, for example, base, hardware, license, or consumable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Information about the asset that would be helpful for others to know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial number</td>
<td>Serial number of this asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substate</td>
<td>Current substate of the asset. The available substate settings depend on the state selected. For example, the Retired state contains the Substate options Disposed, Sold, Donated, and Vendor credit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Current physical location of the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department</td>
<td>Department to which the asset belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Company or organization to which this asset belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigned</td>
<td>Date on which the asset was assigned to a user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installed</td>
<td>Date on which the asset was installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial</td>
<td>The Financial section is only available for hardware, software entitlement, and facility assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request line</td>
<td>Requested item to which the asset is linked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invoice number</td>
<td>Invoice under which the asset was billed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Price at which the asset was purchased.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor</td>
<td>Vendor from which the asset was purchased. For assets automatically created from purchase orders in Procurement, the default value of the Vendor field is the vendor specified on the purchase order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opened</td>
<td>Date on which the requested item record was opened. The system automatically populates the field when a request line is specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GL account</td>
<td>General ledger account number with which the asset is associated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost center</td>
<td>Group financially responsible for the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acquisition method</td>
<td>How the asset was acquired. Base system choices are Purchase, Lease, Rental, and Loan. For assets automatically created from purchase orders in Procurement, the default value is Purchase.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Expenditure type         | The type of expenditure.  
  - **Capex**: Capital expenditure is a one-time expenditure, where the value is realized over the years. For example, a photocopier.  
  - **Opex**: Operational expenditure is an on-going expenditure. For example, toners for the photocopier. |
<p>| Disposal                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Disposal order number    | A unique number assigned to the asset disposal order.                                                                                                                                                       |
|                          | <strong>Note</strong>: This field appears only if you have installed Hardware Asset Management from the ServiceNow Store.                                                                                               |
| Disposal vendor          | The vendor assigned to carry out the asset disposal order.                                                                                                                                                  |
|                          | <strong>Note</strong>: This field appears only if you have installed Hardware Asset Management from the ServiceNow Store.                                                                                               |
| Vendor disposal order ID | Order number assigned by the vendor assigned to carry out the asset disposal order.                                                                                                                        |
|                          | <strong>Note</strong>: This field appears only if you have installed Hardware Asset Management from the ServiceNow Store.                                                                                               |
| Disposal date            | The date when the asset disposal order process is completed.                                                                                                                                               |
|                          | <strong>Note</strong>: This field appears only if you have installed Hardware Asset Management from the ServiceNow Store.                                                                                               |
| Disposal reason          | Text explaining why the asset is being retired.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Beneficiary              | Organization that receives the asset when it is retired.                                                                                                                                                   |
| Resale price             | Value of the asset when it is retired. For example, if the asset is donated, the value used when reporting taxes.                                                                                           |
| Scheduled retirement     | Scheduled date on which the asset is retired.                                                                                                                                                              |
| Retired date             | Actual date on which the asset was retired.                                                                                                                                                               |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depreciation</td>
<td>The Depreciation section is only available for hardware and facility assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depreciation</td>
<td>Depreciation method that is applied. Base system choices are <strong>Declining Balance</strong> and <strong>Straight Line</strong>. The depreciation value is defaulted from the associated Model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depreciation effective date</td>
<td>Date on which the specified depreciation method begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage value</td>
<td>Estimated value of an asset at the end of its useful life. This value must be less than or equal to the Cost of the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual date</td>
<td>Number of days that have passed since the <strong>Depreciation effective date</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual value</td>
<td>Value in the Cost field with the depreciation method applied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depreciated amount</td>
<td>Amount the asset has depreciated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contracts</td>
<td>The Contract section is only available for hardware, software entitlement, or facility assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lease contract</td>
<td>Name of the lease contract that applies to the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warranty expiration</td>
<td>Expiration date of the asset warranty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support group</td>
<td>Group managing the contract covering the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported by</td>
<td>Person managing the contract covering the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Work notes are updated for the following cases:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work notes</td>
<td>• Updates to <strong>Assigned To</strong>, <strong>Managed To State</strong>, <strong>Substate</strong>, and <strong>Reserved</strong> fields of asset. The columns for these fields are audited by default and any update is recorded in the work notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Work notes for hardware and software assets are updated when asset is received by a purchase order and transfer order. These work notes help in tracking life cycle of the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related links</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculate Depreciation</td>
<td>Click to calculate the depreciation amount and residual value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Assets Only</td>
<td>Click to delete the assets and not the associated CI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related lists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assets</td>
<td>Assets that are related to the asset you created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expense lines</td>
<td>Expense line associated with the asset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Internal Business Location form**

Industry data models uses the Internal Business Location form to store information about an internal business location, including the staff members assigned to that location, cases created for customers at that location, and relationships created between staff and customers at that location.

**Internal Business Location form fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically generated number of the business location. By default, location numbers start with the prefix IBL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the business location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manager</td>
<td>The manager of the business location. This is a mandatory field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a user is added to the Manager field, the sn_customerservice.svc_location_manager role is automatically added to that user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Users with the manager role can access cases and information for their location hierarchy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A user can be added as the manager for multiple business locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Internal Business Location</td>
<td>A business location can have a parent business location. Use this field to create a parent-child hierarchy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street</td>
<td>The street address of the business location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>The city in which the business location resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State/Province</td>
<td>The state or province in which the business location resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zip/Postal code</td>
<td>The ZIP code or postal code for the business location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal business location related lists**

The Internal Business Location form includes the following related lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>Internal users (users with the snc_internal role) who have been added as staff members at this business location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Staff members can create cases for customers at their business locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Staff members can access customer cases and information where the Service Organization field on the Case form matches their business locations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related list</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>Cases that have been created for customers at this location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Staff Relationships</td>
<td>Relationships that have been created between staff members and accounts at this location. Account staff relationships are created using the Account Manager responsibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Staff Relationships</td>
<td>Relationships that have been created between staff members and consumers at this location. Consumer staff relationships are created using the Relationship Manager responsibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Staff Relationships</td>
<td>Relationships that have been created between staff members and households at this location. Household staff relationships are created using the Relationship Manager responsibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Household form**

Industry data models uses the Household form to store information about a consumer household, including the household members; relationships created for the household and members; and cases, entitlements, and contracts created for the household and members.

**Household form fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>The automatically generated number of the household. By default, household numbers start with the prefix HOLD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head of household</td>
<td>The consumer in charge of the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When creating a new household record, select a consumer from the Consumer table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When updating an existing household record, select a consumer from the current members of the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street</td>
<td>The street address of the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>The city in which the household resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State/Province</td>
<td>The state or province in which the household resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zip/Postal code</td>
<td>The ZIP code or postal code for the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>The country in which the household resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>Additional information about the household.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Household related lists

The Household form includes the following related lists.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related list</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current Members</td>
<td>The consumers who are current members of the household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Members</td>
<td>Current and past members of a household. After members are added or removed from a household, the member history is retained in this related list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member Relationships</td>
<td>Relationships that have been created between members of this household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Member relationships are created using the Authorized Representative responsibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Household members that have an Authorized Representative relationship with another household member can act on behalf of that member and can manage cases for that member.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household Team</td>
<td>Relationships that have been created between internal users and this household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Household staff relationships are created using the Relationship Manager responsibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Internal users that have a Relationship Manager relationship with a household can manage all of the cases for that household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases</td>
<td>Cases that have been created for this household and the members of this household.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Components installed with Customer Service Management

Several types of components are installed with the Customer Service Management application.

Tables installed with Customer Service Management

Tables are added with activation of Customer Service Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Relationship Access</td>
<td>Stores the relationship types that are created for bi-directional account relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_account_relationship_access]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Relationship Type</td>
<td>Stores the relationship types that are created for bi-directional account relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_account_relationship_type]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Team Member</td>
<td>Stores the team members that are assigned to account teams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_team_member]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Token</td>
<td>This table is not currently used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_agent_token]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appointment</td>
<td>Stores appointments that have been created for customer service cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_appointment]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Contact</td>
<td>Stores asset contact relationship records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_m2m_asset_contact]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Stores customer service case records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel Configurations</td>
<td>Stores customer service email channel configuration records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_channel_config]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumers</td>
<td>Stores consumer records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_consumer]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Users</td>
<td>Stores consumer registration records that are created when consumers complete the self-registration process from the Consumer Service Portal. This table extends the Users table (sys_user).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[csm_consumer_user]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Relationship</td>
<td>Stores contact relationship records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_contact_relationship]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Interaction</td>
<td>Stores interaction records for CSM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_customer_interaction]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Service Case Flow</td>
<td>Stores customer service case state flows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_sf_case]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration Request</td>
<td>Stores the customer portal self-registration requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_registration]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsibility Definition</td>
<td>Stores the responsibility definitions that are created to support customer accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_responsibility_def]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Stores tasks that have been created for customer service cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice_task]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties installed with Customer Service Management**

Properties are added with activation of Customer Service Management.

**Note:** To open the System Property [sys_properties] table, enter `sys_properties.list` in the navigation filter.

You can also navigate to **Customer Service > Administration > Properties** to view a list of the most frequently used properties that you can configure for Customer Service Management.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| glide.cs.email.case_queue_address | Email case queue address.  
  • Type: string  
  • Default value: none  
  • Location: Customer Service > Administration > Email Properties |
| glide.cs.email.new_case_prefix | Email subject prefix format for new case.  
  • Type: string  
  • Default value: Case:  
  • Location: Customer Service > Administration > Email Properties |
| sn_customerservice.email.create_case_for_non_matched_user | Create case for non matched user.  
  • Type: true | false  
  • Default value: false  
  • Location: Customer Service > Administration > Email Properties |
| glide.cs.company_name | Your company name.  
  • Type: string  
  • Default value: none  
  • Location: System Property [sys_properties] table |
| glide.ui.activity.email_roles | Roles that can view mail in the Activity formatter when including "Sent/Received Emails"  
  • Type: string  
  • Default value: itil, sn_customerservice_agent  
  • Location: System Property [sys_properties] table |
| glide.ui.sn_customerservice_case_activity.fields | Case activity formatter fields  
  • Type: string  
  • Default value: assigned_to,asset,product,state,priority,short_description,comments,entitlement,contract,*Email*,work_notes  
  • Location: System Property [sys_properties] table |
| sn_customerservice.FTS_flag_enabled | Enable the follow the sun flag on the Customer Service Case form.  
  • Type: true | false  
  • Default value: false |
| sn_customerservice.glide.script.block.client.globals |  
  • Type: true | false  
  • Default value: false  
  • Location: System Property [sys_properties] table |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.shn_asset</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes for assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Special Handling Notes &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.shn_contact</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes for contacts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Special Handling Notes &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.shn_product</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes for products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Special Handling Notes &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.shn_account</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes for accounts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Special Handling Notes &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.shn_case</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes for cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Special Handling Notes &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.portal.chat_queue</td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: System Property [sys_properties] table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>csm.captcha.google.enabled</td>
<td>Enable the Google Captcha tool on the customer portal self-service portal self-registration form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: System Property [sys_properties] table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.use_asset_contact_relation</td>
<td>Restrict assets based on the contacts assigned to the assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.account_relationship_access_roles</td>
<td>Roles which need to be shown in the reference qualifier for the Account Relationship Access table [sn_customerservice_account_relationship_access].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.contact_role_assignment</td>
<td>External roles that can be assigned to contacts from the Customer Service Portal. The roles stored in this property are displayed in the Available column on the Edit Role pop-up window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: sn_customerservice.partner_admin, sn_customerservice.partner, sn_customerservice.customer_admin, sn_customerservice.customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.registration_workflow_id</td>
<td>The default registration workflow sys_id.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 9b6cf2dac31302003a657bfaa2d3aee8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: System Property [sys_properties] table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_attachments_per_record</td>
<td>Maximum consumer attachable items per record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Email Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_open_cases</td>
<td>Maximum open cases per consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Email Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumer_max_products</td>
<td>Maximum registered products per consumer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Email Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>consumer_max_new_cases_daily</code></td>
<td>Maximum new cases per consumer per day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Email Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>consumer_max_comments_per_case_daily</code></td>
<td>Maximum consumer comments per case per day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Email Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>com.snc.cs_base.last.generated.code.tree.path</code></td>
<td>This property gets created by the system when the first customer_account record is inserted into an instance. It stores the Account Code value for the most recently created customer account in the Account (customer_account) table. When a new customer account record is created, the system uses this property to determine a unique account code value for the account. The property is then updated with this latest assigned value so that the next account code value can be set as a unique value for the next account record insert. See Set the account code property for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: System Property [sys_properties] table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sn_customerservice.enable_knowledge_kcs</code></td>
<td>Enable Knowledge Centered Services (KCS) for Customer Services Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Location: Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>skills_management.migration</code></td>
<td>Lists the task tables to migrate to the Task Skills [task_m2m_skill] table when an admin runs the Migrate Skills to Task Skill M2M script.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.skills_management.task_skill_migrated_tables</td>
<td>Contains a list of tables for which the Skills field has already been migrated to the Task Skills [task_m2m_skill] table. If the table name is listed in this property, the data has been migrated and will not be migrated again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case_fields_to_sync</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of fields that synchronize from parent case to child cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent_child_case_sync</td>
<td>Synchronize fields from parent to child cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glide.ui.sn_customerservice_escalation_activity.fields</td>
<td>Escalation activity formatter fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.kcs.enable_template_on_case_workspace</td>
<td>Enables creation of knowledge articles using a knowledge article template from a customer service case in Agent Workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.enable</td>
<td>Enables sending content as recommendations for closing a case using the Auto-Responder feature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property

**sn_customerservice.case.autoresponder.customportal**

Custom portal URL containing the knowledge article parameter such as `sys_kb_id` or `kb_number.

Example: https://<instance-name>.service-now.com/csm?id=kb_article_view&sys_kb_id={sys_kb_id}

- **Type:** string
- **Default value:** none
- **Location:** Customer Service > Administration > Properties

### Roles installed with Customer Service Management

The Customer Service Management application uses roles to identify internal and external users, establish different types of relationships between users, provide access to information, and maintain data security.

Customer Service Management includes both internal and external user roles.

- **Internal roles** are assigned to users within your organization. These roles are for agents and managers using the Customer Service Management application to support customers.
- **External roles** are assigned to users outside your organization. These roles are for customers, customer partners, and consumers using the self-service portals.

With these roles, you can give both internal and external users access to your instance. This role structure gives you the flexibility to provide different levels of access to different users. As an additional security measure, every user must have at least one role so that the instance can distinguish between internal and external users.

Customer Service Management also provides roles for the following business models:

- **Business-to-business (B2B):** With this business model, you can support accounts and contacts. Additionally, you can create relationships and account teams to support your customers.
- **Business-to-consumer (B2C):** With this business model, you can support individual consumers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Roles</th>
<th>External Roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_agent</td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.customer_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.customer_case_manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Business-to-business (B2B) Partner</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_consumer_agent</td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.partner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_manager</td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.partner_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Business-to-consumer (B2C)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_consumer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sn_customerservice_consumer</td>
<td>- sn_customerservice.consumer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Explicit roles

You may have business requirements that change the use of these roles. In addition, the Explicit Roles in CSM in CSM feature may assign both internal and external roles to external users. It is important to regularly review user role assignments to ensure that they are set according to your business requirements.

For more information about reviewing and updating user role assignments, see KB0829930.

Roles and descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Agent                     | Customer service agent who assists customers and partners with questions, issues, and problems. This user creates cases, views and edits cases, and works with customers and subject matter experts to resolve cases. An agent typically supports a specific set of products across one or more communication channels. An agent can belong to one or more agent groups. | • knowledge  
• chat_admin  
• sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester  
• timecard_user  
• template_editor  
• sn_esm_editor  
• sn_shn.editor  
• domain_expand_scope  

Note: The sn_esm_agent role contains the cmdb_read role. |
| Agent manager             | Customer service agent with the additional responsibility for managing agents or agent groups and overriding agent actions.                                                                                       | • sn_customerservice_agent  
• timecard_manager  
• timecard_approver  
• skill_admin  
• sn_app_cs_social_social_profile_user  
• say  
• approval_admin  
• sn_customerservice.consumer_agent  
• asset  
• sn_shn.admin  
• sn_publications.approver  
• contract_manager  
• sn_app_cs_social_log_user  
• awa_manager |
| Customer                  | Customer role for researching questions, issues, or problems. Customers can create cases and view and edit existing cases for themselves. They can also view a list of assets belonging to their accounts.                                   | • sn_esm_user  
• snc_external |

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer case manager</td>
<td>Customer role for managing the cases in an account and any related child accounts. The customer case manager role includes the privileges of the customer role and adds the following privileges:</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create a case on behalf of another contact in the account.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• View a list of cases belonging to the account.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Edit cases belonging to the account.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> The customer case manager role is not automatically added to the sn_customerservice.contact_role_assignment system property. To expose this role to customer and partner administrators, navigate to Customer Service &gt; Administration &gt; Properties and add it to this property.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer administrator</td>
<td>Administrator role for a customer account. This user has access to all of the data within the account.</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer • sn_esm_user_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role title [name]</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Contains roles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Partner [sn_customerservice.partner]  | Partner who is serving customer accounts.  
A partner can create a case for their own account or on behalf of a customer account.  
A partner can view and edit all of the cases that they have created:  
• For their own account.  
• On behalf of customer accounts that they are related to.                                                                                                                                  | • sn_customerservice.customer  
• sn_esm_partner                                                                                                                                  |
| Partner administrator [sn_customerservice.partner_admin] | Administrator role for a partner account.  
The partner administrator can do the following:  
• Access the data within the partner account.  
• Access the data created by the contacts in his or her company in the customer account.  
• Manage users for the partner account and for customer accounts.  
• View all of the cases created by a partner.                                                                                                           | • sn_customerservice.partner  
• sn_customerservice.customer_admin  
• sn_esm_partner_admin                                                                                                                              |
| Consumer [sn_customerservice.consumer] | Consumer role for researching questions, issues, or problems.  
Consumers can create cases and view and edit existing cases for products that they have purchased. They can also view a list of their products.                                      | • sn_esm_user  
• snc_external                                                                                                                                         |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Consumer agent [sn_customerservice.consumer_agent] | Consumer service agent who assists consumers with questions, issues, and problems. This user creates, views, and edits cases and works with consumers to resolve cases. An agent typically supports a specific set of products across one or more communication channels. An agent can belong to one or more agent groups. | • sn_esm_agent  
• chat_admin  
• sn_shn.editor  
• template_editor  
• knowledge |
| Contact manager [sn_customerservice.contact_manager] | User who can manage contacts.                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                  |
| Escalation requester [sn_customerservice.escalation_requester] | User who can request an escalation for a case or account.                                                                                                                                                   | • sn_customerservice.consumer_agent |
| De-escalation requester [sn_customerservice.deescalation_requester] | User who can deescalate a case or account when the cause of the escalation is resolved.                                                                                                                                 | • sn_customerservice.escalation_requester |
| Proxy case creator [sn_customerservice.proxy_case_creator] | Users with the proxy case creator role can create customer service cases directly from community questions created by contacts or consumers.                                                                 |                                                                                  |
| Proxy contact [sn_customerservice.proxy_contact] | Role that enables employees to create cases for customer accounts and contacts. Employees can also be proxy case contacts on behalf of customers. Assign this role to employees in your company who are not fullfillers or do not have other CSM-specific roles. Users with this role can:  
• Create customer service cases using a record producer.  
• Add work notes and comments to any case.  
• Update the watch list of any case.                                                                                     |                                                                                  |
<p>| Case viewer [sn_customerservice.case_viewer] | User who has read-only access to customer service cases. Users with this role can view the same case fields that a customer service agent (sn_customerservice_agent) can access. |                                                                                  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data viewer [sn_customerservice.customer_data_viewer]</td>
<td>User with read-only access to customer data entities such as:</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer_data_viewer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Install base items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Contracts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Entitlements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Accounts, contacts, and account team members</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Consumers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sold product</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer project manager [sn_customerservice.projectmanager]</td>
<td>A user who creates and manages projects for customer accounts.</td>
<td>• sn_customerservice.customer_data_viewer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creates new projects.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sets up project tasks and resource plans.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Identifies customer contacts who have access to projects and project tasks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assigns and manages tasks and dependencies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** This role is added with the Customer Project Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ppm)

| Customer project stakeholder [sn_customerservice.projectstakeholder] | A user who is responsible for activities that require viewing customer project details and project tasks. |                                                                                   |

**Note:** This role is added with the Customer Project Management plugin (com.snc.csm_ppm)

---

**Roles installed with the Customer Service Base Entities plugin**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service management agent [sn_esm_agent]</td>
<td>• assignment_workbench</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• wm_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• cmdb_read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• agent_schedule_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• interaction_agent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Explicit Roles in CSM

You can give both internal users and external users access to your instance. However, you might not want both types of users to have the same level of access. To provide added security, every user must have at least one role so that the instance can distinguish between internal and external users.

As of the Paris release, no user can have both of the explicit roles (snc_internal and snc_external). Groups and role containment cannot include both roles, either, since that would cause any group member or user who is assigned to such a group or such a role to automatically have both roles. The Now Platform aborts any operation that would create such a scenario.

External users must obtain, at minimum, the snc_external role. The snc_external role indicates that the user is external to your organization. They should not have any access to resources unless explicitly allowed through ACLs for the snc_external role or additional roles that inherit the snc_external role. By default, users with the snc_external role cannot access:

- Scripted REST API resources that are not marked external.
- Tables without the role that inherits the snc_external role or the public role.
- Non-record type resources, such as processors and UI pages without the snc_external role or a role that inherits the snc_external role.
- Analytics, Intelligence, and Reporting dashboards.

Do not mark the snc_internal role as elevated. Otherwise, internal users cannot access the instance.

Note: You can set up encryption contexts with the snc_internal and snc_external roles. However, adding encryption contexts to more detailed roles is recommended. For more information, see *Set up encryption contexts.*

Recommended CSM roles for internal and external users

Customers (external users) using the Customer Service Management application should be assigned either the sn_customerservice.customer or the sn_customerservice.consumer role. Customer service agents (internal users)
should be assigned either the sn_customerservice_agent or sn_customerservice_consumer_agent role. The system ensures that the same user is not assigned both a customer (external) and agent (internal) role.

**Explicit Roles plugin**

The Customer Service plugin (com.sn_customerservice) activates the Explicit Roles plugin (com.glide.explicit_roles), which adds the snc_external and snc_internal roles. When the plugin is activated:

- All users must have either the snc_internal role to access internal resources or the snc_external role to access external resources.
- All existing users are automatically assigned the snc_internal role. This role does not change existing access levels or system behavior. Instead, it provides a category to differentiate internal users from external users. All internal users maintain the same level of access as before the plugin was activated.

**Tip:** To prevent changing existing functionality for users, activating the Explicit Roles plugin assigns the snc_internal user role to all existing users in the instance. This includes any external users added before the Explicit Roles plugin was activated. After the Explicit Roles plugin is activated, do the following for all external users added before the Explicit Roles plugin was activated:

- Remove the snc_internal role.
- Add the snc_external role.

Doing the preceding ensures that external users added before activating the Explicit Roles plugin do not have access to internal resource that should be available only to internal users.

- Newly created users are automatically assigned the snc_internal role when they first attempt to log in to the instance, unless they have been explicitly assigned the snc_external role. You can add the snc_external role to a new user before they first log in to the instance to provide external user rights.

**Note:** The snc_internal and snc_external roles can be added or removed at any time to change user rights.

- All existing ACLs that do not have a role requirement are automatically assigned the snc_internal role. Because both existing ACLs and roles are assigned the snc_internal role, existing access levels do not change.
- Newly created ACLs that do not have a role requirement are automatically assigned the snc_internal role. This role assignment does not apply to a newly created ACL with a role assigned.
- For all existing Processor [sys_processor] records or newly created Processor [sys_processor] records with Type=script, the snc_internal role is automatically added to the Roles field if the field is empty.
- To restrict access to UI pages to internal users, the plugin automatically assigns the snc_internal role to the * ACL with a Type of ui_page.
- To restrict access to processors to internal users, the plugin automatically assigns the snc_internal role to the * ACL with a Type of processor.
- External users must obtain, at minimum, the snc_external role to access the instance. This role is automatically assigned to external Customer Service Portal contacts. If the Customer Service Portal is not activated, this role must be manually granted to external users. Access to records is granted through ACLs.

**Note:** You can use the isPublic() function in scripts for Customer Service Portal to change the privacy setting for a single client-callable script include. For more detail, see Script includes.

- **Content Management System** site access is also affected. CMS is set up with Sites (content_site), Pages (content_page), and other resources. Some of the sites may have the Login page configured.

  - If CMS sites do not have the Login page configured, the public role is automatically added to the Read Roles field on Pages (content_page) if the field is empty.
  - If CMS sites have the Login page configured, the snc_internal role is automatically added to the Read Roles field on Pages (content_page) if the field is empty.
• *Service Portal* site access is also affected.
  
  • The snc_internal role is not automatically added to sp_page, sp_widget or sp_instance records. If desired, you can give new records the role by assigning snc_internal as a default value in the Roles field for these records. For details on this process see *Specify a default field value*.

Do not move *System update sets* among instances with and without the Explicit Roles plugin enabled.

**Note:** This plugin also requires the *Contextual Security Manager* plugin.

---

**The glide.security.explicit_roles.internal_user_blacklist property**

The Explicit Roles plugin assumes that all existing users in the sys_user table at the time the plugin is installed are internal customers. A fix script assigns the snc_internal role to all existing users and to any ACL that does not have a role.

The fix script may fail or may not finish in time for a user who has not been updated with the role and who attempts to access a resource. To bridge this potential gap, the Contextual Security Manager (CSM) auto-assigns the snc_internal role to any user who logs in and does not have an explicit role (either internal or external).

Additionally, CSM has a business rule process that assigns the snc_external role to a classification of their users. However, when importing large sets of CSM external customers, workflow is set to false, so business rules don’t run. As those users attempt to access a resource, they do not have any explicit roles. The Contextual Security Manager assigns the snc_internal role through a scheduled job called On-Call Gaps Conflicts Report that runs every 7 days. When the Explicit Roles plugin is active, this job assigns the snc_internal role to the CSM external user, since the user does not have either the snc_internal or snc_external role.

To prevent inadvertently providing the snc_internal role to external users, the Explicit Roles plugin includes a `glide.security.explicit_roles.internal_user_blacklist` property to blacklist user types from ever becoming snc_internal. If there are no users types in the glide.security.explicit_roles.internal_user_blacklist table, the Contextual Security Manager assigns all users the snc_internal role by default. If there are classnames in the blacklist table, and if the sys_user class type is in the blacklist table, CSM assigns the snc_external role. Otherwise, CSM assigns the default snc_internal role as usual.

For the Paris release, this property is enabled by default for zBoot instances and and disabled by default for upgrades.

---

**Providing table access to external users**

You can provide external users access to a table by adding a role to the table that inherits the snc_external role. For more information, see *Provide external users access to a table*.

---

**The hasRoles() method**

The `hasRoles()` method is still available, but is deprecated in the Geneva release. Use the `hasRole(role name)` method instead.

If you do use the `hasRoles()` method, note these changes:

• This method automatically excludes the default snc_internal role when it checks for roles. This means that if a user has only the snc_internal role, the `hasRoles()` method still returns `false`.

• If the user has the snc_external role, the method returns `false` because the instance considers external users to be without a role.
**Mutual exclusion: snc_external versus snc_internal**

The Now Platform prevents users from having both the snc_external role and the snc_internal role. The Now Platform applies this mutual exclusion everywhere in the system and writes error messages to the logs for each conflict.

![Note: ACLs can have both roles if the ACL resources should be accessible to all users.]

Example: Adding both explicit roles to a user (direct collision):

1. Assign user Abel Tuter the snc_internal role.
2. Assign user Abel Tuter the snc_external role.

Result: Adding the snc_external role fails because Abel Tuter has the snc_internal role.

Example: Adding both explicit roles to a group (direct collision):

1. Consider a group called Test Group that currently has no explicit roles assigned to the group.
2. Add Abel Tuter to the Test Group.
3. Add the snc_external role to Test Group.

Result: Adding the snc_external role fails because Abel Tuter already has the snc_internal role and can't have both roles.

Example: Adding an explicit role to a group where a group member has the conflicting explicit role (indirect collision):

1. Assign user Abel Tuter the snc_internal role.
2. Consider a group called Test Group that currently has no explicit roles assigned to the group.
3. Add Abel Tuter to the Test Group.
4. Add the snc_external role to the Test Group.

Result: Adding the snc_external role to the group fails because Abel Tuter would inherit the snc_external role through group membership. Both explicit roles would be assigned to the same user, which isn't allowed.

For other examples, see the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Direct collision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The user has the snc_internal role.</td>
<td>Add the snc_external role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The user has the snc_external role.</td>
<td>Add the snc_internal role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The user has no explicit role.</td>
<td>Add the snc_internal or snc_external role.</td>
<td>The role is added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The user has both explicit roles</td>
<td>Add the user to a group with no roles.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(existing collision)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A role not associated with any users</td>
<td>Add the snc_external role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contains the snc_internal role.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A role not associated with any users</td>
<td>Add the snc_internal role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contains the snc_external role.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Attempted action</td>
<td>Result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A role contains both explicit roles (existing collision).</td>
<td>Add the role to a user, role, or group.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A group with no members has the snc_internal role.</td>
<td>Add the snc_external role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A group with no members has the snc_external role.</td>
<td>Add the snc_internal role.</td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A group with no members has no roles.</td>
<td>Add the snc_internal or snc_external role.</td>
<td>The role is added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indirect collision**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role containment with collision</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Grant a role called Test Role to a user with the snc_internal role.</td>
<td></td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Add the snc_external role Test Role.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role containment without collision</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Grant a role called Test Role to a user with no roles.</td>
<td></td>
<td>The role is added to both the user and Test Role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Add the snc_external role to Test Role.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group containment with collision</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Add a user who has the snc_internal role to a group called Test Group 2 (child of Test Group 1).</td>
<td></td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Add the snc_external role to Test Group 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Add the snc_external role to a parent group called Test Group 1 (parent of Test Group 2).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group containment without collision</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Add a user with no roles to a group called Test Group 2 (child of Test Group 1).</td>
<td></td>
<td>The role is added to the parent group, the child group, and the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Add the snc_external or snc_internal role to Test Group 1 (parent of Test Group 2).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group containment plus role containment with collision</th>
<th>Attempted action</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add contains_external to Test Group 1, the parent of Test Group 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Test Group 1 and Test Group 2 both get contains_external, but don't explicitly get the snc_external role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add the snc_internal role to Test Group 2, the child of Test Group 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td>The action is aborted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role</td>
<td>Attempted action</td>
<td>Result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Group parent change plus group containment | 1. Remove Test Group 1 as the parent of Test Group 2.  
2. Add the snc_internal role to Test Group 1.  
3. Add the snc_external role to Test Group 2.  
4. In Test Group 2, set Test Group 1 as the parent group and save. | The action is aborted. Repeat for already nested groups, with the same expectation. |

The cause of an aborted action appears in the error message and must be addressed before another attempt succeeds. For direct cases, such as adding an explicit role to an individual user, verify which explicit role the user should have. If the user has the wrong explicit role, it must first be removed, and then the correct explicit role must be added.

For indirect cases, such as adding an explicit role to a group (so that a group member would be assigned both explicit roles), evaluate whether that user should be in the group. Also determine whether the group should be given the explicit role, including any inheritance through group hierarchy and role containment.

Note that the Now Platform reports only the first potential collision encountered. If repeated attempts continue to fail after remediation, with a new root cause each time, re-evaluate the relevant user/group/role interdependence more broadly. You may want to rethink how groups and role containments are structured.

Provide external users access to a table
To enable users with only the snc_external role to access the list view of a table, you must create a series of ACLs.

Role required: security_admin
1. Elevate to the security_admin role.
2. Create a new ACL with the following settings:
   - Type: ui_page
   - Operation: read
   - Name: {table_name}_list
   - Required role: snc_external
3. On the default read ACL for the table, add snc_external in the Required role list. Create the ACL if it does not already exist.
4. Use these settings to create another ACL:
   - Type: ui_page
   - Operation: read
   - Name: {table_name}
   - Required role: snc_external
5. Use these settings to create another ACL to give the user write access to a field in the table:
   - Type: record
   - Operation: create
   - Name: {table_name} {column_name}
   - Required role: snc_external

Repeat this step for every field that you want to give the user write access to. Use an asterisk * instead of the column name to provide access to all fields at once.
Creating custom user roles

System administrators can create custom roles or modify the access of existing roles by using script includes and extension points/instances.

The Customer Service Management application utilizes platform ACLs and query business rules to restrict data access based on user roles. If needed, users with the system administrator role can create custom roles or modify the access of existing roles by using script includes and extension points/instances.

• Script includes store JavaScript functions and classes to handle the role access control logic.
• Extension points/instances designate places where custom scripts can be called and then processed to extend base functionality.

The system administrator can use the extension points/instances to create their own role access constants file similar to CSQueryUtilOOBConstants.

The system administrator can create a new extension instance for the existing extension point and use it to define custom role configuration constants. The following items are included with the Customer Service Management application:

• global.CSQueryExtensionPoint: the provided extension point for CSM role configuration
• instance.CSQueryExtensioninstanceOOB: the provided extension instance for CSM role configuration

To create a new role:

1. Create a new constant file to hold the configurations for the new role similar to CSQueryUtilOOBConstants. For example:

```javascript
CSQueryUtilOOBConstantsTEST.ROLE_PERMISSIONS_POOL = {
    'sn_customerservice.customer_new_role': {
        'sn_customerservice_case': {
            'condition': ['my_new_condition'],
        },
    },
};
```

2. Create a new extension instance to hold the logic returning this new constant file to CSQueryUtil.
3. Make sure this role is on the instance and contains the sn_esm_user role.
4. Assign this new role to a contact.
5. Create or modify the ACLs and query business rules for this role as necessary.

For more information about modifying ACLs and query business rules, see KB0685767.

Script includes installed with Customer Service Management

Script includes are added with activation of Customer Service Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSEMailUtil</td>
<td>Used for customer service case email actions and notifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSPortalUtil</td>
<td>Helper functions for the customer self-service portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AccountTeamUtil</td>
<td>Util APIs for the Customer Service Management account team responsibility module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AjaxCustomerServiceSearch</td>
<td>Ajax class that provides the knowledge base search results.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Client scripts installed with Customer Service Management

Client scripts are added with activation of Customer Service Management.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client script</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channel and State readonly for customer</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Sets the Channel and State fields to read-only on the Case form that the customer can view from the customer portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Contextual Security Installed</td>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Checks if the Contextual Security plugin (com.glide.role_management) is installed before creating a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Case View</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Hides certain elements in the Case form for ESS view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty Case form on Account Change</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>When a user makes a change to the value in the Account field on the Case form, the values in the following fields are cleared: Partner, Partner contact, Asset, Entitlement, Contract, and Contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty Partner Contact on Partner Change</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>When a user makes a change to the value in the Partner field on the Case form, the Partner contact field is also cleared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Activity Stream</td>
<td>Contact</td>
<td>Hides the activity stream on top of the form header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide attachment icon</td>
<td>Registration Request</td>
<td>Hides the attachment icon on top of the form header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Icons Form Header</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Hides the email icon from the more options menu and the activity stream icon at the top of the form header. Also hides the book icon next to the Short Description field on the form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Suggestion next to Short Description</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Hides the suggestion icon next to the Short description field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make field readonly</td>
<td>Account Relationship Type</td>
<td>Sets the From and To fields to read-only once a record is created in the Account Relationship Type table (sn_customerservice_account_relationship_type).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open the glide list for new appointment</td>
<td>Appointment</td>
<td>Opens the glide list to select the user for an appointment for new records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate Contact Company</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>When a user name is selected in the Contact field, the Account field is populated with the contact's account information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate Contract</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Populates the Contract field when the Account field is filled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client script</td>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate contract and entitlement</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Populates the <strong>Contract</strong> and <strong>Entitlement</strong> fields when the <strong>Account</strong> field is filled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate Entitlement</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Populates the <strong>Entitlement</strong> field when the <strong>Account</strong> field is filled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate Product</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>When an asset is selected in the <strong>Asset</strong> field, the <strong>Product</strong> field is populated with the asset's product model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registration code read-only</td>
<td>Registration Request [sn_customerservice_registration]</td>
<td>Sets the <strong>Registration code</strong> field to read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set account read on load</td>
<td>Account Team Member [sn_customerservice_team_member]</td>
<td>Sets the <strong>Account</strong> field to read only for a new record when the account is not empty on form load.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set assetreadonly</td>
<td>Asset Contact [sn_customerservice_m2m_asset_contact]</td>
<td>Set the <strong>Asset</strong> field to readonly for a new form when the asset value is not empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show partner field</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Shows the <strong>Opened by</strong> field on the <strong>Case</strong> form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Handling Notes for Case</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Shows all of the Special Handling Notes with display type alert related to the current record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Product Entitlement</td>
<td>Entitlement [service_entitlement]</td>
<td>Displays a field warning message for the <strong>Per unit</strong> field if a product is selected but the <strong>Asset</strong>, <strong>Contract</strong>, and <strong>Account</strong> fields are empty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Business rules installed with Customer Service Management**

Business rules are added with activation of Customer Service Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account query for customer</td>
<td>Account [customer_account]</td>
<td>Queries the account for the customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account relationship display rule</td>
<td>Account Relationship [account_relationship]</td>
<td>Displays the correct values in the bi-directional diagram on the Account Relationship form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add customer role to contacts</td>
<td>Contact [customer_contact]</td>
<td>Adds the customer role (sn_customerservice.customer) to a customer contact if the contact has no assigned roles or if the user ID for the contact is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add snc external role to contacts</td>
<td>Contact [customer_contact]</td>
<td>Adds the snc_external user role to each contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business rule</td>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Primary Contact to Asset Contact</td>
<td>Asset [alm_asset]</td>
<td>When an asset is assigned a new primary contact, the primary contact is added to the asset contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approver query for customer</td>
<td>Approval [sysapproval_approver]</td>
<td>Queries the approver for a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset query for customer</td>
<td>Asset [alm_asset]</td>
<td>Queries the assets for a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto assessment business rule</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Triggers a customer satisfaction survey when a case is set to <strong>Closed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case query for customer</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Queries the cases for a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case display rule</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>A display business rule on the Case form which passes some values to the browser when a case is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Awaiting to Open</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Changes the case state from <strong>Awaiting Info</strong> to <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check duplicate</td>
<td>Asset Contact [sn_customerservice_m2m_asset_contact]</td>
<td>Checks for duplicate records before creating a new asset contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check duplicate for responsibility</td>
<td>Contact Relationship [sn_customerservice_contact_relationship]</td>
<td>Checks for duplicate responsibilities before creating a new contact relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check duplicate for responsibility</td>
<td>Asset Contact [sn_customerservice_m2m_asset_contact]</td>
<td>Checks for duplicate responsibilities before creating a new asset contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check snc_external roles exist</td>
<td>Contact [customer_contact]</td>
<td>Checks if the com.glide.security_schema plugin is activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact query for customer</td>
<td>Contact [customer_contact]</td>
<td>Queries the contacts for a customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract query for customer</td>
<td>Contract [ast_contract]</td>
<td>Queries the contracts for a customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create bi-direction relationship</td>
<td>Account Relationship [account_relationship]</td>
<td>After an account relationship is created, this business rule creates the bi-directional account relationship record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Account Contacts and Assets</td>
<td>Account Relationship [account_relationship]</td>
<td>When an account relationship is deleted, this business rule deletes the corresponding account and asset contacts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business rule</td>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete relationship type</td>
<td>label [account_relationship_type]</td>
<td>Checks to see if any relationship records are using a relationship type before that relationship type is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete responsibility definition</td>
<td>Responsibility Definition [sn_customerservice_responsibility_def]</td>
<td>Checks to see if any account team members are using a responsibility definition before that responsibility definition is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display request message</td>
<td>Registration Request [sn_customerservice_registration]</td>
<td>After registration request submittal, shows info message to user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display rule</td>
<td>Registration Request [sn_customerservice_registration]</td>
<td>Shows message to remind users to enter a correct registration code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entitlement query for customer</td>
<td>Entitlement [service_entitlement]</td>
<td>Queries the entitlements for a customer contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insert Case Work Notes</td>
<td>Appointment [sn_customerservice_appointment]</td>
<td>Updates the case work notes with the appointment details when an appointment is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Populate company for case</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Populates the Company field on the Case form based on the name entered in the Contact field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set First Response Time</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>When a case is created or updated, this rule sets the current time in the first_response_time field. Also used when a case is set to Resolved or Awaiting Info or when comments or close notes are added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update account based on reg code</td>
<td>Registration Request [sn_customerservice_registration]</td>
<td>Validates the registration registration code and assigns the account associated with the registration code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update account relationship labels</td>
<td>Account Relationship Type [sn_customerservice_account_relationship_type]</td>
<td>When the labels for an account relationship type are updated, this business rule updates all of the related account relationship records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update case entitlement on Close</td>
<td>Case [sn_customerservice_case]</td>
<td>Updates the associated entitlement when the state of a case is set to Closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Case Work notes</td>
<td>Appointment [sn_customerservice_appointment]</td>
<td>Adds work notes to the case when an appointment for the case is updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business rule</td>
<td>Table</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Case Work Notes</td>
<td>Knowledge</td>
<td>Adds work notes to the case when a knowledge article associated with the case gets updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Parent Case for new task</td>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Updates the case when a new case task is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Parent case for state change</td>
<td>Task</td>
<td>Updates the case when a new case task is changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update relationship label</td>
<td>Account Relationship</td>
<td>Updates the relationship labels for bi-directional account relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update User Task State</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Calculates the work load for the agent based on the number of cases assigned to the agent. Also updates the last assigned time. This rule is used by the matching rule engine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate registration</td>
<td>Registration Request</td>
<td>Checks if the registration is valid based on the user’s email address. If the user exists in the system or a request has already been submitted and is in the pending state, the registration request is not allowed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Components installed with additional plugins for Customer Service Management**

Several types of components are installed with the additional plugins for the Customer Service Management application.

**Components installed with Customer Service Management Demo Data**

Several types of components are installed with Customer Service Management Demo Data. _Tables installed with Customer Service Management Demo Data_ Tables are added with activation of Customer Service Management Demo Data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Software</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cmdb_ci_enterprise_software]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Software Asset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[alm_application_software]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Business rules installed with Customer Service Management Demo Data**

Business rules are added with activation of Customer Service Management Demo Data.
## Components installed with CTI Softphone

Several types of components are installed with CTI Softphone.

### Tables installed with CTI Softphone

Tables are added with activation of CTI Softphone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User CTI Status</td>
<td>Stores the agent's availability status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Script includes installed with CTI Softphone

Script includes are added with activation of CTI Softphone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTIAjaxUtility</td>
<td>Ajax class that provides helper functions to set and get user states, get incoming call context, log a call, and queue and dequeue a call.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Business rules installed with CTI Softphone

Business rules are added with activation of CTI Softphone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Route available user for Incident Task</td>
<td>User CTI Status [user_cti_status]</td>
<td>Demo business rule to dequeue a call based on matching rules whenever an agent becomes available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Components installed with Customer Service CTI Demo Data

Several types of components are installed with Customer Service CTI Demo Data.

### Business rules installed with Customer Service CTI Demo Data

Business rules are added with activation of Customer Service CTI Demo Data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Route available user for Case Task</td>
<td>User CTI Status [user_cti_status]</td>
<td>Used to dequeue a call whenever an agent becomes available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Components installed with OpenFrame

Several types of components are installed with OpenFrame.

### Tables installed with OpenFrame

Tables are added with activation of OpenFrame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log]</td>
<td>A log of the incoming and outgoing phone calls. This table can be used to log any phone call made or received.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### OpenFrame Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>[sn_openframe_configuration]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stores the OpenFrame configuration. This is the configuration used to load the OpenFrame in the TopFrame.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Roles installed with OpenFrame

The OpenFrame user role is automatically added when you activate OpenFrame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User [sn_openframe_user]</td>
<td>The OpenFrame user role.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Script includes installed with OpenFrame

The OpenFrameAjaxUtility script include is added when you activate OpenFrame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OpenFrameAjaxUtility</td>
<td>OpenFrame AJAX utility class that provides functions to get the OpenFrame configuration and also to get and set the last opened frame location.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Business rules installed with OpenFrame

Some related business rules are added when you activate OpenFrame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set Agent</td>
<td>Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log]</td>
<td>Sets the agent in the Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log] table as the current logged-in user if a phone call is logged without an agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Default Configuration</td>
<td>OpenFrame Configuration [sn_openframe_configuration]</td>
<td>Checks that there is only one default OpenFrame configuration. You cannot have two OpenFrame configurations if the default option is set to true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Task Work Notes</td>
<td>Phone Log [sn_openframe_phone_log]</td>
<td>Updates the work notes for a specific task whenever a phone call is logged for that task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UI macros installed with OpenFrame

Related UI macros are added when you activate the OpenFrame plugin.

The UI macros added when you activate OpenFrame plugin are supported under the following conditions:

- The **doctype** property is set to true and the device is not a tablet or mobile.
- The web browser is Internet Explorer 10 or above.

As a system administrator, you can add the following UI macro scripts:
### Script include

**show_phone**
- This macro requires the activation of the OpenFrame plugin.
- By configuring this UI macro using the `ref_contribution` parameter, you can display a phone icon next to the `sys_user` reference field if the phone field in the `sys_user` record is populated with the user's contact number.

**show_phone_customer_service**
- This macro requires the activation of the Customer Service Management and the OpenFrame plugins.
- By configuring this UI macro using the `ref_contribution` parameter, you can display a phone icon next to the `Contact customer_account` reference field on the case form if the phone field in the `Contact customer_account` record is populated with the user's contact number.

Displaying the phone icon enables you to make calls using the click-to-call capability in the OpenFrame window. For more information on how to use OpenFrame, refer to *OpenFrame overview*.

### Components installed with Special Handling Notes

Several types of components are installed with Special Handling Notes.

#### Tables installed with Special Handling Notes

The tables included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).

The Special Handling Notes plugin adds the following tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Special Handling Notes</td>
<td>Stores the special handling notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_shn_notes]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Handling Configuration</td>
<td>Stores the special handling notes table configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_shn_configuration]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Roles installed with Special Handling Notes

The user roles included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_shn.admin</td>
<td>Can read, create, update, and delete special handling notes. This role contains the sn_shn.editor role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The sn_customerservice_manager role contains the sn_shn.admin role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_shn.editor</td>
<td>Can read and update special handling notes. This role contains the sn_shn.user role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The sn_customerservice_agent role contains the sn_shn.editor role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_shn.user</td>
<td>Can read special handling notes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Properties installed with Special Handling Notes

The properties included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).
The Special Handling Notes plugin adds the following properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Maximum number of notes displayed in the Special Handling Notes pop-up window [sn_shn.max_num_alerts] | - Type: integer  
- Default value: 20  
- Location: Special Handling Notes > Properties  
- Learn more: Configure special handling notes properties                                                                                           |
| Display special handling notes only once per session [sn_shn.note_preferences] | Special handling notes are displayed each time you access a record. Enable this property to display special handling notes only once per session.  
- Type: true | false  
- Default value: false  
- Location: Special Handling Notes > Properties  
- Learn more: Configure special handling notes properties                                                                                   |
| Width of the Special Handling Notes pop-up window in pixels [sn_shn.popup_width] | The width of the Special Handling Notes pop-up window in pixels. The default width is 500. If you specify less that 300, the window automatically uses the minimum width of 300 pixels.  
- Type: integer  
- Default value: 500  
- Location: Special Handling Notes > Properties  
- Learn more: Configure special handling notes properties                                                                                   |

**Business rules installed with Special Handling Notes**  
The business rules included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).

The Special Handling Notes plugin adds the following business rules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Updating the table field</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes [sn_shn_notes]</td>
<td>Populates the Table field with the table label rather than the whole table name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHN Cache Table Entry</td>
<td>Special Handling Notes Configuration [sn_shn_configuration]</td>
<td>Stores the entries in the configuration table in a cache to avoid repeated queries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Client scripts installed with Special Handling Notes**  
The client scripts included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).

The Special Handling Notes plugin adds the following client scripts.
Client script | Table | Description
--- | --- | ---
On Load Message | Special Handling Notes Configuration [sn_shn_configuration] | On Load Message describing what the Special Handling Notes Configuration table is for. Create a configuration by selecting a table for which special handling notes can be created and displayed. Include notes for related entities by selecting the desired fields and adding them to the configuration.

*Script includes installed with Special Handling Notes*

The script includes included with the Special Handling Notes plugin (com.sn_shn).

The Special Handling Notes plugin adds the following script includes.

| Script include | Description |
--- | --- |
SHNProcessor | A collection of APIs for special handling notes. |
SHNTable | Provides a list of tables for which the user can create special handling notes. |

*Components installed with Targeted Communications*

Several types of components are installed with the Targeted Communications application.

*Tables installed with Targeted Communications*

Tables are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

| Table | Description |
--- | --- |
Recipients (Users) [sn_publications_recipientslist_user_m2m] | Stores recipients lists of type Internal Users. |
Recipients (Accounts) [sn_publications_recipientslist_account_m2m] | Stores recipients lists of type Accounts. |
Recipients (Consumers) [sn_publications_recipientslist_consumer_m2m] | Stores recipients lists of type Consumers. |
Publication Recipients [sn_publications_publication_contact_m2m] | Stores recipients lists of type Contacts. |
Publication [sn_publications_publication] | Stores all of the publications. |
Recipients List [sn_publications_recipients_list] | Stores the recipient lists. |
## Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recurrence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[sn_publications_recurrence]</td>
<td>Stores all of the publication recurrences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Business rules installed with Targeted Communications

Business rules are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create email notification</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Generates the email notification after a new publication is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create publication recipients</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Builds the recipient list after the state of a publication changes to <strong>Published</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Recurrence Publications</td>
<td>Recurrence [sn_publications_recurrence]</td>
<td>Generates duplicate publications from the original publication and calculates the start and end dates for each recurrence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date validation</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Validates the publication and expiration dates. Also validates that the start and end dates for a recurring publication is within the range of the specified recurrence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete email notification</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Deletes the email notification if a publication is deleted, cancelled, or expired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Recipients List</td>
<td>Recipients List [sn_publications_recipients_list]</td>
<td>Prevents a recipient list from being deleted if the list has one or more associated publications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields validation</td>
<td>Recurrence [sn_publications_recurrence]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initialize Publication</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Changes the stage of a publication to <strong>Author</strong> and the visited_state field to empty whenever a new publication is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make approver list required</td>
<td>Workflow Config [sn_publications_workflow_config]</td>
<td>Makes the <strong>Approver</strong> field mandatory for articles that require approval prior to publishing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make recipient list required</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Makes the <strong>Recipient list</strong> field mandatory and ensures that the recipient list is populated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset error state</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Resets the error_state field to false when a publication is updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrict User Access</td>
<td>Publication [sn_publications_publication]</td>
<td>Restricts access to published articles to a targeted set of users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Business rule

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show error state message:</td>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Displays an error message at the top of the form when a publication's error_state field is true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show state message</td>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Displays a status message when the recipient list is being generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start publication workflow</td>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Starts the workflow after a publication is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Customer Publication Views</td>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Updates when a user has viewed the article.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Recipients</td>
<td>Recipients List</td>
<td>Builds or updates a recipient list for a publication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Visited States on state change</td>
<td>Publication</td>
<td>Updates the stage changes as a publication moves through the creation, review, and approval process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Roles installed with Targeted Communications**

Roles are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role title [name]</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Contains roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Publications administrator [sn_publications.admin] | The publications administrator can:                                         | • sn_publications.author  
• sn_publications.approver  
• workflow_publisher  
• image_admin                                                                 |
| Publications author [sn_publications.author]      | The publications author can:                                                 | • sn_publications_recipients_list_user  
• sn_publications_recipients_user  
• workflow_publisher  
• image_admin  
• sn_esm_agent                                                                 |
| Publications approver [sn_publications.approver]  | The publications approver can approve publications.                         | • approver_user                                                             |
| Recipients list user [sn_publications_recipients_list_user] | The recipients list user can create and view recipient lists.               | None                                                                         |
| Recipients user [sn_publications_recipients_user] | The recipients user can view recipient lists.                               | None                                                                         |
Client scripts installed with Targeted Communications
Client scripts are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Client script</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Set Conditions Table/Field on change | Recipients List | [sn_publications_recipients_list] For recipient lists: • If the type is **Internal Users**, internal, this script assigns the User [sys_user] table to the **Table** field and sys_id to the **User Field** field.  
• If the type is **Customers**, this script assigns the Customer Product [customer_products] table to the **Table** field sys_id to the **User Field** field. |
| Set Conditions Table/Field onload | Recipients List | [sn_publications_recipients_list] For recipient lists: • If the type is **Internal Users**, internal, this script assigns the User [sys_user] table to the **Table** field and sys_id to the **User Field** field.  
• If the type is **Customers**, this script assigns the Customer Product [customer_products] table to the **Table** field sys_id to the **User Field** field. |
| Switch Publication View       | Approval                      | [sysapproval_approver]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Validate start date           | Publication                    | [sn_publications_publication] Validates that the start date of a publication is after the current date and before the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Validate end date             | Publication                    | [sn_publications_publication] Validates that the end date of a publication is after the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Validate start date           | Recurrence                    | [sn_publications_recurrence] Validates that the start date of a recurrence publication is after the current date and before the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Validate end date             | Recurrence                    | [sn_publications_recurrence] Validates that the end date of a recurrence publication is after the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

Script includes installed with Targeted Communications
Script includes are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PublicationAjax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecipientsListApi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecipientsListApi.getRecipientsListCount</td>
<td>Calculates the total number of recipients for a publication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ServiceNow Paris Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RecipientsListApi.buildRecipientsList for Publication</td>
<td>Builds the recipient list for a publication based on the recipient list's type and condition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PublicationsApi</td>
<td>API functions for publications functionality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PublicationsQueryProcessor</td>
<td>Ajax helper for showing publications listing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties installed with Targeted Communications**
Properties are added with activation of Targeted Communications.

**Note:** To open the System Property [sys_properties] table, enter `sys_properties.list` in the navigation filter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_publications.max_email</td>
<td>Limits the number of email recipients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
<td>• Default value: 100000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Location: System Property [sys_properties] table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Components installed with Knowledge Product Entitlements**
Several types of components are installed with the Knowledge Product Entitlements application.

**Business rules installed with Knowledge Product Entitlements**
Business rules are added with activation of Knowledge Product Entitlements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Business rule</th>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Product Entitlement</td>
<td>Knowledge [kb_knowledge]</td>
<td>Implements the needed access controls for users with the sn_customerservice.customer role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KB Product Entitlements</td>
<td>Knowledge Base [kb_knowledge_base]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Properties installed with Knowledge Product Entitlements**
Properties are added with activation of Knowledge Product Entitlements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kb_product_entitlement.knowledge_base.enable</td>
<td>Enable access control of Knowledge Bases based on product entitlements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If enabled, customers can access all of the knowledge bases related to the products for which they have entitlements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Type: true/false</td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Location: Knowledge Product Entitlements &gt;</td>
<td>Properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property: kb_product_entitlement.knowledge_base.allow_empty_products

Allow access to Knowledge Bases with empty Related Products field.

If enabled, customers can access all knowledge bases even if no products have been specified in the Related Products field on the Knowledge Base form.

- **Type:** true/false
- **Default value:** false
- **Location:** Knowledge Product Entitlements > Properties

### Property: kb_product_entitlement.article.enable

Enable access control of Knowledge Articles based on product entitlements.

If enabled, customers can access all of the knowledge articles related to the products for which they have entitlements.

- **Type:** true/false
- **Default value:** false
- **Location:** Knowledge Product Entitlements > Properties

### Property: kb_product_entitlement.article.allow_empty_products

Allow access to Knowledge Articles with empty Related Products field.

If enabled, customers can access all knowledge articles even if no products have been specified in the Related Products field on the Knowledge form.

- **Type:** true/false
- **Default value:** false
- **Location:** Knowledge Product Entitlements > Properties

---

### Components installed with Self Service Password Reset

Several types of components are installed with Self Service Password Reset. 

**Script includes installed with Self Service Password Reset**

Script includes are added with activation of Self Service Password Reset.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script include</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PasswordResetAJAX</td>
<td>AJAX Script to process a password reset from a UI Page as guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ResetPwdAjaxProcessor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Communities

With the ServiceNow® Communities application, connect, engage, and collaborate with your employees, customers, partners, and prospects. Your users get quick responses to their issues by posting questions, reviewing blogs or
videos, and searching for previous discussions. It is an essential component of your self-service strategy along with Knowledge Base and Service Catalog.

### Explore
- Communities roles
- Community content types
- Configure community forums
- Forum and user permissions management
- Community subscriptions
- Gamification
- Domain separation in Communities

### Set up
- Activate Communities plugins
- Properties installed with Communities
- Community setup guide for admins

### Administer
- Create a forum
- Create a forum user
- Create a forum permission
- Invite users to become members of a forum
- Configure the community profile
- Enable users to self-register to a community
- Enable knowledge harvesting
- View the Communities performance dashboard
- Make an announcement to community members
- Moderate a community
- Administer gamification

### Use
- Community homepage features for logged in users
- Request membership to a forum
- Search the community
- Subscribe to content
- Ask a question in the community
- Post a blog in the community
- Post a video in the community
- Post a document in the community
- Post a community event
- Bookmark community content
- Provide feedback on community content
- Report inappropriate community content
- Manage your community profile
- Follow a community user
- Harvest knowledge from a community
- View a list of questions and create a case
- Moderate gamification

### Develop
- Developer training
- Developer documentation

### Troubleshoot and get help
- Search the HI Knowledge Base for known error articles
- Contact ServiceNow Technical Support
- Ask or answer questions in the Now Community

---

### Activate Communities plugins

Activate the Customer Communities plugin to use the Communities application.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

Communities is available for customers who are:

- Licensed for the Customer Service Management application.
- Licensed for HR Service Delivery.
To activate Communities, activate the Customer Communities plugin (com.sn_customer_communities). This plugin is not active by default.

When you activate the Customer Communities plugin, the following plugins automatically activate:

- External User Registration plugin (com.sn_external_user_register)
- Communities plugin (com.sn_communities)
- Gamification plugin (com.snc.gamification)
- Subscriptions and Activity Feed Framework plugin (com.snc.activity_subscriptions)

To activate Communities demo data, activate the Communities Demo Data plugin (com.sn_communities_demo).

To activate the Communities dashboard, activate the Performance Analytics — Content Pack — Communities plugin (com.snc.pa.communities).

1. Navigate to System Definition > Plugins.
2. Search for the plugin com.sn_communities.
3. Click Activate.

Properties installed with Communities

Community administrators can use properties to configure Communities behavior.

The following properties are available for further configuration. To list the properties, enter sys_properties.list in the filter navigator and search for the property to configure.

Note: You can also view Community Properties and Forum Properties from the application navigator. These modules contain a list of the most frequently used properties that you can configure for your community.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.adminNoReplyEmail</td>
<td>Email address for community-related notifications. When a notification for an activity is sent, this email address appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.additional_search_sources</td>
<td>List of additional search sources to be included for displaying search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.scheduling.allow_authors</td>
<td>Allow or restrict authors to schedule the content. If set to &quot;No&quot;, only administrators will be able to schedule the content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.max_allowed_size</td>
<td>Maximum file size of an attachment in the community. It works as upper-cap for system property “sn_communities.attachments.max_file_size”.&lt;br&gt;• Type: string&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 5 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.document.max_allowed_size</td>
<td>Maximum file size of a community document. It works as upper-cap for system property &quot;sn_communities.attachments.document.max_size&quot;.&lt;br&gt;• Type: string&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 25 MB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.blog_count</td>
<td>Number of blogs that a user can post per day.&lt;br&gt;• Type: integer&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.content.meta_description</td>
<td>When generating SEO data for an entity, the number of characters that are fetched from the meta_description column of the record to generate a portion of the SEO &lt;description&gt; tag for the record.&lt;br&gt;Typically, the SEO &lt;description&gt; tag for a Community entity is the combination of ‘forum name’, ‘topics’ and ‘meta description’ of the actual record in the following format: “&lt;forum&gt; - &lt;topics&gt; - &lt;sub string of configured length of the actual description&gt;&quot;.&lt;br&gt;• Type: integer&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.content.views.count.limit</td>
<td>Number of views for content pages that are allowed per session within a time window specified by sn_communities.content.views.time.limit.&lt;br&gt;• Type: integer&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.content.views.time.limit</td>
<td>Duration, in seconds, during which a specific number of views are allowed. The number of views allowed during this time is set by sn_communities.content.views.count.limit parameter.&lt;br&gt;• Type: integer&lt;br&gt;• Default value: 3600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.disable_terms_conditions_role</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of roles that bypass the terms and conditions and profile name request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.edit_content_explicit_role</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of roles with permission to edit existing content, but not to create content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: n_communities.community_moderator,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sn_communities.moderation_admin,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sn_communities.admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.enable_session_cache</td>
<td>Enables or disables session caching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>True: The permissions of any non-admin users of the community are stored as a part of the session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They are used to determine access to the various forums and community content. While the user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is active in that particular session, any changes to the community permissions do not take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>effect until the user logs out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>False: The permissions of any non-admin users of the community are not stored as a part of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.enable_topics</td>
<td>Enables or disables topics within a community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the property is set to false and gamification is enabled, topic information does not appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on the leaderboard page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.enable_user_mentions</td>
<td>Enables or disables the user-mentions functionality in Communities content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.glide.script.block.client.globals</td>
<td>Set the value to true to re-enable most of the inaccessible Client APIs in a scoped application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **sn_communities.implicit_access_mapping** | Assign access implicitly to users based on the permissions they have. For example:  
  * If a user is given forum_admin access, they can automatically administer, read, write to, and moderate the forum.  
  * If a user is given forum moderation rights, they can read, write to, and moderate the forum for all content types.  
  * Type: string  
  * Default value:  
    
    ```javascript
    {
      "forum_admin": ["forum_read", "forum_write", "forum_moderator", "forum_admin", "content_write"],
      "forum_moderator": ["forum_read", "forum_write", "forum_moderator", "content_write"],
      "content_write": ["content_read", "content_write"]
    }
    ```
|
| **sn_communities.instance_base_url** | Vanity URL for your instance to be used in email notifications to redirect users to the community pages. Set a value only if you want the URL to be different to the instance name.  
  * Type: string  
  * Default value: none |
| **sn_communities.is_content_write_allowed_for_guest_user** | Determines whether Content_write access is allowed for a public or a guest user.  
  False: Content_write access is not given to a public or guest user.  
  True: Content_write access is given to a public or guest user.  
  * Type: boolean  
  * Default value: false |
| **sn_communities.knowledge_base_id** | All questions created in Communities are entered in this knowledge base.  
  * Type: string  
  * Default value: a4c9fb2e6703220071b89a6617415af9 |
| **sn_communities.logging.destination** | Location of the log messages.  
  * Type: string  
  * Default value: db |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `sn_communities.log.verbosity` | Code Search log verbosity for the community. Set the value as required.  
• 0: Show information that may be useful while debugging the application, such as the values of queries run. It includes info, warning, and error messages.  
• 1: Show progress messages as the Code Search application searches for results. It also shows warnings and error messages.  
• 2: Show warning which indicates possible unexpected changes in behavior.  
• 3: Show only critical errors which may prevent the search from completing.  
• Type: choice list  
• Default value: 1                                                                                                         |
| `sn_communities.logging.verbosity` | Category for writing log messages: Debug (0), Info (1), Warning (2), or Error (3).  
• Type: choice list  
• Default value: 1                                                                                                            |
| `sn_communities.max_topic_limit` | Maximum number of topics that can be associated to any content type. The value of this property should not be set to greater than five.  
• Type: integer  
• Default value: 5                                                                                                             |
| `sn_communities.minimum_activity` | Minimum number of activities required to make the activity feed the preferred feed.  
• Type: integer  
• Default value: 5                                                                                                             |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.portal_default_config</td>
<td>Community portal default configuration. Used in community-specific widgets. It is a JSON value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                                           | • Default value: 

```json
{"uiPageMapping:
    
    [{"contentTypeId": "5a2fcaa0dbd26600b16f78ea96190",
    "icon_class": "question-circle",
    "internalName": "question", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_question"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "57f785863b2b2200085f76b4e3e894",
    "icon_class": "video-camera",
    "internalName": "video", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_video"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "cc3fcaa0dbd26600b16f78ea96190",
    "icon_class": "quote-left",
    "internalName": "blog", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_blog"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "0764c981dbde6600b16f78ea96190",
    "icon_class": "comment",
    "internalName": "comment", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_comment"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "8f0a215c6707220071b89a6617415aa7",
    "icon_class": "question-circle",
    "internalName": "answer", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_answer"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "3f86a8db9712320079a23363ac443",
    "icon_class": "file-text",
    "internalName": "document", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_document"},
    
    {"contentTypeId": "4c3a995ac302320012e45cb9813ac",
    "icon_class": "calendar",
    "internalName": "event", "contentArticle": "a",
    "pageId": "community_event"}]
```  |

| sn_communities.public_forum_user          | sys_id of the public forum user. Used to calculate access permissions to forums. |
|                                           | • Type: string                                                               |
|                                           | • Default value: 88ef2155931322005b963511e57fba6                              |

| sn_communities.registered_forum_user      | sys_id of the registered forum user. This value is used to calculate access permissions to forums. |
|                                           | • Type: string                                                               |
|                                           | • Default value: 5dce996993232200dbd0773511e57fbbcc                          |

| sn_communities.video_count                | Number of videos a user can post per day.                                    |
|                                           | • Type: integer                                                               |
|                                           | • Default value: 20                                                          |

| sn_communities.default_permission_for_forum_memberships | Sets the default permission for forum memberships. Specify a value to determine which permission is used as the default. |
|                                                        | • Type: string                                                               |
|                                                        | • Default value: ff73ee98932323200a8223511e57fbb0b                            |

<p>| sn_communities.forumListBatchSize         | Default number of forums to show on the topics list page on the community portal. |
|                                           | • Type: integer                                                               |
|                                           | • Default value: 12                                                          |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.topicListBatchSize</td>
<td>Default number of topics to show on the topics list page on the community portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.disableForumInvitesForExternalEmails</td>
<td>Determines if forum invites from the forum page can be sent to external users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.document.max_size</td>
<td>Maximum attachment file size in MB. (1 MB = 1024 KB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.file_extensions</td>
<td>Supported file extensions for community attachments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.max_attachment_count</td>
<td>Maximum number of attachments that can be attached to community content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.max_file_size</td>
<td>Maximum attachment file size in MB. The maximum size is capped at 5 MB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.max_invalid_attempts</td>
<td>Maximum number of invalid attempts a user can make to upload an attachment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.max_total_size</td>
<td>Maximum total size (in GB) of attachments. (1 GB = 1024 MB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.total_size</td>
<td>Total size (in KB) of attachments in the community until date. (1 MB = 1024 KB, 1 GB = 1024 MB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: 3680.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.attachments.user.day_limit</td>
<td>Maximum number of attachments that can be attached to community content per user per day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.days_to_keep_search_logs</td>
<td>Sets the number of days to keep the search log on an instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.minimum_characters_to_search</td>
<td>Number of characters before a search engine starts working in a community. This number must be greater than or equal to 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.search.blog.enable_acl</td>
<td>Sets how permissions are evaluated for blog type content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>True: Permission is evaluated for that specific content type and user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>False: Permission is evaluated at the forum and content level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.search.discussion.enable_acl</td>
<td>Sets how permissions are evaluated for question and answer type content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>True: Permission is evaluated for that specific content type and user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>False: Permission is evaluated at forum and content level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| sn_communities.search.document.enable_acl          | Sets how permissions are evaluated for document type content.  
True: Permission is evaluated for that specific content type and user.  
False: Permission is evaluated at the forum and content level.  
• Type: boolean  
• Default value: false |
| sn_communities.search.event.enable_acl             | Sets how permissions are evaluated for event type content.  
True: Permission is evaluated for that specific content type and user.  
False: Permission is evaluated at the forum and content level.  
• Type: boolean  
• Default value: false |
| sn_communities.search.video.enable_acl             | Sets how permissions are evaluated for video type content.  
True: Permission is evaluated for that specific content type and user.  
False: Permission is evaluated at the forum and content level.  
• Type: boolean  
• Default value: false |
| sn_communities.user.document_count                 | Number of documents a user can post per day.  
• Type: integer  
• Default value: 20 |
| sn_communities.video_count                         | Number of videos a user can post per day.  
• Type: integer  
• Default value: 20 |
| sn_communities.view_log_sources                    | JSON string that provides a mapping of view log source to a static source type. This static string stores the view source in the View Log [sn_communities_view_log] table.  
• Type: string  
• Default value:  
{"searchResult": "search_result", "contentFeed": "content_feed", "activityFeed": "activity_feed"} |
### Property Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.knowledge.enable_harvesting</td>
<td>Enables knowledge harvesting from communities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Activity Subscription properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activities.api.fetch.limit</td>
<td>Number of activities in the activity feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.rate.count.limit</td>
<td>Number of activities that can be created within a certain time frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.rate.time.limit</td>
<td>Duration, in seconds, during which activities can be created. Activities are no longer created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after the limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 3600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.stream.user.limit</td>
<td>Enter the limit on number of activities stored for a user in the activity feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The oldest activities are deleted when the limit is reached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.core.disable_plugin</td>
<td>Enable (true) or disable (false) the plugin functionality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.stream.inactive.disabled</td>
<td>Enable pull model for activity feed so that the activity fanouts are disabled and not pushed to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the inactive user streams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.stream.inactive.duration</td>
<td>The duration after which fanouts will be disabled for inactive user streams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** When disabled, run the Manage Activity fanouts scheduled job for the changes to take immediate effect.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.stream.inactive.streams</td>
<td>Enter comma separated stream names which can be considered inactive when not accessed for a certain duration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.snc.actsub.activity.enable_fanout_config</td>
<td>Enable the property to trigger <strong>Activity Fanouts</strong> based on the configuration at <strong>Activity Type</strong>. Confirm if they are properly configured and then enable the flag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: For zboot, this property is enabled by default. You must create this property for upgrade scenarios.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### External User Registration properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.allowed_email_domains</td>
<td>Comma-separated list of email domains that can be used to register. By default, the value is empty, indicating that all email domains are allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.captchaEnabled</td>
<td>Enables Google re-CAPTCHA on the self-registration page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.eur_user_role</td>
<td>Adds a role when a sys_user record is created through self-registration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: sn_communities.community_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.Reg_link_expiration_days</td>
<td>Number of days that the registration link remains active. Links which are older than the specified number of days are deactivated and cannot be used for completing the registration process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.request_count</td>
<td>Maximum number of times a registration link can be requested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_ext_usr_reg.Temp_user_record_purge_days</td>
<td>Number of days that a registration record is maintained in the User Registration Request [user_registration_request] table. Records older than the specified number of days are deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gamification properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.enable_gamification</td>
<td>Enables or disables the gamification feature for the community and controls the appearance of gamification-related widgets on the Community portal. When set to false, no gamification components are displayed. User point totals and badge assignments are not affected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.content.show_gamification_level</td>
<td>Controls the gamification level that is displayed next to the Community user's name on the Content pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: choice list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Choices:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>none</strong>: Do not display the user's level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>sn_gamification_modules</strong>: Show the user's level in the Community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>sn_communities_forum</strong>: Show the user's level for the forum to which the content belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: <strong>sn_gamification_modules</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gamification.days_to_keep_activity_records</td>
<td>Number of days to keep the gamification activity records in the database. Records created or updated prior to the specified number of days are purged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gamification.enable_debug_logs</td>
<td>Enables the debug logs for the gamification feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_gamification.levels_limit</td>
<td>Maximum number of levels that can be defined for the gamification feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Type: integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default value: 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Questions to case properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| sn.communities.enable_csm_case_creation_from_question         | This property provides access to the “Create Case” option on the Community Question widget and the “Question to Case” option on the Community header list menu.  
• Type: true | false  
• Default value: true  |

Communities roles

Ensure that users can perform all necessary actions by assigning roles.

Roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Access via</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community administrator</td>
<td>Administer and manage all sections in the community.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.admin]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community moderator</td>
<td>Moderate content associated with the community.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.community_moderator]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum administrator</td>
<td>Administer and manage forum permissions content types, and topics associated to the forum.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.forum_admin]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum moderator</td>
<td>Moderate content within specified forums.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.forum_moderator]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderation administrator</td>
<td>Administer moderation settings and moderate content associated forums.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.moderation_admin]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification administrator</td>
<td>Administer gamification settings and configure gamification rules. Contains the sn_gamification.moderator role.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_gamification.admin]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification moderator</td>
<td>Review and edit the gamification points earned by community users.</td>
<td>Platform UI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_gamification.moderator]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community user</td>
<td>Any user who has signed up and accepted the community Terms &amp; Conditions. Their access to forums depends on the permissions set up for each specific forum.</td>
<td>Communities Portal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.community_user]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge harvester</td>
<td>A community user who can harvest knowledge articles from a community. Community administrators, and community moderators inherit this role by default. The knowledge harvester role must be granted to other users.</td>
<td>Communities Portal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_communities.knowledge_harvester]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy case creator</td>
<td>A community user who can create a customer service case from a community discussion.</td>
<td>Communities Portal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[sn_customerservice.proxy_case_creator]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Community setup guide for admins

Define your requirements with community and forum stakeholders and set up your forums for community users to start creating content.

Requirements

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.forum_admin

Before you begin

Meet with the stakeholders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stakeholder</th>
<th>Responsibilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum administrators</td>
<td>Define and oversee the forum processes for day-to-day operations related to topic creation, user management, and moderation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community administrators</td>
<td>Configure advanced settings for Communities features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community users</td>
<td>Contribute content in the form of questions, answers, blogs, and comments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With stakeholders, determine your community requirements

- Who are the consumers of the community content?
- Which content types can users contribute?
- Who can contribute content and who should have read-only access?
- What should the names of the initial forums be?
- Within these forums, what should the names of the initial topics be?
- Which keywords should be banned?
- How should the system moderate content and users?
- What should the default notifications that users receive for various community activities be?

What to do

Use the following steps as guidance to setting up your community.

1. **Create a forum user**: Create a forum user to use to define memberships to a forum.
2. **Create a permission**: Create a permission to use to define a user's access to a forum and its content types.
3. **Add access and content types to your permission**: Add access types to a permission to determine the access that users have to certain forums and content.
4. **Create a forum**: Create a forum to provide a place for users to share content and configure the forum to allow registered users to request access to join.
5. **Configure content types for a forum**: Configure content types for a forum to define which types of content to use in a particular forum.
6. **Create a forum permission**: Create a forum permission by adding a forum user and a permission to a forum.
If required, perform the following actions:

**Invite users to join the forum**
*Invite users to become members of a forum* to encourage greater community involvement.

**Create permission exceptions**
*Create a permission exception* for users who require specific permissions for a forum.

**Copy permissions**
- *Copy permissions from a forum* to copy all permissions and content types from one forum to another.
- *Copy permissions from a parent forum.*

**Debug user permissions**
*Debug user permissions* to investigate and diagnose problems with user access to forums.

**Next steps**

*Create a topic* for users to create and share content.

*Add a topic to a forum* so that users can associate content to that topic.

*Moderate a community* to set up how the system moderates content and users.

**Using guided setup to implement Communities**

Communities guided setup provides a sequence of tasks that help you configure Communities on your ServiceNow instance. To open Communities guided setup, navigate to **Community > Administration > Guided Setup**.

For more information about using the guided setup interface, see *Using guided setup.*

**Domain separation in Communities**

This is an overview of domain separation in Communities. Domain separation enables you to separate data, processes, and administrative tasks into logical groupings called domains. You can then control several aspects of this separation, including which users can see and access data.

**Support level: No support**

- The domain field may exist on data tables, but there is no business logic to manage data.
- This level is not considered domain-separated.

For more information, see *Application support for domain separation.*

**Quick start tests for Communities**

Validate that Communities still work after you make any configuration change, such as apply an upgrade or develop an application. Copy and customize these quick start tests to pass when using your instance-specific data.

Communities quick start tests require activating the Customer Communities plugin (com.sn_customer_communities) and the Communities Demo Data plugin (com.sn_communities_demo).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Release version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Post question and validate feed</td>
<td>Verify that a question is posted in the community and validate whether it appears in the content feed.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post video</td>
<td>Verify that a video is posted in the community.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum membership approval</td>
<td>Verify that a membership request to a forum is approved.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum membership reject</td>
<td>Verify that a membership request to a forum is rejected.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approve a moderation task</td>
<td>Verify that a moderation task is approved.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject a moderation task</td>
<td>Verify that a moderation task is rejected.</td>
<td>Madrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic subscription and activity feed validation</td>
<td>Verify that a topic is subscribed to and the topic activities appear in the activity feed.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approve content approval workflow task on question</td>
<td>Verify the content approval workflow of a question.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question auto-subscription and activity feed validation</td>
<td>Verify that the author is automatically subscribed to the question and the question activities appear in the activity feed.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow a user</td>
<td>Verify that a community user is able to follow another community user.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject content approval workflow task on question</td>
<td>Verify the content approval workflow of a question when content is rejected.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification on video posting</td>
<td>Verify the gamification points gained when posting a video.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum subscription and activity feed validation</td>
<td>Verify that a forum is subscribed to and the forum activities appear in the activity feed.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question subscription and activity feed validation</td>
<td>Verify that a question is subscribed to and the question activities appear in the activity feed.</td>
<td>New York</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post a video with 'Disable comment' option</td>
<td>Verify a video is posted with Disable comments option as selected.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin a video as Featured</td>
<td>Verify that a video is marked as featured by community administrator in the forum and community home page.</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configure a community

You can configure various aspects of Communities based on the specific requirements of your organization.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.forum_admin

Access the Community menus and use the modules to configure your community.

1. Navigate to Community and choose the menu and module you require.
2. Configure one or more of the following aspects for your community.

Community content types

There are seven supported content types: Answer, Blog, Comment, Document, Event, Question, and Video.

Community administrators and forum administrators can configure content types at the community and forum levels.

User access to content is based on the permissions that users have. Community users can add content to the different content types and provide feedback on the content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Post a question about an issue or a challenge and get answers from other users. You can submit your question on the Community homepage and choose a forum or a topic to post it in. A question can be tagged to more than one topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answer</td>
<td>Reply to a user question or another answer with a possible solution or statement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blog</td>
<td>Post a blog on a topic of interest to share with other users. You can include images and videos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comment</td>
<td>Enter a comment to express an opinion or to react to a video or a blog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>Upload a video on a topic of interest for other users. Videos appear as web URLs that link to the most popular video sites. Communities supports playback from: • YouTube – youtube.com • Vimeo – vimeo.com • DailyMotion – dailymotion.com • Facebook – facebook.com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Videos can be included in other types of content, including questions, answers, blogs, and comments.

| Document     | Post a document to share with other community members. You can post your document from within a forum, choose a topic to post it in, and tag it to more than one topic. |
| Event        | Create an event that other community users can register for and attend. |

Configure community content types

Configure content types, such as videos and blogs, for the community.
Role required: sn_communities.admin

You can configure content types at both the community and forum level. At the community level, content types are active by default. Based on your requirements, you can deactivate content types.

1. To configure content types at the community level, navigate to Community > Administration > Content Types.
2. Click a content type.
3. To deactivate a content type, clear the Active check box.
4. Click Update.
   The content type is no longer visible to the community.
5. To configure content types at the forum level, navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
6. Click a forum.
7. Click the Content Types related list.
8. In the Active column, double-click a row.
9. To activate a content type, select True. To deactivate a content type, select False.

Community feedback types

There are two supported feedback types: Upvote and Helpful.

Community users can provide feedback on the content they have access to in the community.

Feedback types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feedback type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Helpful</td>
<td>Helpful feedback is associated to the following content types when a community user marks content as helpful: Blog, Video, Documents, Answer, Comment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upvote</td>
<td>Upvote feedback is associated to the Question content type when a community user marks a question as helpful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Community access types

Access types are used to control access to a forum or a content type.

You can define the access types for a forum and a content type in a permission. There are four access types available by default.

Access types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum Admin</td>
<td>Applies to forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum Moderator</td>
<td>Applies to forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Read</td>
<td>Applies to all content types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Write</td>
<td>Applies to all content types. Content Read access is automatically included in Content Write.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: It is not recommended that you create your own access types. Advanced knowledge of Communities architecture and scripting code to support and interpret the new access type is required.
Configure video sources for a community

Configure additional sources that can be used for uploading a video to the community.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Video Configuration.
2. Click New.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>A video source website, for example, youtube.com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain</td>
<td>The domain is set to global by default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td>The application for the video source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is recommended that you enter Community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widget</td>
<td>A widget to render the videos from the source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter Communities render video.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.

Configure community forums

A forum is a place for users to share content, exchange notes, ask and answer questions, and so on. Before community users can contribute content, configure a forum with content types and permissions, and create and add topics to one or more forums.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.forum_admin

A forum is the container for user-created content. A forum must be configured with content types and permissions before becoming available for users to contribute content. Forums can be organized hierarchically using the Parent field. Once forums are set up, they are visible on the Community homepage based on user permissions.

A topic is an area of interest that users can discuss. Topics are visible from the Community homepage and also appear within forums. They can be organized hierarchically using the Parent field.

- The community admin creates topics and can associate a topic with one or many forums.
- Forum admins can associate topics with their own forums.
- If a user has access to a particular forum, they also have access to all its topics.

Configure one or more of the following for community forums and topics.

Create a forum

Create a forum to provide a place for users to share content. You can configure forums for membership that registered community users request access to join. You can also configure forums to convert unstructured conversations to structured knowledge articles.

Role required: sn_communities.admin
A forum can be configured in the following ways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Visible to all users, including non-logged in users. All users have <strong>content_read</strong> access to questions and answers in public forums. Configure public forums by adding a <strong>forum user</strong> of the type public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private</td>
<td>Visible only to users who have been assigned the required permissions in the forum. Configure private forums by adding a <strong>forum user</strong> of the type custom and adding specific users or user groups to that forum user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membership</td>
<td>The forum title is visible to registered community users. Community users must request membership to get full access to the content in the forum. Configure membership forums by selecting the <strong>Enable Membership for this Forum</strong> check box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Forums**.
2. In the Forums list, click **New**.
3. Fill in the fields on the form as appropriate.

---

**Forum form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description that defines the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image</td>
<td>An image that provides a visual reference to describe the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order that forums are displayed in. By default, the display is alphabetical. Enter a numerical value to set the order that forums are displayed in. You can combine both options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
<td>The parent forum, if required. This lists the forum as a sub forum of the parent forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Membership for this Forum</td>
<td>Check box to make the forum membership only, and enable registered forum users to request to join the forum. If you select this check box, the forum title is visible to all registered community users. Community users must request access to join the forum to see the content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The **Approval Workflow for Membership** field appears when you select this check box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approval Workflow for Membership</th>
<th>The workflow for approving new members of a forum.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Base used for harvesting</td>
<td>The knowledge base used for harvesting community discussions to knowledge articles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. To allow registered forum users to view and request to join a forum, select the **Enable Membership for this Forum** check box and complete the following steps.
   a) Right-click the form header and click **Save**.
Two default permissions are added to the forum in the Forum Permissions related list.

- **Default Permission for Memberships**: Read and write access to questions and answers for users who are forum members.
- **Forum Visible**: Read access to the name and description of the forum for registered users. To access content, users must request forum membership.

b) If required, you can add a *new forum permission* and set it as the default using the sn_communities.default_permission_for_forum_memberships property.

If you want public users to view content in the forum to attract them to become members, create a forum permission as follows:

- **Forum User**: Public.
- **Permission**: Question & Answer Read.

c) In the Approval Workflow for Membership field, perform one of the following options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leave the Approval Workflow for Membership field blank.</td>
<td>Membership requests to the forum are automatically approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select the preconfigured approval workflow Forum Membership Approval.</td>
<td>A task is created and sent to the community or forum administrator for approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select a workflow that you have created.</td>
<td>A task is created and sent to the users defined in your workflow for approval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Update.

**Configure content types for a forum**

Define which types of content to use in a particular forum and associate a workflow so that content is reviewed before becoming visible to other community users.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
2. Click a forum.
3. In the Content Types related list, click New.
4. In the Content Types list, select a Content Type.
5. Select an Approval Workflow.
   You can select the Community - Content Approval workflow or a workflow that you have created.
6. Click Submit.

The selected content type is added to the Content Types related list in the forum. The following secondary content types are automatically added when creating a primary content type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary content type</th>
<th>Secondary content type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blog, Document, Event, Video</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Invite users to become members of a forum**

Invite users to become members of a particular forum to encourage greater community involvement.
Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Forums.
2. Choose a forum from the list that has been configured for membership.
3. Select the Invite Users to Join this Forum related link.
4. Complete the following steps to invite internal and external users.
   a) If the users to send the email invitation to are internal, click Edit Users.
   b) If external user registration is enabled, the Enter email address field is shown. Enter the email addresses of the external users to send the email invitation to.

You can enter both internal and external users to your email invitation.

5. Enter Comments to personalize the text in the email invitation.
6. Click Submit.

An email is generated and sent to the users in the list. The approval workflow set in the forum determines the approval of membership from an email invitation. You can view all email invitations in the forum on the Forum Email Invites related list.

Approve forum memberships

Manage forum membership approvals when registered community users request membership to a forum.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.forum_admin

There are two ways of approving forum memberships.

1. Perform one of the following actions.
   • Navigate to Community > Forums.
     1. Choose a forum from the list that has been configured for membership.
     2. Click the Membership Approvals related list.
   • Navigate to Self-Service > My Approvals.

2. Accept or reject the membership requests.
   Only one approval is required for each task.
   Once the task has been approved or rejected, an email notification is sent to the user.

Create a topic

Create a topic for users to create and share content.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Topics.
2. Click New.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description to define what the topic is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
<td>The parent topic, if required. If you enter a parent topic, the topic is listed as a subtopic of the parent topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image</td>
<td>An image that provides a visual reference that describes the topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge category used for harvesting</td>
<td>The knowledge category used to categorize community discussions harvested to knowledge articles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
   The topic is created and added to the list of topics.

Add a topic to a forum

Add a topic to a forum so that users can associate content to that topic.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

A topic can belong to more than one forum.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
2. In the list, click the forum name.
3. Click the Forum Topics related list.
4. Click New.
5. From the Topic list, select a topic.
6. Click Submit.
   The selected topic is added to the Forum Topics list in the forum. The topic is available to users in this forum.

Disable topics in a community

Disable the topics feature so that no topic information is visible in your community.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

The administrator can change the `sn_communities.enable_topics` property so that all topic information is hidden in the community. The data is not deleted.

1. Enter `sys_properties.list` in the filter navigator and search for the `sn_communities.enable_topics` property.
2. In the Value field, enter `false`.
3. Click Update.
   - No topic information is displayed in the Activity Feed or Notifications and Subscriptions.
   - No topic information is displayed on the Forums or Topics landing pages.
   - No topic information is displayed on Gamification pages and widgets.
   - Topic fields do not appear when creating, editing, or viewing content.
   - Topics do not appear in the search results page.

Create a sub forum

Create a sub forum and map it to a parent forum to establish a forum hierarchy.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

There are two ways of creating a sub forum in Communities.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
   - On the Forums list page, click New.
• Locate the forum to create a sub forum in, click its name, and then click the Sub Forums related list.

2. Fill in the fields on the form as appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the sub forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description that defines the sub forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image</td>
<td>An image that provides a visual reference to describe the sub forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order that sub forums are displayed in. By default, the display is alphabetical. Enter a numerical value to set the order that forums are displayed in. You can combine both options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent</td>
<td>The parent forum. This lists the forum as a sub forum of the parent forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Membership for this Forum</td>
<td>Check box to make the forum membership only, and enable registered forum users to request to join the forum. If you select this check box, the forum title is visible to all registered community users. Community users must request access to join the forum to see the content. Note: The Approval Workflow for Membership field appears when you select this check box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approval Workflow for Membership</td>
<td>The workflow for approving new members of a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge Base used for harvesting</td>
<td>The knowledge base used for harvesting community discussions to knowledge articles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The forum hierarchy of forums and sub forums is displayed on the community home page, forum landing page, when creating questions, blogs, or events, and in the search filters.

Move forum content

Move community content posts from one forum to another.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.forum_admin, sn_communities.forum_moderator

Access to content is based on permissions to a specific forum. If content is moved, the author of the content and other community users might lose access to it, depending on their forum permissions.

Note: Draft content cannot be moved. If the content type is not supported in the new forum, it cannot be moved.

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Click the content you want to move.
3. Click ... and Edit.
4. Select the forum you want to move the content to.
5. Click Save.
An email notification is sent to the author of the content, subscribers to the content, and subscribers to the forum.

**Forum and user permissions management**

Community and forum administrators can give users and groups of users different levels of access to forums and forum content.

There are three components that make up the security settings for forums: forum users, permissions, and forums.

---

**Forum users**

A forum user is a logical group of users, user groups, or both. This group is used to define memberships to a forum.

**Permissions**

A permission is a combination of:

- access types for a forum
- access types for a given content type

You can create your own permission or use one of the default permissions that the Communities application delivers.

**Default permissions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blog Read</td>
<td>Read access to blogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blog Read and Comment Write</td>
<td>Read access to blogs and write access to comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blog Write</td>
<td>Write access to blogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blog Write and Comment Write</td>
<td>Write access to blogs and comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Permission for Memberships</td>
<td>Default permissions for forums that are marked as Enable Membership for this Forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default permissions for public user</td>
<td>Public access to forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default permissions for registered user</td>
<td>Permissions for registered and logged in users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Read and Comment Write</td>
<td>Read access to documents and write access to comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document Write and Comment Write</td>
<td>Write access to documents and comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Read and Comment Write</td>
<td>Read access to events and write access to comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Write and Comment Write</td>
<td>Write access to events and comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum Admin</td>
<td>Full access to a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum Moderator</td>
<td>Moderation access to a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum Name and Description Read</td>
<td>Read access to the name and description of a forum. To access content or topics, other permissions are required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Access</td>
<td>Write and read access to all content types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question and Answer Read</td>
<td>Read access to questions and answers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question and Answer Write</td>
<td>Write access to questions and answers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question Write</td>
<td>Write access to questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Read and Comment Write</td>
<td>Read access to videos and write access to comments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Write and Comment Write</td>
<td>Write access to videos and comments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forums

A forum is the container for user-created content. A forum must be configured with content types and permissions before becoming available for users to contribute content.

To assign permissions to users and user groups, create associations between forum users and permissions for a specific forum.
Note: Forum permissions are not inherited in the forum hierarchy. Each subforum must be configured with its own set of permissions and content types.

- You can use forum users and permissions in multiple forums.
- You can add multiple forum users and permissions to one forum.
- You can copy permissions from a parent forum to a child forum or from another forum altogether.
- You can also define user-specific permission exceptions and debug user permissions.

Create a forum user

You can create forum users, which you then use to define memberships to a forum.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

A forum user is a set of users and user groups. Forum users are reusable. Multiple forum users can be used in any given forum.

Note: Before creating a forum user, check whether an existing forum user matches your requirements.
Types of forum user

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Public</td>
<td>Public users can view the community without logging in. By default, public users have <strong>content_read</strong> access to questions and answers in public forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registered</td>
<td>Users who have signed up to the community and accepted the Terms &amp; Conditions. Once logged in, their access to forum content depends on the permissions set up for each specific forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom</td>
<td>Specific users and user groups that are added as members to the current forum user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membership</td>
<td>A group of members who have joined a specific forum. Once logged in, their access to forums depends on the permissions set up for each specific forum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Forum Users**.
2. Click **New**.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

   **Forum User form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User type</td>
<td>Type of user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Submit**.
   The forum user is created and added to the Forum Users list.

*Add members to a forum user*
Add members to a forum user. Members can be individual users or user groups.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Forum Users**.
2. Click the forum user to add members to.
3. In the Members related list, click **New**.
4. On the form, fill in the fields.

   **Members form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum User</td>
<td>Forum user name. The name is automatically filled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membership Type</td>
<td>Membership type. Choose either <strong>User</strong> or <strong>Group</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Member</td>
<td>User or user group to add to the forum user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   - **If you selected Membership Type > User**, the **Table name** is automatically filled with **sys_user**.
   - **If you selected Membership Type > Group**, the **Table name** is automatically filled with **sys_user_group**.
   - Enter your user or user group in the **Document** field.
5. Click Submit.

Create a permission

Create a permission to use to define a user's access to a forum and the content in the forum.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

Permissions are reusable. Before creating a permission, check if any existing permissions match your requirements.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Permissions.
2. Click New.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name for the permission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description of the permission.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.
5. Click Submit.

Add access types to a permission

Access types for a permission determine the access that users have to certain forums.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Permissions.
2. In the Permissions list, click the permission you created.
3. Click the Forum Access related list.
4. Click New.
5. Select an access type.
6. Click Submit.

Create a forum permission.

Add content types to a permission

Content types for a permission determine the access that users have to certain content in a forum.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Permissions.
2. In the Permissions list, click the permission you created.
3. Click the Content Type Access related list.
4. Click New.
5. Select a content type and an access type.
6. Click Submit.

Create a permission exception

Create a permission exception for users who require specific permissions for a forum.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

Permission exception records are created for users who require specific permissions for a particular forum, for example, a forum manager. Any other permissions that the user has are no longer valid once an exception is created.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
2. Click a forum.
3. Click the **Permission Exceptions** related list. The list of users who have extra permissions for this forum is displayed.
4. Click **New**.
5. In the **User** field, enter the name of the user to create a permission exception for.
6. In the **Permission** field, enter a permission.
7. Click **Submit**. A permission exception is created and added to the list of **Permission Exceptions** on the forum.

**Clone a permission**

Clone a permission if an existing permission record cannot be modified and you require a permission record with similar settings.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Permissions**.
2. Click the permission you want to clone.
3. Click the **Clone** related link. A new permission with the same access types as the source permission is created. The permission record name starts with **Clone of**.

**Create a forum permission**

Add a forum user and a permission to a forum to create a forum permission.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

Forum permissions are a combination of a forum, forum users, and permissions. Associate forum users and permissions within a specific forum. You can add multiple combinations of forum users and permissions to a forum.

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Forums**.
2. Click a forum.
3. In the **Forum Permissions** related list, click **New**.
4. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Name of the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum Users</td>
<td>User or group of users to give access to the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permission</td>
<td>Permission to give to the forum users in the forum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Submit**.

**Copy permissions from a parent forum**

You can copy permissions from a parent forum to a child forum.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Forums**.
2. Click a forum.
3. Click the **Copy Permissions from Parent Forum** related link. All permissions and content types are copied from the parent to the child forum. A summary of the results is displayed at the top of the form.
Configure the forum users and permissions as required.

*Copy permissions from a forum*

You can copy all permissions and content types from one forum to another.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

You can copy permissions from one source forum to multiple target forums.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
2. Click the name of the forum that you want to copy permissions from.
3. Click the Copy Permissions to Forum(s) related link.
4. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copy Permissions From</td>
<td>Name of the forum you want to copy permissions from. The name is automatically filled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy Permissions To</td>
<td>Name of the forum you want to copy the permissions to. You can enter more than one forum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Save.

*Debug user permissions*

Investigate and diagnose problems with user access to forums.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Forums.
2. Click the name of the forum to investigate.
3. Click the Debug Forum Permissions related link.
4. Enter the name of the user you want to check the permissions for.

The forum user permissions information indicates which content and access types the user has for a particular forum.

*Configure the community profile*

Set up the community profile by configuring profile fields and deciding which fields to display in the personal information section of the community profile.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

Configure one or more of the following for the community profile.

*Create a persona for the community profile*

Create a persona and associate it to a role to manage which data users can modify.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

A persona is associated to a user role and can be mapped to specific fields for display on the community profile. The base system contains a default persona, which is not associated to a role and is used for all community users. You can create a new persona or add a role to the default persona.

1. Navigate to Community > User Profile > Persona.
2. Click New and then complete the Persona form.
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>A name for the persona.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>The order, in numerical value, in which the system should evaluate the roles for the persona.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated Role</td>
<td>The role to associate the persona to.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Submit.

### Create a community profile field

Create a field to display on the community profile.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to **Community > User Profile > Profile Fields**.
2. Click **New** and then complete the Profile Fields form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Label</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field Name</td>
<td>A name for the field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Submit.

### Configure persona field mapping for the community profile

Configure which fields appear in the community profile and manage the settings associated with those fields.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to **Community > User Profile > Persona Field Mapping**.
2. Click **New** and then complete the Persona Field Mapping form.

**Persona Field Mapping form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persona</td>
<td>Name of the persona.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Value Table</td>
<td>Source table of the field to be added to the persona. Any table that is used as the <strong>Source Value Table</strong> should have a reference to the sys_user table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source User Field</td>
<td>Field from the source value table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Read Only</td>
<td>Select the check box to allow the community user to change the display settings for this field in their community profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Field</td>
<td>Display name of the community profile field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Value Field</td>
<td>Name of the field from the source table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read Only</td>
<td>Select the check box to not allow the community user to edit the value of this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privacy Default</td>
<td>Privacy default setting for the field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Click Submit.
Enable users to self-register to a community

Once users have accessed public forums and decided they want to join the community, they can self-register to the community. External user registration provides a way of validating users and requires them to accept the community Terms and Conditions.

Community administrators perform the following tasks to configure external user registration.

- Configure the external user registration properties.
- Configure moderation filters to enter banned words for the user name.
- Configure the required strength for passwords
- Change email templates and content. The email template that you can change is confirmation.link.sent.html
- If not already configured, create community terms and conditions that each community user must review and accept. Communities delivers preconfigured Terms and Conditions that you can modify according to your needs.
- To enable external users to update their time zone when registering, add ACLs to external users in the User table [sys_user].

Create community Terms and Conditions

Community members must follow the community rules of conduct. Create community Terms and Conditions and them share to build a successful community. Every community user must review and accept the Terms and Conditions before contributing to a community.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

The Communities application includes preconfigured Terms and Conditions that you can modify according to your needs.

You can disable Terms and Conditions using the sn_communities.disable_terms_conditions_role property.

1. Navigate to Community > Administration > Communities Terms and Conditions, click New, and then fill in the fields.

   Terms and Conditions form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>An automatically generated number for your Terms and Conditions. If required, you can change the number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Description</td>
<td>A short description for your Terms and Conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>The content of your Terms and Conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete one of the following actions to save the Terms and Conditions.

   To | Do this
   ---|--------------------------------------------------
   Submit | Click Submit to save your Terms and Conditions.
Activate
1. Click Activate. Your Terms and Conditions are activated and any existing Terms and Conditions are deactivated.
2. Select the check box on the warning message if you want all community users who log on to accept to the new Terms and Conditions. The check box is selected by default.
3. Deselect the check box if you want users to accept the new Terms and Conditions at a later point in time. You can then select your Terms and Conditions and click Prompt users to review and accept.
4. Click OK.

You can view which community users have accepted the Terms and Conditions and when. Navigate to Community > User Profile > Community Profiles. View or add, if necessary, the Accepted TC, Accepted TC Date, and Accepted TC Number fields.

Community Service Portal

The Community Service Portal is a web interface that is based on the ServiceNow Service Portal application.

The Community Service Portal is designed to allow you to have control over the behavior of your portal and help create an attractive and engaging user experience.

To customize this portal, navigate to Service Portal > Portals and click Community.

Configure Community Service Portal header menus

Configure Community Service Portal header menus to create a consistent user experience across all your end-user facing service portals using a modern interface and a unified navigation menu structure.

Role required: The admin role for your service portal, for example, sn_communities.admin.

Add a theme and header menu to your service portal to define its look and behavior.

1. Navigate to Service Portals > Portals and click the module for the portal you want to modify.
2. You have to be in the Global application to edit. If a message appears, click here to edit.
3. In the Theme field, enter CSM Default.
4. In the Main Menu field, enter CSM Unified Portal Header Menu.
5. Click the information icon next to the Main menu field and click Open Record.
6. Click the Settings icon and System Settings > Developer.
7. Change the Application to Customer Service Management Unified Theme and click the Refresh icon.
   You only have to change this setting once.
   The New button is displayed next to Menu Item.
8. To display the names of the menu items, personalize the Menu Items related list and add Display name.
9. Click New from the Menu Items related list.
10. Fill in the fields on the form.

   Menu Item form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Label</td>
<td>Name that appears for the item in the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Menu</td>
<td>This field should already contain the name of the menu you are adding items to. You can change the value as required to other menus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Menu Item</td>
<td>Use this field to nest menu items within other menu items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order</td>
<td>Value that determines where the item appears in the menu in relation to other menu items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>The kind of page the item links to. For example, you can link to another page in the portal, or an external URL. Form fields vary depending on the option you select from this list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Name of the portal page the item links to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Determines what conditions are required for menu items to show in the header.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glyph</td>
<td>Icon that appears beside the menu item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. Click Submit.

**Make an announcement to community members**

Global announcements appear in the banner and broadcast messages to all community members. Forum announcements appear in the Announcements section on the forum page. You can also send the announcement by email.

Role required:
- sn_communities.admin can manage Global announcements and Forum announcements
- sn_communities.forum_admin can manage Forum announcements for own forums only. The announcement appears only in the forum that the admin owns.

This example shows how a community user experiences announcements and how you can configure the appearance and operation of announcements.
ServiceNow, Paris, Customer Service Management

Navigate to Community > Administration > Global Announcements or Forum Announcements, click New, and then fill in the form.

This announcement is configured to Display first.

Global announcements appear here, in the banner. You can configure an announcement as Public — it appears even before a user logs in.

Forum announcements appear in the Announcements section of a forum page.

Benefits update. Click the link for info.
We have added some helpful services.
Click here for details

Use the Click target setting to configure a link. The Click target can be the Service Portal page or a URL that you specify.

Specify the link text ("Click here for details" in this example) using the Details link text field.

You can also specify that the Title text should be the link.

User clicks to show/hide multiple announcements.

User clicks to dismiss the announcement.

You configure:
- User can dismiss — no redisplay
- User can dismiss for current session only
- User cannot dismiss

This Forum announcement includes the required Title but not the optional Summary.

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Announcement type</th>
<th>Read-only. Set to <strong>Global Announcement</strong> or <strong>Forum Announcement</strong>, depending on what you are working on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Select the check box to publish the announcement to members. Clear the check box to cancel the announcement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Title             | Display title of the announcement.  
  • The text appears above the **Summary** text.  
  • In email, the text is the subject of the message. |
| Summary           | Content of the announcement.  
  • The text appears below the **Title** text.  
  • In email, the text is the body of the message. |
| From / To         |  
  • **From**: Date and time that the announcement should appear.  
  • **To**: Date and time that the announcement should no longer appear. |
| Send email notification | Select the check box to send the announcement to members as an email message in addition to broadcasting the announcement. |
| Display first     | Select the check box to display the announcement as the first announcement in the list. |
| Public            | Select the check box to enable forum members that are not logged in to view the announcement. |
| Portals           | Portals that display the announcement. Default: **Community**.  
  **Note**: If no value is specified, the announcement does not appear in any portal. |
| Click target      | The **Click target** setting creates a link for the announcement.  
  • **None**: No link.  
  • **Page**: Opens a Service Portal page in the current browser tab.  
  • **URL in current browser tab**: Opens the specified URL in the current browser tab.  
  • **URL in new browser tab**: Opens the specified URL in a new browser tab. |
| Details URL       | If you select a URL option for **Click target**, then enter the URL in the **Details URL** field. |
| Details link text | Appears only if **Click target** is not **None**.  
  • To display a link under the **Summary** text, enter the text of the link in the **Details link text** field.  
  • To use the **Title** text of the announcement as the link, leave **Details link text** blank. |
To update an announcement, update any setting as needed and then click **Update**. If you specified **Send email notification**, then you are prompted to send the updated email message.

To cancel an announcement, clear the **Active** check box.

### Add featured content in a community

Add or edit featured content in a community to appear in the Featured Content section on the community homepage, forum homepage, or both.

Set the following properties as required.

#### Featured content properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.default_featured_days</td>
<td>Default number of days for content to be featured. End date is calculated from the date the content is featured on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.max_featured_limit</td>
<td>Maximum amount of featured content at forum or at global level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sn_communities.featured_global_notify_user</td>
<td>Send notifications to community users when content is featured on the community homepage. This property is inactive by default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To send out email notifications when featured content expires, set the Featured Content Expire scheduled job to **Active**.

**Role required:** sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.forum_admin, or sn_communities.forum_moderator

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Click the content you want to feature.

**Note:** Question and Answer content types are not enabled for featuring by default. To enable Question or Answer content types for featuring, navigate to **Community > Administration > Content Types**. Click the content type you want to enable and select the **Allow Featuring** check box. In the same way, you can also disable content types for featuring.

3. Click ... and **Mark as featured**.
4. On the Feature Content pop-up window, select whether to feature the content on the community homepage or in a specific forum.
A notification that content has been featured is sent out to the author of the content, community users who commented on the post, and community users who are subscribed to the post. If featured content has expired or is removed from the featured content list by another user, community and forum administrators are notified.

**Email a community user**

Send a private message to a community user directly from the community.

An email client must be configured.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.forum_admin, or sn_communities.forum_moderator

Uses for private messaging can include warning a user about use of a banned word, welcoming a new user, or informing users about incorrectly placed content in a forum. You can privately message a user from any community content, a comment, the Leaderboard, or the Community Profile page.

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Point to the community user name.
3. Click **Email User**.

**Note:** The email opens in your local email client.

**Community pages that support SEO data**

To improve search results for community members using external search engines, the Communities application generates SEO meta tags and injects the tags into questions, topics, forums, and other page types.

**Note:** If the auto-generated SEO tags in a page does not meet your needs, you can change the SEO tags. See [Modify SEO in community pages](#).

**Pages that include auto-generated SEO data**

The Communities application auto-generates SEO meta tags for the following pages in the Community service portal. The table provides details on the data that is generated.

- community_question
- community_blog
- community_document
- community_video
- community_event
- community_forum
- community_topic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Searchable page type</th>
<th>Auto-generated tags in the page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Question, Blog, Document, Video, and Event | • The **title** meta tag is populated with the text “<forum name> - <content short description>”  
• The **description** meta tag is populated with the text “<forum name> - <topic names> - <first 100 characters of the body of the content>” |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Searchable page type</th>
<th>Auto-generated tags in the page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Forum                 | • The **title** meta tag is populated with the text “<forum name>”  
                         • The **description** meta tag is populated with the text “<forum description>” |
| Topic                 | • The **title** meta tag is populated with the text “<topic name>“  
                         • The **description** meta tag is populated with the text “<topic description>” |
| Leaderboard page      | The Title meta tag is populated with the text “<community name>” |

*Modify SEO in community pages*

If an auto-generated SEO meta tag does not meet your needs, you can modify or replace the tag.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

The source code for this example question page (ID `community_question`) shows the **description** meta tag (highlighted in yellow) that the Communities application injected into the page.
Router overheating after firmware upgrade

by George Warren
created 29d ago in Routing and Switching

My 5000 series router has been overheating since I upgraded the firmware couple of days ago. Anybody else facing a similar issue?

Topics:  Tomahawk (5000 Series)

Upvote (0)  Reply (1)  9 Views
The description meta tag text is made up of three data fields that are taken from the community_question record. In the tag, the values are separated by a hyphen character.

- The first portion of the description meta tag is the value of the forum name field in the question record. In the example, the forum name is Routing and Switching.
- The second portion of the tag is the value of the topic field in the record — Tomahawk (5000 Series) in the example.
- The third portion of the tag is generated from the first 100 characters of the body field in the record — My 5000 series router has been overheating since I upgraded the firmware couple of days ago. Anybody in addition to the description meta tag for a question page, the Communities application injects a title tag (highlighted in blue). The title is generated dynamically using two values from the community_question record:

- Forum name (Routing and Switching in the example)
• Short description (Router overheating after firmware upgrade in the example)

1. Navigate to Service Portal > Pages.
2. In the list of portal pages, click the ID of the page to update (in the example, community_question).
   See the list of pages in Communities that support SEO data.
3. On the Page form:
   • Modify or add meta tags in the Meta tags related list.
   • Modify the Dynamic page title by modifying the structure of the title text or by modifying or replacing the variables that generate the text. The variable definitions appear in the Dynamic page title variables related list.
Analytics and Reporting Solutions for Communities

Analytics and Reporting Solutions contain preconfigured dashboards. These dashboards contain actionable data visualizations that help you improve your business processes and practices.

Use the Performance Analytics widgets on the dashboard to visualize data over time, analyze your business processes, and identify areas of improvement. With solutions, you can get value from Performance Analytics for your application with minimal setup.

Note: Solutions include some dashboards that are inactive by default. You can activate these dashboards to make them visible to end users according to your business needs.

To enable the solution for Communities, an admin navigates to System Definitions > Plugins and activates the Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Communities plugin.

View the Communities performance dashboard

The Communities dashboard displays up-to-date status on community usage, membership, content type and activity, and trends by forum and by topic.

Role required: pa_admin

1. Navigate to Performance Analytics > Dashboards.
2. In the list, select Community > Communities Dashboard.

On dashboard tabs:

- Content types are question, answer, comment, blog, video, or document.
- "Social activity" is any response (answer, comment, blog, video, or document) to a topic that is added by a user other than the originator.
- Content score data is for content created during the last 30 days.
- Click a scorecard to view detailed data or a trend chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overview tab</th>
<th>Scorecards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In each scorecard, the percentage change in the current period appears under the total over the lifetime of the community.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Number of current members and total number of questions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Percentage of questions that have been marked as Solved by the user who asked the question.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Percentage of questions that have not been answered.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Total number of attachments (blogs, videos, and documents).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Charts

- Community Activity: new community members and total sessions for the month.
- New content of any type.
- Top 3 Forums and Topics by Social Activity: Topics and forums that have received responses from other members. Hold the cursor over an area to view the count of activity.
| Content Analytics tab | For any chart, you can focus on the most popular content types, forums, or topics by selecting a **Breakdown**.  
  - New content and count of active members who contributed content for the most recent months for the selected breakdown.  
  - The top 10 items with the highest number of views for the selected breakdown. |

| Forum Analytics tab | • Heat maps display data for **Content** (total current content volume), **Views** (total unique user views), and **Social Activity**. Forums are listed on the vertical axis and content types appear on the horizontal axis.  
  • **Additional KPIs**: key performance indicator data for forums. |

| Topic Analytics tab | • Heat maps display data for **Content** (total current content volume), **Views** (total unique user views), and **Social Activity**. Topics are listed on the vertical axis and content types appear on the horizontal axis.  
  • **Additional KPIs**: key performance indicator data for topics. |

| Admin Analytics tab | • Heat maps display data for **Number of Posts Moved** and **Featured Content**. |

**Communities dashboard**

The Communities dashboard displays up-to-date status on community usage, membership, content type and activity, and trends by forum, topic, and admin.
Content tab
## Forum tab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>% Not Answered</th>
<th>% Solved</th>
<th>% Non-question content</th>
<th>% With activity</th>
<th>Avg. # of comments per content</th>
<th>Avg. # of social activities per content</th>
<th># of contributors</th>
<th>New content this month</th>
<th>Avg. # of views per content</th>
<th># of posts moved from this forum</th>
<th># of posts moved to this forum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access right management</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP request</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCPv6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fault tolerance</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>50.00%</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5.50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firewalling</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey Pot Solutions</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrusion Prevention Systems/IDS</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPv6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic KPIs</td>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>% Not Answered</td>
<td>% Solved</td>
<td>Non-question content</td>
<td>% With activity</td>
<td>Avg. # of comments per content</td>
<td>Avg. # of social activities per content</td>
<td># of contributors</td>
<td>New content this month</td>
<td>Avg. # of views per content</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patriot (3000 Series)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scud (4000 Series)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidewinder (1500 Series)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomahawk (5000 Series)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trident (5500 Series)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.00%</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Topic tab
Admin tab

End user and roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>End user</th>
<th>Required role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community moderator</td>
<td>sn_communities.community_moderator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End user</td>
<td>Required role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderation administrator</td>
<td>sn_communities.moderation_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community administrator</td>
<td>sn_communities.admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum administrator</td>
<td>sn_communities.forum_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum moderator</td>
<td>sn_communities.forum_moderator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content creator</td>
<td>pa_viewer, pa_admin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicators**

The Communities dashboard presents the following key performance indicators:

**# of members**
Total number of members.

**# of Questions**
Number of questions created in the last 30 days.

**% Marked as Solved**
Number of questions created in the last 30 days, which are marked as solved.

**% Not Answered**
Number of questions created in the last 30 days, which were not answered.

**# of Blogs, Documents, and Video**
Number of blogs, documents, and videos created in the last 30 days.

**Non-question content**
Number of blogs, videos, and documents posted.

**% With activity**
Percentage of primary or secondary community content with at least one response or feedback.

**Avg. # of social activities per content**
Average number of activities (mark as helpful, upvote, comments, and replies) on any active primary or secondary community content.

**# of contributors**
Number of contributors.

**New content this month**
Number of new content posts in the last 30 days.

**Avg. # of views per content**
Average number of views of the content.

**Avg. # of comments per content**
Average number of comments of the content.

**# of featured content**
Number of content posts that have been featured.
# of Content moved from activities
Number of content posts moved from activities.

# of Content moved to activities
Number of content posts moved to activities.

Breakdowns

The following breakdowns apply to the indicators on the dashboard:

- Communities Content Type
- Communities Forum
- Communities Topic

Reports

The dashboards include the following reports:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community Activity</td>
<td>Column</td>
<td>View the number of new community members and total of sessions on the community per month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Content by Month</td>
<td>Column</td>
<td>View the number of new content posts per month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top 3 Forums by Social Activity</td>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>View forums that have received responses from other members. Social activity is any response (answer, comment, blog, video, or document) to a topic added by a user other than the user that originally posted the content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top 3 Topics by Social Activity</td>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>View topics that have received responses from other members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Content by Month</td>
<td>Single Score</td>
<td>View the amount of new content, forums, or topics created per month. For any chart, you can focus on the most popular content types, forums, or topics by selecting a Breakdown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Content Views</td>
<td>Column</td>
<td>View the number of views for each content type per month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum KPIs</td>
<td>Single Score</td>
<td>View different indicators for the forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic KPIs</td>
<td>Single Score</td>
<td>View different indicators for the topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Contents Moved</td>
<td>Single Score</td>
<td>View the number of content posts that have been moved by community administrators and community moderators per month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Migrate Social Q&A data to Communities

If you want to migrate existing Social Q&A content to Communities, you can use a script to migrate the data.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

The Customer Communities plugin (com.sn_customer_communities) must be activated.

1. Navigate to **System Definition > Fix Scripts**.
2. Search for the script **Migrate Social QA to Community** and open it.
3. To enable the script, select the **Active** check box and click **Update**.
   - The script is deactivated by default.
4. Click **Run Fix Script**.
   - The **Run Fix Script** popup appears.
5. Click **Proceed in Background**.
   - Always use this option for long-running scripts, or if you do not know the expected execution time.
6. Check the status of the fix script and review the results from the Show Progress Workers related list.

Verify the following information.
- A new forum is created for every knowledge base that has Social Q&A content.
- All questions, answers, comments, helpful votes, and upvotes are migrated.
- All view counts, answer counts, and comment counts are migrated.
- The accepted solution to a question in Social Q&A is **Marked as Correct Answer** in Communities.
- Social Q&A is deactivated for every knowledge base that contained Social Q&A data. Social Q&A content is no longer visible for these knowledge bases.

View community logs

Community logs display information about who has viewed or searched for content in a community. The list view displays all log entries, unless filtered.

Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Administration > Search Logs** or **View Logs**.
2. View the logs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search Log</td>
<td>View who has searched for what and where in the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Log</td>
<td>View who has viewed what and where in the community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
View community feedback and bookmarks tables

View feedback and bookmarks tables to view which community content was given feedback or was bookmarked.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.moderation_admin, sn_communities.forum_admin, or sn_communities.forum_moderator

1. Navigate to Community > Feedback.
2. Choose one of the following options.
   - Click Feedback to view the content feedback was given for, the type of the feedback, and who provided it.
   - Click Bookmarks to view the content that was bookmarked and who added it.

Create a case from a discussion

In order to engage your internal experts to reply to discussion threads, you can create cases directly from community questions.

Creating cases from community questions requires activation of the Customer Service Management (com.sn_customerservice) plugin.

This feature is available for questions that have been posted by community users who are also contacts or consumers in the Customer Service Management application. Questions can be either answered or unanswered.

**Note:** Cases can be created only from questions.

Two sets of users can create cases from questions:

- Customer service agents, consumer service agents, and customer service managers.
- Users with the sn_customerservice.proxy_case_creator role. Community administrators and community moderators inherit this role.

Administer create case from discussion

Configure parameters for the case generated from the community discussion so that it can be routed accordingly.

Creating a case from a discussion requires a configuration that maps information from the question in the community to fields on the Case form. The Create Case configuration is included with the feature. This configuration defines the source and destination tables and maps source fields to destination fields. This configuration is stored in the CSM Table Map table [csm_table_map]. The system administrator can modify this configuration as needed.

The Create Case configuration uses the Social Q&A Question table [kb_social_qa_question] as the source table and the Case table [sn_customerservice_case] as the destination table. It includes the following mapping information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question information</th>
<th>Case information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Short description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question author</td>
<td>Contact or consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question author's account</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opened by</td>
<td>Logged in community user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Low (priority = 4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Channel</td>
<td>Community</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To create additional mapping between these tables, add the additional fields to the Create Case configuration in the CSM Table Map table. Include these fields as needed on the Create case from question record producer.
Enable knowledge harvesting

Configure knowledge harvesting from a community to convert unstructured conversations to structured knowledge articles and make the information more accessible.

Community administrators perform the following tasks to configure knowledge harvesting.

• Enable the Knowledge Management Service Portal plugin (com.snc.knowledge_serviceportal).
• Add a knowledge base to a forum to store the knowledge article in a specific knowledge base.

Note: You can only add one knowledge base to a forum. The same knowledge base can be used for multiple forums.

• Add a knowledge category to a forum topic to categorize the harvested content.

Moderate a community

Community moderators can manage content quality by reducing the inappropriate content that is posted on the community.

Role required: sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.forum_moderator, or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Define your requirements for Community moderation.
   • Should first-time posters receive automatic moderation?
   • Which words should be banned from user content?
   • Should the system prevent content containing banned words from being posted?
   • Should users be able to report inappropriate content?
   • How many offenses can a user commit before the system bans them automatically?

2. Navigate to Community and choose the Moderation or Moderation Tasks menu and the module you require.
3. Configure one or more of the following aspects for your community.

Configure general moderation settings

Configure when to moderate content for users and user groups.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Moderation > Moderation Settings.
2. On the form, fill in the fields.

Moderation Settings form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Users Never Moderated</td>
<td>Content is never moderated for these users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users Always Moderated</td>
<td>Content is always moderated for these users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Groups Never Moderated</td>
<td>Content is never moderated for these user groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Groups Always Moderated</td>
<td>Content is always moderated for these user groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide content if user violates settings</td>
<td>Check box to hide content written by a user until a moderator approves it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Click **Update**.

**Configure moderation settings for a new user**

Configure the system to prevent inappropriate user contributions.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Moderation > Moderation Settings**.
2. Click the **New User** related list.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New User Content Threshold</td>
<td>Number of user posts to be moderated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Exception List</td>
<td>New users that are not included in the new user content threshold for moderation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group Exception List</td>
<td>User groups that are not included in the new user content threshold for moderation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click **Update**.

**Configure abuse reporting**

Configure whether users can report content and profile abuse, set an abuse reporting threshold, and define reasons for abuse reporting.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Navigate to **Community > Moderation > Moderation Settings**.
2. Click the **Abuse** related list.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Content Abuse Reporting</td>
<td>Check box to enable users to report inappropriate content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Profile Abuse Reporting</td>
<td>Check box to enable users to report inappropriate profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abuse Reporting Threshold</td>
<td>Number of abuse reports on a specific content (question, blog, video, answer, comment) that lead to the content being hidden from other users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content Abuse Reporting Reasons List</td>
<td>Phrases that are possible reasons for the user to report inappropriate content contributions. Separate each phrase using the pipe symbol. For example, This content is abusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Abuse Reporting Reasons List</td>
<td>Phrases that are possible reasons for the user to report an inappropriate user profile. Separate each phrase using the pipe symbol.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Click Update.

**Configure user banning**

Set the number of offenses a user can make before they are banned from creating or editing content.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Moderation > Moderation Settings.
2. Click the User Banning related list.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Banning Users</td>
<td>Check box to enable the banning of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offense Threshold</td>
<td>Number of offenses a user can make before being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>automatically banned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Update.

**Configure moderation filters**

Create moderation filters to manage how content is moderated.

Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.moderation_admin

1. Navigate to Community > Moderation > Moderation Filters.
2. Click New.
3. Click Banned Keyword Filter.
4. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filter Name</td>
<td>Name of the filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Check box to make the filter active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronous</td>
<td>Check box to automatically moderate content when it is submitted. Any content that includes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the banned words defined in the filter is not posted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the check box is cleared, the system creates a moderation task when banned words are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The content is visible until it is moderated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Submit.
6. From the Moderation Filters list, click the name of your filter.
7. Add a banned keyword word to the list:
   a) In the Keywords list, click New.
   b) In the Keyword field, enter your keyword.
   c) Click Submit.
d) If required, repeat to add more keywords to the list.

8. Click Update.

Ban a user

You can ban a user from creating or editing content, for example, a user can be banned for posting inappropriate content.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.moderation_admin, or sn_communities.community_moderator

1. Navigate to Community > User Profile > Community Profiles.
2. Click the Preview icon next to the user and then click Ban User.

The user is banned. In the Community Profiles list, the value in the Banned column is set to true.

Revoke a user ban

Revoke a user ban to allow a user to create and edit content again.

Role required: sn_communities.admin, sn_communities.moderation_admin, or sn_communities.community_moderator

1. Perform either of the following actions.
   • Navigate to Community > User Profile > Community Profiles.
   • Navigate to Community > Moderation > Users Banned by Moderation.
2. Click the Preview icon next to the user and then select Revoke User Ban.

The user ban is revoked. In the Community Profiles list, the value in the Banned column is set to false.

Approve or reject content

Approve or reject content that a user reported as inappropriate or that is associated with a particular community profile.

Role required: sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.moderation_admin

A moderation task is generated when a community user reports inappropriate content or community profile. By default, the system assigns the task to the community moderator group. You can also configure your system to always require content moderation for a particular user or group.

Each task requires the moderator to approve or reject the reported item. If the moderator rejects content, it is counted as an offense against the community user who contributed the content.

1. Navigate to Community > Moderation Tasks > Assigned to me.
2. Click a moderation task.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assigned to</td>
<td>Person assigned to the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderation Notes</td>
<td>Notes entered by the user when reporting the content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution Notes</td>
<td>Your comment as you moderate the content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work Notes</td>
<td>Work notes entered by users working on the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approve Content</td>
<td>Approve content that conforms to community rules. The content state changes to Closed Complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reject Content</td>
<td>Reject content or a profile. The content state changes to Closed Complete and the content is hidden in the community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** You can review the outcome of existing and past moderation tasks by navigating to **Community > Moderation > Moderation Outcomes**. Click a task to view the details of the moderation task.

**Disable comments**

Disable comments on a blog, document, video, event, or question to prevent users from posting comments.

Role required: sn_communities.forum_moderator, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.moderation_admin, or sn_communities.forum_admin

There are two ways of disabling comments on the community content. You can disable comments while posting new content or restrict users from posting comments on existing content.

**Note:** You can disable replies on an existing question to restrict users from posting further comments. You cannot post a new question when replies are disabled.

Navigate to the community home page.

- To disable comments on new community content:
  1. Choose the content type that you want to post.
  2. Select the **Disable Comments** check box.
  3. Click **Publish**.

- To disable comments on existing community content:
  1. Choose the content that you want to disable the comments for.
  2. Click the More Options icon ( ) and then click **Edit**.
  3. Select the **Disable Comments** check box.
  4. Click **Save**.

A confirmation message appears stating that you’ve disabled comments. The comments on the existing content are displayed. You cannot edit an existing comment or post a new comment. All community and forum administrators and the content author receive an email notification when you disable or enable comments.

**Remove content**

Remove content that does not meet community standards.
Role required: sn_communities.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Content > Contents.
2. Click the content to remove.
3. Click Actions on selected rows > Delete and confirm that you want to delete the item.

Harvest knowledge from a community

Harvest knowledge from a community and create structured knowledge articles from unstructured discussions around a question.

Knowledge harvesting must be enabled.

Role required: sn_communities.knowledge_harvester, sn_communities.admin, or sn_communities.moderation_admin

You can only harvest solved questions with accepted solutions into a knowledge article.

1. From the Communities homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   • Go to the Content List.
   • Click a forum.
   • Search for a discussion thread (Question and Answer).
2. Click Question State > Solved to filter for all discussions that can be converted into knowledge articles.
3. Click a question.
4. Click the ... icon and then Harvest Knowledge.
5. Fill in the fields on the Harvest Knowledge form.

Harvest Knowledge form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short description</td>
<td>The original question is automatically entered in the Short description field. You can edit the short description, as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments</td>
<td>All attachments associated with the question and accepted solution are automatically added to the knowledge article. You can add and remove attachments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>The body of the original question and accepted solution is automatically entered in the Text field. You can edit the text, as required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge base</td>
<td>The knowledge base to which the knowledge article has been added. It is added by default based on the knowledge base associated to the forum from which the article was harvested. If required, you can change the knowledge base.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>The category of the knowledge article. It is entered by default based on the category associated to the topic from which the article was harvested. If required, you can change the category.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>A KB (Knowledge Base) number is automatically assigned to the article. You cannot edit the Number field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Perform one of the following actions:
Use a community

Participate in your community by sharing content, asking and answering questions, creating events, giving feedback, and so on.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

Use a community in one or more of the following ways.

Community homepage features for logged in users

Your community activity usually begins on the community homepage. If you are a logged in user, you see different information than non-logged in users. Your organization can customize the homepage.

Note: The Community Service Portal header menu is not enabled by default. For more information, see Configure Community Service Portal header menus.

From the community homepage, you can access and use the following features:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Announcements</td>
<td>View announcements targeted to the entire community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community menu</td>
<td>Navigate to all forums and all topics and other quick links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tours</td>
<td>View a tour for additional guidance on how the Communities application works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile photo</td>
<td>Click your profile photo to either view your community profile or logout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI component</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Enter a search term. You can enter a keyword to use the type-ahead search or enter one or more words to view all search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browse Forums</td>
<td>Click the + icon to view up to eight available forums. Click <strong>View all Forums</strong> to go to the Forums list page and search for the forum you require. If sub forums exist, they are listed on the parent forum tile along with a count of how many there are. Click the link to access a list of the sub forums.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have a question? Click here to start typing and Post Content</td>
<td>Contribute to the community by posting a question. Click <strong>Question, Blog, Video, Document, or Event</strong> to add your content and assign it to a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Featured Content</td>
<td>View featured community content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question filters</td>
<td>Filter by question to view solved, unsolved, and unreplied questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content List and Activity Feed</td>
<td>Toggle between the Content List and Activity Feed. You can filter according to content type, forum, most recent or popular, and when the content was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content List: Lists all content added to the community. Displays when updates were made to replies, comments, and answers marked as correct and which user made the updates.</td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Updates are not displayed for new or existing comments or replies due for moderation. Updates are displayed for approved changes made to comments or replies as a result of moderation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity Feed: Lists all activity in the community based on your posts and subscriptions.</td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> All activities per content item are grouped. Only the most recent activity is listed per content item. For example, an upvote to a question. To view all activity associated with a content item, click the content item. All activities, regardless of your subscriptions, are displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Navigating the activity feed

The activity feed provides a central place for community users to view information and interact. It lists the most recent activity in the community based on your network, posts, and subscriptions. You can reply, comment, and give feedback directly from the activity feed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Levels</td>
<td>View the most recent levels you have earned in the community as a result of points accumulated. You can also view the most recent badge you have earned for your achievements or areas of expertise within the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content added by another user</td>
<td>View the most recent contributions by another user that you are following or content that you have subscribed to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content added by you</td>
<td>View the most recent content that you created in the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feedback</td>
<td>Provide feedback on content that you find useful. There are four supported types of content feedback: comment, upvote, helpful, and mark as correct answer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reply</td>
<td>Reply to a question or another reply.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Navigating the forum homepage

While in a forum, you can navigate the forum homepage and perform tasks, such as posting content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum name and description</td>
<td>Displays the name and description of the forum. Click <strong>Show more</strong> to read more of the description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscribe</td>
<td>Subscribe to content in the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub Forums</td>
<td>If sub forums exist, they are listed. Click a link to access a sub forum. If more than three sub forums exist, click <strong>View all</strong> to view the list of all sub forums and click the one you want to access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search Forum</td>
<td>Type a keyword and click the Search icon to view the matching content within a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have a question? Click here to start typing</td>
<td>Contribute to the community by posting a question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question filter</td>
<td>Filter by question to view solved, unsolved, and unreplied questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI component</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content List</td>
<td>Lists all content added to the community. Displays when updates were made to replies, comments, and answers marked as correct and which user made the updates. Filter according to content type or sort by most recent or popular, and when the content was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post Content</td>
<td>Click Question, Blog, Video, Document, or Event to add your content and assign it to a forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Announcements</td>
<td>View forum-specific announcements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topics</td>
<td>Click a topic to navigate to a particular topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaderboard</td>
<td>View the leaderboard to find community experts for the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most viewed content</td>
<td>Displays the top three posts according to number of views.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Community homepage features for non-logged in users**

Your community activity usually begins on the Community homepage. If you are a non-logged in user, you see different information than logged in users. Your organization can customize the homepage.

**Community homepage for non-logged in users**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UI component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community announcement</td>
<td>View announcements targeted to the entire community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community menu</td>
<td>Navigate to all forums, all topics, and other quick links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign up/Login</td>
<td>Sign up or log in to the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Enter a search term. You can enter a keyword to use the type-ahead search or enter one or more words to view all search results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI component</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Browse community forums</strong></td>
<td>Click the + icon to view up to eight available forums. Click <strong>View all Forums</strong> to go to the Forums list page and search for the forum you require.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If sub forums exist, they are listed. Click a link to access a sub forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If more than three sub forums exist, click <strong>View all</strong> to view the list of all sub forums and click the one you want to access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Question filter</strong></td>
<td>Filter by question to view solved, unsolved, and unreplied questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Content List</strong></td>
<td>View content posted in public forums in the community. Filter according to content type or sort by most recent or popular, and when the content was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Why Join?</strong></td>
<td>View some of the advantages of joining the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>View Leaderboard</strong></td>
<td>View the leaderboard to find community experts on specific forums or topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ask a Question</strong></td>
<td>Click <strong>Ask a Question</strong> and a message appears indicating that you must be a logged-in user to perform this action. You can <strong>Login/Sign Up</strong> directly from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Topics</strong></td>
<td>Click a topic to navigate to a particular topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Show More</strong></td>
<td>View an expanded list of content available in the community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Self-register to a community**

Once you have accessed a public forum and decided to join the community, you can self-register by signing up and accepting the community Terms and Conditions.

Role required: none

Every community user has to have a community account. Existing users who access a community for the first time have to accept the Terms and Conditions. An account is created once the Terms and Conditions have been accepted. New users sign up to the community and accept the Terms and Conditions.

If the community Terms and Conditions are updated, all community users are prompted to review and accept them when they log in the next time.

1. If you are a new user, navigate to the community homepage.
   a) Click **Sign up/Login**.
      The **Sign Up** screen opens.
   b) Fill out the fields on the **Sign Up** form.

**Sign Up form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Email address</td>
<td>The email address to send the email validation to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>A user name for your account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>Your first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>Your last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone Number</td>
<td>Your phone number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>A password for your account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm Password</td>
<td>A confirmation of your password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I agree to the Community Terms and Conditions</td>
<td>A check box to agree to the community Terms and Conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) Click **Sign Up**.
   An email is sent to the email address you entered.
d) Open the email and click the validation link.
e) Click the **Click here to login** message.
f) Log in with your user name and password.
The **Welcome** pop-up opens.
g) Confirm your time zone.
h) Click **User Profile** or **Notification Preferences** to edit your community profile or your notification and subscription settings.

2. If you are an existing user, but visiting the community for the first time, click any community page.
   a) If required, change your **Display Name** on the **Setting up your account** pop-up.
b) Select the check box to agree to the community Terms and Conditions.
The **Welcome** pop-up opens.
c) Confirm your time zone.
d) Click **User Profile** or **Notification Preferences** to edit your community profile or your notification and subscription settings.

**Search the community**

Enter a keyword to use the type-ahead search on the Community homepage or enter one or more words to view all search results.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Press the Spacebar to use the type-ahead search and enter a keyword in the **Search Community** field.
3. Choose from the following options:
   a) Click a content item, topic, forum, or profile that matches your search.
b) To enter your question, blog, or video if no matching content is displayed, click **Ask the Community**.
c) To display all search results, click **View all Results**.
4. Alternatively, enter one or more keywords in the **Search Community** field and press the Enter key.
   A list of matching search results appears.

**Refine your search results**

Refine your search results to narrow down the content displayed.
Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Enter a keyword in the Search field.
3. From the Refine Results panel, choose from the following options.
   - To filter and customize your search results, click any option under Types. For example, click Profile to view the profiles that matches with the search keyword. The details of the profile such as display name, gamification information-points and badges, bio, user title and company appear. To reverse this action, click the x icon of the corresponding item. To remove all filters, click Clear All.
   - Select any item from the Forums, Topics, or Authors fields to filter by forum, sub forum, topic, or author. You can add multiple forums, sub forums, topics, and authors and click anywhere on the screen to display the results.
   - To filter by the time period that the content was posted, click any Last Updated item.
   - Click the – icon of any category to collapse the category and save space. Click the + icon to restore a collapsed category.

The search results page displays content based on the filter criteria.

Sort your search results

Sort your community search results to narrow down the content displayed.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

The search results are sorted according to Relevance by default.

1. Navigate to the community homepage.
2. Enter a keyword in the Search field.
3. To display the most recent results, click Sort By: Newest.
   The results are displayed in descending order.
4. To display the results in ascending order, click Newest.

Use a community profile

The community profile displays an overview of a user's personal information as well as their contributions, network, achievements, expertise, and events they are attending. You can view and edit your own profile. You can also view another user's profile and perform actions, such as following them or reporting inappropriate content.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

Perform one or more of the following tasks from the community profile.

Manage your community profile

View and edit your own community profile, which displays your contributions, network, achievements, expertise, and events you are attending.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

There are two ways of accessing your community profile.

1. From the Community homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   - Click the Community menu and then Community Profile.
   - Click your name or profile photo and then Profile.
2. View the sections on your community profile.
## Community profile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Profile header| An overview of your personal information.  
- Click **Edit Profile** to change your profile photo and edit your personal information.  
- Click **Edit Profile** to change your user preferences. Update your time zone to view when events are occurring in your selected time zone.  
- Click the ... icon and then **Display Settings** to set your display settings and determine who can view which sections of your profile.  
If the gamification feature is enabled, the profile header includes your current gamification achievements, including:  
- The top three badges that you have been awarded  
- The total number of points that you have earned  
- The current level that you have achieved based on your point total (for example, Enthusiast or Champion) |
| Content tab   | An overview of the published and draft content you have created and the content you have bookmarked.  
- **Authored:** Content you contributed. You can select the content type and the forum, and sort by state.  
- **Drafts:** Content you contributed that is in draft state. You can select the content type and the forum. Open a draft to publish it.  
**Note:** You can only save content in draft for blogs and events.  
- **Bookmarks:** Content that you have bookmarked. You can select the content type, the forum, and sort by recent or oldest. You can also remove bookmarks. |
| Activity tab  | The most recent actions performed by you in the community, for example, commenting on a post or providing feedback. |
| Network tab   | A record of your network in the community.  
- **Followers:** The users that are following you.  
- **Following:** The users that you are following.  
- Click **Follow** to start following a user, who is following you.  
- Point to **Following** and click **Unfollow** to stop following a user. |
### Section | Description
---|---
Achievements tab | An overview of your gamification achievements.
- **Levels**: A list of the available levels that you can achieve, including the starting point value, with your current level highlighted in blue.
- **Badges**: A list of the badges that you have been awarded as well as available badges. Awarded badges appear at the top of the list and available badges appear below. You can filter this list to view awarded badges or all badges.
- **Points**: A history of the points that you have earned and the activities performed that earned the points. This information also includes the forum in which the activity was performed. This list includes your last 50 activities. Click **Show more** to display additional pages.

Events tab | A list of events that you created, are attending, or past events you have attended. Click an event to view the event details.

Contributions | The number of your content and feedback contributions to the community.

Forum Expertise | A display of your expertise at forum level. You can view your level within the forum and the number of points you have gained through contributing to that forum. Click the information icon to view the point ranges required to reach each forum level.

Topic Expertise | A display of your expertise at topic level. You can view your level within the topic and the number of points you have gained through contributing to that topic. Click the information icon to view the point ranges required to reach each topic level.

**View another user's community profile**

View another user's community profile to see their contributions, network, expertise, and so on. You can also manage your network by following and unfollowing other community users.

**Role required:** sn_communities.community_user or sn_communities.admin

1. Click the user's name or profile photo for the community profile that you want to view.
2. View the sections of the user's community profile.
## Community profile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profile header</td>
<td>The sections of the community profile that the user has made visible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To start following the user, click <strong>Follow</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To report any inappropriate content on the user's community profile, click the ... icon and then <strong>Report Profile</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To assign a user points for a specific contribution to the community as a community administrator, click the ... icon and then click <strong>Assign Points</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• To hide content from the community until it is corrected as a community administrator, click <strong>Display Settings</strong> You can also click <strong>Ban User</strong> to ban a user from creating or editing content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content</td>
<td>• <strong>Authored</strong>: Content that the user contributed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Featured</strong>: Content the user posted that has been featured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Drafts</strong>: Content the user contributed that is in draft state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: Only community administrators can view draft content of another user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Bookmarks</strong>: Content that the user has bookmarked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>The most recent actions performed by the user in the community, for example, commenting on a post or providing feedback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
<td>• <strong>Followers</strong>: The users that are following the user's community profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Following</strong>: The users that the community profile user is following.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can manage your own network from another user's profile. To start following a user, click <strong>Follow</strong>. To stop following a user, click <strong>Following</strong> and click <strong>Unfollow</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Achievements</td>
<td>An overview of the user's gamification achievements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Levels</strong>: A list of the available levels that the user can achieve, including the starting point value, with the user's current level highlighted in blue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Badges</strong>: A list of the badges that have been awarded to this user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Points</strong>: A history of the points that this user has earned and the activities performed that earned the points. If the user has earned points in a forum that you do not have access to, the name of the forum is replaced with <strong>Private forum</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Section Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Events</th>
<th>A list of events that the user has created, is attending, or past events that the user has attended. Click an event to view the event details and respond.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum Expertise</td>
<td>A display of the user's expertise at the forum level. You can view their level within the forum and the number of points they have gained through contributing to that forum. To view the point ranges required to reach each forum level, click the information icon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic Expertise</td>
<td>A display of the user's expertise at the topic level. You can view their level within the topic and the number of points they have gained through contributing to that topic. To view the point ranges required to reach each forum level, click the information icon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contributions</td>
<td>The contributions the user has made to the community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Follow a community user

Manage your network by following other community users and tracking their activity in the community.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

There are several ways of following users in the community.

1. From the Communities homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   - Click your profile name or photo.
   - Click your profile name or photo and then the **Network** tab.
   - Click another user's profile name or photo and then the **Network** tab.

2. Click **Follow** for every user you want to follow.
   The state changes to **Following**. Your Activity Feed is updated with the activity those users have taken in the community.

3. Optional: Point to **Following** and click **Unfollow** to stop following a user.

### Edit your community profile photo and personal information

You can change your community profile photo and edit your personal information.

You can only edit your community profile if you are logged in to the community.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

There are two ways of accessing your community profile.

1. From the Community homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   - Click the **Community** menu and then click **Profile** on the Community homepage.
   - Click your name or profile photo and then click **Profile**.

2. Click **Edit Profile**.

3. Click **Change Profile Photo**.
   A file system upload is initiated. Choose an image in **.png** or **.jpg** format.

4. On the form, fill in the fields.
Profile Fields form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>The country in which you work or reside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Your job title.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>The telephone number where people can reach you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>Name of your employer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>Your email address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Use the email address used in your instance profile or the reset password features cannot be used.

| State     | The state, province, or jurisdiction in which you work or reside. |
| City      | The city in which you reside.                               |
| Display name | Your name as you want others to see it.                   |
| Bio       | A short description about yourself.                       |

5. Click Save.

Edit your community profile display settings

Edit your display settings to determine who can view each profile section.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user, sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.moderation_admin

You can edit your own display settings for your community profile. If a community administrator finds inappropriate content on your profile, they can edit your display settings to hide the content from the community until it is corrected.

1. On the community homepage, click the Community menu and then click Community Profile.
2. Click the ... icon and then click Display Settings.
3. Open the choice lists and select display settings for any section.
4. Choose the privacy level to apply.

Privacy levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privacy level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everyone</td>
<td>Visible to all users, including non-logged in users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only me</td>
<td>Visible to yourself and administrators. After an administrator finds inappropriate content on your profile, they can change the display settings to Only me until the content is modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You receive an email notification detailing the display settings that were modified for which sections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Update the content and adjust the display settings accordingly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everyone after logging in</td>
<td>Visible to all users who access the community after logging in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ServiceNow    Paris    Customer Service Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privacy level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Followers</td>
<td>Visible to users who are following your profile.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Save Settings**.

**Report a community profile**

Report a community profile to alert community moderators that there is offensive or inaccurate information in the profile.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Click the name or photo of the user to report.
2. Click the ... icon and select **Report Profile**.
3. From the list, select the reason you are reporting the user and add **Additional Comments**.
4. Click **Submit**.
   - A confirmation message indicating that the abuse report has been received and will be reviewed is displayed.
   - A moderation task is created and assigned to a moderator for resolution.

**Community subscriptions**

Using subscriptions, you can choose specific areas of interest. Your activity feed and notifications are personalized according to your subscriptions.

**Subscription types**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Subscription type</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description/Features</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Subscription          | • Subscribe or unsubscribe to forums, topics, and community content (questions, answers, blogs, and video).  
                        | • Auto-subscribe: Whenever you post content, you are automatically subscribed to the content itself. You are also automatically subscribed when you post a reply or a comment. |
| Activity feed         | • Displays activities based on your subscriptions with the most recent at the top. |
| Notification settings | • Manage your subscriptions using **Notification Settings**.  
                        | • For each of your subscriptions, set email notifications using **Notification Preferences**. |

**Subscribe to content**

Subscribe to forums, topics, questions, blogs, and videos. You are automatically subscribed to content that you create.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. To find the content of interest, use the search field or navigation to find the content of interest, such as a forum, topic blog, or video.
2. On the content page, click **Subscribe**.
• A confirmation message indicating that you have successfully subscribed to the content is displayed at the top of the screen.
• You receive a notification whenever there is an update to this content, for example, an answer to a question or a comment on a blog entry.
• You can view updates in your activity feed.

3. Optional: To remove a subscription, return to the content and click Subscribed. When you point to this option, it becomes Unsubscribed.
   You can also view your subscriptions and enable or disable them from the Community homepage by clicking your photo or name and clicking Notification Settings. Toggle Receive Notifications to turn all notifications on or off.

Set notification preferences

Set notification preferences to receive updates via email on the content that you are following.
Role required: sn_communities.community_user
The Communities application separates the notion of subscriptions from notifications. It is possible to subscribe to an item and disable notifications. You can also turn off all notifications.

1. On the Community homepage, click Community > Notification Settings.
2. Click Notification Preferences.
3. To manage your notifications in those areas, choose your category, such as Forums, Topics, Blogs, or Videos.
   Choose the Network category and then choose View Network to view the community users, who are following you, or the community users that you are following.
4. In the Email column, toggle any item that should or should not send updates.
5. Optional: To turn all notifications on or off, toggle Receive Notifications.

Note:
Activity subscription modules will not be displayed in the Navigations and Subscriptions page, when you enable the disable_notifications flag.
The isNotificationDisabled API checks the value of the disable_notifications flag. This API can also be used for blocking notification of other activity subscription modules.

Request membership to a forum

You must be a registered member of the community to request membership to a forum that is marked for membership only.
Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Perform either one of the following actions:
   • Navigate to Community > Homepage. Open Browse Community Forums and then select the forum.
   • Navigate to Community > All Forums and then select the forum in the list. If you requested membership earlier, the status of your request appears.

2. Click Request Access.
   If approval is required, Status changes to Requested. You receive an approval or rejection email. If approved, you are immediately subscribed to the forum and Status changes to Private Member.
   If no approval is required, the request is auto-approved and Status changes to Private Member.
3. Optional: To cancel a request, point to the Requested status and click Cancel.
4. Optional: To leave a forum, click within the forum and then select Leave Forum. Status changes to Request Access.

Accept an invitation to join a forum

An invitation to join a forum is sent as an email message. The method that you use to accept an invitation depends on whether you are a registered community user.

Role required: none

1. Open the email invitation and click Join Forum.
   • If you are a registered and logged-in community user, the forum opens.
   • If you are a registered community user but have not accepted the community Terms & Conditions, a message appears to accept the Terms & Conditions. The forum opens after you accept the Term & Conditions.

2. If the login page appears, take one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you are a registered user and not logged in.</td>
<td>Enter your login credentials to access the forum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you are not a registered user.</td>
<td>1. Click Sign Up on the login page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Enter your email address, a user name, and a password to create a community account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. The system sends a verification email. Click the verification link in the email to confirm your credentials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Reopen the email invitation and click Join Forum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forum membership is auto-approved and you are subscribed to the forum. Status changes to Leave Forum.

Post and respond to content in the community

Post and respond to content in the community to get answers or share information.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

Perform one or more of the following tasks from the community homepage.

Ask a question in the community

Ask a question in a forum to get an answer from other community users.

You can only ask a question in a forum if you have been assigned the correct permissions.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

If you ask a question, you can edit or delete it. If you created the question and reply with an answer, your answer is labeled Author.

There are three ways of asking questions in Communities.

1. From the Communities homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   • Locate the forum to ask a question in, click its name, and then click Have a question? Click here to start typing. Type-ahead search shows related posts. Click to open a related post in another page.
   • Locate the forum to ask a question in and click Post > Question.
   • If you do not see a forum, click Have a question? Click here to start typing.
2. Click **Question**.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

### Ask a question form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Your question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Forum to add the question to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>If you created the question by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clicking a forum from the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Communities homepage, this forum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is automatically entered in this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic (s) (optional)</td>
<td>Topic to add the question to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>You can repeat this previous step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as many topics as you want. If</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you change your mind about a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>particular topic, click its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>corresponding xicon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Content of the question.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To insert an image, click the <strong>Insert Image</strong> button, navigate to the <code>.png</code> or <code>.jpg</code> file, and then click <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To insert a video, click the <strong>Insert Video</strong> button, enter the video URL, and then click <strong>Upload</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add attachments

To attach a file, click Add attachments and then drag the file into the Attach Document box or click the box and then navigate to the file.

- You can add up to three attachments.
- File types supported are PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF, ZIP.
- Maximum file size is 2 MB.
- Supported file types are listed.
- Click the X icon to delete an attached file.

Note: Your system administrator may have set a limit on the total number of attachments allowed across the community.

When you click Add, your attachments are added and displayed in the question. If a user attaches a file to your question, you receive an email notification.

Note: If antivirus protection is enabled, all attachments are automatically scanned for viruses once the question is posted.

4. Click Post.

- The question is added and is available to users in this forum. You are automatically subscribed to this question. When there is a reply, you receive a notification.
- Community users who are subscribed to the forum receive a notification that content has been posted. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.
- If you have added attachments to your question and your community administrator has enabled antivirus protection, a scan automatically runs in the background.

Note:

- If the scan is successful, the attachments are available to download.
- If the scan is in process or unsuccessful, the file is unavailable for download.
- Question authors and community administrators receive a notification that an attachment is infected.

- Click Edit to remove the infected file and upload the attachment again. You cannot add any more attachments until the infected file is removed.
- If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.

Reply to a question in the community

Reply to a question or another reply.

You can only reply to a question or another reply in a forum or sub forum if you have been assigned the correct permissions.
Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. To find the question or a reply to respond to, use search or navigation from the community homepage. You can also reply to a question or a reply from the activity feed on the homepage.

2. Click **Reply**.

3. Enter your reply.

4. Optional: If required, you can add an image to your reply.
   a) Click the Insert image-editing control.
   b) Choose your .png or .jpg format image file.
   c) Click **Open**.

5. Optional: If required, you can add a video to your reply.
   a) Click the **Insert Video** button
   b) Enter the video URL.
   c) Click **Upload**.

6. Optional: You can add attachments to your post.
   a) Click **Add Attachments**.
   b) Drag your file into the **Add Attachments** box or click **Click to Upload**.
   c) Click **Add**.
   
   Your attachment is added and displayed in your post. If a user attaches a file to your content, you receive an email notification.

   **Note:**
   - You can add up to three attachments per post.
   - The maximum file size per attachment is 2 MB.
   - Your system administrator may have set a limit on the total number of attachments allowed across the community.
   - File types supported are PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF, ZIP
   - If antivirus protection is enabled, all attachments are automatically scanned for viruses once the reply is posted.

7. Click **Reply**.

   The reply is added below the question and any other replies. The reply is available to users in this forum.

   Community users who are subscribed to the forum receive a notification that content has been posted. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.

   **Note:** If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.

   If you have added attachments to your reply and your community administrator has enabled antivirus protection, a scan automatically runs in the background.
   - If the scan is successful, the attachments are available to download.
   - If the scan is in process or unsuccessful, the file is unavailable for download.
• Reply authors and community administrators receive a notification that an attachment is infected.
• Click **Edit** to remove the infected file and upload the attachment again. You cannot add any more attachments until the infected file is removed.

---

**Post a blog in the community**

Create a blog post and publish it immediately, schedule to publish at a specified date, or save it as a draft.

You can only post a blog in a forum or sub forum if you have been assigned the correct permissions in the parent forum.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

You can post, edit, and delete a blog. If you comment on the blog that you create, your answer is labeled as **Author**.

1. Locate the forum to create a blog in and click its name.
2. Click **Post** and then click **Blog**.
3. On the form, fill in the fields.

---

**Post a blog form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blog Title</td>
<td>Title for your blog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>The forum or sub forum to add the blog to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>When you create the blog by clicking a forum or sub forum from the Community homepage, the forum or sub forum name is automatically displayed in the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic (s) (optional)</td>
<td>Topic to add the blog to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>You can repeat this step to add as many topics as you want. To delete a particular topic, click its corresponding icon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Content of the blog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To insert an image, click the <strong>Insert Image</strong> button ( ), navigate to the .png or .jpg file, and then click <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To insert a video, click the <strong>Insert Video</strong> button ( ), enter the video URL, and then click <strong>Upload</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.
ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries. Other company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
4. Complete one of the following actions to save your blog.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>To</strong></th>
<th><strong>Do this</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save as Draft</td>
<td>Review and publish your blog later. The blog appears as a draft on your profile page under Content &gt; Drafts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Community and forum administrators can edit, delete, and publish drafts. If a community or forum administrator edits, deletes, or publishes your draft, you receive an email notification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From your profile page, you have the following options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. To review your blog before publishing, click Edit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. • Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From your profile page, you have the following options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. To review your blog before publishing, click Edit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. • Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From your profile page, you have the following options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. To review your blog before publishing, click Edit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. • Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the corresponding ellipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Click Schedule to post a blog on the specified date. You can edit or disable the schedule until the blog is published.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: This option appears for a blog for which Schedule Publish option is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>Publish your blog directly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The forum subscribers receive an email notification. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you have added attachments to your blog and your community administrator has enabled antivirus protection, a scan automatically runs in the background.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can download the attachments only when the scan is successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Blog authors and community administrators receive a notification for an infected attachment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click Edit to remove the infected file and upload the attachment again. You cannot add any more attachments until you remove the infected attachment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Post a video in the community**

Post a video in a forum or sub forum.

You can only post a video in a forum or sub forum if you have been assigned the correct permissions in the parent forum.
Role required: sn_communities.community_user

You can post videos on their own or add them to a question or a blog. If you are the creator of the video or a community administrator, forum administrator, forum moderator, or community moderator, you can edit the videos once posted.

1. While in a forum, click **Post > Video**.
2. On the form, fill in the fields.

### Post a video form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Click here to Insert a Video  | • URL of your video.  
• Click **Upload**. The video is added to your post.  
• To edit and replace the current video with another one, click **Select a different Video**. |
| Video Title                   | Title for the video.                                                                                                                                 |
| Forum                         | Read-only. The forum or sub forum is automatically entered in this field.                                                                    |
| Topic (s) (optional)          | Topic to add the video to.                                                                                                                                 |
| Description (optional)        | Description for your video.                                                                                                                                 |

3. Click **Post**.
4. Optional: If you have permission to edit or delete the video, click a video, click the corresponding icon, and then click **Edit** or **Delete**.

Once a video is uploaded, other community users can comment on it, give feedback, subscribe to the video, bookmark it, and report any inappropriate content in the video.

### Comment on a blog or a video in the community

Comment on a blog or a video or comment on another comment.

You can only comment in a forum or sub forum if you have been assigned the correct permissions in the parent forum.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

If you create a comment, you can edit or delete it. If you created the blog or video and add a comment, your comments are labeled **Author**.

1. To find the blog or video entry to comment on, use the search field or navigation.
2. Click **Comment**, and enter your answer.
3. You can add attachments to your post.
   a) Click **Add Attachments**.
   b) Drag your file into the **Add Attachments** box or **Click to Upload**.
c) Click **Add**.
Your attachment is added and displayed in your post. If a user attaches a file to your comment, you receive an email notification.

### Note:
- You can add up to three attachments per post.
- The maximum file size per attachment is 2 MB.
- Your system administrator may have set a limit on the total number of attachments allowed across the community.
- File types supported are PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF, ZIP.
- If the attachment size is large or you have a slow connection, a progress indicator is displayed.
- If antivirus protection is enabled, all attachments are automatically scanned for viruses once the reply is posted.

4. **Click Comment.**
The comment is added below the blog or video entry and any other comments. The answer is available to users in this forum.

Community users who are subscribed to the forum receive a notification that content has been posted. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.

### Note: If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.

If you have added attachments to your comment and your community administrator has enabled antivirus protection, a scan automatically runs in the background.
- If the scan is successful, the attachments are available to download.
- If the scan is in process or unsuccessful, the file is unavailable for download.
- Comment authors and community administrators receive a notification that an attachment is infected.
- Click **Edit** to remove the infected file and upload the attachment again. You cannot add any more attachments until the infected file is removed.

### Post a document in the community

If you have the proper permissions in a forum, you can share a document with colleagues, experts, or other community users. You can associate the document with as many topics as needed.

**Role required: sn_communities.community_user**

1. While in a forum, click **Post > Document** and then fill in the form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document title</th>
<th>Enter a descriptive title for the document.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Read-only. The current forum or sub forum is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topics</td>
<td>Select a topic from the list. Repeat for as many topics as needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attach document</td>
<td>To attach a file, drag the file into the <strong>Attach Document</strong> box or click the box and then navigate to the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can attach only one document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Maximum file size is 5 MB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• File types supported are PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF, ZIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Click the X to delete an attached file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Your administrator may have set a limit on the total number of attachments allowed across the community.

If antivirus protection is enabled, all attachments are automatically scanned for viruses when you click **Post**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Enter a useful description for the document.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2. **Click Post.**
   - The document appears in the forum. The author of a document can edit or delete the post.
   - Community users who are subscribed to the forum receive a notification that content has been posted. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.

   **Note:** If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.

If your community administrator has enabled antivirus protection, a scan automatically runs in the background.

   **Note:**
   - You can download the attachments only when the scan is successful.
   - The user who posted the document and community administrators receive a notification that an attachment is infected.

**Mention a user in the community**

Draw attention to your content in the community by mentioning other community users in the post.

Role required: `sn_communities.community_user`

You can mention users in questions, blogs, events, comments, and answers.

   **Note:** The user mentions feature is not enabled for document or video content types.

You can mention users in Communities in the following ways.

1. From the community, perform one of the following actions.
   - Post content to the community and place your cursor in the script editor.
   - Click the content you want to comment on or reply to.

2. Enter the @ symbol followed by the user’s name.
Note: You can mention multiple community users in the post.

An email notification is sent to the community users you selected and their followers. Any community users that follow the user. The activity feed is also updated.

Note: Followers can set their notification preferences to enable or disable notifications of user mentions.

Community events
Create, manage, and participate in events to encourage engagement across the community.
Role required: sn_communities.admin or sn_communities.community_user

Perform one or more of the following tasks.

Post a community event
You can create a community event that other community users, colleagues, or experts can register for and attend.

You must have permission to create events (Event Write and Comment Write) and be a member of the forum to create the event in. The Event content type must be active in the forum for the event.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. While in a forum, click Post > Event and then fill in the form.

Create an event

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event title</td>
<td>A title for your event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Read-only. The forum is automatically entered in this field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic(s) optional</td>
<td>A topic to add the event to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set guest limit / Total allowed</td>
<td>Select the check box to specify the maximum number of guests that can attend in the Total allowed field. When the number of guests reaches to the limit, additional users are added to the wait list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display guest list to the public</td>
<td>Select the check box to enable forum members to view the guest list for the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is an online event</td>
<td>For an online event, click the check box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of location</td>
<td>For an online event, the text specified in the Name of Location appears as a label with a hyperlink to the specified Web URL. For example, enter the text as 'Click Here to Join the meeting' to facilitate your subscribers to join the meeting. For an offline event, enter the Name of location, Address, City, State, Zip/Postal Code, and Country to mention the venue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web URL</td>
<td>Enter the Web URL of an online event for your subscribers to click and join.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date and time</td>
<td>The date and time of the event. <strong>Date</strong> must be in the future. <strong>End Time</strong> is auto-updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>If you change the <strong>Duration</strong>, the <strong>End Time</strong> is auto-updated. <strong>Click</strong> Change time zone to set the time zone for the event. Default: Your local time zone. The time zone changes according to the time zone of the user viewing the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>The duration of the event. <strong>Note:</strong> If you change the <strong>End Time</strong>, the <strong>Duration</strong> is auto-updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>By default,</strong></td>
<td>the duration is 30 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send reminder to guests one day before the event</td>
<td>Select the check box to send an email reminder one day before the event to all users that responded <strong>Attend</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>The description of the event. <strong>To insert an image,</strong> click the <strong>Insert Image</strong> button ( ), navigate to the .png or .jpg file, and then click <strong>Open</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>To insert a video,</strong> click the <strong>Insert Video</strong> button ( ), enter the video URL, and then click <strong>Upload</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add attachments</td>
<td><strong>Click</strong> Add attachments and drag the file into the <strong>Attach Document</strong> box or click the box and then navigate to the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can add up to three attachments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• File types supported are PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, DOC, DOCX, TXT, PDF, PNG, BMP, JPG, JPEG, GIF, ZIP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Maximum file size is 2 MB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Click</strong> the X icon to delete an attached file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>Your system administrator may have set a limit on the total number of attachments allowed across the community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When you click Add,</strong> your attachments are added and displayed in the event. If a user attaches a file to your event, you receive an email notification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Schedule Publish

Click the check box to publish an event on a specified date. Select the date and time of the event. By default, the schedule time zone is same as event time zone. The scheduled event is only visible for author and administrator until it is published.

Note: For an event that has approval workflow, the event state changes to "Ready to publish" when it is approved before the scheduled time. If an event is approved after the scheduled time, the state changes to "Published". You cannot schedule a published event.

2. Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Save as Draft</strong></td>
<td><strong>Click Save as Draft</strong> to save the event as a draft on your profile page under <strong>Content &gt; Drafts</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  
  Note: Community and forum admins can edit and publish drafts. If a community or forum admin edits, deletes, or publishes the draft, you receive an email notification.
  
  From your profile page, you have the following options.
  
  1. Click **Edit** to review the event before publishing.
  2. • Click the corresponding ellipsis
     
     ***
     
     icon and then click **Publish**.
     
     • Click the corresponding ellipsis
     
     ***
     
     icon and then click **Delete**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schedule</th>
<th><strong>Click Schedule</strong> to publish an event on the specified date.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

  Note: This option appears for an event for which **Schedule Publish** option is selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publish</th>
<th><strong>Click Publish</strong> to publish the event directly. As an author, you can edit or delete the event.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

  Community users who are subscribed to the forum receive a notification that content has been posted. Activity and content feeds are updated accordingly.

  Note: If you are a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until approved by a community moderator.
Edit an event
Edit the details of past and upcoming events. By editing a past event, you can attach a document or share the meeting recording link with your event subscribers.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user, sn_communities.moderation_admin, sn_communities.community_moderator, sn_communities.forum_moderator, or sn_communities.forum_admin

1. Search for an event that you want to modify.
2. Click the More Options icon
   and then click Edit.
3. On the form, edit the fields as required.

Update Event form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Subscriber receives an email notification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event title</td>
<td>Title for past and upcoming events.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Forum name in which the event is posted. You cannot modify the forum.</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic(s)</td>
<td>Topics that are associated with the event. Add or modify topics as needed. To remove a topic, click x.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set guest limit</td>
<td>Option to increase the guest limit to confirm the participants on the waiting list for an upcoming event. You cannot modify the guest limit for a past event.</td>
<td>Yes - for a confirmed participant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display guest list to users</td>
<td>Option to enable or disable the display of the guest list of an upcoming event for forum members.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is an online event</td>
<td>Option to change the event type to online or offline for an upcoming event. You cannot change a past event.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Subscriber receives an email notification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of location</td>
<td>Name of the location for past and upcoming events.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For an online event, the text specified in the Name of Location field appears as a label with a hyperlink to the specified Web URL. For example, to share the meeting recording link of a past event, change the text to Download the meeting recording.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For an offline event, change the Name of location, Address, City, State, Zip/Postal Code, and Country fields to mention the venue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web URL</td>
<td>Web URL for past and upcoming events.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For a past event, enter the Web URL of the meeting recording to share the link with your subscribers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For an upcoming event, change the Web URL if there is a change in the system details.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date and time</td>
<td>Date and time for an event. You can change the date and time to a future date for past and upcoming events. When you change the date of a past event to a future date, the past event becomes an upcoming event. You can edit all other details as applicable for an upcoming event.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Click Change time zone to set the time zone for the event. The default is your local time zone. The time zone changes according to the time zone of the user viewing the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If you change the Duration field, the End Time field is auto-updated.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Subscriber receives an email notification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Duration of the event. [Note: If you change the End Time, the Duration is auto-updated.]</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>By default, the duration is <strong>30 minutes</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send reminder to guests one day before the event</td>
<td>Option to send an email reminder one day before the event to all users that responded <em>Attend</em>. This check box only appears for upcoming events and not for past events.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Description for past and upcoming events. You can insert an image or a video as required.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add attachments</td>
<td>Attachments for past and upcoming events. Edit an attachment if required.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Schedule Publish              | Option to publish an event. This check box appears only for a scheduled event and not for a published event.  
  - To reschedule, change the scheduled date and time as required. By default, the schedule time zone is the same as the event time zone. Selecting this check box publishes an event directly at the scheduled date and time.  
  - To delete the schedule, clear the check box. | No                                       |

4. Perform one of the following actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Save</strong></td>
<td>To save the details, click <strong>Save</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schedule</strong></td>
<td>To publish an event on the specified date, click <strong>Schedule</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Note: This option appears for a draft event that the Schedule Publish check box is selected for.]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Publish</td>
<td>To publish an event draft, click <strong>Publish</strong>. As an author, you can edit or delete the event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If you're a user whose content is due to be moderated, the content is not posted until it's approved by a community moderator. For an event that has approval workflow, the event state is Review. Other users cannot view the event until it's approved.

---

**View and participate in a community event**

You can view details for published events and perform tasks such as responding to the event or adding it to your calendar.

You must be a registered member of the community and have permission to read events (**Event Read and Comment Write**) to be able to respond to events.

**Role required:** sn_communities.community_user

1. From the community homepage, perform one of the following actions:
   - Navigate to the Content List.
   - Navigate to the Activity Feed.
   - Navigate to a forum or topic.
   - Navigate to the community profile of another user and click the **Events** tab.
   - Click **Community > Events**.

2. Click an event.
   The Event details page displays the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event header</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• View the name of the event, who created it, and when.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the event organizer chose to display the guest list to the public, you can view how many community users have responded <strong>Attending</strong> or <strong>Maybe</strong> and click the numbers to see the names.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the guest list is private, you can view how many community users have responded <strong>Attending</strong> or <strong>Maybe</strong>, but you cannot see the names.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• View the number of spots still available in the event or your position on the waitlist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the event is taking place in the same time zone as you set in your user preferences, the <strong>Event time zone</strong> is displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the event is taking place in a different time zone to the one that you set in your user preferences, both <strong>Event time zone</strong> and <strong>Your time zone</strong> are displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event overview</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• When and where the event is taking place.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Description of the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Topics associated with the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Comments on the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Number of times the event has been viewed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Optional: Click **Attending**, **Maybe**, or **Declined** to view or search the guest list and their responses.

4. Optional: Click **Subscribe** to subscribe to the event and receive notifications when the event is updated.

   If your response is **Attending** or **Maybe**, you are auto-subscribed to the event.

5. Optional: Click **Respond** to indicate whether you are attending or maybe attending the event, to decline, or to add yourself to the waitlist.
   
   • You can also respond to an event directly from the Activity Feed.
   
   • If the event is full, a message stating that you can join the waitlist is displayed. The **Attend** option replaces **Waitlist**. If you are waitlisted, your position on the waitlist is displayed. Once a position becomes available in the event, you move up in the list.

Depending on your selection, the status changes to either **Attending**, **Maybe**, **Declined**, or **Waitlisted**. You can update your response as needed.

   • If an event creator or community admin deletes an event and you responded **Yes**, **Waitlist**, or **Maybe**, you receive an email notification based on your notification preferences.

   • If an event is updated, and you responded **Yes**, **Waitlist**, or **Maybe**, you receive an email notification based on your notification preferences.

6. Optional: Click ... to perform one of the following actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add to calendar</td>
<td>Downloads an .ics file that you can add to your calendar. The file includes the title and description of the event, the event location, start and end dates, the event time, and any attachments. If guests have chosen not to share details, the information is not displayed in the file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bookmark</td>
<td>The event appears in your bookmarks list on your profile page. Click <strong>Remove Bookmark</strong> to delete a bookmark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report content</td>
<td>Click <strong>Report content</strong> to report inappropriate content in the event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View the community events landing page**

The Events landing page provides an overview of all events that you have access to in the community. You can filter events, view your status for the event, see how many other community users are attending an event, and so on.

Community users must have permission to view events (**Event Read**).

Role required: **sn_communities.community_user**

1. Navigate to **Community > Events**.

   The Events landing page displays a list of all events that you have access to and a list of the five most popular past events.

2. Filter the list for events that you created or according to attendance status, by forum, and by date.

   The list displays the following information.

   • The event creator, last update, and location.
   
   • Your status, if you have already responded to the event.

   • The number of community users who are interested in the event. Interested community users include users who are attending or have been waitlisted for the event.
• The number of community users who have viewed the event.

3. Click an event to perform tasks related to the event.

Manage a community event

View additional response information on the event, edit or delete events, and download a guest list.

You must be a registered member of the community and have permission to read events (Event Read and Comment Write) to be able to respond to events.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user who created the event or sn_communities.admin.

You can access published events from several places within the community.

1. From the community homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   • Navigate to the Content List.
   • Navigate to the Activity Feed.
   • Navigate to a forum or a topic.
   • Navigate to another user's community profile and click the Events tab.
   • Click Community > Events.

2. Click an event.

   The Event details page displays the following information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event header</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• View the name of the event, who created it, and when.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• View how many community users are attending or maybe attending.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• View how many community users declined the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• View the number of spots still available in the event or your position on the waitlist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event overview</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• When and where the event is taking place.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The description of the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The topics associated with the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Comments on the event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The number of times the event has been viewed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Upcoming Events | Shows the next five upcoming events.

   Popular Past Events | Shows the top five most popular past events and the number of community users that were interested in the event. Interested community users include users who either attended or were waitlisted for the event.

3. Optional: Click the ... icon.

4. You have the following options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Click Edit. The Update Event page opens. An email notification is sent to all community users who responded Yes, Maybe, or Waitlist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>Click Delete. A warning message appears asking if you are sure that to delete the event. An email notification is sent to all community users who responded Yes, Maybe, or Waitlist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Option | Description
--- | ---
**Add to calendar** | An .ics file is downloaded that you can add to your calendar. The file includes the title and description of the event, the event location, start and end dates, the event time, and any attachments. If guests have chosen not to share their details, the information is not displayed in the file download.

**Bookmark** | The event appears in your bookmarks list on your profile page. If you have already bookmarked the event, you can click **Remove Bookmark**.

**Report content** | As a community admin, click **Report content** to report inappropriate content in the event.

**Download Guest List** | Download a .csv file of the guest list. View the file to see the list of community users attending the event, their RSVP status, and email address.

---

### Bookmark community content

You can bookmark your favorite questions, blogs, videos, documents, and events. You cannot bookmark content in draft state or replies or comments.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Click the content to bookmark.
2. Click the ... icon and then select **Bookmark**.
   
   The bookmarked content is added to the **Bookmarks** tab on your community profile.
3. To view your bookmarks, perform one of the following actions.
   - Navigate to your community profile and then click **Content > Bookmarks**.
   - Click your name or profile photo and then click **My Bookmarks**.
4. You can search for bookmarks and, if required, select a bookmark and then click **Remove Bookmark**.

### Provide feedback on community content

Provide feedback on content that you find useful.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

There are four supported types of content feedback: comment, upvote, helpful, and mark as correct answer. You can enter feedback directly in the Activity Feed on the Community homepage or navigate to the content you want to provide feedback on.

#### Content Feedback

| Content feedback | Description |
--- | ---
**Comment** | Comment on blogs and videos. You can also comment on a comment. The count of comments is displayed. |
**Upvote** | Upvote questions. The count of upvotes is displayed. |
**Helpful** | Mark answers, blogs, comments, and videos as Helpful. The count of helpful marks is displayed. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content feedback</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark as Correct Answer</td>
<td>If you are a community or forum administrator, community or forum moderator, or the author of the question, you can mark one answer as <strong>Mark as Correct Answer</strong>. There is only one correct answer for each question. If you later mark a different answer as correct, the current answer loses this status.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. From the Community homepage, perform one of the following actions.
   - Click a forum and then click the content, for example, a blog or a question.
   - Use search and then click the content.
   - Navigate to the content on the homepage **Activity Feed** and provide your feedback directly from here.

2. Enter your feedback.
   The following feedback is displayed.

   | Community homepage > Activity Feed | Feedback on any content that users are subscribed to. |
   | Community homepage > Content List  | Feedback entered by other users.                     |
   | Your Community Profile > Activity tab. | Feedback entered by you.                             |

**Note**: The homepage activity feed is not automatically refreshed. If updates occur while viewing the activity feed, a **New Updates Available** message appears. You can click and view all new updates. If you are in the middle of making a comment and you click **New Updates Available**, a warning message appears asking if you want to continue.

### Report inappropriate community content

Report content to alert community moderators that the content is inappropriate or spam.

Role required: sn_communities.community_user

1. Use the search field or navigation to find the content to report.
2. Click the ... icon and then click **Report Content**.
3. From the list, select the reason you are reporting the content from the list and add **Additional Comments**.
4. Click **Submit**.
   - A moderation task is created and assigned to a moderator for resolution. Depending on the moderation settings created for your community, the content may be hidden until a moderator has reviewed it.

### View a list of questions and create a case

To easily view questions that can potentially be converted to cases, the community portal provides a page with a list of questions created by contacts or consumers.

Role required: sn_customerservice_manager, sn_customerservice_agent, sn_customerservice.consumer_agent, sn_communities.admin, or a user with the proxy_case_creator role

This page displays questions from the forums to which the user has access.

1. From the community portal, click **Community > Questions to Case** to open the list of questions.
   - This list includes questions that have been posted by a contact or a consumer and for which a case has not yet been created.
2. Use the filters on this page to filter the question list:
   • View questions for all forums or for the selected forum
   • View questions posted within the selected time frame: 7, 15, or 30 days
   • Sort by the most recent questions or older questions
   • Sort by the question status: all, solved, unsolved, or unreplied

3. To create a case from one of the questions in the list, click a question to open the question page.
4. Click the overflow icon (...) and then click Create Case to open a Create Case form.

   The Create Case action is available if a case has not yet been created from a question. Once a case has been created, this action is no longer available.

   Information from the question is mapped to the fields on the case.

5. Enter any additional information in the fields on the Create Case form. For example, add Description for the case.
6. If necessary, attach a file to the case.
7. Click Submit.

   You are returned to the question content page. The case number appears in the question header after the case is created. The question author, the customer service agent or consumer service agent, or any user with the proxy_case_creator role can see the case number.

   The contact or consumer who posted the question can also view the case by navigating to My Cases on the Customer Service Portal or Consumer Service Portal.

Gamification

Encourage users to participate and contribute content in the community by providing incentives in the form of points, achievement levels, and badges.

Use the gamification framework to:
   • Configure point values associated with specific user activities.
   • Define achievement levels based on earned points.
   • Create and assign badges to recognize users.

Community administrators can:
   • Create rules and configure points that users receive for activities on the community.
   • Create tracks to logically separate points assigned in the communities into different areas.
   • Create levels in the community where users can achieve expertise or a reputation and then configure level ranges within each level definition.
   • Create badges to award to users for different achievements.

Community users can:
   • Perform activities and accrue points.
   • Achieve levels based on point totals.
   • View leaderboards to find community experts on specific forums or topics.
   • See their own standing within the community.
   • See gamification achievements on their user profiles.

Gamification components

The gamification feature includes several components, such as rules, levels, and tracks, that enable users to earn points and badges for community activities.
Rules

Gamification rules allow you to configure points that users receive for activities on the community.

Gamification includes several pre-defined rules. The gamification administrator can use these rules, modify them as needed, or create new rules. These pre-defined rules include:

• Comment marked as helpful: 5 points
• Document marked as helpful: 5 points
• Video marked as helpful: 5 points
• Blog marked as helpful: 5 points
• Answer marked as helpful: 20 points
• Document bookmarked: 20 points
• Blog bookmarked: 20 points
• Video bookmarked: 20 points
• Answer marked correct for a question: 40 points

When a user performs an activity that has a gamification rule, the user profile identified in the rule receives points. Points received through a gamification rule can be configured to accumulate toward:

• Overall points across the entire community
• Points in forums associated with the activity
• Points in topics associated with the activity
• Points in a track
• Points assigned for a combination of forums, topics, and tracks

If users revert previous activities, the points associated with these activities are removed. As an example, if a rule has been defined and a user creates a blog, they are awarded points. The points are deducted when the blog is deleted. If a rule has not been defined and a user creates a blog, no points are awarded. If the user removes it once a rule has been defined, points are deducted even though none were awarded in the first place.

Tracks

Tracks provide a way to logically separate points assigned in the communities into different areas.

Gamification includes two pre-configured tracks:

• Community Expertise
• Community Participation

While the application is configured to accumulate points by tracks, gamification does not currently display tracks in the community portal.

Levels and level ranges

Points accumulated by community users can help them achieve different reputation levels.

The system is pre-configured with levels where community users can earn points and achieve expertise or a reputation:

• Global: overall points accumulated across the entire community
• Forum: points accumulated in forums associated with the activity
• Topic: points accumulated in topics associated with the activity

Gamification administrators can configure level ranges within each level. These level ranges progress from a starting point value to a higher value (point ranges do not overlap) and have unique, configurable names. For example, in the Global level, a user that has earned 100–499 points is a Newbie while a user that has earned 500–999 points is an Enthusiast.
# Gamification Level Definition

## Global Level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level Range Name</th>
<th>Points Start</th>
<th>Domain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Novice</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contributor</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporter</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comrade</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Savior</td>
<td>25,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champion</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advocate</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patron</td>
<td>250,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sponsor</td>
<td>500,000</td>
<td>global</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2020 ServiceNow, Inc. All rights reserved.

ServiceNow, the ServiceNow logo, Now, and other ServiceNow marks are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of ServiceNow, Inc., in the United States company names, product names, and logos may be trademarks of the respective companies with which they are associated.
In the community portal, users can see level range names and point totals in the *gamification user interface components.*

- On the leaderboard page and leaderboard widgets
- At the top of a user's profile below the user name and title
- On the user profile page in the Achievements tab
- On content pages

**Badges**

Users can earn badges for achievements or areas of expertise within the community. Gamification moderators manually assign badges to users.

Gamification includes several predefined badges. Each badge includes:

- A name
- An icon
- A brief description

Gamification administrators and moderators can award badges to community users and also remove badges. A badge can be awarded to a user one time. If a badge is removed from a user, it can be awarded to that user again.

Earned badges are visible in the community portal in the *gamification user interface components.* Community users can see earned badges and available badges on their own user profile page in the Achievements tab.

**Points**

Users earn gamification points by performing activities in the community.

Users can earn points within a community, a forum, or a topic. As users accrue points, they achieve level ranges. Point totals appear on leaderboards and on user profiles, in the profile header, and in the Achievement tab. After points are awarded to a user, an entry appears at the top of the Points list and the user's point total is updated.

The Points list has a widget instance option to **Show points for private forum.**

- When set to true, the point record displayed in the user profile does not show the forum name if the user performing the action does not have forum access. It displays "Private Forum" in place of the forum name.
- When set to false, the point record does not display in the user profile.

The Points list also has a widget instance options for the **Page size,** which determines the number of results displayed in the list. If there are more results than the number specified in this option, a button to show additional results appears at the bottom of the points page.

**Gamification user interface components**

Gamification information appears on leaderboards, the user profile page, and content pages.

**Leaderboard page**

The leaderboard page displays the top contributors in the community, in a forum, or in a topic.

Users appear on the leaderboard based on the number of earned points and are ranked in descending order. You can filter the leaderboard to display information for the current month or all-time and by a specific forum or topic.

To display the leaderboard, navigate to **Community > Leaderboard.** You can also click **Show Leaderboard** on the leaderboard widget. When navigating to the leaderboard from a leaderboard widget on a forum/topic landing page, the leaderboard shows the top point earners for that forum/topic.
## Leaderboard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>Points</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Alleen Mottern</td>
<td>1,267</td>
<td>Supporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Kim Ross</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>Contributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Larry Sanders</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>Contributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rick Weaver</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Alejandro Maccall</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Jim Daniels</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adela Cervantsz</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Claudio Loose</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Fannie Steese</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Grade Ehn</td>
<td>570</td>
<td>Enthusiast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For each user, the leaderboard displays:

- Rank: shows the rank depending upon the selected filters (time, forum or topic)
- Name
- Profile photo (if available) or initials
- Current level: shows global, forum, or topic level depending upon the selected filter

By default, the leaderboard displays 10 users per page. Users can use the pagination controls to view additional pages. Pointing to a user name in the leaderboard displays a pop-up window with more information about the user.

**Leaderboard widgets**

Leaderboard widgets appear on the Community homepage and on forum and topic landing pages. These widgets display the users with the highest point totals within the community, forum, or topic.

The leaderboard widget shows the top five users. If there are more than five users that have earned points within the community, forum, or topic, **Show Leaderboard** appears at the bottom. Click this button to display all of the users on the leaderboard page.

**Community forum leaderboard widget**

For forums and topics, the leaderboard widget header displays the forum or topic name. When navigating to the leaderboard page from a forum/topic, the leaderboard shows the top point earners for that forum/topic.

System administrators can configure settings for the leaderboard widget:

- The number of users displayed in the widget (default is 5, maximum is 10)
- The time period (overall or current month)
- The leaderboard type (community, forum, or topic)
- Anchor to a specific forum or topic (not recommended)

**User profile page**

The user profile page displays gamification information that showcases the user's expertise.

The gamification information is shown in three sections of the user profile page:
In the header area
In the Achievements tab
In the forum and topic expertise widgets

User profile header area

When the gamification feature is enabled, the user profile header area includes the user's current gamification achievements. This information appears just below the user name and title:

- The top three badges that have been awarded to the user. Pointing to a badge displays the badge name.
- The total number of points earned by the user.
- The current global level achieved.

Achievements tab

Users can view details about gamification levels, badges, and points on the user profile page in the Achievements tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levels</th>
<th>A list of the levels available to the user, with the current level highlighted. This tab includes a link to the Community page How to Earn Points.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Badges</td>
<td>A list of the earned badges and available badges for the user. Earned badges appear at the top of the list. Earned badges are sorted by the most recently earned. Available badges appear below earned badges. Users can filter this list to view all badges or earned badges. When viewing another user's profile, only the earned badges are displayed and are sorted by the most recently earned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points</td>
<td>A history of the points earned and the activities performed by the user. This list includes the last 10 activities. Click Show more to display additional pages. Gamification moderators can award and remove points for community users. This tab includes a link to the Community page How to Earn Points.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forum and topic expertise widgets

The forum and topic expertise widgets on the user profile page provide a visual representation of the user's top areas of expertise.

The number within the circle and the blue highlight around the circle represent the number of levels completed. For example, 2 of 5. The number below the circle indicates the total number of points that the user has earned within the forum or topic. The widget displays up to five items and the system administrator can configure the widget to show up to a maximum number of 10 items.

Clicking the info icon displays the forum or topic levels and the point ranges.
Community content pages

The user's gamification level and badges are displayed on the content pages, so that other community users can view the reputation of the content contributor.

Pointing to a user name on content pages such as questions, blogs, and videos displays a pop-up window with gamification information including badges earned, point total, and level name. This information is available for the author or a user who has replied or commented on that content.

The community administrator can change the displayed level to show either the global level or the forum level. This display can be controlled by the `sn_communities.content.show_gamification_level` property.

Depending upon the information available, there can be three different versions for the pop-up:

• Profile photo and name
• Profile photo and name with global points
• Profile photo and name with global points and badges

User profile pop-up window with gamification information

Gamification notifications
Community users receive notifications about badge assignments and levels achieved through the activity feed. This includes global, forum, and topic levels achieved. A user, or any of their followers, are notified through an activity feed update in the following scenarios:
• When a user advances a level (global, forum, or topic)
• When a user earns a badge

How to earn points
In order to be transparent to your users about gamification rules, you can share the points received for community activities.

Navigate to Community > How to Earn Points for a description of the activities that users can perform to earn points. This page has links to the user's profile page. If gamification rules are modified, then this page shows the updated information.

Administer gamification
Users with the gamification administrator role can create the rules and other entities that award points to users based on their participation within the community.

Configure gamification properties
Configure gamification properties to meet your company's needs.
Role required: sn_gamification.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Administration > Gamification Properties.
2. Enter the number of days to store the gamification activity history.
   The default is 180 days. A scheduled job purges the points history that is older than 180 days. This purge does not delete the aggregated data.
3. Enter the maximum number of levels that can be defined.
4. Click Save.

Additional properties can be configured for the gamification feature. For more information, see Gamification properties.

Create a gamification rule

Create gamification rules so that users can earn points for community activities.

Role required: sn_gamification.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Administration > Rules.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Gamification Rule form as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rule Name</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the gamification rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification Module</td>
<td>The application to which this rule applies. Click the lookup icon to select a module from the Gamification Modules list. The default is Community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity Type</td>
<td>The user activity for which this rule applies. Click the lookup icon to select one of the available types from the Activity Types list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Receiving Points</td>
<td>The type of user profile that earns points for performing the activity defined in this rule. Click the lookup icon to select a profile corresponding to the activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclude Self-Award</td>
<td>Check box to ensure that the activity performer is not the same as the profile receiving points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enable this check box to activate the rule. The default is set to active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification Track</td>
<td>The gamification track to which this rule belongs. Click the lookup icon to select one of the available tracks from the Gamification Tracks list. By default, two tracks are available: Community Expertise, Community Participation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points</td>
<td>The number of points earned by performing the activity defined in this rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points for Areas of Expertise</td>
<td>The points accrued can be used towards a forum or topic level expertise. Click the lock icon to expand the field and configure if the points should accure towards a forum and/or topic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
Create a gamification track

Create tracks to provide a logical way to separate points assigned in the communities into different areas.

Role required: sn_gamification.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Administration > Tracks.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Gamification Track form as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Track Name</td>
<td>A descriptive name for the gamification track.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamification Module</td>
<td>The module to which this track applies. Click the lookup icon to select a module from the Gamification Modules list. By default the module is set to Community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enable this check box to activate the track. By default this field is set to active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application</td>
<td>The application to which this track applies. By default the module is set to Community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track Display Order</td>
<td>The order in which the track appears.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Click Submit.
The newly created track appears on the Gamification Tracks list.

Note: While tracks can be configured, it is not currently displayed anywhere on the Community portal.

Create a gamification badge

Create gamification badges that users can earn for achievements within the community.

Role required: sn_gamification.admin

The gamification feature includes several predefined badges.

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Administration > Badges.
2. Click New.
3. Fill in the fields on the Gamification Badge form as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gamification Module</td>
<td>The application to which the badge applies. The default module is Community.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badge Name</td>
<td>The name of the badge as it appears on the Community portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badge Display Order</td>
<td>The order of the badge indicates the rank. If a community user has multiple badges assigned to them, this field determines the sequence in which the badges are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enable this check box to activate the badge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A brief description of the badge as it appears on the Community portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Click Submit.
The newly created badge appears on the Gamification Badges list.

Manage gamification levels
Manage the predefined levels for global, forum, and topic expertise.
Role required: sn_gamification.admin
Gamification includes predefined global, forum, and topic levels.
1. Navigate to Gamification > Configuration > Levels.
2. View the existing definitions for global, forum, and topic levels.
3. Change the Level Name if required.
4. Click Submit.
Adding new level definitions is not recommended unless there is a strong use case. If you need to add or modify level ranges in existing level definitions, see Manage gamification level ranges.

Manage gamification level ranges
Manage level ranges for a gamification level definition, to recognize the expertise level of your community users.
Role required: sn_gamification.admin
Gamification includes predefined global, forum, and topic levels. Each level definition can have several level ranges and the system is predefined with 10 ranges for global level and five ranges each for the forum and topic levels. Each range should not overlap and must have a unique start value.
1. Navigate to Gamification > Levels.
2. Select the desired level (global, forum, or topic).
3. Modify the Level Range Name.
4. Modify the Points Start field.
   Each range should not overlap and must have a unique start value.
5. Click Submit.
Level ranges are updated on the Community portal.

Moderate gamification
Monitor points earned by users and award points and badges to users based on their participation within the community.

Award or remove points for a community user
Award points to a user to recognize their contributions to the community. Remove points for a user if you observe that they are cheating the gamification system.
Role required: sn_gamification.moderator

1. Navigate to the Community homepage.
2. Go to Community > Leaderboard.
3. Click the name of the user on the leaderboard to open the user profile.
4. Click the profile overflow icon (...) and select Assign Points.
5. In the Assign Points pop-up window, enter the number of Points, a Reason for awarding the points, and select a Track.
   a) To assign points, the points entered should be a positive value. For example, 100.
   b) To remove points, the points entered should be a negative value. For example, -100.

   The maximum number of points that can be awarded or removed at one time is 1000.
6. Click Assign Points.
   An entry for the point assignment activity shows at the top of the Points list and the user’s point total is updated.

**Award a badge to a user**

Award gamification badges to community users to recognize their community activities.

Role required: sn_gamification.moderator, sn_gamification.admin

A badge can be awarded to a user only once. If a badge is removed from a user, it can then be awarded to that user again.

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Data > Profile Badges.
2. Click New.
3. Select a Badge from the Gamification Badges list.
4. In the Live Profile field, add the name of the user.
5. Click Submit.
   The badge is assigned to the user and it appears on the community portal.

**Remove a badge from a user**

Remove a gamification badge from a community user if it is no longer relevant for that user.

Role required: sn_gamification.moderator, sn_gamification.admin

1. Navigate to Community > Gamification Data > Profile Badges.
2. Select the Active field for the desired user and badge.
3. Change the Active field to false.
4. Click Update.
   The badge is removed for that user and is no longer visible on the community portal.
Index

A

Access types
  overview 700
account escalation 103, 103, 104, 104, 242, 243, 387, 387, 388, 389, 389, 391
account hierarchy
  create 203
  overview 201
account relationships
  create account relationship record 200
  create account relationship type 199
  overview 197
account teams
  assign team members 220
  view team members 494
ACLs
  explicit roles 660
  hasRoles() 660, 665
  internal and external users 660
  mandatory roles 665
  provide access to users 665
  snc_internal 660, 665
activate communities plugin 682
administer communities 681
agent calendar
  add event 113
  configure 108
  create config 108
  create personal event 110
  create schedule 112
  create user work schedule 109
  move event 114
  overview 105
  show or hide events 115
  use 113
Agent Workspace for CSM 65
anonymous chat
  create matching rule 364
  modify record producer 364
  overview 362
  start chat 364, 564
Anonymous Connect Support
  activate 186
asset contact relationships
  assign a contact 215, 544
  assign a primary contact 214
  overview 214
  set property 215
assignment workbench
  assign a case 490
  create configuration 239
  create criteria 237
  matching criteria 383
  matching rules 385
  overview 379

B

bookmarks 777

C

case escalation 103, 103, 104, 104, 242, 243, 387, 387, 388, 389, 391
Communities
  clone permission 712
  create event 768
  external user registration 715
  follow community user 754
  gamification 779, 782, 787, 787, 788, 789, 789, 790, 790, 790, 791, 791
  manage event 776
  properties 683
  view and participate event 774
  view events homepage 775
  view logs 736
Communities configure 699
Communities forums
  overview 701
Communities forums (set up) 696
communities homepage
  logged in users 744
  non-logged in users 747
communities roles 695
Communities)
  create knowledge article from discussions 738
community
  post and respond to content 758
Community
  case management integration 737, 737, 778
  harvest knowledge 743
Consumer
  address 195, 503
Consumer Service Portal
  accept case solution 564
  anonymous chat 365
  change password 562
  chat 500
  create a case 563
  create case from anonymous chat 501
  create case from chat 502
  create consumer record from anonymous chat 501
  edit profile 562
  log in 561
  properties 271
  register 561
  register products 562
  reject case solution 564
  start a chat 564
  view a case 563
  view profile 562
  view registered products 563

properties 240
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ServiceNow</th>
<th>Paris</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contact relationships</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create a relationship 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overview 203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content types</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overview 699</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSM Agent Workspace 65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTI softphone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business rules 672</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>script includes 672</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tables 672</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTI Softphone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activate 186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Communities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept invite forum 758</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add content type forum 703</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add member 710</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add topic forum 705</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add user 709</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announcements 717</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve forum membership 704</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve reject content 741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban user 741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure abuse reporting 739</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure banning 740</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure general moderation settings 738</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure moderation filters 740</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure persona field mapping 714</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configure profile 713</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content types</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable 699</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy permissions from another forum 713</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy permissions from parent forum 712</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create blog 762</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create community profile field 714</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create document 766</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create forum 701</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create forum permission 712</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create permission 711</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create persona 713</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create question 758</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create Terms and Conditions 715</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create topic 704</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customize profile 754</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug user permissions 713</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>define access type permission 711</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>define moderation new users 739</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disable topics 705</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>events 768</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forum and user permissions 707</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite users to a forum 703</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage display settings 755</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage permission exceptions 711</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage subscriptions 757</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modify SEO 722</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performance dashboard 727</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post video 764</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide feedback 777</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refine search 749</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remove content 742</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply comment blog 765</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reply question 760</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request membership forum 757</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revoke user ban 741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search 749</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self-register 748</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEO data 721</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort 750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to content 756</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use community profile 750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view another user's community profile 752</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view user profile 750</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer Communities Moderation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overview 738</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer portal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assign role to contact 542</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change password 547</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>community 545</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create a case 550</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create contact 541</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create contact login 541</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer satisfaction survey 555</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email notification preferences 547</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable or disable contact login 542</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge base</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restrict access 370</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage registration requests 543</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage users</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>update contact information 541</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notification preferences 547</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset password for contact 543</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>search feature 544</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self-registration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve request 543, 543</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>login 549</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password reset 549</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reject request 544</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>submit request 548</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view assets 546</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view contact information 546</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view or modify a case 554</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account hierarchy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create 203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overview 201</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agent calendar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create personal event 110</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assignment workbench</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>properties 240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeline 635</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case timeline</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use with other applications 635</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact relationships</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create a relationship 204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overview 203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create schedule</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create personal event 112</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTI softphone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTI Softphone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer service CTI demo data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installed components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
knowledge product entitlements
  add related products 370
  business rules 680
  installed components 680
  overview 369
  properties 370, 680
OpenFrame
  installed components 672, 673
  special handling note
  create 491
  special handling notes
  business rules 675
  client scripts 675
  configuration 241
  delete 493
  display on form 241
  installed components 674
  properties 241, 674
  script includes 676
  tables 674
  update 511
  user roles 674
targeted communications
  add approver 117
  approve publication 124
  business rules 677
  cancel publications 125
  client scripts 679
  create publication 120
  create recipient list 118, 120
  dynamic recipient list 116
  edit publications 124
  expire publications 125
  overview 115
  preview email notification 123
  rules 678
  script includes 679
  send for review 124
  tables 676
  track publications 122, 125
  view approvers 125
  view in application navigator 126
  view on consumer portal 565
  view on portal 555
  targeted publications
  recurring publications 122
Customer Service
  customer portal
  email notification preferences 547
  customer service CTI demo data
  installed components
  business rules 672
  Customer Service CTI Demo Data
  activate 186
  customer service demo data
  installed components
  business rules 671
  tables 671
  customer service management
  satisfaction survey 512
Customer Service Management
  account
    address 193
    account relationships
    create account relationship record 200
    create account relationship type 199
    overview 197
  account teams
    assign team members 220
    view team members 494
  activate 183
  agent calendar
    add event 113
    configure 108
    create event config 108
    create user work schedule 109
    move event 114
    overview 105
    show or hide events 115
    use 113
  approve a contract 495
  asset contact relationships
    assign a contact 215, 544
    assign a primary contact 214
    overview 214
    set property 215
  assign a case 498
  assignment rules 377
  assignment workbench
    assign a case 490
    create configuration 239
    create criteria 237
    matching criteria 383
    matching rules 385
    overview 379
  associated entities
    create asset 214
    create product model 205
    define SLA 232
    entitlement 218
    entitlements 217
    service contract 495
  case form
    process flow formatter 635
    related lists 636
    timeline 634
  case routing
    create assignment rule 235
    create matching rule 233
    MatchingRuleProcessor API 378
    reverse matching 378
  case states 637
  case timeline 634
  cases list 628
  chat
    add agent to chat support assignment group 494
    configure chat queue 260
    create case from chat 500
    respond to chat request 498
    start chat with agent 551
  close a case 511
  configure email prefix 264
Configure Mandatory Skills Feature 256
consumer
    address 195, 503
consumer service portal
    accept case solution 564
    anonymous chat 365
    change password 562
    chat 500
    create a case 563
    create case from anonymous chat 501
    create case from chat 502
    create consumer record 502
    create consumer record from anonymous chat 501
    edit profile 562
    log in 561
    register 561
    register products 562
    reject case solution 564
    start a chat 564
    view a case 563
    view profile 562
    view registered products 563
Consumer Service Portal
    anonymous chat 362, 364, 364, 364, 564
    properties 271
create a case
    from the application 495
    from the customer portal 550
create a product model 205
create an asset 214
create entitlement 217
create work order for case 502
CSM virtual agent chatbot topics 261
customer portal
    assign role to contact 542
    change password 547
    create contact 541
    create contact login 541
    enable or disable contact login 542
    manage registration requests 543
    manage users 540
    notification preferences 547
    password reset 549
    reset password for contact 543
    self-registration 543, 543, 544, 548, 548, 549
    update contact information 541
    view assets 546
    view case 554
    view contact information 546
customer portal search
    community 545
    knowledge base 370, 544
Customer Service Portal
    limit access to product model data 274
    user roles 273
define case SLA 232
domain separation 366, 368
domain separation 264
e-mail address configuration 256
e-mail communication 264
e-mail properties 265
entitlement
    associate with entity 218
Flow Designer actions 365
Get help using virtual agent conversations 551
import customer account information 192
installed components
    business rules 668
    client scripts 666
    properties 648
    roles 654
    script includes 666
    tables 647
installed components for additional plugins 671
integration with Field Service Management 436
integration with Financial Management 452
integration with Service Management 416, 428
list and form views 512
major issue management 245, 400, 401, 403, 404, 404, 405, 405, 406, 407, 407, 407, 407, 408
Mandatory skills 256
matching rules 377
Migrate skills to the task skill table 258
openFrame configuration 267
phone communication
    answer incoming call 483
    configure workflow 485
    make outgoing call 483
    set call status 484
    transfer call 484
phone configuration 267, 483
phone installation 483
relationships
    overview 196
Report a knowledge gap 511
resource matching engine 378
responsibility definitions
    create 219
    set up communication channels 259
social media integration
    create social profile 493, 494
time recording 126, 128, 128, 129, 129, 129, 129, 130
use the Customer Service Portal 539
Customer Service Management Demo Data
activate 186
Customer Service Management for Orders
activate 186
Customer Service Portal
    limit access to product model data 274
    use 539
    user roles 273
D
domain separation
    Customer Service Management 366, 368
F
field service
    special handling note
        create 491
    special handling notes
        business rules 675
        client scripts 675
configuration 241
delete 493, 493
display on form 241
properties 241, 674
script includes 676
tables 674
update 511
user roles 674
Field Service Management
integration with Customer Service Management 436
integration with Financial Management 452
Flow Designer
Customer Service Management actions 365
forum homepage
logged in users 746
G
gamification
components 780, 780, 780, 782, 782, 787
UI components 782, 784, 784, 786, 787
Gamification
administer 782, 787
award points 790
configure properties 787
create level definition 790
create level range 790
enable 788, 789, 789, 791, 791
moderate 790
I
Incident Assignment Workbench Demo
activate 186
K
knowledge product entitlements
add related products 370
business rules 680
installed components 680
overview 369
properties 370, 680
Knowledge Product Entitlements
activate 186
L
Lookup and Verify 65
M
major issue management
approve or reject a major case candidate 405
configure case synchronization 245
create child cases 406, 407
create major case 406
create major case candidate 405
installed components 407
major case form view 404
major, candidate, child cases 401
properties 408
propose a major case candidate 404
recipients lists 403
roles 407
migrate social Q&A data
communities 736
moderate communities 681
O
OpenFrame
installed components
business rules 673
roles 673
script includes 673
tables 672
UI macros 673
P
Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service
activate 186
Performance Analytics - Content Pack - Customer Service (New)
activate 186
Performance Analytics - Context Sensitive Analytics for Customer Service
activate 186
R
report community content
communities 778
report user profile
communities 756
responsibility definitions
create 219
reverse matching
limit 378
S
self service password reset
installed components
script includes 681
Self Service Password Reset
activate 186
social media entry
create log entry 494
social media integration
create profile 493
overview 269
solution 589
Solutions 623, 727
special handling notes
business rules 675
client scripts 675
configuration 241
create 491
delete 493, 493
display on form 241
installed components 674
overview 385
properties 241, 674
script includes 676		
tables 674
update 511
user roles 674
Special Handling Notes Demo Data
activate 186
Subscriptions
overview 756

T

targeted communications
add approver 117
approve publication 124
business rules 677
cancel publications 125
client scripts 679
create publication 120
create recipient list 118, 120
dynamic recipient list 116
edit publications 124
expire publications 125
overview 115
preview email notification 123
recurring publications 122
roles 678
script includes 679
send for review 124																						
tab:es 676
track publications 122, 125
view approvers 125
view in application navigator 126
view on consumer portal 565
view on portal 555
Targeted Communications
activate 186
installed components
properties 680
Targeted Communications Demo Data
activate 186

U

use communities 681